REGIT ILLUMINAT LEVAT ET CORONAT
PATIENTEM OVEM AGNUS EUCHARISTIAE
EX LIBRIS
ARTHUR T CONNOLLY
ECCLESIAE
SANCTISSIMI SACRAMENTI
RECTORIS

B. Picart delineavit ano 1711.

George Markmann

1794

TRAVELS

INTO

MUSCOVY,

PERSIA,

And PART of the

EAST-INDIES.

CONTAINING,

An Accurate DESCRIPTION of whatever is moſt remarkable in thoſe COUNTRIES.

AND EMBELISHED

With above 320 Copper Plates, repreſenting the fineſt Proſpects, and moſt conſiderable Cities in thoſe Parts; the different Habits of the People; the ſingular and extraordinary Birds, Fiſhes, and Plants which are there to be found: As likewiſe the Antiquities of thoſe Countries, and particularly the noble Ruins of the famous Palace of PERSEPOLIS, called *Chelminar* by the *Perſians*. The whole being delineated on the Spot, from the reſpective Objects.

DS7
B93

To which is added,

An Account of the Journey of Mr. *ISBRANTS*, Ambaſſador from *Muſcovy*, through *Ruſſia* and *Tartary*, to *China*; together with Remarks on the Travels of Sir *John Chardin*, and Mr. *Kempfer*, and a Letter written to the AUTHOR on that Subject.

In Two VOLUMES.

By M. *CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.*

Tranſlated from the Original *FRENCH.*

VOL. I.

LONDON:

Printed for A. BETTESWORTH and C. HITCH, S. BIRT, C. DAVIS, J. CLARKE, S. HARDING D. BROWNE, A. MILLAR, J. SHUCKBURGH, and T. OSBORNE.

MDCCXXXVII.

DS
7
.693
v.1

51209

OCLC #
4619995
3/3/92

Orbis Idumei clarius tepidique Canopi
Hospes Apelleae non levis artis honos,
Bruyn hic ille est: quem quo sua saecula norint,
Ingenio melius pictus ab ipse suo est.

Janus Broukhusius.

Godfr: Kneller Eques Pinxit.

G: Valck Schulp:

THE AUTHOR's PREFACE.

I HAVE no intention to pre-engage the Reader's Approbation of theſe Travels, by a ſtudied Preface; and think it ſufficient to declare, that nothing will be found here, but what I have ſeen with my own Eyes, and have examined with the utmoſt Attention and Care; without introducing any Particulars that have been publiſhed by other Travellers, on the ſame Subject, unleſs it be to point out their Errors, by thoſe Remarks which are inſerted at the cloſe of this Work, with relation to the celebrated Ruins of the ancient Palace of Perſepolis. *I, however, have been careful not to derogate in the leaſt from the perſonal Merit and Judgment of thoſe illuſtrious Travellers in every other reſpect; but it will be evident that they have omitted many remarkable things, and miſrepreſented others, either through Negligence, or for want of Skill in deſigning; or, laſtly, becauſe they did not continue long enough upon the Spot, to conſider thoſe ſtately Antiquities in a ſufficient manner.*

I muſt obſerve, with reſpect to Ruſſia, *that tho' Baron* Herberſtein, *together with* Olearius, *and the Earl of* Carliſle, *Ambaſſador from* England *at the Court of* Muſcovy, *as likewiſe* Alliſon, *and ſeveral others, have publiſhed very entertaining Accounts of that Country, they yet have not afforded the curious all the Satisfaction they require; becauſe the Authors were not permitted to draw the leaſt Sketch of the Places and fine Antiquities which are to be found in thoſe Parts. I am the firſt Stranger who ever obtained that Privilege from his* Czarian *Majeſty; and I flatter my ſelf that I have ſpared no Pains to improve that Favour to the beſt Advantage. This will be evident from the Plans I have drawn of the principal Cities of that Empire, as likewiſe of its Buildings, and the fineſt Proſpects in its Provinces; to all which I have added the Habits, Manners, and Cuſtoms of the various People who live under the Government of that potent Monarch. I have likewiſe related the great Changes and Improvements which have been made by that Prince, together with a number of other Particulars that never came to the Knowledge of thoſe who have written before me.*

I might ſay much the ſame of Perſia, *and the auguſt Ruins of the ancient Palace of* Perſepolis, *of which ſeveral Travellers have publiſhed Deſcriptions, without a due Examination of what they ſaw. For which reaſon their Accounts have more the Air of a Romance, than of any Reality, or compleat Knowledge of thoſe fine Antiquities, which is not to be obtained without Pains and a peculiar Application of Thought; and when theſe are wanting an Author muſt inevitably fall into Errors, and lead others into the ſame.* Pietro della Valle, *and* Don Garcias de Silva de Figueroa, *Ambaſſador from* Spain *at the Court of* Abas I. *King of* Perſia, *are the firſt who have treated of theſe famous Ruins with any Solidity. And yet it evidently appears, by the Relation the former has given of his Travels, and by the Account which the latter has publiſhed of his Embaſſy, that neither of them continued long enough at* Chelminar, *to examine and trace out all the Antiquities and Curioſities of that Place, with the Circumſpection that was requiſite, and therefore we need not be ſurpriſed, if they expreſs themſelves in a ſuperficial manner, and ſometimes at random, on that Subject. It appears, however, by the Remarks of the learned* Iſaac Voſſius *on* Pomponius Mela, *that he intended to make uſe of the Relation publiſhed by* Don Garcias de Silva, *and likewiſe of the Writings of the Ancients, in order to diſcover what conformity may be found, between the ancient Palace of* Perſepolis, *and the Ruins of* Chelminar, *from their Deſcriptions of both; but he died before he could execute that Deſign.*

I ſhall not enlarge on the Errors committed by theſe Authors, leſt I ſhould be taxed with an Inclination to recommend my ſelf at their Expence, and to ſet off this Account of my Travels, by decrying thoſe of others. Perſons of Judgment and Taſte will know what to determine concerning us, by comparing our ſeveral Performances, and therefore I ſhall only add, that the Authors from whom I differ, were not long enough upon the Spot, to be capable of making a juſt and accurate Deſcription of thoſe numerous and majeſtic Ruins; and they, perhaps, might want thoſe Lights and Abilities, which alone can enable Perſons to form a true Judgment of ſuch things as theſe.

As my only View, when I entered upon theſe Travels, was to be as ſedulous as poſſible in my Survey of thoſe noble Antiquities; all the Difficulties that oppoſed themſelves in my way, together with the Dangers to which one muſt needs be obnoxious

on

on ſuch occaſions, did but animate me the more. I may likewiſe declare, that I have been altogether induſtrious to afford the Public, and eſpecially Perſons of Taſte, as much Satisfaction as is conſiſtent with my ſmall Abilities. To which I may add, that I have made it an indiſpenſible Law to my ſelf, not to deviate in any reſpect from the Truth, meerly to give an ornamental Air to this Work, in which there are no Facts but what are related with the ſtricteſt Veracity. Nor do I aſſume any Merit to my ſelf, from the extraordinary Expences I have been at to embelliſh this Edition of my Travels, and facilitate the Comprehenſion of the Particulars they contain. The Reader may judge of my proceeding, by the Number and Beauty of the Plates diſtributed through the whole Work, and which are executed with all poſſible Juſtice and Accuracy. I can affirm too, that I have drawn with my own Hand, and immediately from the Life, all the Plates now preſented to the Public, without having recourſe to any ancient Authors who have deſcribed Perſepolis *and its Antiquities, and without adding or diminiſhing any one Particular. The Reader therefore may reſt aſſured, that the whole is conformable to thoſe Originals which are ſtill to be found on the Spot.*

I, however, am not ſo vain as to think my ſelf infallible, and therefore had the Precaution to communicate my Work to ſuch Perſons as had a competent Judgment in whatever relates to Antiquity. My Plates and Deſcriptions were favoured with their Approbation, and they were pleaſed to think that I had placed in their full and proper Light, thoſe Objects which had been ſhaded in Obſcurity for the Space of two thouſand Years. The ſame Perſons, whoſe Modeſty will not permit me to name them, have alſo been ſo good as to compare, at my requeſt, the Plates exhibited in this Work, with thoſe Deſcriptions of the ancient Palace of Perſepolis, *that are to be found in the Writings of* Herodotus, Xenophon, Diodorus Siculus, *and* Strabo; *and they have declared them to be conformable to the Relations of thoſe celebrated Writers. This Circumſtance afforded them ſo much Satisfaction, that they have given themſelves the trouble to enrich my Work with ſeveral Remarks on thoſe ſuperb Ruins.*

It, however, is well known, that when an Author preſents a Book to the Public, he expoſes himſelf to the Cenſure of ſuch as take pleaſure in depreciating whatever is above their Capacity. I therefore thought my beſt method of impoſing Silence on Perſons of that turn, would be to ſtrengthen my Situation,

by ſeveral Fragments of Stone, on which a variety of Figures and Characters are impreſſed; and particularly by one ſide of a Window, repreſented in Plate 137, *and which is now to be ſeen in the Cabinet of Curioſities belonging to his ſerene Highneſs* Anthony Ulrick, *Duke of* Brunſwick-Lunenbourg; *and likewiſe by the Figure exhibited in Plate* 142. *which Figure is now in the Poſſeſſion of Mr.* Witſen, *Burgomaſter of* Amſterdam. *I have the others in my own Houſe.*

I have added to this Work, for the Satisfaction of the Public, a Series of the Kings of Perſia, *who have governed that Empire, from the deſtruction of* Perſepolis, *to the preſent time; together with the Origin of thoſe Princes and the Order of their Succeſſion.*

I have been the leſs particular in the Affairs and Deſcription of the Indies, *becauſe they are well known, and have been treated of by ſeveral before me. I, however, have related all that paſſed there in my time, together with thoſe Particulars of which I was an Eye Witneſs, and this I have done with the ſame Sincerity and Exactneſs I obſerved, with reſpect to the other Countries through which I paſt.*

Upon the whole, I am not ſo vain and partial to my own Capacity, as to flatter my ſelf that I ſhall pleaſe every Reader, but ſhall think my ſelf ſufficiently happy if I obtain the Approbation of competent Judges; and I ſhall not fail to improve any Opportunity they will afford me of rectifying any Errors that as yet may happen to have eſcaped my notice.

Pag. 1.
ISLANDE
M. Hecla
C. du Nord
Nordkin
Isle de Loppe
Isle de Loeffoort
Maalstroom
LAPONIE NORVEGIENNE
FINLANDE
LAPONIE
SUEDOISE
Kola
LAPONIE RUSSIENNE
MER DU NORD
NORVEGE
SUEDE
GOLFE DE BOTHNIQUE
FINLANDE
ORIENTALE
SUEDOISE
Bergen
ECOSSE
Edimbourg
Stokholm
Lac de Ladoga
Petersbourg
GOLFE de FINLANDE
LIVONIE
GOUVERNEMENT DE NOVOGOROD
Novogorod
Copenhague
IUTLANDE
Landscroon
MER BALTIQUE
ANGLETERRE
Londres
Texel
Zelande
Amsterdam
PALS BAS
Bremen
Hambourg
POMERANIE
Stetin
COURLANDE
PRUSSE
Dantzig
Varsovie
Paris
FRANCE
Basle
Geneve
SUISSE
ALLEMAGNE
Vienne
Presbourg
HONGRIE
POLOGNE
UKRAINE
Venise
Po R.
ITALIE
GOLFE DE VENISE
DALMATIE
BESSARABIE
Bender
Danube R.
BULGARIE
CORSE
Rome
SARDAIGNE
ALBANIE
ROMANIE
Constantinople
MACEDOINE
Bursa
MER NO
NATO
OU
L'ASIE
Messine
SICILLE
Malte
ACHAIE
GRECE
ARCHIPEL
MOREE
Rhodes
CANDIE
MER MEDITERRANEE
AFRIQUE
Caire

ROUTE D'AMSTERDAM A MOSCOW ET DE LA À ISPAHAN ET GAMRON

Grandes Villes
Petites Villes
Villages
Forts ou lon s'arrete
Caravanserais

Routes par Terre
Route par Eau
Montagnes et Arbres
Rivieres
Separation des Provinces

NOUVELLE ZEMBLE
Isle de Witsen découverte en 1688
Weigats
Obi R.
SAMOIEDES
SIBERIE
Tobol
Irtis R.
Archangel
Wologda
Kama R.
Wiatka R.
DUCHE DE NOVOGOROD
TARTARES CZEREMISSES
ROY. DE CAZAN
ROY. DE BULGAR
TARTARES CZEREMISSES
TARTARES DE MORDWA
CALMUQUES BLANCS
CALMUQUES NOIRS
ROYAUME DE ASTRACAN
COSAQUES
Astracan
Volga R.
Don ou Tanais R.
Aloph ou Tanais
Guiloi Donetz R.
Donetz Seweriski ou Petit Tanais
TARTARIE
DAGESTAN
Schirwan
MER CASPIENNE
CIRCASSIE
Mont Caucasse
Faze R.
Araxe ou Cyrus R.
Samarchand
Oxus R.
Sihoun R.
Gihoun R.
TURCOMANIE
CHALDEE
ARABES
ARABIE DESERTE
ARABIE PETREE
Euphrate R.
Tigre R.
Jerusalem
SUSISTAN
FARSISTAN
PERSE
Ispahan
Kasian
Sirjan
Gamron
Ormus
Golfe de Perse

A Tres-haut et tres-puissant Prince
PIERRE ALEXEWITZ
EMPEREUR de RUSSIE
Seigneur d'une grande partie du Globe terrestre, depuis le Pole Arctique et toute la Mer de Tartarie, jusques a celle du Japon, et aux frontieres de la partie Septentrionale de la Chine, a celles de la Mer Caspienne, de la Mer Noire, et proche de celles de la Mer Baltique: Souverain de plusieurs autres Royaumes et Provinces: Prince triomphant et Victorieux,
par Everard Isbrantz Ides.

NOUVELLE CARTE
DE
L'EMPIRE de RUSSIE
Dressée sur les meilleurs plans, qui aient paru jusques à present, et particulierement sur celui de Monsr. le Bourguemaitre Witzen, levé sur les Lieux, et rectifié.
par
Everard Isbrantz Ides.

45 50 55 60 65 70 75 80 85 90 95 10

60 55 50 45 40 35

I. de l'Amirauté
C. Nassau
C. Glacé
I. d'Orange
C. Desire
Baye de Loom
I. de Wiese découverte en 1688
NOUVELLE ZEMBLE
Grande baye
C. de Cant
R. S. Laurent
Detroit de Weigats
Kola
LAPONIE RUSSIENNE
MER BLANCHE
Archangel
Dwina R.
Mesen
Solowatzkoga
LES SAMOJEDES
Pais de Waeg
Solskaia Sastawa
Mungalskoia
Ob R.
Pustoi Oserkoi
Berefow
Pezepskoi Monast.
Wollost-Ugsy
Pais de Syrenes
Kargorod
Gr. Ustiga
Ustiugh
Novgorod
Orsa
Dubrofna
Rugofs
Smolensko
Totma
Wologda
Postof
Iereslaw
Surdag
Zorndal R.
Solwa R.
Kozkosa
Turugas koi
Turugans R.
Hordes de Pestraia
Ilogu R.
Usma
Konda R.
GRANDE PERMIE
Solikamskoi
Saparos koiam
Demian koi
Surgut
SIB
Moscow
RUSSIE
MOSCOVITE
Kolmna
Refan
Oca R.
Kiovie
PODOLIE
Belef
Tula
Perlaslaw
Resco
Liebeden
Orel
Merlin
Veronise
Veronise R.
Oskol R.
Donetz R.
Isum
Perekop
Pabu Meotide
CRIMEE
Caffa
PONT EUXIN ou MER NOIRE
Asoph
Don ou Tanais R.
Ghiboka
Bistrayja
Patosfu
PAS D'ASOPH
Abascia
GEORGIE
AMAZONSI
Mingrelie
Guriel
TARTARES de CIRCASSIE
COSSAQUES
ASTRACAN
Kasjaide Gorôte
CALMUQUES ERRANS
MER CASPIENNE
CHOROSAN
Balaguna
Orlof
Kolomna
Kolomenskoi
Glinof
Kolomna R.
Kolomna
Kasimof
Kasimof R.
Cazan
Wyatka R.
Wyatka
Tarnitz
Tarnitz R.
Japanzin
Tumeen
Tura R.
Tura
Irtis R.
Irtis
TOBOLSKA
Narum
Wassinga
Balak
Keetsko
Ket R.
Obi R.
Hordes de Vatski
Hordes de Killebatereri
Torra
Barlinskoi
Aisdinas
Ajaz
Samara
Samara R.
Wolga R.
Ufa R.
Ufa
Serog
Sengir R.
Mosdokza R.
Don ou Tanais R.
Ilowa
Saratof
TARTARES D'UFFIMI
TARTARES DE BASKIR
TARTARES DE NAGAISI
Solotoi Grada
Oenack
CALMUQUES
OLGARES
Torgouti H.
Limzim H.
Iamisowa H.
Tomskoi
Belaja Sfera
H. de Durbet
Susan
Desert
Lavi
Caru
Irk
Larak
Sabran
Residence du Prince des Calmuques, Araptan Chan
BUCHARES
Samarchand
Z

OCEAN ORIENTAL

ER GLACIALE

PAIS DE LENA

IAKUTES

IAKUTSK

TUNGUZES

ERI

VENUSTANU

DAURIA

OLENNI TUNGUZES

KONNI TUNGUZES

BURATES

KIRGISES

PAIS DES AMADUNS

TARTARIE GRANDE

PAIS DES MONGALES

MONGULES BRUNS

CALMUQUES ERRANS

NIUCHAN

PEUPLES de GILIAKI

MER D'AMUR

MER DE LA CHINE

CORÉE

PROVINCE DE PEKING

P. de XANSI

P. de HONAN

P. de XANTUNG

Desert Sablonneux de Xamo

Lena R.

Amur Riv.

Sabatsia

Kamtzatka

Jakutskoi

Wilui R.

Lena R.

Maia R.

Aldan R.

Olekma R.

Witim R.

Jana R.

Indigirka R.

Kolyma R.

Anadirskoi

Ochotskoi

Argunskoi

Nertzinskoi

Udinskoi

Selenginskoi

Wergolenskoi

Ilinskoi

Jeniseiskoi

Barbuzins kogo

Lac de Baikal

Kirenga R.

Tunguska R.

Angara R.

Irkut R.

Selinga R.

Orchon R.

Argun R.

Onon R.

Ingoda R.

Mergeen

Kailar

Nauntoton

Nauntoton R.

Monts de Jali

Orgun Dalai

Kudak

Kolegol Lac

Siba Lac

Karakatoa

Galhan

Peking

Nankin

Nankinskoi

Liaotung

Xingking

Kirin

Isiman

Yenchcou

Iunte

Ipchan

Laiguen

Keyser sc.

Chat. de Lama

Bistra R.

Zuygin R.

Sia R.

Buis R.

Amur R.

Tugur R.

Ogota R.

Ochotskoi

Jakutskoi

Simouia

Simouie

Simouio

Hordes de Tirzi

Hordes de Lop

de Lop

Hordes des Punguses

Tolimbai

Varaunia

Kabanat Ilunskoi

Prataskoi

Kimchka

Ilimskoi

Jakutskoi

Barbuzins kogo

Lac de Baikal

Ilim R.

Angara R.

Bargusin R.

Tunguska R.

Kirenga R.

Lena ou Leny

Maia R.

Aldan R.

Wilui R.

Jana R.

Indigirka R.

Kolyma R.

Sabatsia

Anadirskoi

Kamtzatka

Bistra R.

Zuygin R.

Sia R.

Buis R.

Amur R.

Tugur R.

Ogota R.

Ochotskoi

Chat. de Lama

Mergeen

Kailar

Nauntoton

Monts de Jali

Orgun Dalai

Kudak

Kolegol Lac

Siba Lac

Karakatoa

Galhan

Peking

Nankinskoi

Liaotung

Xingking

Kirin

Isiman

Yenchcou

Iunte

Ipchan

Laiguen

Keyser sc.

60

55

50

45

40

35

100 105 110 115 120 125 130 135 140 145 150 155

Gamron
Ormus
Kismus I.
Iareke
Golfe d'Ormus
Doba
Sohar
Mescate
Guadel
Dulcinda
Patanis
Madran
Indé R.
Iatta
R. de Cache
Ismere
EMPIRE
Saria
Tropique de Cancer
ARABIE
C. de Rasalgate
Cuesa
I. de St. Paul
Iyby I.
Muria
I. de Curia
MER ARABIQUE
Route de Gamron à Batavia
Retour de Batavia à Gamron
Cambaye
Baroche
GUZA RATTE
Diu
Suratte
Bombaim
Visapour
Goa
Onor
Bisnagar
Mangalor
NARSINGA
Narsinga
Cananor
Maliapour
Calicut
Pondicheri
Cochin
Negapatam
Cap de Comorin
MER D'INDE
Iles Maldives
Os tres Irmanos
I. de Dieg Garcia
Polverera
80
85
90
95
100
25
20
15
10
5
0
5

N°3.
ROUTE EXACTE DE GAMRON à BATAVIA ET DE BATAVIA à GAMRON
Lieües d'Allemagne dont 15 font un degré
GRAND MOGOL
BENGALE
GOLFE DE BENGALE
ARACAN
ROYAUME DE PEGU
GOLCONDE
SIAM
COCHINCHINA
CAMBODIA
GOLFE DE SIAM
MALACCA
SUMATRA
IAVA
ISLE DE CEYLON
Gypry
Gory
Comotay
Delout
Barado
Verma
Brampor
Ragemolle
Bengale
Aracan
Golconda
Mirapour
Carapay
Ciacola
Pegu
Siriavo
B. de Martaban
Martaban
Outauani
Columpe
Tavai
Siam autrefois Odia ou Aiothia
Lian
Langor
Cambaia
Caxol
Patane
Peva
Paha
Malacca
Ihor
Pulo Way
Achem
Lamby
Palimbam
Lampin
I. d'Engano
Detroit de la Sonde
Isle du Prince
Batavia
Paliacate
Route de Gamron à Batavia
Retour de Batavia à Gamron
Equinoctiale
Keyser fecit

THE

TRAVELS

OF

CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

By the way of MUSCOVY and PERSIA into the EAST-INDIES, and to the coaſt of MALABAR, the iſland of CEYLON, BATAVIA, BANTAM, and other places.

CHAP. I.

The Author's reſolution. His departure from the Hague, *and arrival at* Archangel.

Introduction.

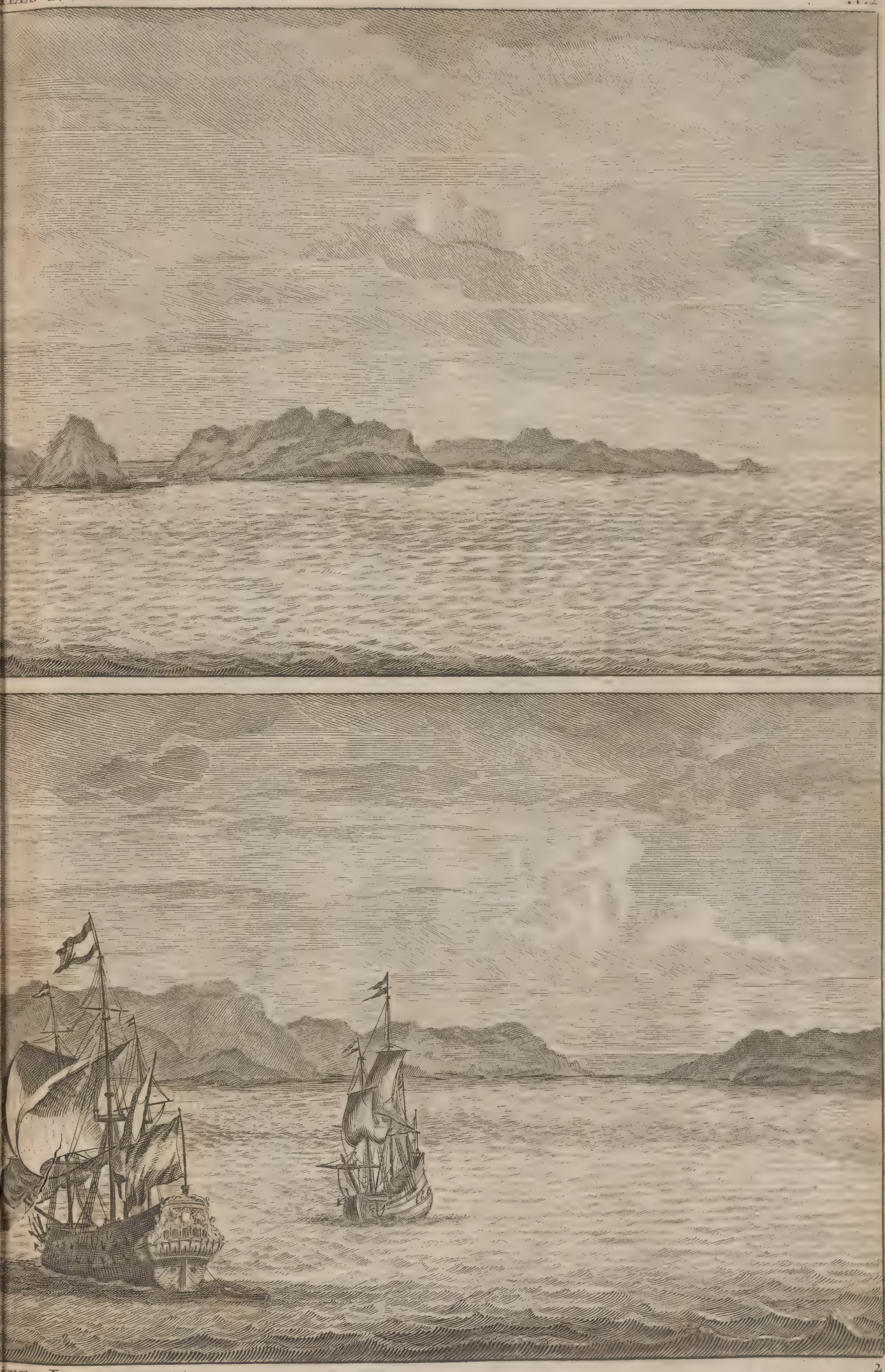
I THINK I cannot better begin the account of theſe travels, than by returning thanks to God, who by his divine favor and protection has inabled me to go through them, as well as the former, in which I ſpent nineteen years with all the ſatisfaction imaginable.

Upon my return to the *Hague*, I felt myſelf animated with a deſire of paying a ſecond viſit to diſtant countries, that I might maturely conſider the people and their manners; and to undertake a ſecond voyage to the *Eaſt-Indies*, by the way of *Moſcovy* and *Perſia*. This deſign was very diſpleaſing to my friends and relations; who remonſtrated to me the conſequences and inconveniences of ſuch a project; but the violence of my inclination, added to the ſucceſs of my former enterprize, prevailed over all conſiderations whatever.

whatever. I reflected within my ſelf, that I was much more advanced in years, and indued with greater experience than I had been before, and concluded I ſhould be now better qualified to make obſervations and remarks; and the care I had taken, upon my return, to conſult with men of learning and curioſity, perſuaded me I might poſſibly make diſcoveries of greater importance than I had been able to make in my former travels. Elated with theſe hopes, I carefully viſited and examined ſeveral collections of rarities, and learned how to keep all ſorts of birds, beaſts and fiſhes in ſpirits, and to prepare them ſo as to bring them home without decaying. I reſolved alſo to paint after the life many productions of the ſea, as well as flowers, plants, fruits and the like. But all this was by no means preparatory to the main deſign; my chief purpoſe was to ſearch into the antiquities of the countries in my way, and thereto to add ſuch reflections as might occur; to ſurvey the religions, manners, cuſtoms, polities, government and dreſs, and whatever might be remarkable in practice at the births, marriages, and burials of the various nations who poſſeſs thoſe diſtant countries: In a word, to examine into the ſoil and cities of the ſame, with all the accuracy I could, that I might be able to make a faithful report concerning all theſe things upon my return home.

1701. July 28. *His departure from the* Hague.

I departed from the *Hague*, the place of my birth, upon the *twenty eighth of July* 1701, in order for *Amſterdam*, where I ſtaid till the *thirtieth*, and at four in the afternoon, the next day, I reached the *Texel*, by the ordinary conveyance. I was there informed, that the *Oudenard*, a man of war, commanded by Captain *Roemer Vlak*, who was to convoy the *Ruſſia* fleet, had weighed from thence at nine that morning, with five or ſix merchantmen bound for *Archangel*. The ſhip I was to go in, not being yet arrived, I went to meet her, and got on board of her upon the *firſt of Auguſt*, at ten in the morning. She was a fine flyboat, called the *John Baptiſt*, had eight guns, and eighteen men, and was commanded by *Gerard Buis* of *Sardam*. We tripped it with a weſt ſouth weſt wind to get into the *Texel*, where we dropped anchor before it was noon. We weighed from thence, upon the *ſecond*, at nine in the morning, and by one in the afternoon we were out at ſea; our pilot now left us, and I gave him ſome letters for my friends. We ſteered away north weſt and by north, till it was night, when we hauled more to the northward, and altered our courſe for north north weſt; and made nine or ten ſail, ſome bound to *Holland*, and others to the eaſtward. At midnight a calm fell upon us, and continued till the morning of the *third* of this month. About noon a ſmall breeze ſprang up at weſt ſouth weſt. Upon the *fourth*, at break of day, the wind freſhned, and we ſteered away north and by weſt; the weather was very variable, and we ſaw ſeveral ſhips ſhaping different courſes. Upon the *fifth*, the wind was at north, and north and by weſt, and we met with ſeveral ſhips, ſome of which were fiſhermen from *Greenland*, who acquainted us with what luck they had had that ſeaſon. The ſame occurrence fell out the next day. Upon the *eighth*, the wind came about to the weſt, and it being very fine weather, we made a diſplay of all our canvaſs. But the wind ſhifting about to the ſouth, and ſouth eaſt, we ſtood away to the north eaſtward, and towards night had got up with the neareſt iſlands of *Norway*, without knowing any thing of the matter, the weather was ſo thick and rainy. Upon the *ninth*, we were in 61 degrees of northern latitude, and the weather ſtill continued thick. Wandring about thus in this ſea, we ſaw a ſort of large fiſh commonly called *hillen*, with a ſharp pointed head. We afterwards ſaw of other ſorts called *potskoppen*; theſe had large heads and ſwam about the



1701. ſhip, ten times as big as a porpoiſe, as large as our boats, and proportionably broader than long, and no where to be found but in the northern ſeas: After ſeveral changes of the wind and weather, the ſea being ſometimes ſmooth and ſometimes rough, it cleared up. Upon the *ſixteenth*, about ſeven in the morning we made land, being the rocks or mountains that lie neareſt on the northern coaſt, and in our maps, called *Loeffoert*; they are indifferently high and ſeparate from each other, as may be ſeen in the plate N° 1. *Mountains on the north coaſt of Norway.* When we had borrowed pretty near upon theſe hills, I drew the reſt of the iſland, with the other points that ſtretch out, where I took notice of other ſmaller rocks which ſeemed to be joined to this ſame iſland, which was about two or three leagues diſtant from us. You may ſee it in N° 2. We then proceeded quietly enough, with ſome ſhips we had fallen in with by chance, and from time to time we ſaw fiſhes of half the length of our ſhip, thick in proportion, and with prodigious heads. There are ſome of them ſaid to be ſomething like a ſtaircaſe, as we were told by perſons who had ſeen them dead. We there alſo ſaw a kind of birds not very different from our ducks, or divers, but they are ſmaller with a ſharp bill, black above, and white beneath. This night and the next day being the *ſeventeenth*, we had a thick fog and rain. About eight a clock we fell in with a ſhip, who left *Hamburgh* upon the thirtieth of *July*, and was bound to *Archangel*. The fog ſtill continued and prevented us from ſeeing the land which was not far from us; but the heavens clearing up, we had ſight of it. As we proceeded, we came into the latitude of 72 degrees 36 minutes north near the land of *Loppe*, and a high rocky mountain to the ſouth eaſt of us. There we found a *French* ſhip, whoſe Maſter came aboard of us. As he could ſpeak nothing but *French*, and there was no body in the ſhip that underſtood him but myſelf, I was his interpreter. He told us, he had been five months from *Bayonne*, that he had been a *Greenland* voyage, and that he was upon his return home; that he had taken nine whales, and the laſt of them not above 4 or 5 leagues from the place where we were; and that he hoped to meet with more upon that coaſt; aſking us whether or no we had ſeen any. Our Maſter having been very civil to him, he added, that one of the whales he had taken had teeth five inches long; that he had afforded thirty two caſks of blubber, and that he had filled ſeven and a half with the ſalt he took from behind his neck. He aſſured us, it was not the firſt time he had met with the like; that they refined this ſalt in *Bayonne*, to ſend it into foreign parts; that it was of wonderful efficacy to clear the complexions of women, and give them a certain bloom of youth; that it was a moſt excellent remedy in many caſes, and that there was a great deal of money got by it. He would alſo have perſuaded us, the *Baſques* were the firſt that undertook a voyage to *Greenland*. We met with ſeveral other ſhips in this place, and held on our courſe in the evening, with the weather very uncertain. Upon the *twentieth*, about eight in the morning, we reached within 6 or 7 leagues of the *Iſle of Loppe*, which bore ſouth eaſt of us; but we ſaw it not, the weather was ſo thick and gloomy. Upon the *twenty fourth*, the fog was ſuch, that we could hardly ſee from one end of the ſhip to the other. Upon the *twenty fifth*, we were in the latitude of 72 degrees 24 minutes; in the evening it fell calm, and in the night we had a very great fog, during which one of our ſeamen took a great falcon, which had ſettled upon our ſhip; but it was ſullen, and would never eat. The fog and the rain ſtill continuing, we did not make land till the *twenty eighth*. When we had got to the northward of *Lambasku*, the weather grew fair, and we had a favourable wind at ſouth ſouth weſt, which

1701. *A ſtrange whale.*

17 Auguſt.

Iſle of Loppe.

Aug. 24.

A falcon taken.

gave

1701. gave us great pleaſure at this time, and particularly as we could have made no uſe of it, if the fog had continued, for fear of the land.

Coaſt of Lapland. The land we had then to ſtarboard of us was the *Ruſſian Lapland*, commonly called the firm land or continent of *Lapland*. It contains a ridge of hills of no very great height, and nearly equal; they are not far from the ſhore, of a ruſſet colour and the ſoil is naught. In many parts of theſe hills you may ſee patches of ſnow, which gathers in hollows where it never melts. A calm taking us upon the *twenty ninth*, we dropped an anchor that we might not drive. But a breeze at eaſt ſpringing up a little while afterwards, we ſhaped our courſe ſouth eaſterly, and came in with the land, having ſeveral ſail of ſhips in ſight. Upon the *thirtieth*, we entered the *White-Sea*, whoſe waters are clearer than thoſe of the Ocean, which as you ſtand in for the coaſt of *Ruſſia*, are of a foul muddy green becauſe of the rivers

Auguſt 30. which fall thereinto. Having paſſed the hilly coaſt we came to another more upon the level, partly covered with copſe wood, and about a league off. About eight of the clock we

The Iſle of Croſſes. came up with the *Iſle of Croſſes*, which is very rocky, and not far from the main land. This iſle is full of croſſes, which you diſcover

Ruſſia. as you ſteer in with it. When we had got clear of this coaſt, we made the land of *Ruſſia*, ſteering away ſouth weſt and by ſouth, to the eaſtward of us leaving Cape *Gris*, which ſhoots out a great way into the ſea. Towards the evening, we ſaw ſeventeen ſhips at anchor upon the coaſt, and about eleven we added to the number, together with two *Engliſh* ſhips, and came to an anchor in three fathom water, before the river of *Archangel*, about 10 leagues from the town. Upon the *thirty firſt*, in the morning, we found we were 21 ſhips in all; 11 *Dutch*, 8 *Engliſh*, and 2 *Hamburghers*, the ſhips which ſailed from the *Texel* before we did, being of the number. The weather being perfectly favourable, we only wait- 1701.
ed for pilots to go into the river; but they were ſo long e're they came, that one of the *Hamburghers* reſolved to pilot himſelf; which he ſoon repented, for he ran bump aſhore upon the larboard ſide of the river. We were not at all ſurprized at this, being told the *Moſcovites* had taken up all the ſea-marks, for fear of the *Swedes*, who had appeared at the mouth of the river ſome weeks before, and alarmed all the neighbourhood. The *Engliſh* alſo grew quite uneaſy at this delay, and towards morning weighed with ſix ſhips; but two of them running likewiſe aground, the other four gave over the attempt. But their pilots coming to them, in the afternoon, they went up the river, followed by a ſmall veſſel of our country, who happily eſcaping all danger, came to an anchor before certain meadows, *Meadows.* by the favor of fine weather. The land there is full of ſmall trees, and ſtretches out on both ſides towards the river, forming a creſcent, as appears by N° 3. Upon the *ſecond of* 2 Sept. *September*, we had all of us pilots, excepting one *Engliſh* ſhip, and, about eleven of the clock, we got under ſail, ſteering away to the eaſtward. We went over ſeveral flats where we had not above 15 or 16 foot water, and dropped anchor about three of the clock near the meadows, about 6 leagues from *Archangel*, the hay being then in heaps upon the ground. The *Engliſh*, and the reſt came to in this place as well as we, none being allowed to lie nearer the town, whither every Captain muſt repair in perſon. I therefore embarked with ſome others about five of the clock, deſigning to take the ſhorteſt way among the iſlands; but it happened that we ſoon loſt ourſelves. We began to deſpair of ſucceſs in our attempt, when meeting with a ſmall veſſel, under the care of a *Moſcovite*, we begged of him to take charge of us as a guide, night coming on, and the weather thick and gloomy; for we had, as I believe, ſteered the compaſs

TENTES DES

SAMOJEDES.

1701. compaſs three times round, though we had no leſs than four Captains in the veſſel with us. At length we diſcovered the beacon of one of the iſlands, near to which we found a *Ruſſian* bark at anchor. It was now midnight and rained hard, ſo that we reſolved to ſtay here till day-light, it being too dark to ſee our way to the ſhore; beſides, there was not water ſufficient for us ſo to go; if there had, we ſhould have landed, and made a fire in the woods. At day-break we proceeded on our way, and about ſix of the clock reached the *New Dwinko*, about three leagues from the city. Here we ſtopt, it not being permitted to advance any farther, without leave of the commanding Officer of the place. There are but few houſes at this place, where they were raiſing ſome forts, for fear of ſurprize from an enemy. Here alſo they were getting ready three branders, and a chain of ninety fathom, thick as a man's arm, to obſtruct the *Swedes*, who had been every day dreaded, ſince their laſt expedition. I had time to make a draught of the place, whoſe houſes are at ſome diſtance from the river as appears by the plate. The commanding Officer appearing at laſt, entertained us with a glaſs of brandy, and gave us leave to go on. We departed immediately, and upon the *third* arrived at *Archangel*, about nine in the morning. I went to lodge with a countryman of mine, called *Adolphus Bowhuiſen*, who informed me the *Swedes* had appeared in theſe parts, a little while before, with three men of war, one fly-boat, two galliots, and a ſnow, intending to deſtroy the village of *Moetjega*, ten leagues off. That they had certainly gained their end, if a *Moſcovite*, called *Koereptien*, who ſerved them as pilot, had not diverted them, by repreſenting, it would fruſtrate their deſigns upon *Archangel*. Upon this they came, with *Engliſh* colours, before the mouth of the river, where they entered with their galliots and the ſnow, having firſt ſeized another *Moſcovite* to ſerve them as an interpreter. Upon the fifteenth of *June* 1701. they got the length of the *New Dwinko*, about ſeven in the evening; but were vaſtly ſurprized upon being received with ſome diſcharges of cannon, the thing they leaſt expected. This obliged them

1701.

New Dwinko.

Arrival at Archangel.

3 Sept.

NOVE DWINKO.

1701. to quit one of their galliots and the ſnow, and to row away in their boats for the other galliot, who had been aground, but was now afloat again. They then returned to their ſhips, at the mouth of the river, leaving the *New Dwinko* at midnight, and at a time of the year, when the ſun hardly at all diſappears from above the horizon. Exaſperated at this loſs and diſappointment, they wrecked their fury upon the light-houſe, ſetting fire thereto, as well as to two villages *Koeja* and *Pellietſe*, the firſt of which is not above ſeven hours from the city on the ſame ſide, and the other beyond or on the other ſide of the *White-Sea:* In ſhort, they for ſome days cruiſed in theſe parts, and then ſhaped their courſe for home. The *Moſcovites*, rejoiced they had thus got rid of them, fell to drinking the wine the *Swedes* had left them in great plenty, and careleſly firing ſome ſalvo's for their victory, the fire caught hold on a barrel of powder, and blew up the beſt part of the veſſel, which proved the death of four of them, beſides twenty that were wounded. It is thought the *Swedes* loſt but one man upon this occaſion, whoſe body falling into the water, was taken up by the *Moſcovites*.

A misfortune by gun-powder.

Upon the *fourth*, ſeveral of our ſhips came to an anchor before the town, having been previouſly ſearched for prohibited goods. The *Engliſh* ſhip that continued at the mouth of the river for want of a pilot, 1701. would now have come up, but had the misfortune to run aground in the attempt. The next day it blew ſo hard, there was no going near her to ſave any of the goods, and the gale increaſing, ſhe opened ſo ſuddenly, that, in leſs than half an hour, ſhe had 7 foot water in the hold. It was as much as her hands could do to ſave themſelves with their cloaths, by the help of certain ropes, and a ſmall veſſel; but they could get out none of the cargo, which chiefly conſiſted of tobacco. She 1701. was one of the fineſt ſhips that Sept. 6. had ever been ſeen in theſe parts. She carried 300 laſts, and was bored for 40 guns, though they mounted but 18, and had but 30 men on board. She ſunk ſo much in a ſhort time, that the ſea waſhed over her. Her name was the *Reſolution*, and ſhe was commanded by Captain *Brains*. The *Hamburgher*, mentioned before, and who ran aground, upon the laſt of *Auguſt*, muſt it is likely have undergone the ſame fate, if they had not taken the opportunity of fair weather, to get out her lading, and ſet her afloat again; for the place where ſhe ſtruck, was ſtill more dangerous than where the *Engliſhman* was loſt. To conclude, having eſcaped theſe dangers, we got happily into our port, by the favor of the tide.

A great ſtorm.

CHAP. II.

A deſcription of the Samoëds. *Their manners, their habitations, and way of living.*

UPON the *eleventh* of this month I went up the river with my friend, to go to a country houſe he had, about 2 or 3 leagues from the city. In our way, we landed at a wood, where we ſaw ſome of the people called *Samoëds*, which in the *Ruſſian* tongue, ſignifies, *man-eaters*, or people that devour one another. They are almoſt all wild, and ſtretch along the ſea coaſt quite to *Siberia*. Thoſe, we now ſaw, were

to

TENTE DES SAMOJEDES EN DEDANS. 6

1701. to the number of 7 or 8 men, and as many women, and were divided into five different tents; and had by them 6 or 7 dogs tied to as many ſtakes, who made a furious noiſe at us as we drew towards them. We found them, both men and women, employed in making of oars, and bowls to throw water out of boats, as alſo little chains, and things of this kind, which they ſell in the city and among the ſhips. They have leave to take what wood they want, for theſe uſes, out of the foreſts. They are ſhort of ſtature, and particularly the women, who have very ſmall feet. They are of a ſallow complexion, diſagreeable to look at, having almoſt all of them long eyes, and bloated cheeks. They have their language peculiar to themſelves, though they alſo underſtand the *Ruſſian*; and are all clad alike in ſkins of the reindeer. They have an upper garment which hangs from the neck down to the knee, with the hair outermoſt, and of different colours for the women, who by way of ornament, add ſlips of red and blue cloth. Their hair, which is very black, hangs about their ears like that of the ſavages, and from time to time, they cut it by tufts at once. The women indeed do up a part of theirs, to which they hang ſmall round pieces of copper, by a fillet of red cloth, to give them ſomething of an air. They wear alſo a fur cap, white within, and black without. Some of them have their hair diſhevelled like the men, and then it is difficult to diſtinguiſh them from the men, who very ſeldom have any beard, except a little upon the upper lip, which may, perhaps, proceed from their ſtrange kind of diet. They wear alſo a kind of waiſtcoat and breeches of the ſame ſkin, with boots almoſt all white, in which the women differ from the men in nothing but liſts or ſlips of black upon theirs. The thread they uſe is made of the ſinews of beaſts. Inſtead of handkerchiefs or towels, they uſe very fine raſpings or ſaw-duſt of birch, which they are never without, to wipe them when they ſweat, or at meals, by 1701. way of a little cleanlineſs. Their tents are made of the bark of trees, ſewed together in long ſlips, which hang down to the ground, and keep out the weather. They are, however, open at top, to let out the ſmoke, and therefore black there, though they are every where elſe yellow or reddiſh, being kept up by poles, whoſe tops appear above the reſt of the tent. The way into theſe their habitations is about 4 foot high, and covered with a great patch of the ſame bark, which they muſt lift up to go in and out, and the fire burns in the middle of them. They feed upon the carcaſſes of oxen, ſheep, horſes and other carrion they find on the high roads, or that may be given them; or upon the guts and garbage of the ſame which they boil and eat without either bread or ſalt. While I was with them, I obſerved a great kettle upon the fire, full of theſe dainties, which none of them thought it worth the while to ſkim, tho' the pot never wanted it more. The tent alſo was full of raw horſe-fleſh, a horrid ſight! Having taken thorough notice of all theſe things, I drew the deſign you ſee, N° 4. While I was about it, they gathered 1701. round me, and looked upon me with an air of ſome underſtanding, and Sept. 11. as if they liked the thing. In one of theſe tents, I ſaw a child, about eight weeks old, lying in a cradle, or trough rather of yellow wood, not very unlike the lid of a box. This cradle had a half hoop at the head, and was hung by two ropes upon a pole. It was covered over with a grey cloth, tent faſhion, but open at top, and at the ſide, to take the child out and put it in. The child was wrapped up in cloths of the ſame colour, and bound about the breaſt with ropes or cords, as alſo about the middle and the feet; but its head was bare, as well as a part of the neck. As hideous as theſe people are in themſelves, this child was agreeable enough, and even pretty white. Not having time enough to make an end

1701. of my work, and ſome of the women and children being abroad in the woods, I thought it beſt to leave it undone, till I ſhould return; ſo that we proceeded on our way, and in a little time afterwards came to my friend's country houſe.

Extraordinary Turnips. While we were here, they brought us ſeveral ſorts of turnips, of various colours, and ſurpriſing beauty. Some of them were of purple, like our plums; grey, and white, and yellowiſh, traced with a red like our vermilion, or fineſt lake, and more pleaſant to the ſight than the carnation. I painted ſome of them in water-colours upon paper, and ſent ſome of them to *Holland*, in a box of dry ſand, to a friend, who was a lover of ſuch rarities. Thoſe I had painted, I brought with me to *Archangel*, where they could not believe they were copied from nature, till I produced ſome of the originals themſelves; a certain ſign they have there no curioſity in things of this kind. You have a repreſentation of them in number 5.

1701. Sept. 13. *Tents of the Samoëds.* Upon the *thirteenth* I returned to the *Samoëds*, and drew the inſide of one of their tents, which I opened on both ſides for that purpoſe. I had a friend with me, and three women by me, one of which I got to hold the cradle as I would have her, in the preſence of her huſband, as you may ſee in number 6.

Theſe tents are commonly full of ſkins of the rein-deer, which they uſe to ſit upon, and to ſleep upon. And this, together with their manner of dreſſing their victuals, which for the moſt part is nothing but carrion, cauſes an intolerable ſtench. My friend, who ſat by me, while I drew the child and the cradle, was ſo violently affected by it, that he bled at the noſe, and was obliged to go out, tho' we had taken care to prepare ourſelves with brandy and tobacco. Nor can it be at all ſurpriſing, for theſe people even in themſelves ſmell very ill, which I attribute partly to their food and to their naſtineſs.

Stench of theſe people.

I got, as ſoon as I could, out of ſo filthy a place, and deſired them to come to me to *Archangel*, with one of their handſomeſt women, and to let her be as fine as they could in their way, that I might draw her picture. They promiſed me they would, and were as good as their word. I painted her as you ſee her in N°. 7. They are dreſt in ſkins of the rein-deer, adorn'd with ſtreaks of white, grey, and black. This woman was dreſs'd out as a bride, and was very neat from head to foot, according to their faſhion. She kept her eyes continually fixed upon mine, and ſeemed ſo pleaſed with what I was doing, that another woman, who came with her, grew jealous at it, and was angry I would not likewiſe paint her picture: but the firſt had given me too much trouble for that, beſides, I intended to paint her huſband. His winter dreſs was what I thought moſt proper for me to draw, and I therefore deſired him to appear in that. His upper garment was one piece of ſkin, to which the cap he wore on his head was joined. He put it on and off like a ſhirt, ſo that nothing appeared of him but the face, his gloves being alſo of a-piece with the reſt of his habit: and indeed, he had looked more like a bear than a man, had it not been for the ſight of his face. His boots were faſtened below the knee: but this dreſs was ſo hot, as well as the ſtove of my room, that he was obliged to pull it off ſeveral times, and to go out and refreſh himſelf with a little air.

1701. *Repreſentation of a Samoëd woman.* *Neatneſs of her dreſs.* *Picture of a Samoëd man.* *His habit.*

He is repreſented, N°. 8. with a gut in his hand, to ſhew what they feed upon. You ſee ſeveral others by him, and the head of a horſe flead. This is, becauſe he had had that day given him a horſe that was dying, which he ſent home to the woods, with inexpreſſible joy; he there killed him, flead him, and ſent me his head to paint. But he was not very willing to favor me with this preſent; for theſe heads are in as high eſteem with them, as a calf's head is with us. This horſe was about thirty years old, and yet

CHANTIE

R HORS D' ARCHANGEL.

1701. was pretty fat; and the man talked of him with as much pleaſure, as we do of an ox in our parts. I at the ſame time painted one of his rein-deer, and at his feet I placed his bow and arrows, with the points out of the quiver, as the cuſtom is with them. They wear it upon their back, tied to them with a buckle and a ſtrap or thong, which comes over the left ſhoulder. On one ſide of him you ſee what the rein-deer feed upon, which is a white moſs; we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak of it hereafter. The head of the deer, in particular, I drew bigger than the reſt, the better to ſhew all the parts and features of it. 1701.

As I lodged in a ground room, I made the *Samoëd* come in to me with his ſledge, drawn by his rein-deer, and painted him in that view, to ſhew how thoſe creatures are harneſſed.

UN SAMOJEED.

1701. *Sledges of the* Samoëds.

These ſledges are commonly 8 foot long, and 3 foot 4 inches broad, and riſe up before after the manner of our ſkates. The driver ſits croſs-legg'd, and before him is a ſmall board rounded at top, and another, tho' a little higher, behind him. In his hand he holds a long rod, with a knob at the end of it, wherewith to quicken the pace of the deer. At the end of the ſledge are two round pieces which turn like a ſwivel, over which the harneſs is paſſed, from thence between the legs of the creature, and from thence to the neck, where it is faſtened to a collar. The rein, which he holds in his right hand, is tied to a ſtrap which goes about the head of the deer. But as I was deſirous to examine ſtill farther into the nature of this harneſs, and to make ſome farther obſervation upon the motion of theſe creatures, I got this *Samoëd* to prepare two ſledges with two rein-deer to each, and we went upon the ice and croſſed the river ſeveral times. I even got out of the ſledge to take an exacter notice of things, and to make a ſketch of what was before me; upon which I perceived my *Samoëd* had not rightly fitted the ſledge he drove into my room. You may ſee it repreſented in N°. 9.

Horſes fly from the rein-deer.

Upon the river I obſerved that the horſes fled from the ſight of the rein-deer, and the *Samoëds*, whether harneſſed to ſledges or not. The ſame may be obſerved in the city, and it may ſufficiently evince the fear theſe creatures have of this people.

The ſwiftneſs.

The rein-deer run with a ſwiftneſs ſurpaſſing that of horſes, regardleſs of the road, whether it be beaten or not, they go with an equal pace wherever they are directed by the driver, hurrying along with their noſe in the air, and their horns on their back. They never ſweat, but when they are tired, they loll out their tongue on one ſide, and when they are much heated, they pant like dogs.

Manner of taking them.

They have three ſorts of darts, to take them with. The firſt have but one point like common darts, the ſecond have two, and the third are very ſharp before, and ſomething like a wedge, and may be ſeen in the quiver in the plate. They call them *Streli*; the *Ruſſians* call them *Sterla*; a bow they call a *Loack*. When they go out to hunt the ſquirrel, they uſe another kind of dart, blunt at the end, like a pear which they form of wood, or bone, or horn, to kill them without hurting the ſkin or the fur which would lower the price of them. They hunt the rein-deer in the winter-ſeaſon, and for that purpoſe provide themſelves with a kind of wooden ſkates, about 8 foot long, and half a foot broad, which they faſten to the foot before and behind with a ſtrap. Thus ſhod they will ſkim over the ſnow and mount the hills at an incredible rate. Theſe ſkates are lined at bottom with the ſkin of the rein-deer, to prevent them from ſliding backwards, and to help them to ſtop as they go up the hills. In their hands they have a long ſtaff, with a ſmall kind of ſhovel at the end, with which they throw ſnow at them to drive them towards the place where they have prepared their toils for them, when they are too far off to hit them with their darts. At the other end of this ſame ſtaff they have a ſmall ring about four inches diameter, with cords croſſing each other, chequer faſhion, with which they ſtop themſelves from time to time, the point of the ſtaff which goes through this ring and a little beyond it, making its way into the ſnow, where the ring ſtops it. When they have driven their prey into the ſnares, where they are taken as it were in nets, they run and diſpatch ſuch as cannot free themſelves. They then diſpoſe of the ſkins either by the way of ſale, or reſerve them for their own uſe, as has been ſaid, and feed upon the fleſh. Nor do they reap leſs advantage by thoſe they breed up tame, ſelling a part of them, and keeping the reſt to draw their ſledges in the winter. When a wild male has coupled with a tame female, they kill the fawn, which in three or four days time would infallibly take

1701. *Darts of the* Samoëds.

The hunting of the rein-deer.

Skates.

1701. take to the deſarts. But ſuch as are tame, feed in the woods about the huts; and come when they are called, and are eaſily inſnared when they are wanted. Theſe creatures look out for their own food, which is a certain kind of white moſs in the moors. They know where to find it tho' ever ſo deep buried in ſnow, which they throw up with their feet till they have got at it. This is almoſt their only food, tho' they may alſo eat graſs and hay, when they have none of this moſs. They are not very different from our ſtags, but they are ſtronger, and have ſhorter legs, as may be obſerved in the plate. They are almoſt all of a whitiſh colour, tho' ſome of them there are that are grey, and have hoofs of black horn. They change their branches every ſpring, when they are covered with a kind of black ſoft ſkin, which goes off upon the approach of winter. They ſeldom live above eight or nine years. Beſides this kind of chaſe, they have another by water after ſeals, which abound in the white ſea, during the months of *March* and *April*, and are thought to come from *Nova Zembla* to breed. They ingender upon the ice, where the *Samoëds* lye in wait for them, dreſſed in a diſguiſe, which makes them look like nothing leſs than human creatures. They contrive in this manner. They go upon the ice which ſometimes ſtretches out half a league into the ſea, with a ſtaff armed with a harpoon, and with about 12 fathom of line faſtened to it. As ſoon as they perceive any of them, they glide along upon the belly, and get as near them as poſſible when they are in the act of ingendering, but ſtop the minute they find they are diſcovered. They then glide on to them again, and being within reach, they throw their harpoons at them, and the creature is no ſooner ſenſible of the wound, than he takes to the water. The *Samoëd* keeps his hold and draws the line, which is faſtened about his middle or to his girdle, till the ſeal is quite ſpent and falls into his hands. Sometimes unable to bear with the anguiſh of his wounds, irritated by the ſaltneſs of the water, he jumps out again upon the ice, and is there ſlain. His fleſh ſerves for food, and his ſkin cloaths the hunter, who ſells his oil. It alſo ſometimes happens that the ſeal being wounded and hurrying into the water, the man, unable to get rid of the line about his middle, is drawn in after him, and there comes to a miſerable end. They have much the ſame ſtratagem alſo for taking of the rein-deer, creeping along in the ſkin of that animal, in the midſt of ſuch of them as are tame, till they are near enough to dart them: but they muſt be mindful to keep to leeward of them; for this creature being indued with a very nice ſenſe of ſmelling, would in an inſtant diſcover them; and thus they attain their end, and get good prizes for themſelves into the bargain.

Food of the rein-deer.

Deſcription of the rein-deer.

Water chaſe.

Danger of this chaſe.

I was told all this by the *Samoëd* woman who came with her huſband when I drew her picture. She was the prettieſt and moſt agreeable of all I had ſeen of them; and I endeavored to be fair with her, to get whatever elſe I might deſire to know, out of her: and towards which, nothing proved ſo effectual, as a ſtock of brandy I had, which the women in this country fuddle with as freely as the men, and till they can ſtand no longer. This is what happened to the woman we are now ſpeaking of, and the ſight was ſo wonderfully pleaſing to her huſband, that he had like to have ſplit his ſides with laughing at it. After ſhe had got upon her feet again, ſhe began to cry moſt bitterly, it juſt then coming into her head that ſhe was childleſs, tho' ſhe had brought four into the world. This was interpreted to me by the miſtreſs of the houſe; reflections of this kind will ſometimes ariſe in the mind when the perſon is in liquor. Talking with her, one day, upon the ſubject of children, ſhe informed me of their manner of diſpoſing of them after death, in which there is ſomething very remarkable.

1701. markable. When a child at the breaſt, where they keep it for a year, happens to die without having taſted of meat, they wrap it up in a cloth and hang it to a tree in the woods.

Manners and cuſtoms of the Samoëds. As their manners and cuſtoms are widely different from what of the kind is to be found in other nations, I made it my buſineſs to inquire as much after them as poſſible. As ſoon as a child is born, they give it the name of the firſt creature that comes into their tent, whether man or beaſt; or of the firſt they meet with in going abroad: nay, it is no uncommon thing with them, to impoſe on it the name of whatever they happen to ſee firſt after the birth, whether river, tree, or ought elſe. Children that die after they are a year old, are put into the earth between planks or boards.

Their marriages. When they have a mind to marry, they look out for a woman they like, and bargain for her with her neareſt relations, juſt as we buy a horſe or an ox. They give for a wife two or three or four rein-deer, which are commonly reckoned at 15 or 20 *Florins* a-piece; a ſum equivalent to which is ſometimes paid, according as the agreement happens to be. Thus they take as many wives as they can maintain, tho' there are among them who are contented with one. When a wife no longer pleaſes them, they have nothing to do but to ſend her back again to her friends or relations that ſold her, and they are obliged to take her again, the huſband ſtanding to the loſs of the purchaſe he gave for her. I have been told there are other *Samoëds* that inhabit along the ſea coaſt and in *Siberia*, who marry in the ſame manner, and ſell their wives when they no longer like them. When their father dies or their mother, they keep their bones and never bury them; and I have been informed by eye-witneſſes, that they even drown them when they are very far advanced in years, and of no farther uſe. In ſhort, when a man is dead, they dreſs him juſt as when he was alive, put him into a pit, and cover him over with earth; and then, upon a 1701. tree, they hang up his bow, his quiver, his ax, his hatchet, his kettle, and whatever elſe was in uſe with him while he lived. In the ſame manner they bury their women.

Having thus informed myſelf as to their cuſtoms and manners, I wanted to know what might be their belief, and their religion. To this purpoſe, I went with my friends to a *Samoëd*, whom I regaled with ſome brandy, to put him into a good humour, for without that they are very mute, and care not to ſpeak. At that inſtant I called to mind, that in ſcripture it is ſaid, *The heathen without the knowledge of the law, did nevertheleſs by the light of nature fulfil the law*; and thence I concluded this people might poſſibly have ſome knowledge in this reſpect. Having *Belief of the* Samoëds. aſked him ſome queſtions upon this head, he told me, he believed with his countrymen There was a heaven and a God, whom they called *Heyha* or *Deity*; that they were perſuaded there was nothing greater or more mighty than God; that every thing depended on him; that *Adam*, the common father of all mankind, was created by God, or proceeded from him, but that his deſcendants neither went to heaven or to hell. That all who did well would be ſeated in a place above hell, and enjoy the happineſs of paradiſe, and feel no pain. They nevertheleſs worſhip their idols, adore the ſun and moon, and other planets, and even certain beaſts and birds, juſt as the whim takes them, or juſt as they expect to get any good by them. They have a ſort of a piece of iron before their idols, to which they hang a number of ſticks of the thickneſs of a knife-handle, the length of a finger, and ſharp at one end, whereby they intend to repreſent the head of a man, and by little holes to expreſs the eyes, the noſe, and the mouth. Theſe ſmall ſticks are wrapped in ſkin of the rein-deer, and thereto they hang the tooth of a bear, or wolf, or ſome ſuch thing.

1701. They have among them a perſon they call *Siaman*, or *Koediſnick*, which ſignifies a prieſt, or a magician, and they believe this man can foretel them the good and evil that is to happen to them; whether or no they ſhall be lucky in the chaſe; whether perſons ſick ſhall recover again, and much more of the kind. When they want him to tell them any thing, they ſend for him, and putting a rope about his neck, they pull it ſo hard that he falls down for dead. At the end of ſome time he begins to move, and comes by degrees to himſelf again. When he is going to foretel any thing, the blood ſtarts out of his cheeks, and ſtops when he has done; when he begins again, it runs afreſh; and this I was aſſured by perſons who had oftentimes been eye-witneſſes of it. Under their garments theſe magicians wear plates of iron, and rings of the ſame, which make a frightful noiſe when they come in: But thoſe who live in theſe parts have no ſuch thing; they only wear a net of cat-gut or ought elſe, to which they faſten the teeth of all ſorts of creatures. When one of theſe *Koediſnicks* happens to die, they raiſe him a monument of timber, cloſe on all ſides, to keep out the wild beaſts. Then they lay him out thereon, dreſſed in his beſt array, and place his bow, his quiver, and his hatchet by him. To this monument they tie a rein-deer or two, if the deceaſed had been poſſeſſed of any in his life-time, and there they leave them to ſtarve, if they cannot get looſe and make their eſcape. All this, which I had from people who live in thoſe parts, was confirmed to me by a *Ruſſian* merchant, called *Michael Oſtaliof*, whom I invited for that purpoſe, knowing he had croſſed *Siberia*, both winter and ſummer, in his way to *China*, and that he had travelled that way for fourteen years together. He was a man about ſixty years old, ſound of mind and body, and told me theſe *Samoëds* ſpread along on all ſides to the great rivers of *Siberia*, ſuch as the *Oby*, the *Jeniſeia*, the *Lena*, and the *Amur*, which fall into the great ocean. The laſt of them is a limit to divide the dominions of *Muſcovy* from thoſe of *China*, and therefore theſe people never croſs it. Between the rivers of *Lena* and *Amur* are the *Jakoetes*, who are *Tartars*, and the *Lamoetkie*, who feed upon rein-deer like the *Samoëds*; they are to the number of 30,000, or thereabouts, bold and warlike. Towards the ſea-coaſt there is another nation they call *Jaecogerie* or *Joegra*. Theſe are in all reſpects like the *Samoëds*, dreſs after the ſame manner, and live in deſarts. Like dogs they devour the guts and garbage of all ſorts of creatures quite raw; and all theſe people ſpeak different languages. There is alſo a fourth kind of them called *Korakie*, from the country they inhabit, and who live after the manner of the *Samoëds*. To theſe alſo may be added a fifth, called *Soegtſie*, who ſlit their cheeks, and put in bones of the narwhale to help the ſcar which they eſteem an ornament. Among theſe, the men waſh themſelves with the urine of the women, and the women with that of the men. They paſs for very wicked wretches, and are reported to be deep in magic: And indeed they boaſt of it, and always carry about with them the bones of their Fathers for ſuch uſes. But what is ſtill more extraordinary, they worſhip the Devil, and proſtitute their wives and daughters to the ſtrangers that happen to be among them; a civility they deem to be abſolutely due to ſtrangers. How wide is the difference between the manners of theſe nations and thoſe of the *Europeans!* The *Ruſſian* who informed me of all theſe things, told me farther, that after a five or ſix weeks journey, beyond where theſe people inhabit, he met with a ſixth ſort towards the ſea-coaſt, and that they were called *Laſatie Soegtſie*, or *Couchant Soegtſie*, from their lying or ſitting in their tents during all the winter ſeaſon. They are made of the ſkin of the narwhale, and are covered with ſnow

Prieſt or magician of the Samoëds.

Jakoetes.

Other ſavages.

An odd kind of civility.

1701. for five months in the year. They provide quantities of the whale, which they dry, and never go out till ſpring. They ſay, that ſome years ago, the *Samoëds* of theſe parts had got a trick of wounding the cattle of the *Muſcovites* between the ſmall ribs, or in the ear, with a very fine iron, upon which the poor creatures languiſhed for a time and then died, to the great joy of theſe people who had them to eat. But being diſcovered, many of them were ſeized, who were hung up, ſome by the legs, and others by the middle, as an example to the reſt. Notwithſtanding the terror this muſt have given them, they began again laſt winter, and ſome of them were locked up for it; but they made their eſcape, leaving behind them only a little child, which the Governor of the province took care of, and had it baptized into the *Ruſſian* church.

A new iſland. While I ſtaid here, I was alſo informed, that about ſeven years ago they had diſcovered an iſland to the left of *China*, and that it had been brought under the *Czar*'s ſubjection, tho' it required at leaſt a year to travel between that and *Moſcow*. That it abounded with ſables and other furs; that it was not as yet known but it might alſo afford other commodities of value, and that the inhabitants were juſt like thoſe we have been talking of. 1701.

Upon the *eighteenth* of *September*, we had a violent ſtorm which blew off the roofs of ſeveral houſes. I was then at dinner with the Sieur *Houtman*, little dreaming of what was to come to paſs; but going out of the houſe, there fell ſeveral timbers and planks cloſe by me, and made me hurry into the houſe again. As thoſe in the houſe had been ſenſible of nothing of the kind, they were ſurprized at what I told them, and ſomebody going up to the garret, found moſt of the roof demoliſhed, and we returned our thanks to God for my preſervation. Sept. 18. *A great ſtorm.*

Upon the *twenty-fifth*, about noon, there arrived 500 dragoons from *Moſcow*, in four barks. It was upon a *Sunday*, and every body ran to the water ſide; and as every one had his beſt cloaths on, it was a ſight agreeable enough. *Arrival of ſome* Ruſſian *dragoons.*

Our laſt ſhips departed on the *fourteenth* of *October* for *Holland*, and got happily to ſea, except the *White Eagle*, who ran aſhore by the meadows. They were obliged to take out half her loading to get her afloat again; and even that would not have ſaved her, if the weather had been leſs fair than it was. Upon the *nineteenth* ſhe got out to ſea with the reſt. *Departure of the ſhips for* Holland.

CHAP. III.

A Deſcription of Archangel. *Abundance of Proviſions. Revenue of the Cuſtoms*, &c.

1701. *The Czar's dock-yard.* ABOUT a mile and a half to the weſtward of *Archangel*, the Czar has a fine and pleaſant yard, by itſelf, for building of ſhips. All ſhipping that go and come paſs by it. There were ſeveral at anchor, waiting for others to make up a fleet homeward bound, when I drew the 1701. 19 Oct. proſpect in N° 10. This dock-yard is diſtinguiſhed by the letter A. At a point of land in the river, you may obſerve a ſhip with her decks unlaid. The village hard by, at the letter B, is called *Strambol.*

The city of *Archangel* is in the north-weſtern parts of *Muſcovy*, and lies to the north-eaſtward of the *Dwina*, which falls into the ſea about ſix leagues lower. It lies along the banks of the river, and may be upwards Archangel.

1701. wards of two miles long, and about three quarters of a mile in breadth. *The Palace.* Its chief building is the palace, which is of free-ſtone, and divided into three parts. The foreign merchants have their goods and ſome apartments in the firſt, which is to the left as you come up from the river: And here alſo are lodged the merchants that come annually from *Muſcow*, and ſtay till the laſt ſhips return home. Strangers that come annually, are accommodated here, and in like manner; but ſoon after the ſhips are gone, which is generally in *October*, they remove to other places till they go back to *Moſcow*, in the months of *November* and *December*, when the ways are proper for a ſledge to move upon the ſnow; and the ice ſo ſtrong that the rivers may be croſſed.

As you go into the palace, you go under a great gate, which admits you into a ſquare court, where are the warehouſes to the right and to the left. Above, there is a long gallery, to which you may go up by two ſtair-caſes, and from whence you go to the lodgings of the merchants we mentioned juſt now. The ſecond part of this palace has a gate like the firſt, and there you have another building: At the end of which is the town-houſe, with ſeveral apartments in it. You go up ſome ſteps, and then you come into a long gallery, from whence on the left-hand you go into the place where *Court of Juſtice.* they keep their courts; above which there is a door that goes into the ſtreet. The ſentences are all executed in this palace, except in caſes of condemnation to death, which are exhibited in the places appointed by the ſentence. The things belonging to his *Czarian* Majeſty are kept in this palace, in magazines of wood and ſtone, erected for the purpoſe, though they are ſometimes uſed by the merchants. When you have paſſed the third gate, you ſee another body of building, for what belongs to the *Ruſſians*, and where alſo the merchants of that nation have their abode; but they are not ſo commodiouſly provided for as the merchants that are foreigners. The ſpace or ſquare before this palace is pretty large, and goes down quite to the river. When ſhips come here in ſummer, they raiſe two great timber bridges, that jet out into the river, for the convenience of loading and unloading. The bridges they have for corn are pretty large. 1701.

The citadel, where the governor takes up his reſidence, is full of ſhops, where the *Ruſſians*, who come at the time of the fair, expoſe their merchandiſe. It is ſurrounded with a wall of wood, which ſtretches down to the river. *The Citadel.*

All the houſes of this city are of wood, or to ſpeak plainer, are built of vaſt pieces of timber join'd together, and look odd enough from without; and yet in ſome of the principal houſes you may meet with fine apartments, and particularly among the foreign merchants. The walls of them are even and ſmooth within, and wainſcotted with boards; the timbers being only, or chiefly, for ſupport. There is commonly a ſtove to each room, which they light from without; moſt of them are very large, and ſo contrived as to be ornamental. The *Merchants from beyond ſea*, for ſo they call the chriſtian ſtrangers that live among them, are as nice in their houſes as the niceſt among ourſelves; their apartments are full of pictures, and finely furniſhed. *Buildings.* *Stoves.*

The ſtreets are covered with broken timbers, and ſo dangerous to croſs, that a man continually runs the hazard of falling and doing himſelf a miſchief; beſides, that they are full of the rubbiſh of houſes, which, in many places, looks like the ruins of a fire: but the ſnow that falls in winter covers and makes all ſmooth and even. *Their ſtreets.*

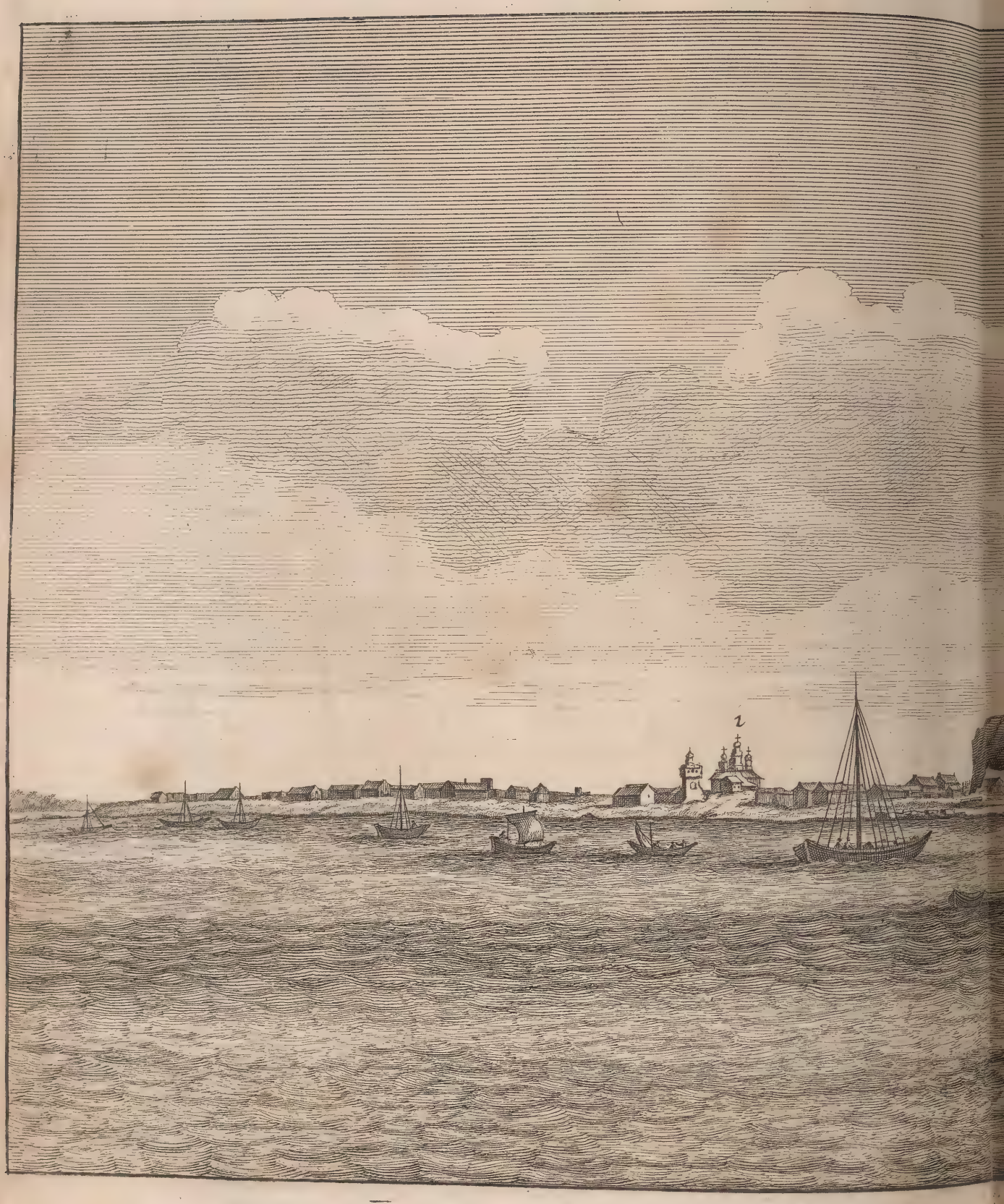
There are two churches in this city, the one for the Calviniſts, and the other for the Lutherans, where they preach twice every *Sunday*. They are not far from each other, by the river-ſide. The miniſter lives on one ſide of the church, and the church-yard, *The churches.*

1701 yard, where they bury after our manner, is between both. They have no ſervice in the churches during winter, it is ſo cold; but they meet in a room of the miniſter's houſe which is well heated for the purpoſe.

Proſpect of the city. I took a view of this city on the river from on board one of our ſhips at anchor: you have it in N° 11, where every particular is diſtinguiſhed by a numeral figure, or at leaſt what is to be ſeen; as (1) *Oeſpinge Bogeroediſza*, or the church of the repoſe of the *Virgin Mary*. (2) The *Lutheran* Church. (3) The church of the *Calviniſts*. (4) The palace of *Germany*. (5) The court of juſtice and arſenal of the great Duke. (6) The *Ruſſian* palace. (7) The houſe of the *Gooſt* or great cuſtomer, upon the river. (8) The great church. (9) The citadel. The Governor had formerly an abſolute power over this city, but the form of its government was changed laſt year, and four Burgomaſters were appointed; the firſt of which lives in the city, the ſecond at *Kolmegra*, and the two others in the neighbouring places: ſo that the authority of the governor is confined to the militia, the Burgomaſters being at the head of the civil affairs, and the police. Every year, about the time the merchants arrive, there comes a great cuſtomer, or maſter of the cuſtoms, to watch over the duties belonging to his *Czarian* Majeſty, and to buy what the court has occaſion for. This great officer has four aſſiſtants or deputies who act in his abſence, and are intitled *Goſtieni-Sotni*, or Sub-Delegates; from among which he himſelf is choſen. Beſides theſe, there are others taken from among the people, a number not limited, who are employed in the towns and villages. Theſe people are obliged to ſerve, for a year, without pay or reward, and to obey all orders from the chiefs of the cuſtoms and their deputies; with regard had to the duties and revenues ariſing to the great Duke. They are ſent every where, and, in caſe of need, have ſoldiers allowed them to prevent frauds and ſeize ſmuglers. When they have ſerved their year out, others are ſent in their ſtead. 1701.

Plenty of proviſion. All the neceſſaries of life abound in this city: plenty of fowl very cheap; a partridge is not worth above two-pence. There are two ſorts of them, the firſt of which light upon trees, and look like owls, but are perfectly good: the others are white in winter, an extraordinary thing, and, in the language of the country, are called *Koeroptie*. There are alſo here two ſorts of *Tetters*, birds as big as our turkeys, and of a fine feather: the cocks are commonly black, with a mixture of a very deep blue; the hens are ſmaller, and ſpeckled with grey. Hares are to the full as plenty, and ſell but for a groat a-piece; they are white in winter, and the rabbits are black. Woodcocks are there worth two-pence or three-pence a-piece. You have there alſo plenty of ducks, and, among the reſt, a ſort called *Gagares*, who are very ſwift of flight, and mount vaſtly aloft. While they are on the wing, they make a noiſe not very unlike the human voice. They ſwim with as much rapidity as they fly, but they cannot run, becauſe their feet come out from behind.

Rivers abound with fiſh. The rivers abound with fiſh; you may here have as many perch as would ſerve twenty people for twenty-pence. The beſt are the *Karoetſe*; they are the ſmalleſt, but of ſuch a flavour, as, I believe, is unknown in our country; and therefore I preſerved ſome of them in ſpirits. In ſhape they are very nearly like a roach, brown, with bright and ſhining ſcales. The pike is alſo very common here, as well as a delicious kind of ſmall eels. Plenty alſo here is of ſmelts, gudgeons, roach, whitings, flounders, and a brown fiſh, they call *Garius*, of a moſt exquiſite taſte, and nearly the ſize of a melvel or ſmall codd. All theſe fiſh are taken about twelve miles from the city, in a certain gulf or bay, formed by the river, and where the water is ſtill. It were needleſs to talk of the ſalmon, which every body knows is from hence ſent, ſalted



2
3
4
5
6
8
9

1701. and ſmoaked, to all parts. There is alſo a white ſort of them, the *Muſcovites* call *Meelma*, and are taken upon the coaſts of *Lapland*, which are dried before they are ſent abroad. I ſaw one not very unlike a ray, and about two foot over behind, which they call *Paſciskaet:* they find two mice in him, called *Miski*, and a medicinal oil. 1701.

Meat. Meat alſo abounds in the market; you there buy the beſt beef in the world for a penny a pound; a lamb, of about ſix weeks, for fifteen-pence; a calf of the ſame age for thirty or forty-pence, according to the ſeaſon. Every body here breeds turkies. You may have four or five fowls, or a gooſe, for ſeven or eight-pence. Their beer is very good, but muſt be neither ſold nor brewed without a grant from the great Duke, which is allowed for a certain yearly ſum: but an inhabitant may brew as much as he wants for his family upon paying the value of fifty pence for a certain number of quarters of malt. There are even thoſe who are free from this exciſe.

Wine and brandy. Wine and brandy are brought hither by ſea from *France*; but the laſt is very dear becauſe of the heavy duty upon it. However they extract a kind of malt ſpirit, which is very good, and ſold reaſonably enough. Strangers drink no other.

Revenue of the cuſtoms. The Czar has, every year, a conſiderable revenue levied upon this city. It was formerly ſaid the duties amounted to 300,000 rubles; but upon an exact inquiry I found they did not, in my time, reach beyond 180, or 190,000, of the ſame rubles, each being about equivalent to 5 florins of *Dutch* money. There uſually arrived thirty or thirty five of our ſhips in a year; but in this laſt there came fifty, beſides thirty three *Engliſh*; to which, if we add the ſhips from *Hamburg*, *Denmark*, and *Bremen*, the whole will amount to one hundred and three ſail: the reaſon of which was the war with *Sweden*, which put a ſtop to the trade the *Muſcovites* carried on with *Riga*, *Nerva*, *Revel*, and even *Konnigsberg* and *Dantzick*; ſo that the whole trade of *Ruſſia* is now centered in *Archangel*. They compute alſo that his *Czarian* Majeſty has, this year, received, upon the goods from the arrival of the firſt ſhip, in this port, to the laſt, the ſum of 130,000 rubles, or 260,000 rixdollars. It is an agreement that half theſe duties be paid in rubles, the other half in golden ducats; and if payment was offered to be made all in ducats, they would not receive it, tho' they never refuſe rix-dollars. This is to be underſtood of foreign goods, the chief of which are gold and ſilver ſtuffs, and ſilks, cloths, ſerges, gold and ſilver laces, *&c.* gold wyre, indigo, and other materials for dying. But to return to the cuſtoms, levied upon foreign merchandiſe, it is to be obſerved, that from the year 1667, to 1699, they paid the ſum of twenty rix-dollars on every caſk of wine, whereas for three years paſt they have paid but five. They nevertheleſs pay thirty ſix rix-dollars on every barrel of brandy, and forty on a pipe of *Spaniſh* wine containing two barrels.

From *Moſcovy*, into other parts, they export pot-aſhes, and weed-aſhes for ſoap, leather, hemp, tallow, elks, other ſkins, and furs; all goods of the natural growth of the country. They ſay alſo, that the rivers of *Kola*, *Warſigha*, *Wuſma*, and *Solia*, produce muſcles that yield a very good ſort of pearl. They are ſometimes worth twenty five florins a-piece, and even twice that money in the neighbourhood of *Ombacy*.

This is all I was able to inform myſelf during the time I ſtaid here; what hours I had to ſpare, I dedicated to the converſation of the Sieurs *Brants* and *Lup*, who made it their buſineſs to oblige me. They there divert themſelves with gaming, dancing, drinking and eating, and even till it is pretty late in the night. Mr. *Brants* contributed no ſmall ſhare to theſe diverſions, being a great lover of muſic, and an excellent performer upon the harpſichord.

CHAP. IV.

The Author goes from Archangel. *How the* Ruſſians *travel in Winter. Deſcription of* Wologda *and of the Monaſtery of* Trooyts. *His Arrival at* Moſcow.

1701. 21 Dec. *Departure from* Archangel.

I LEFT *Archangel* upon the *twenty firſt* of *December*, about *three* in the afternoon, in company with Mr. *Kinſius*, who had two ſoldiers with him, and a *Podwoden*, or an order for horſes upon the road *gratis*, though the people however get ſome money upon the occaſion. He had ſix ſledges, to which I added mine, having diſpoſed of my baggage among that of Mr. *Brants*. When you reſolve upon this journey, you muſt provide your ſelf with ſledges at *Archangel*, for you can meet with no Horſes upon the road. The ſledges are ſo contrived that a perſon may lie along in them very conveniently: you muſt have your own bed, and good things to cover you up warm from the cold, which is exceſſive in this country. The hinder part of the ſledge they cover with matts, and the reſt they line either with cloth or leather. Then over-head you have a ſkin lin'd with cloth or leather, to keep off the rain and ſnow. They travel day and night, each ſledge with two horſes, which they change every fifteen werſts, five of which make a *German* league. The *Ruſſians* cry out *werſta*, at the end of every werſt, which at preſent contains about a hundred fathom, each fathom three *arſiennes*, or *Dutch* ells. You go out of the ſledge but once a day to refreſh your ſelf. Having paſſed through ſeveral villages, we, upon the *twenty ſecond*, about three in the afternoon, came to *Kolmogora*, about fifty werſts from *Archangel*.

Manner of travelling.

Kolmogora.

1701. Dec. 22.

This city is pretty large, and to the ſouthweſt of the *Dwina*, one of the chief rivers of *Ruſſia*. It riſes in the ſouthern parts of the province of *Wologda*, and after a long courſe, being increaſed by other rivers in its way, it, by two mouths, diſcharges itſelf into the *White-Sea*, a little below *Archangel*. Mr. *Kinſius* being acquainted with the *Vladika*, or Archbiſhop of this city, we went to pay him a viſit. He received us very kindly, and treated us with cinnamon-water, red wine, and an excellent beer, the common drink of the country. He gave us alſo ſome *Egyptian* dates, and ſeveral other refreſhments. He was a man of fifty years of age, and his name was *Affonaſſi*. He reſided in his own palace, which is pretty large, and joins to the monaſtery. Having paſſed two very agreeable hours with this prelate, a man of good ſenſe, and a lover of polite learning, he carried us to ſee an armory he had below; in which, among others, were two ſmall braſs guns of his own caſting, and two iron pieces taken out of the *Swediſh* veſſels we formerly ſpoke of. When we took leave of him, he ordered five of his clergy to attend us to our inn; one of them carrying five loaves, and the others dried fiſh and other refreſhments. About ten at night we went away with freſh horſes, which we had ſome trouble to procure, becauſe a number of travellers, provided with *Podwodens* as well as we, had lately paſſed by, and taken up almoſt all the horſes in the town.

1701.

Civility of the Archbiſhop of Kolmogora.

Upon the *twenty third* we had fine weather, and paſſed through ſeveral woods full of fir, of two ſorts; the branches of the one ſhooting out at the ſides of the trunk, and of the other only from the head. There were alſo alders and birch-trees. From hence we went on to ſeveral villages, and at length to *Saske*, the laſt in the juriſdiction of *Archangel*.

From

1701. From thence, upon the *twenty fourth* we got to *Brieſnick*, in the country of *Waeg*, where we took freſh horſes, and were ſeveral times to croſs the river of that name. Upon the *twenty fifth* we arrived at *Schenkerske*, the capital of the country of *Waeg*, upon the ſame river. Upon the *twenty ſixth* we went through a great village, called *Virghowaesje*, where, once a week, they have a great market. Upon the *twenty ſeventh* to *Soloti*. Upon the *twenty eighth*, having paſſed through ſeveral villages, we croſſed the great foreſt of *Komenaf*, full twenty werſts in breadth, and came to *Dwienitſe*, upon the river of the ſame name, where we were told that three *Ruſſian* merchants, from *Archangel*, had not long before been plundered by twenty ſix robbers on the highway; that one of theſe robbers had taken away a ſilver croſs from the chief of theſe merchants, a man I knew, though his companions had done all they could to prevent him; the croſs here being uſually worn on the breaſt, and held in great veneration: that even this raſcal wore a croſs himſelf, which he took from his own neck and put about the merchant's, ſaying, *There, now we have changed croſſes we are brethren.* This piece of news gave us a good deal of uneaſineſs; but having weighed the matter, we reſolved to puſh on, and not wait for the merchants that might come from *Archangel*, and got ready our arms to defend us in caſe of need. Upon the *twenty ninth* we got to *Rabanga*, upon the river *Soegue*, and from thence reached *Wologda* about three in the afternoon. This city makes a good figure on this ſide. We got out at the houſe of the Sieur *Wouter Ewouts de Jongh*, a *Dutch* merchant, I was acquainted with at *Archangel*, who received us with great civility. The next day I walked about the town, and ſaw the great church called *Saboor*: it is a fine building, by the *Italian* architect who worked at the caſtle of *Moſcow*. This church has five domes, which the *Ruſſians* call *Glaſſa*, or *Heads of Churches*; they are covered with plate-tin, and have large croſſes. In this city alſo there are twenty other churches of ſtone, moſt of which have alſo domes covered with tin, and ſurmounted by guilt croſſes, and have a fine effect when the ſun ſhines upon them; beſides forty three other churches of wood, three convents of monks, and one cloiſter of nuns, whoſe chief ornament is a church of ſtone, built in the midſt, and encompaſſed with wooden cells for the nuns, in a private place, which you go into by a ſmall door. Having taken a ſufficient view of theſe buildings, I went to ſee the markets: they are full of ſhops, and I took notice that each article has a ſeparate place for the ſale of it; as meat in one place, wood in another, and ſo on. From thence I went through the gate of a great building which has never been compleated, and was begun by the Czar *Ivan Vaſſialiewitz*, who deſigned it for a citadel; but the fear they were then under of the *Tartars*, who had made this Prince retire from *Moſcow*, was the cauſe it was never finiſhed. I then went to walk on the ſide of the river *Wologda*, which runs thro' this city. The other ſide which is not ſo fine, is called *Dofreſene*, which, though it be part of one and the ſame city, has nevertheleſs another governor. It is a good league in length, and a quarter of a league in breadth, more or leſs, in ſome places. It is the thoroughfare for all the goods that come from *Archangel*; and there are, at this time, three or four warehouſes for the goods belonging to our nation. This city is in 59 degrees, 15 minutes, of northern latitude, on the eaſt of the river, which is pretty broad.

Schenkerſke.

Wologda.

The church.

1701. Dec. 29.

Markets.

Upon the *thirteenth*, at ten at night, we ſet out from hence, and about ſix the next morning we reached *Greelnewits*, having travelled forty werſts. We there baited our horſes, and need they had of it, for we had ſtill twenty werſts to go. That day we met with fifty ſledges, ſome of which had left *Archangel* before we did, and ſome after. But we did not all travel the ſame way; there

1701. Dec. 30.

1701. were but twenty of them that look-
ed towards *Moſcow*, and at noon we arrived at *Obſnorkoy-jam*, whither we had diſpatched a ſoldier before us, to get us freſh horſes. Sixty ſeven werſts from thence we came
Daniſlofskoy. to *Daniſlofskoy*, a fine and large burgh, where there is trade, and a fine ſtud of horſes, above two thouſand of which belonged to the Czar.

1702. Jan. 1. The *firſt* day of the year 1702, we came to *Jereſlaw*, one of the chief cities of *Ruſſia*; the *Wolga* runs
Jereſlaw, *the* Wolga *and* Kotris. not far off, and is there very broad; we croſſed it, and then the *Kotris*; not far from whence to the ſouthward, it falls into the *Wolga*. There is a great number of ſtone churches in this city, which I ſhall have enough to ſay of hereafter, having, at my return, taken views of them all. When we had croſſed the *Kotris*, we went into a ſuburb called *Troepenoe*, where we changed horſes. We left that place at ten at night,
Roſtof. and upon the *ſecond* we came to *Roſtof*, which we only traverſed. The Archbiſhop has his reſidence in this city, full of ſtone churches, which are a great ornament to it. It is ſeated, to the right of the lake of the ſame name. When we had croſſed this lake, we diſcerned a great number of ſmall villages, moſt of whoſe inhabitants live upon garlic and onions. The monaſtery of *Peu-*
1702. Jan. 3. *ter Zarowitz*, which is ſurrounded with ſome houſes, is but half a league off. At one in the afternoon we came to *Waske*, having travelled thirty eight werſts: we there dined, and at the end of twenty werſts more
Pereſlaw Soleskoy. we came to *Pereſlaw Soleskoy*, capital of the province of that name; it is but a poor ſort of a city, and ſtands upon a lake. It was nine of the clock when we came thither, and we left it at midnight. Upon the *third*, about ſix in the morning, we went thro' *Tierie berewa*. From
Trooytz. thence to *Trooytz* you muſt continually go up and down ſmall hills, for the ſpace of thirty werſts. Reaching this laſt place, about one in the
Its fine monaſtery. afternoon, we went to ſee the famous monaſtery of the name, which we had paſſed by as we came in 1702. with the village. It is ſurrounded with a fine and high wall of ſtone, which is the material throughout the whole fabric. At the corners of this wall, which is ſquare, are fine noble and large round towers; between which there are others that are ſquare. Two of theſe laſt you have upon the front, they are the fineſt, and the road goes by them. This monaſtery, which has three gates in front, is a good quarter of a league from the village which lies to the right-hand of it, as you go to *Moſcow:* that in the middle, which I choſe to go in by, had two arcades, under which there was a little *corps de garde*, where there were ſoldiers, as well as to that without. When you are through this gate, you ſee the principal church ſtanding in the middle, and ſeparate from the reſt of the buildings. His Czarian Majeſty's apartment, very ſumptuous and royal without, is on the right-hand; and the front being very extenſive, you go up to it by two flights of ſteps: it is ſeveral ſtories high; but the inſide does by no means correſpond with the out. The refectory, another great edifice, is oppoſite to this and like it. All the windows are adorned with little pillars, and the ſtones are painted of ſeveral colours. The church we juſt now mentioned is between theſe two. There are four others conſiderable, and five ſmaller. From without, this monaſtery has the look of a fortreſs; and the archimandrite or abbot, is the chief in authority. Here are commonly two or three hundred monks, and ſome of them attended us every where with a good deal of civility. This monaſtery is rich in endowments, levying its revenues upon 60,000 peaſants that depend thereon; not to ſpeak of the great perſonages here intombed, nor the maſſes that are here celebrated, and the like from whence much profit muſt ariſe.

This village is pretty long, and on the right-hand ſide is full of farriers ſhops, with poſts to ſhoe horſes at. Thirty werſts from hence, we

came

1702. came to the village of *Brato Fiena*, where we were obliged to ſtay till midnight, to have our baggage ſearched, which is here to be ſealed, and not opened again till in the cuſtom-houſe at *Moſcow*, where we arrived upon the *fourth*, at *eight* in the morning, and alighted at the ſlabode, or privileged quarter of the *Germans*, where moſt of the ſtrangers take up their abode; though there are thoſe of them that live in the city. I went directly to Mr. *Jurtſen*'s, to whom I had been recommended by Mr. *Brants*, who lived in the ſame place, and was but juſt arrived from *Archangel*. The Czar paid him a viſit the next day, attended by ſeveral Lords of his court in ſledges, of which his Majeſty's made the leaſt ſhow. This viſit laſted for two hours; and this was the firſt time I had the honour of ſeeing this mighty Monarch. 1702.

Arrival at Moſcow.

CHAP. V.

The Author is admitted to the Preſence of his Czarian Majeſty. Conſecration of the Water and Fire-work at Moſcow.

1702. EVER ſince the year 1649, it has been a cuſtom with the Czars of *Muſcovy* to viſit the chief of their own ſubjects, or of the foreigners, whether in the city of *Moſcow* it ſelf, or in the ſlabode of the *Germans*, a little before *Twelfth-day*. On this occaſion the perſon honoured gives a treat, and this they call ſlaweien. They go attended with the Princes, Lords, and other great perſonages of their court. This ceremony began the year 1702, upon the *third* of *January* old ſtile. The firſt viſit was to Mr. *Brandts*, where about nine in the morning the Czar came, and about three hundred perſons in ſledges and on horſe-back. The tables were covered in very good order, and ſerved immediately with ſeveral dainties of cold meats, and afterwards hot. They were very merry, and there was no want of liquor. His Majeſty withdrew about two in the afternoon, and went thence with his whole court to Mr. *Lups*, where he was treated in the ſame manner, and from thence to ſeveral other places. Then they went to reſt themſelves in houſes prepared for that purpoſe. The next day, among others, he paid a viſit to our Reſident Mr. *Hulſt*. This Miniſter made mention of me to the Czar, upon the recommendation of Mr. *Witſen*, Burgo-maſter, and Counſellor of the city of *Amſterdam*, and did me the honour to invite me; and ordered that I ſhould be placed in a room, through which the Czar was to paſs. As luck would have it the Knez or Prince of *Troebetskooy* came into this place, and having no knowledge of me, and perceiving me to be a ſtranger, he aſked me, in *Italian*, if I underſtood that language; I told him I did, with which he ſeemed to be much pleaſed, and had a pretty long diſcourſe with me concerning *Italy*, and other countries where he had been as well as I. Hereupon he went to give his Majeſty an account of what had paſſed, and he had the curioſity to come with all his train, to the place where I was; but not expecting him ſo ſoon, I was a little in confuſion, though upon a recovery of myſelf, I made my addreſs to him with a moſt profound reſpect. He ſeemed ſurprized at it, and aſked me in *Dutch*, *Hoe weet gy wie ik ben? en hoe Romt gy my te kennen?* "How is "it you know who I am? and how "comes it you know me?" I anſwered I had ſeen his picture at Sir

Jan. 5. *Viſits of the Czars.*

The Author ſpeaks to the Czar.

1702. *Godfrey Kneller's* in *London*, and that it made too deep an impreſſion upon my mind to be defaced. As he did not ſeem quite to approve of this anſwer, I added, that I had beſides, had the honour to ſee him come out of his court, when he went to Mr. *Brandts*, which ſeemed to pleaſe him better. He aſked me of what town I was; who were my parents; if they were ſtill alive; and if I had brothers and ſiſters. Having returned the proper anſwers, he aſked me ſome queſtions about my firſt travels, what year I ſet out, how long I was about them, in what manner I travelled, and how I returned again. He then talked to me about *Egypt*, the *Nile*, and *Grand Cairo*; of its extent and buildings, of the ſtate and condition of what belonged to the *Old Cairo*, of *Alexandria*, and ſeveral other places, adding he was ſenſible there was another place called *Alexandretta*. I told him, this laſt place was the ſea-port for *Aleppo*, and acquainted him with the diſtance between them. All this the Czar aſked me in *Dutch*, and would have me continue to ſpeak in that language, ſaying he underſtood me very well. And it appeared that he did ſo; for he explained all I had ſaid to the *Ruſſian* Lords that attended him, with a nicety which ſurprized the Reſident and the reſt of the *Dutch*. He then ordered me to ſpeak *Italian*, to the Knez or Prince *Troebetskooy*, who underſtood it pretty well, and then he left me. After he had been three good hours with Monſieur the Reſident, he went to make ſome other viſits in the ſlabode, becauſe it was the laſt day; the feſtival of the conſecration of the water, being to be celebrated the next day, and the *Monday* being the 6th of *January*, old ſtile. That day the ſon of General *Bories Petrowitz Czeremetof* arrived, and while his Czarian Majeſty was at church, brought him the agreeable news of the defeat of the *Swedes* by the *Moſcovites* in *Livonia*, 5 or 6 leagues from the town of *Deript*. He informed him the *Swedes* had, in this battle, loſt 4000 men, that they had taken ſome hundreds of priſoners, and that among them were ſeveral officers. This Nobleman, who was in the action, and had been diſpatched by his father with theſe glad tidings, acquitted himſelf ſo handſomly, that he inſpired an univerſal joy. The feſtival I juſt now mention, is in remembrance of the manifeſtation of Jeſus Chriſt, and I was an eye-witneſs of it. 1702.

Feſtival of the Conſecration of the Water.

In the river of *Jouſa*, and not far from the caſtle they made a ſquare hole in the ice which was 13 foot from corner to corner, or 52 feet in circumference. This hole was incloſed by a curious piece of wooden-work, having at each angle of it a pillar, which ſupported a kind of corniſh, whereon were four pannels painted in the form of arches, and at each corner a repreſentation of one of the evangeliſts, and above all two kind of half domes, upon the middle of which was a large croſs. Theſe pannels, which were alſo painted within, repreſented apoſtles, and other holy perſonages. The fineſt piece of all this, to the eaſt of the river, was the baptiſm of our Lord, by St. *John*, in the river *Jordan*, with four angels on the right. Each of theſe pannels had on the outſide painted upon them five angels heads with wings. There were four ſteps on the weſt ſide of this hole, to which they had fixed a conſiderable weight of lead to make them ſink in the water. The patriarch or the perſon that performs this ceremony, ſtood upon theſe ſteps quite to the water, which was in this place eight foot deep. Upon the ground they had ſpread large red carpets, ſurrounded with a ſquare incloſure, 45 paces from corner to corner, or 180 in circumference. This incloſure had two others in the nature of baluſtrades, at the diſtance of four paces from each other, four foot high, and, in like manner, covered with red cloths or carpets. They had erected three handſome wooden altars to the weſtward near the edge of the hole. Four doors gave admiſſion

1702. miſſion thereto, the chief of which was to the ſouthward of the gate of the caſtle. They alſo were painted, but ſadly enough, and like the reſt, repreſented ſacred things. Having thoroughly ſurveyed all this, I went to a riſing ground near the caſtle, between the two gates on the ſide of that they call *Taynaimskie*, or the *Secret Gate*, to ſee the proceſſion paſs by. It began to move about eleven of the clock, from out of the church of *Sabour*, that is, *the place of the aſſembly of the ſaints*, which is in the caſtle, and the chief of all the churches in *Moſcow*. This proceſſion conſiſted wholly of churchmen excepting ſome perſons in common dreſſes who led the way with ſtandards made faſt to large ſtaves. The churchmen were all in their prieſtly habits, and made a very fine ſhow. The more inferior prieſts and the monks, to the number of about 200 came on firſt, preceded by ſeveral choriſters and ſinging boys in common habits, with each a book in his hand. On each hand they were guarded with armed ſoldiers, while others with ſtaves attended them to clear the way. After theſe appeared all ſuch as wore the epiſcopal habit, being about 300 in number. The 12 firſt were metropolitans or cardinals, in a habit commonly called *Sackoſſe*. After theſe came four archbiſhops and three biſhops and a great number of archimandrites, or ſuperiors of convents. When about 200 of theſe laſt had gone by, you ſaw every thing theſe prieſts carried in proceſſion, as a pole with a lanthern, repreſenting the light of the word of God, in honour of the pictures of the ſaints, or to give them an air of grandeur. Two cherubims, they call *Lepieds*, at the end of two poles like the former; then two croſſes; a picture of *Jeſus Chriſt*, half-length, almoſt as big as the life; a great book, and then 20 gold and ſilver caps, adorned with jewels, and carried ſeparately, each by a perſon appointed. The ceremony over, the chief of thoſe preſent appeared in thoſe caps, that of the metropolitan being of gold, adorned with pearls and precious ſtones. The grandeſt of the prelates alſo wear theſe caps, which they call mietris [mitres]. This metropolitan who repreſented the patriarch, came immediately after the great book and had in his hands a great gold croſs, inriched with jewels, which every now and then touched his forehead, and a prieſt had him under each arm to ſupport him. Being in this order got to the ſide of the river, and their ceremonies, which took up a good half-hour, were all over, the metropolitan drew near to the water, and three times dipped the croſs into it ſaying, as the patriarch was wont to ſay, SPACI GOSPODI LUDI TWOYA, I BLAGOSL OWI DOSTOANIA TWOYA. *God preſerve his people, and bleſs his inheritance.* They then returned towards the caſtle, but the 200 prieſts that had preceded as the proceſſion went out, returned not back in the ſame order, but diſperſed. Thoſe who had the ſacerdotal or epiſcopal habit walked back in good order. Among others, I obſerved two men, very poorly dreſſed, with a tub or ſomething of the kind which covered up with a cloth, could not well be diſtinguiſhed. This veſſel was followed by another, and carried in the ſame manner, with a pewter pot full of the water, which having been bleſſed was carried to the caſtle to ſprinkle the apartments, and the paintings. As ſoon as the proceſſion had got in again, they hurried back every thing that had been as a decoration to the water; and I took notice that a *Muſcovite* ſouſed a great broom into the water, and waſhed the ſpectators with it; but they did not ſeem to be a bit the better for it; and in ſhort, I thought there was ſomething ridiculous in this part of the ſolemnity. This proceſſion, which laſted till two in the afternoon, had drawn together a prodigious throng of people, a ſight well worth the ſeeing, if there had been nothing elſe, and had a fine effect upon the river, the caſtle being upon an eminence 1702.

1702. eminence we could from thence ſee all the multitude even to thoſe upon the walls. As we were going home again, and had got to the gate of the caſtle, there was ſuch a crowd that we had much ado to get out of it. And indeed our curioſity had like to have coſt us dear, beſides the danger of ſtanding ſo long in the ſnow.

This feſtival was formerly celebrated with much more pomp and ſolemnity than at preſent, it having been cuſtomary for their Majeſties, and the Grandees of ſtate to be preſent thereat. But the preſent Czar has made great alteration in this, as well as in every thing elſe. We ſhall talk more about this in the ſequel.

The *ninth* of this month it began to thaw, and even to rain, the weather being much more open, than had been known for many years before.

Rejoicings for the victory over the *Swedes.*

Upon the *eleventh*, there were great doings for the victory his Majeſty's arms had obtained of the *Swedes.* There was a great fire-work on one ſide of the caſtle, in the middle of the *Bazat* or market place; which is very low and pretty ſpacious; and it extended from one end of the place or ſquare to the other. They ran up a great boarded building, full of windows towards the caſtle, in which his Majeſty entertained the principal Lords of his court; the foreign Miniſters were there alſo, and particularly him of *Denmark*, and the Reſident of *Holland*, together with a great number of Officers, and many merchants from *beyond-ſea.* To ſhade as well as to adorn this building, there were three rows of branches like young trees, planted before it. The entertainment began at two in the afternoon, and at ſix in the evening they began to play the fire-work which turned till nine. It was raiſed upon three great tables or theatres of wood, very lofty and ſpacious, on which they had ſeveral figures, nailed to planks and painted of a brown colour. The deſign of this fire-work was after a new manner and different from all of the kind I had ever ſeen before. There was in the middle on the right hand, a figure of time, twice as big as the life, with an hour-glaſs in his right, and a palm-branch in his left, hand, which was likewiſe held by fortune on the other ſide with this inſcription in the *Ruſſian, God be therefore praiſed.* On the left hand towards the boarded-building where his Majeſty was, there was a trunk of a tree which a beaver was knawing with theſe words, *By perſeverance he ſhall be unrooted.* Upon the third ſtage, on the other ſide, there was another trunk of a tree with a young branch ſprouting from it, and not far off a very calm ſea, upon which appeared a half-ſun, which being lighted up looked reddiſh, with this device, *Hope now appears again.* Between theſe ſtages there were little ſquare pieces of fire-works, which continued to burn and were not without their devices. The ſecond of theſe ſmall fires, near which I happened to be, and which was lighted firſt by his Czarian Majeſty, repreſented a croſs with four arms, the third a vine-branch, the fourth a bird-cage, with different devices. As theſe were all illuminated after the manner of our country, it was eaſy to ſee what they were meant for. There was moreover in the midſt of this place a great *Neptune* aſtride upon a dolphin, and by him ſeveral ſorts of fire-works upon the ground, ſurrounded with piles to which caſes or fuſes were fixed, which had a very fine effect, ſome of them forming a golden ſhower, and others throwing out ſtars. When they were upon the point to ſet fire to theſe works, ſeveral of the eccleſiaſtics and other perſons of diſtinction in the boarded building with his Majeſty, came out and went thence into a covered place, in the midſt of all this machinery to perform ſome ceremonies. There was a guard of ſoldiers over the gate of this lodge or building, adorned with a number of ſtandards. In a word, there is no expreſſing the mul-

1702.

titude

1702. titude of people gathered together upon this occaſion. The *Czar*'s ſiſter alſo was preſent at this ſight, and was with ſeveral Ladies, upon a tower at one end of this market-place. Another tower there was, one of the higheſt in this part of the town, illuminated from top to bottom. The great ſtages we formerly mentioned burned each of them above a quarter of an hour. At the ſame time we heard the noiſe of the artillery, which had been diſcharged before the entertainment. When the fireworks were over, the tables were covered again. I withdrew to the ſlabode, where at ten at night I again heard the report of 90 great guns, and many afterwards. What was to me the moſt extraordinary, upon ſuch an occaſion as this, and in ſuch a crowd, there was not the leaſt diſorder; which indeed muſt be attributed to the care that was taken to diſpoſe of ſoldiers and guards ſo as might beſt prevent any thing of the kind. There were, however, ſome *French* officers who had a quarrel among them, and began to handle their ſwords, and made a great noiſe near his Majeſty's lodge; to prevent the conſequences of which there was a poſt put up near the *Dutch* church, in the ſlabode of the *Germans*, to which were tied a ſword and an ax, with the papers affixed in *Ruſſian*, *Latin* and *German*, forbidding any perſon whatſoever to draw a ſword, or fight a duel upon pain of death. 1702.

CHAP. VI.

A ſevere Execution at Moſcow. *The magnificent Wedding of one of the* Czar's *Favourites. The Author is admitted into the Preſence of the Empreſs, the Widow of his Majeſty's Brother.*

1702. Jan. 19. *A ſevere execution.* UPON the *nineteenth* of this month there was a terrible execution at *Moſcow*. A woman who had killed her huſband, was condemned to be buried alive, up to the ſhoulders; and having the curioſity to look at her in this condition, I thought ſhe looked very freſh and of a good countenance. About her head and neck they had tied a white linen cloth, which ſhe got to be undone becauſe it bound her too much. She was guarded by three or four ſoldiers, who had orders to ſuffer nothing to be given to her, either to eat or drink that might prolong her life. But the people had leave to throw into the pit where ſhe was buried, certain little *Kopykkes* or pence, which ſhe gave thanks for by a motion of her head. The money thus beſtowed, is commonly laid out in little tapers, which are lighted up in honour of certain ſaints, they call upon, and partly in a coffin. I know not whether thoſe who have the guard of theſe unhappy women, may not ſeize on a part of it themſelves, to allow them ſome refreſhments in private; for ſome of them live a good while in this condition; but this died the ſecond day after I had ſeen her. Upon the ſame day there was a man burnt alive, for ſome crime which I know not. I ſhall in the ſequel ſpeak more amply of the adminiſtration of juſtice in this country, and therefore ſhall proceed with my narration according to the order of time.

Upon the *twenty-ſixth*, they celebrated the marriage of a certain favourite of the *Czar*'s, called *Fielaet Prienewitz Souskie*, a *Muſcovite* Noble- *A ſolemn wedding.*

1702. bleman, with the *Knezna*, or Princeſs *Mary Swrjovena Schorkofskaja*, ſiſter of the *Knez Eedder Swrewitz Schorkofskaja*, a favourite alſo with his Majeſty. To this ſolemnity this Prince invited the principal Lords and Ladies of the court, and the foreign Miniſters, and ſome of the *beyond-ſea* Merchants and their wives. All that were invited were ordered to dreſs after the ancient manner of the country, more or leſs richly, according to the regulation in that caſe preſcribed. The wedding was in the ſlabode of the *Germans*, at the hotel of General *le Force*, who had ſome years been dead. It is a great building, after the *Italian* mode, and you go up to it by ſteps to the right and the left, becauſe of its extent; and in it are magnificent apartments, and a very fine ſalon, which was hung with rich tapeſtry, and the place of the ſolemnity. Here you ſaw two great leopards with a chain about their necks, and with their fore paws upon an eſcutcheon all of maſſy ſilver; as alſo a large globe of ſilver upon the ſhoulders of an *Atlas* of the ſame metal, beſides great vaſes, and other pieces of plate which had been partly brought from the *Czar*'s treaſury. The place they were to meet at, for the cavalcade, was in the city, near the caſtle, in two great buildings oppoſite the one to the other. The Great Duke, and all the gueſts repaired to theſe early in the morning, the men in the one, the Ladies in the other. They came out about ten of the clock to go to the caſtle, in the middle of which I had got to have a ſight of this cavalcade, which appeared the finer, as the weather was very fair. Firſt came the *Czar* himſelf upon a proud black courſer, he was habited in a moſt magnificent cloth of gold; his upper garment or robe was intermixed with many figures of ſeveral colours, and on his head he had a great red fur cap. His horſe was richly capariſoned with a fine gold houſing; having upon each fore-leg a ſilver hoop of four inches broad. The majeſtic air of this Prince, who is a good figure on horſe- 1702. back, added not a little to the ſplendor of the ſight, which it muſt be owned, was quite royal. On his left hand he had the Prince *Alexander Danielewitz de Menzikof*, dreſſed in the ſame gold ſtuff, and mounted upon a very fine ſteed, nobly adorned, and with ſilver hoops about his legs like thoſe of his maſter's horſe. The principal *Knezes* or Princes followed two and two according to their rank, all on horſeback, and dreſſed the ſame, to the number of 48. The *Czar* being in this manner come to the caſtle, he there ſtopped to wait for the reſt, in the mean time making his horſe prance and curvette. He was near the gate of the *Ewaritz*, or the court, where are his own apartments, and overhead was the Princeſs his ſiſter, the Empreſs widow of the late Czar, and her three daughters who all ſat in an open place. When he went under this gate, the Princeſſes ſaluted him with a moſt profound reſpect, and he took care to return the compliment to the full. All theſe Nobles being thus paſſed on, by two and two, there advanced a number of lights, ſurrounded by a great body of footmen; and then 120 of the chiefs of the court, two and two, and clad like the former. Theſe were followed by gooſts or cuſtomers, our Reſident, and the foreign Merchants, whoſe habit and caps were quite different from the reſt. They had indeed yellow boots, but their caps were low and common, and nothing at all for magnificence, compared with the others. Theſe were to the number of 34; ſo that in this cavalcade we may reckon there were 204 perſons all for the moſt part richly equipt. Many of their horſes had ſilver bits, and ſome of them had chains of the ſame, two fingers broad, pretty thick, and hung from the top of the horſe's head to the bridle and faſtned to the pummel of the ſaddle, which made an agreeable jingle. There were ſome who had them quite flat and only of plate-tin. After theſe there appeared

1702. peared five ſledges, in the three firſt of which were the three *German* doctors, and in the two others, the two moſt ancient merchants of our country. Theſe were followed by a great chariot or waggon covered with red cloth, and deſigned for the two Empreſſes. Thus it is the *Ruſſians* call thoſe his Czarian Majeſty is pleaſed to appoint to appear, as Ladies of the ſtate, in this ceremony and ſuch like it. The firſt of the Ladies, the wife of the *Knez Fudder Scuſerwitz Romodanoski*, who commands in *Moſcow* in the abſence of the Czar, was indiſpoſed, and could not be there; ſo that the other, the wife of *Ivanawitz Boeterlien* appeared alone. Upon her head ſhe had a ſmall white high-crowned felt with a narrow brim, with two maids of honour ſeated oppoſite to her in the chariot, waggon, or coach, which was drawn by twelve white horſes, and ſurrounded with ſervants in red. This was followed by twenty five others ſmaller, but covered the ſame with two white horſes, in one of which was the bride, and *Ruſſian* Ladies in the reſt. Among theſe there was an ugly little ſledge, faſtned to the tail of a poor creature of a horſe, and in it a little mean-looking fellow, of a piece with his carriage and dreſſed like a *Jew*. I gueſſed he was drawn in this manner for ſome crime he had committed, and ſo I afterwards underſtood it to have been from people that knew him, and that it was really to puniſh him that he made this figure; he being it ſeems a Jew by extraction tho' he had turned to the chriſtian faith. There came after theſe ſeven other ſledges filled with Ladies of our nation, followed by ſome empty chariots which cloſed the proceſſion; which in this order went through the caſtle, and a part of the city as far as the church of *Bogojaſtenja* or of the *Annunciation*, where the marriage ceremony was performed in the preſence of the Czar, and many perſonages of that illuſtrious aſſembly. My curioſity being thus ſatisfied, I returned to my lodging, and afterwards pitched upon a good place in the ſlabode, that I might ſee them go to the place where they were to have the feaſt. They did not come till three in the afternoon, being then to the number of 500 as well men as women, who went into different apartments where the two ſexes could have no ſight of each other. The Empreſs Dowager, the Czar's ſiſter, and her three daughters were at one table with ſome Ladies at court. The bride was at another with other Ladies; and ſhe that repreſented the Empreſs was alone and raiſed above the reſt. The other Ladies, as well *Ruſſian* as others, were in another apartment; and the muſic was ſo placed as to be heard by every body. After the repaſt, which was a royal one, and laſted ſeveral hours, the bride and bridegroom were conducted to the place where they were to conſummate the marriage, at a little diſtance from the houſe upon the river *Yuſa*, being a ſmall building erected on purpoſe; and where they had an ordinary bed prepared for them. Moſt of the company diſperſed between ten a clock and midnight; though a great part of them ſtaid in the ſlabode, in houſes prepared and appointed for them, by order of the Czar, that the *Ruſſians* might the more eaſily meet together the next day at the ſame place, from thence to go to the hotel of the Major General *Meneſius*, whoſe widow was ſtill alive. She who repreſented the Empreſs went thither in the night, and the bride went thither early the next morning. The Czar alſo moved towards it about ten of the clock without the attendance of the ſtrangers, and having been there about an hour, he went in good order to ſee Mr. *Lups*, who waited for him at the door, attended by ſome of the merchants of our nation. He there ſtopt a little with his train, but alighted not from his horſe, though he was well regaled with liquors. 1701.

A pleaſantry.

I cannot forbear to mention one thing which contributed much to the mirth of this company: The

1702. bridegroom was upon a very fine horſe, and another Lord was upon a mare full as beautiful; both of them warm, and prepared for what was to happen. The horſe failed not to cover her, and the cavalier upon her was ſo dextrous as to get off unhurt, while the bridegroom kept his ſaddle all the time of the action, which cauſed a great laughter among the ſpectators. They would have done this before, but could not bring it about. The Czarian Prince then appeared on horſeback, attended by ſeveral young Lords of his own age, a groom leading his horſe by the bridle. He was followed by the bride's chariot, and hers by the great one with twelve horſes, with the Lady that repreſented the Empreſs; and this, by many others, full of *Ruſſian* dames. When they came to the palace where the wedding was to be celebrated, and where I had taken care to be by going another way, his Majeſty went in firſt, and was followed by the bride, who went into another diſtinct ſet of apartments on the left-hand, and where formerly lived general *le Fort*. The great chariot ſtopped to make room, it being difficult for it to go on becauſe of its height, and not able to turn the place was ſo narrow. In the midſt of this the young Czarian Prince alighted, and ſtood by the ſide of the chariot, and ſo he continued till it went in, which it did not without ſticking at top. After this the Prince croſſed the court of the palace, and the Empreſs alighting from her vehicle, went up ſome ſtairs on the right-hand. The ſtrangers and their wives repaired thither alſo, and ſtaid much as they did the night before. The third and the laſt day it was reſolved to appear in the *German* dreſs, and every body did ſo, except ſome of the *Ruſſian* Ladies: and thus they repaired again to the new married couple, but ſeparately. The men and the women ſat at table together, as the cuſtom is with us; and there was dancing and ſkipping about, after the entertainment, to the great ſatisfaction of the Czar himſelf, and all his 1702. gueſts: and thus ended a ſolemnity, which being ſo ſingular as it is, I concluded every body would be curious to know as much of it as they could.

Upon the *ſecond* of *February* they brought a part of the *Swediſh* priſoners, mentioned before, in ſledges. Upon the *fourth* they came for me to wait on the Czar, who was at the palace of his great favourite Prince *Menzikoff*. This palace is called *Semennoſtkies*, the name of a village, a mile and half from the *Slabode*, where I found his Majeſty employed in trying of ſome fire ingines lately arrived from *Holland*. This Prince perceiving me, called me to him, and went again into the palace. *Well*, ſays he, *you have ſeen many ſtrange things, and yet I will venture to ſay you never ſaw any thing like what you are going to ſee.* He then ordered a poor *Ruſſian*, who had been brought on purpoſe, to open his cloaths. I trembled at the ſight; he had an excreſcence beneath the navel, of about the length of a hand, and four inches in ſubſtance, from whence went out all the food he eat; and the poor wretch had been nine years in this condition. This diſaſter happened from the cut of a knife, which had ſo irritated the parts about the common paſſage, that there was no cure to be had. I frankly confeſſed I had never ſeen any thing like it, but ſaid I knew a man who voided his food by his mouth, at which he ſeemed to be not leſs ſurprized. He then ordered this poor man's excreſcence to be ſqueezed, that I might be the more ſenſible of the nature of his caſe, and every thing came out half digeſted. The patient was about thirty five years of age. Having diſcourſed with his Majeſty about two hours, and been regaled with liquors, he left me, and Prince *Alexander* came up to me. He told me the Czar having heard I could paint, was deſirous I ſhould do the pictures of the three young Princeſſes, the daughters of the Czar *Ivan Alexowitz*

The author appears before the Czar.

An extraordinary caſe.

1702. *witz* his brother, who had reigned jointly with him till he died, which happened upon the *twenty ninth* of *January* 1696, and that it was the chief reaſon I had been ſent for to court. I gladly accepted of the honour, and went with this Lord to wait upon the Empreſs, the mother of theſe young Ladies, at a houſe of pleaſure belonging to his Majeſty, called *Iſmeilhoff*, moſt agreeably ſituated, about a league from *Moſcow*, that I might have a ſight of them before I began my work. When I had approached the Empreſs, ſhe aſked if I could ſpeak the *Ruſſian* language; to which Prince *Alexander* anſwering in the negative, they talked together for ſome time: This Princeſs then filled out a little cup of brandy, which ſhe preſented to the Prince, who drinking it off, delivered the cup to one of her maids of honour: She filled it out a ſecond time, and the Empreſs preſented it to me herſelf: She alſo gave us a glaſs of wine, as did alſo the three young Princeſſes. After this a great glaſs of beer was filled out, which the Empreſs again preſented to Prince *Alexander*, who, having taken a ſip, returned it to the maid of honour: The ſame ceremony was obſerved with regard to my ſelf, and I juſt touched it with my lips; for in this court it would be taken much amiſs to empty the laſt glaſs of beer that is preſented. I then talked a while with Prince *Alexander*, who ſpeaks pretty good *Dutch*, upon the ſubject of pictures; and when we went out the Empreſs and the three young Princeſſes gave us their right-hands to kiſs, the higheſt honour that can be received in this country. Some days afterwards there were great nuptial doings at the palace of Prince *Menzikof*, for ſome belonging to the Czar, who was there preſent with the Prince his uncle, and ſeveral Lords and Ladies of the court; nor were ſome of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchants and *German* Ladies uninvited. The table, in form of an horſe-ſhoe, was ſpread in the great hall, and the Czar and the *Ruſſian* Lords were on one ſide, and the Ladies on the other. The Czarian Prince, Prince *Alexander*, and the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* merchants were at a round table in the middle of the hall, at which I had the honour of a ſeat. After a magnificent repaſt there was dancing after the *Poliſh* manner; the muſic, which was very good, being on the left-hand. 1702.

The author appears before the Empreſs.

Rejoicings at weddings.

Prince *Alexander* went away that ſame evening, in order to ſpend ſome days in the country, where he had ſome buſineſs. Upon the eleventh Mr. *Panwel Heins*, the Envoy from *Denmark* took a tour to his own country, deſigning to return in the ſpring, and to leave his wife behind him at *Moſcow*. Upon the *fifth* of *March* I had the honour to dine with his Majeſty at *Probroſensko*, the uſual abode of that Prince. After dinner he carried me to the Empreſs's palace, to ſee the pictures of the three young Princeſſes, which were begun, and he entertained her a good while upon the ſubject of my travels. Upon the *eleventh* he went with ſome Lords of his court to viſit Mr. *Brants*, and there he ſaw what I had painted at *Archangel*, and ſeemed to be much pleaſed with them. Talking from one thing to another, this Prince, at laſt, made mention of certain pieces of cannon, which were thought to have the arms of *Genoa*, which, as well as thoſe of *Venice*, are a lion with one paw on a book, upon them. He wanted to be ſatisfied as to this, and reſolved to take a view of them, appointing the palace of the Prince to be the place to meet at for that purpoſe. His Majeſty accordingly came at the time appointed, and Prince *Alexander*, in his name, made a preſent of a gold medal to every one there, who were for the moſt part foreign merchants that he had an eſteem for. Upon this medal his Majeſty was repreſented with a crown of laurel on his head, with this title round him, PETER ALEXOWITZ, GREAT CZAR OF ALL RUSSIA. On the reverſe 1702.

1702. were two eagles, with the day of the month, the *firſt* of *February*, and the year 1702.

Having been here entertained with great magnificence, they returned to *Probroſensko*, which is reckoned to be no better than the abode of a captain, his Majeſty not having as yet aſſumed an higher title. This palace is not above three miles from the city, and not far from that of Prince *Menzikof*. It is alſo the 1702. arſenal of the regiment of his guards; we here ſaw the three guns mentioned before, upon which there was a lion plain enough, though a good deal worn down. They were very ſhort, and like our mortars. But I do not comprehend how they ſhould have formerly fallen into the hands of the *Ruſſians*.

CHAP. VII.

Magnificent Entertainments given by his Majeſty in the Country. Particulars concerning the Empreſs. His Majeſty diverts himſelf upon the River Moſka. *Celebration of* Eaſter *among the* Ruſſians. *His Majeſty's Departure for* Archangel.

WHILE we were looking at theſe guns, they got every thing ready to go to a village belonging to Prince *Alexander*. It is called *Alexcejeskie*, not far from *Lemuenefskie*, about twelve werſts from *Moſcow*, where this Nobleman has a very fine country-houſe upon the river *Youſa*; a charming place where there are wonderful fiſh-ponds abundantly reſtored. But I thought nothing here finer than the ſtables, large, and made of wood, as well as the houſe, and containing above fifty very fine horſes. We here found ſome *German* Ladies his Majeſty had ordered to be here, to provide ſome agreeable entertainments. We were ten in all, our Reſident, three *Engliſh*, and the reſt *Dutch*, without reckoning ſome *Ruſſian* Noblemen and Ladies, to the number of thirteen, including Prince *Alexander*'s ſiſter. We were perfectly welcome, and treated with a ſupper of fleſh and fiſh. They had ſpread two tables in a great hall, the one a long one, at which ſat the Czar, and ſeveral of his Nobles on one ſide, and the Ladies on the other; the other was a round table in the middle, where ſat the *Engliſh*, and moſt of the *Germans*, or *Dutch* rather. After ſupper they retired to their apartments, the *Ruſſians* on one ſide, and the Ladies on the other; only the ſtrangers ſtaid ſome time longer together. The next day there was a feaſt like the former, with muſic, conſiſting of violins, baſſes, trumpets, hautboys, flutes, *&c.* Then they danced after the *Poliſh* manner, the Czar, who was in a very good humour, incouraged every body to be merry; nor was there any forgetfulneſs about the wine. At night every one withdrew to begin again the next day, which was ſpent like the former, in all manner of diverſions, no one being at all overcome with liquor, and then all returned to their ſeveral homes.

Agreeable entertainment.

I then got leave to have the pictures of the young Princeſſes, which I had painted in large, brought home to my lodging, that I might put the finiſhing hand to them, the Czar having preſſed me ſo to do, becauſe he wanted to ſend them ſomewhere.

I obeyed

1702. I obeyed with all the haſte I could, and dreſs'd them after the *German* mode, in which they commonly appear in public; but the heads, which were left to my choice, I dreſſed in the antique ſtile. 1701.

Picture of the Empreſs. Let us now take a view of the Empreſs, *Paraskowya Feodorofna*. This Princeſs is not above thirty years old, and is pretty bulky, tho' being tall therewith, it does not much ſpoil her. It may be even ſaid of her that ſhe is handſome, of a very genteel behaviour, and moſt engaging manners; and indeed, the Czar has a great value for her. The young Czarian Prince *Alexey Petrowitz* often viſits her, and the Princeſſes her daughters, the eldeſt of which, *Catharine Iwanoffna*, is but twelve years old; the ſecond, *Anne Iwanoffna*, not above ten; and the youngeſt, *Paraskowya Iwanoffna*, but eight, all three of them likely children. The ſecond has fair hair, and has a fine complexion; the other two are agreeable brunettes: The youngeſt is a very ſprightly child, and all the three of mild and charming affability. It would be hard to ſay how many civilities I had heaped upon me in this court while I was at work upon theſe pictures. They never failed in the morning to preſent me with liquors and other refreſhments, and often they detained me to dinner, and always ſerved up as much fleſh as fiſh, which very much ſurprized me, becauſe they were then in the midſt of Lent. In the day-time they always took care to ſupply me with wine and beer; and indeed I believe no court, eſpecially ſuch a court as this, was ever ſo kind to a private man; and I ſhall retain a grateful remembrance of it as long as I live. Imboldened by all theſe favours, I preſumed to offer a book of my travels, which I had got bound on purpoſe, to his Majeſty in the palace of *Probroſensko*, not doubting of a favourable acceptance, in which I was not at all deceived.

The author preſents his travels to the Czar.

Diverſion on the river of Moska. Upon the *twenty ninth* he went in a boat upon the river of *Moska*; he went down againſt tide, three or four werſts beyond the bridge, paſſing by the caſtle, and came up again with the tide, at a great rate, three or four werſts on this ſide of the ſame bridge, to which he afterwards returned, and where Prince *Alexander* waited for him, attended by ſome *Engliſh* and *Dutch* merchants, whom he again entertained both with fiſh and fleſh, notwithſtanding *Lent* and the *Paſſion-week*, leaving every one to his liberty, but he and his train eat nothing but meat.

A great flood. The month of *April* began with ſo extraordinary a thaw, that in a very little time there was no ice to be ſeen; and the river, upon this ſudden alteration, ſwelled to a height it had never been known at in the memory of man. The mills upon the *Youſa* were much damaged, and the ponds over-flowed the low land behind the houſes, and laid it under water, and the roads and ways were much in the ſame condition, which is what often happens in ſpring time, when the ſnows begin to melt. The *Slabode* of the *Germans* was in ſuch a pickle, that the horſe went up to the girth in mud and mire; which being reported to the Czar, he ordered it to be cleanſed, that the dirt that might farther center in this part ſhould be diverted, and turned off.

The vigilance of the Czar when a fire happens. Upon the *firſt*, about ſix in the morning, a fire broke out at the houſe of one of our countrymen in the *Slabode*; and the Czar was immediately there to give orders, as he always is upon the like occaſions. There is a watch every hour of the night, who never fail to give the alarm upon all accidents of this nature.

Feſtival of Eaſter. That ſame day they celebrated the feaſt of *Eaſter*, to the great joy of the *Ruſſians*, as well becauſe the deſired time was come when Chriſt was to riſe, as becauſe it put an end to *Lent*. You hear the bells all the night before, all the day itſelf, and the next day. They then begin to give *Eaſter* eggs, which continues for a fortnight, a cuſtom as well a-

Eaſter eggs.

mong

1702. mong the great as the ſmall, the old as the young, who mutually make each other preſents of them; and the ſhops are every where full of them coloured and boiled; the moſt common colour of them being a plum blue, though there are alſo ſuch as are green and white, very neat; ſome are very well painted, and worth two or three rix-dollars; and, in ſhort, many of them have theſe words upon them, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST, *Chriſt is riſen.* Perſons of diſtinction have them at their houſes, and preſent them to ſuch as come to ſee them; at the ſame time kiſſing them upon the mouth, and ſaying, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST, to which the other anſwers, WOISTINO WOS CHREST, *Yea, he is truly riſen.* The middling ſort of people give them to each other in the ſtreets in the manner we have ſaid, and no body refuſes them of what ſex or condition ſoever. Servants alſo carry them into their maſters, who make them a preſent called *Praesnik.* They brought me thirteen or fourteen very neatly coloured by women; and formerly theſe preſents were made a very ſerious buſineſs, but things have lately been much altered in this reſpect as well as the reſt. The *Ruſſians* of quality and foreign merchants have indeed preſented the congratulatory eggs to his Majeſty now on the throne, and have received the ſame from him, but the cuſtom is over.

April 9. *Recreation upon the river* Moska.

Upon the *ninth* the Czar recreated himſelf again upon the river *Moska.* The watermen in his Majeſty's ſhallop, and thoſe in that of the Princeſs his ſiſter, were in white ſhirts, after the *Dutch* faſhion, laced down before; and all the foreign merchants had orders, the night before, each of them to get ready two. Theſe boats had two ſmall maſts, that they might ſail if there was wind. They fell down the river from the country houſe of the General *Velt-Marſhal Bories Petrowitz Czeremetof*, oppoſite to his Majeſty's fine houſe, called *Worobjowegoro*, where he had the day before entertained his Majeſty and all his train, conſiſting of the Czarian Prince, the Princeſs, his Majeſty's ſiſter, attended by three or four *Ruſſian* Ladies, a number of Lords and officers of his houſhold, our Reſident, ſome foreign merchants, and about fifteen or ſixteen *German* Ladies. All the ſhallops appeared before the houſe of this Nobleman, being about forty in all, with each ten or twelve oars. The Czar being embarked with all his company, they went down the river at a great rate beyond the bridge, and proceeded to *Kolomnensko*, a country-houſe belonging to his Majeſty, about twenty werſts from *Moſcow* by water, though not above ſeven by land, where they got out about ſeven o' clock, and met with a moſt royal ſupper. The next day they were entertained in the ſame manner, and had muſic; and about three in the afternoon they came back to town, ſome in coaches, ſome in calaſhes, and ſome on horſeback. The next day Mr. *Brandts* entertained his Majeſty, attended by the Reſident of *Holland*, and ſeveral others, *Engliſh* and *Dutch.* They were ſo merry that the Czar ſtaid till eleven at night, and the reſt till two in the morning. 1702.

Upon the *nineteenth* I had orders to carry the young Princeſſes pictures to the Empreſs, that ſhe might ſee them now they were finiſhed. I went with Prince *Alexander*'s brother-in-law, but this Princeſs was ſo much out of order that ſhe was even in bed. However I placed the pictures ſo that ſhe might ſee them; ſhe ſeemed to like them, thanked, and preſented me with a purſe of gold, which ſhe delivered to me with her own hand, and did me the honour to give me to kiſs. She then aſked me if I ſhould ſtay long enough in the country to paint them over again; to which having returned an anſwer, one of the young Princeſſes gave us brandy in a little gilt cup, then a glaſs of wine, and ſo we took our leave. From thence I carried the pictures to the palace of Prince *Alexander*, where I packed them up, ſo

1702. as to be fit to ſend away. The ſame night the Czar, attended by Prince *Alexander*, the Patriarch *Mekile Moyſewitz Solof*, keeper of the great ſeal, the firſt Miniſter of ſtate, Count *Fedder Alexewitz Gollowin*, the Sieur *Gabriel Gollofkiem*, the *Knez Gregory Gregoiewitz Roſiodanoſkie*, *Bojar*, the *Knez Tuerje Tuerjewitz Froetbetskoy*, and the *Stolnick*, who waits on his Majeſty at table, attended by theſe he ſet out for *Archangel*.

They clean the ways. Mean time they prepared to clean the ways in the *Slabode*, which they began to do upon the *twenty ſixth*; firſt they threw the dirt up along the ſides of the houſes, that ſo it might be carried off, having made choice of two *Germans* to direct the work; and they acquitted themſelves ſo well of their charge, that at the end of the week the ſtreets and ways were ſo mended, that people began to walk up and down a little.

A flood. Upon the *third* of *May* we had advice from *Archangel*, that the thaw had ſwelled the river there to a moſt extraordinary degree, and that it had done much miſchief; that moſt of the houſes near the fort of the new *Dwinko* had been over-flowed; that the timber and work in his Majeſty's dock-yard had been carried off by it; that a ſhip upon the ſtocks had been turned topſy-turvy by it; that certain ſhips at anchor before the town had been driven againſt the bridge of the palace of the merchants: In ſhort that the water had even mounted up to ſome of the gardens in the city.

The next day they began to remove the dirt in the Slabode, every body having leave to do it at his own expence, and to carry it into his garden to heighten, or to diſpoſe of it elſewhere, as he ſhould think moſt neceſſary and convenient. And the more ſtill to forward this work the *German* merchants met at the hall of the Lords, a fine houſe, well ſeated in a fine garden, where they choſe two other ſurveyors whom they added to the two former; this election was by moſt voices, each writing down the name of the perſon he was for upon a little bit of paper. To theſe, they added eight others by way of aſſiſtants, and inveſted them with a ſufficient authority. 1702.

The *ninth*, being the feſtival of St. *Nicholas*, we had letters from *Holland*, dated the 28th of the month before, with the doleful News of the Death of his *Britannic* Majeſty, *William* the III. of glorious memory, after a ſickneſs of but four days. This cauſed a great conſternation among the ſtrangers, but chiefly among our countrymen, who beſt knew the great worth of that Prince, for whom they put themſelves into mourning for ſix weeks.

Upon the *nineteenth*, we had advice of a great inundation that had happened in *Holland*, that it had drowned ſeveral villages, and been the death of a number of people. It was added the Allies had carried *Keyſerſwaert*.

Upon the *twenty-firſt*, they celebrated the feſtival of *Walla Diemerskai Bogarodieſſa*, a town were they pretend the Virgin *Mary* to have formerly appeared, and which they keep in remembrance in one of the churches of this city, conſtantly upon the *Thurſday* before *Pentecoſt*, which they call *Seemie*. Some of the clergy go that day early in the morning, to a pit or ditch, and caſt into it thoſe that have been murdered, and thoſe that have ſuffered execution, for crimes. Theſe pits, of which there are three or four about *Moſcow*, are filled up every year, and new ones are dug, which was done the night before. That day alſo they buried the Empreſs's mother, who died the day before, for they never keep the dead long above ground, which, is what we ſhall have occaſion to dilate on hereafter. This funeral was without any ceremony. The ſame day, in the morning, a fire broke out at *Moſcow*, and could not be put out before 10 of the clock. Upon the

Feaſt in memory of the virgin *Mary*.

1702. *third* of *June* the like happened at a village not far off, and upon the *fourteenth*, for the third time at *Moſcow*. About the ſame time certain Merchants ſet out for *Archangel*. 1702.

CHAP. VIII.

Productions of the Earth, Fruits, Country-Houſes, Fiſh-Ponds, and other things the Ruſſians *delight in.* Ruſſian *Hermits in Priſon.*

I Went ſometimes to take the freſh air in the country with my friends; and one day, in *July*, as I was in the woods I found certain Gooſe-berries, they call *Coſtenitſa*, which have a very pleaſant acid. The better ſort of people eat them with honey or ſugar as we do ſtrawberries, and make a ſort of ſherbet with them, which is a refreſhing liquor for ſick folks. The woods about *Moſcow* are full of this fruit, which grows in the ſhade of the trees throughout all *Ruſſia*. The word *Coſtenitſa* ſignifies a ſtoney gooſe-berry, and to ſay the truth a ſtone it has. Every ſtalk produces three or four others ſmaller, by which hang the gooſe-berries in cluſters of twenty together, as may be ſeen in the next Plate letter A. Their leaves are green winter and ſummer, and

Good gooſe-berries.

they

1702. they are ripe in *July*. There is alſo another ſort of them, called *Bruſnitſa*, larger than the former, and grow ſingle like thoſe gooſe-berries in our Country, which grow 20 or 30 in a cluſter. Theſe do not grow above a ſpan from the ground, and others about half as high again. Great quantities of them are every year carried to *Moſcow*, where both ſtrangers and *Ruſſians* lay in a ſtore of them. Theſe laſt put them into tubs or caſks of water, and there leave them all the ſummer; they then draw it off and drink it, and very refreſhing and pleaſant it is, eſpecially if you ſweeten it with ſugar or honey, and they are alſo eaten by way of refreſhment. The *Germans* ſqueeze the juice out of them, which they boil with honey and ſugar to a certain conſiſtence, and uſe it with their roaſt-meat, which it reliſhes moſt admirably. They keep it alſo in a little caſk, and mix it up with the juice of other gooſe-berries, a liquor wherewith they regale their friends, and is very grateful to the palate. The leaf of theſe is like that of the roſe, as you may ſee in letter B, and is an ever green.

Productions of the earth. *Ruſſia* naturally produces roots and greens in abundance. They have cabbages they call *Kopoſſe*, which they ſtore up, and which the poor eat twice a day; cucumbers alſo, called *Ougertſie*, which they eat like apples and pears, and are ſtored up for all the year round, even by the moſt conſiderable people. This Country in like manner, produces abundance of garlic, which they are very fond of, as may be ſmelt at a diſtance. They call it *Siaſnok*. Horſe-radiſh called *Green*, is there very common, and they make good ſauces of it, both for fiſh and fleſh. Turneps they have of ſeveral ſorts, as alſo red cabbages, and colly-flowers which ſtrangers have brought among them for ſome time paſt. You have aſparagus there alſo and artichokes, but nobody eats them but ſtrangers. And the ſame it is with ſome things that grow under ground: We taught them the culture of the carrot, parſnip, and beet-root, 1702. of which they have now great plenty, as alſo of ſalleting and cellery, to them before unknown, but now admired by them. The places about *Moſcow* produce plenty of ſtrawberries, eſpecially of the ſmall ſort; the larger they eat in the hand. They have raſberries alſo, and plenty of a large ſort of melon; they are very large, but too watery, not very unlike our cucumbers, and produce no great quantity of ſeed.

Fruit trees. As for fruit-trees, they have many ſmall-nuts, and a few wall-nuts. Their apples are good, and pleaſant to look at, as well the ſweet as the ſour: I have had ſome of them ſo tranſparent you might ſee the Kernels in them. It is otherwiſe with the pears, which are more ſcarce, and not ſo good; beſides they are ſmall. The ſame indifference may be expreſſed of their plumbs and cherries, excepting thoſe in the gardens belonging to the *Germans*; they are very neat, full of good gooſe-berries, and many kinds of flowers; but the gardens of the *Ruſſians* are wild, artleſs, and void of ornament. Fountains and jetteaus are there unknown, though they have water in abundance, and it were eaſy to have them, and at a very ſmall expence. They begin however, to change in this reſpect, as well as in that of their buildings, ſince the Czar has been in our provinces. The *Knez Daniel Gregoritz Serkaskie* has a garden in the *Dutch* taſte, near his village, called *Sietjove*, about 13 werſts from *Moſcow*; it is pretty large, and neat enough; tho' we muſt not forget he had a gardener from *Holland*; and indeed it is the fineſt garden in all the country. Upon the whole there are but few curioſities in *Muſcovy*. The great beauty of their country-houſes, is in their fiſh-ponds, which are admirable. You have often two or three of them about a houſe, ſpacious and full of fiſh, which they are very fond of; and when any of their friends come to ſee them, the firſt thing they do, is to divert them with nets thrown into the water, and ſometimes at a

Gardens of the country.

Ponds full of fiſh.

1702. caſt they ſhall catch as much fiſh as would fill 20 or 30 diſhes, and ſometimes more.

I ſhall never forget a party of pleaſure I had with ſome *Dutch* Ladies, with whom I went to pay a viſit to Mr. *Streſenof*, a rich man, who lived at the village of *Fackeloof*, 15 werſts from *Moſcow*, where he received us very courteouſly. This gentleman had an handſome wife, a mighty good natured ſort of a woman, who did all ſhe could to make us merry. The houſe was well built, full of fine apartments, and what is remarkable, it had a kitchen after the *Dutch* manner, a very neat one, where our Ladies dreſſed ſome diſhes of fiſh after our manner, though we had a good proviſion of cold meat, beſide a ſcore of diſhes of fiſh in the *Ruſſian* way, with good ſauces. After dinner they carried us into a room where hung ſeveral ropes by the beams. Theſe were to ſwing in, the uſual paſtime of the country; and accordingly the Lady of the houſe took her turn at it, being ſwung by two waiting maids, who were pretty enough; while ſhe was ſwinging ſhe took a child in her lap, and began to ſing with her maids very agreeably, and in a moſt obliging manner; begging we would excuſe her, aſſuring us ſhe would have ſent for muſic, had ſhe had time enough. When we had thanked her for her favours, ſhe carried us to the pond, and ordered them to get us ſome fiſh to carry freſh home with us. We took leave of our kind entertainers, and got into our coach prodigiouſly well pleaſed with them.

On one ſide of this village I perceived a tree of extraordinary ſize, with wide ſpreading branches, finely proportioned with a trunk of three fathom and a half in circumference; it was a white poplar which the *Ruſſians* call *Aſina*.

Moſt of the ſtrangers have gardens behind their houſes, or in the country, where they carefully cultivate ſeveral ſorts of fruits and flowers, which they ſend for from home. The beds in the gardens are bordered with plank inſtead of box, and as the country in itſelf is defective as to flowers, thoſe in the woods being very indifferent, we cannot pleaſe the *Ruſſians* better than by giving them noſe-gays when they come to ſee our gardens. There are however ſome curious people, among the better ſort, who have the like, and endeavour to cultivate flowers. 1702.

Their manners are remarkable enough: When they pay a viſit, and go into a room they do not ſay a word, but look about for the picture of ſome ſaint, wherewith their rooms are always hung; they make three low bows to it, and making ſeveral ſigns of the croſs they ſay *Goſpodi Pomilus* "Lord have mercy upon "me;" or *Mier Eſdom Zjeiewoeſonon* "Peace be to this houſe, and "to thoſe that dwell therein;" again making ſigns of the Croſs: Then they ſalute the people of the houſe, and ſpeak to them. This is a cuſtom they obſerve even when they go to ſee ſtrangers, addreſſing themſelves to the firſt picture they ſee, for fear they ſhould not pay the firſt honours to God, as they ought. Their greateſt diverſion is hawking, and courſing with greyhounds; and they are under good regulations as to this matter, the number of dogs every one may keep being fixed according to his rank; and beſides theſe their private diverſions are but few. Their muſical inſtruments for the moſt part, are the harp, the kettle-drum, the bag-pipe, and the hunting-horn. They take great delight in being with mad people, or ſuch as are deformed, or deep in liquor, when they happen to be ſo to exceſs. When they entertain their friends, they ſit down to table at ten in the morning, and part at one in the afternoon to go home to ſleep, and this they do winter and ſummer. Their manner of writing is very odd; they take the paper in their left hand, and put it upon their knees and write in that poſture; there are however ſome of them who begin to write like us, *Manners of the Ruſſians.*

Their manner of writing.

1702. and particularly in their offices. Their manner of ſewing is alſo different from ours; they put the thimble upon the firſt finger, and with that and the thumb, they pull the thread to and fro, directly oppoſite to our manner. They uſe their feet alſo, which are commonly bare, upon this occaſion, and will hold their work between their toes, as well as we can between our knees, or by pinning it faſt. But I muſt own I have ſeen them do otherwiſe.

Their manner of ſewing.

Ruſſian Hermits.

In the beginning of *July*, I went with a friend to *Probroſensko*, to ſee three hermits, who had been priſoners there for four or five days. They had lived ſomewhere about *Aſoph*, upon the banks of a ſmall river that falls into the *Danube*. I was ſurprized at the ſight of them; the oldeſt was about ſeventy, and the other two ſeemed to be about fifty. The firſt had lived forty years in that place, in the hollow of a rock, where he had been once taken by the *Tartars* and ſold to the *Turks*; but making his eſcape in a little while afterwards, he returned to his hermitage, where he had paſſed his days ever ſince. They ſaid he was accuſed of ſtraying from the *Ruſſian* faith; but he denied the charge, deſiring he might be examined, and declaring he was ready to ſuffer the greateſt torments for the glory of *Jeſus Chriſt*, though he could neither write nor read. They had nothing on but a dark coarſe gown; their hair hung half way down their backs, was never combed, and ſo covered their faces, there was no ſeeing them without putting the hair aſide; in ſhort they looked like very ſavages. Upon the breaſt they had a great iron croſs, that weighed four pounds at leaſt; it hung by two bands of the ſame metal, which went over their ſhoulders, fell down behind the back, and were hooked to another of the ſame metal, which ſerved for a girdle and was joined before beneath the croſs upon the breaſt. The two others expreſſed ſo great a veneration for the old man, that they ſupported him under the arms, whenever he roſe up, as he did when we came to him. They were to have continued in this priſon till his Czarian Majeſty ſhould return; they were together, they had no irons on, and ſat in an open place upon ſome mats in a corner, and at ſome diſtance from the reſt. The priſoners in the ſame place were moſt of them chained by the foot, but with ſo ſhort a range they could hardly ſtir, and had each of them a keeper within, beſides thoſe without, to prevent their eſcaping. This priſon was made of good lofty timbers, ſmall, ſquare, and open at top; tho' there were ſome covered places in it. I had a great mind to take a ſecond view of theſe hermits, but was told they were removed to a neighbouring houſe, and that they were to ſtay till farther orders.

1702.

Towards the end of this month advice came of another victory over the *Swedes*. The Empreſs ſent for me a little afterwards to paint the young Princeſſes a ſecond time in great and habited as before. I would fain have avoided the taſk, and humbly beſought ſhe would excuſe me, pretending I was under a neceſſity to purſue my travels; but perceiving ſhe was a little out of humour at it, I, for many reaſons, reſolved to ſatisfy her, and began the work without loſs of time.

Victory over the Swedes.

The Author paints the young Princeſſes a ſecond time.

Upon the *fifth* of *June* the merchants, that were left at *Moſcow*, went from thence to *Archangel*. We attended them, as the cuſtom is, ten werſts out of the town, to a village upon the *Youſa*, where there were tents ſpread under them to paſs ſome time with ſeveral Ladies: at length drinking to their good journey we returned to the city as we came.

Some days afterwards, as I was walking in the garden behind our houſe, with a gun in my hand, as my cuſtom often was, to kill ſnipes and ducks upon the pond or river *Youſa*, I perceived a crane in the air over my head: I loaded my piece with a ball, the common bird ſhot not being enough to kill ſo large a bird, and had the good luck to bring

He kills a crane and eats it.

1702. him down into the pond. This was remarkable enough, there being but few or none of these birds in this part, though there are those who have them in the country for their pleasure, but they send for them from elsewhere. I had him roasted, but he tasted of the fen. 1702.

CHAP. IX.

Description of Moscow. *Number of the Churches and Monasteries of this City, with many other Particulars.*

IT is now high time to speak a little more particularly concerning the states of his Czarian Majesty, who, with his own mouth, gave me full leave to write what I should think proper on this subject, so I confined myself within the limits of truth.

I shall begin with the city of *Moscow*, which I took a view of from the top of one of this Prince's palaces, called *Worobjowa*, a wooden building of great extent, and two stories high. On the ground-floor it contains 124 rooms, and, I dare say, there may be as many above, and is surrounded with a wooden wall. It stands upon an eminence opposite to the nunnery of *Dewitse*, on the other side of the river *Moska*, three werests from *Moscow* to the westward. I had some days before been entertained there, together with some others, and some Ladies, by Prince *Alexander*'s brother-in-law. The Czar had pitch'd upon this place as the most proper for my design, and indeed so it was; but the Princess, his Majesty's sister, having taken it for the summer, I begg'd this Gentleman, the Prince's brother-in-law, to favour me so far as to go with me, to communicate his Majesty's order to her. She answered, I might come when I would, but desired I would bring but one person with me. I went several days together, and performed my task, with water-colours upon paper, from one of the windows of the palace, as may be observed in N°. 12. From hence you had a prospect of every thing in the town and about it, and every particular is carefully distinguished by numeral figures as follows: (1) The new monastery of *Dewits*, or of the maids; (2) The quarters of a regiment of foot; (3) *Worstruki*, or the porter's lodge; (4) A place called *Suschowa*; (5) The cloister called *Nowinskoy Monastir*; (6) *Sawinskoy Monastir*, so called from St. *Sawin*; (7) The church of *Nicolay-na Rhipach*, dedicated to St. *Nicolas*, and so called for that reason; (8) The church of *Blagowsischchena*, or the annunciation of the *Virgin Mary*; (9) *Dewits Monastir Strathnoi*, or convent of the maid of suffering; (10) *Ultretenskoia Bachna*, or the tower of the gate of *Ustretens*; (11) *Potrosschey Monastir*, or convent of St. *Peter*; (12) The palace or castle; (13) *Troitska Baschna*, the name of the tower of the church without the palace; (14) The church of *Saboor*, that is the principal church in the city, or where there are most reliques; (15) *Iwan Weliek*, or the high tower of the castle; (16) *Izerkof Philatowa*, or the fine church built by *Philatowa*; (17) The church called *Wassoasenja Borosschak*; (18) *Kodaschewa*, or the place of his Majesty's weavers in linen cloth, on one side of the church; (19) The church of St. *Nicholas*; (20) *Glym Borock*, or the church of *Elias*; (21) *Tugauni*, a church so called from the place it is built in; (22) *Anduanof Monastir*, or the monastery dedicated to *Andronius*; (23) The fine con-

1
2
3
4
7
8

10
11
12
13
14
15

17
19
20
21
18

22
23
24
25
26
27
28
30

1702. vent called *Spas-Novoy*, or of the new Savior; (24) The palace of the cloiſter of *Krutiſch*; (25) *Donsko Monaſtir*, or the convent of the *Donſche*, mother of God: (26) *Spaſa-Novoj Monaſtir*, or the new cloiſter dedicated to our Savior; (27) The convent of *Andrew*; (28) The cloiſter of *Daniel*, called *Daniloſki Monaſtir*; (29) The river of *Moska*; (30) *Worobjowa Gora*, or the hill of *Sparrows*.

Authors miſinformed as to this City.

Some authors will have it that *Moſcow* was formerly as big again as it is now; but upon due enquiry I find it is now greater than ever it was, and that it never ſo abounded with ſtone buildings as it does at preſent, the number of which increaſes every day. This city is in 55 degrees 30 minutes of northern latitude, and is indifferently called *Moſcow*, *Mosko*, *Muskow* and *Moſcua*. It ſtands in the ſouthern parts, and nearly in the center of *Ruſſia*, or of *Muſcovy*, upon the little river of *Moska*, whoſe name it borrows. It is three good leagues in circumference, without the earth-wall, and has twelve gates: (1) That they call *Potroffe Warate*, or the gate of *Potroffe*, a whole ſtreet of the ſame name, and ſtretches away to the *Red-wall* or *Kitai*. (2) The gate of *Meſuite*, which has a ſtreet of the ſame name; theſe two gates which are of ſtone belong to the ſtone-wall. The (3) is called the *Uſtretenſe Bralon*, and is properly no more than a way leading to the gate of the city of that name, for there is no gate on that ſide, in the earth-wall, there is only an opening. The (4) *Petroffe*, where there is a ſtreet the ſame which leads to the city. The (5) *Twerkske*, where there is a ſtreet the ſame. The (6) *Mekitſe*, with a ſtreet the ſame. The (7) *Arbatſe*. The (8) *Preſzikhwetſche*, formerly called *'t Zertelſe*, with a ſtreet alſo. The (9) *Dreſwetſche*, ſituated the

The bigneſs of it.

Its gates.

1702.

CHATEAU DE MOSKOW.

ſame.

1702. same. The (10) *Kaknetske*, upon the river of *Negliene*. The (11) the same. The (12) *Taganse* or *Tanse*, in the same manner.

Having taken this round, I the next day went about the wall of the city itself, called *Beloy Gorod*, and found it was but an hour and half in circumference. Between each of *The wall.* the gates of the city, just now named, there are two towers upon the walls, and between some three. They are square, but by no means fit for cannon, and 400 paces from one another. There are but two gates, between which there are none, where his Majesty has made a garden; so that there is no going quite round by the side of the wall. *Moscow* is divided into four parts, the first of which is the castle or palace *The palace.* called *Viremsgorod*, upon the river *Moska*, which flows to the westward, and falls into the *Ocean*, near the city of *Colomna*, thirty six leagues from *Moscow*, and the *Oeca* falls into the *Wolga*, near *Nisi-Novogorod*, a hundred leagues from *Moscow*. This castle is surrounded with a high stone wall, flanked with several towers, and the plate above is the fine view of it from the side of the river near the great bridge. It has four gates, the *Spakae*, where is the dyal, the *Nikolske*, *Demkamennon-Morlu*, the *Triswalske*, and the *Taynuski*, and is surrounded by a dry ditch down to the river. As there is no cannon in this castle, they fire in the arsenal upon the rejoicing days, and plant some in the bazat or great market-place before the 1702. court. This castle, where the Czar never resides, is built with blocks June 3. of stone, and for the most part pretty dark; but the Patriarch has his abode there, and the courts of justice, called her Prikaes, are held there. The chief Lords of the court had also some houses there, which his Majesty has laid hands on for himself, excepting one. In the midst of the great court, which is surrounded with buildings, you see a tower called *Iwan Welike*, or great *John*, where is the great bell which fell in the fire of 1701, and 1702. split; they pretend it weighs 266666 *Heavy bell.* pounds, of *Dutch* weight, or 8000 poel, each poel 33 pounds of our country; it was founded in the reign of the great Duke *Gudenon*. You go up by 108 steps to the place where it is; these steps are between two towers, and you still see it in the place where it fell; it is of an enormous size, has *Russian* characters on the borders of it, and three heads on one side, in bass relief. You go up 31 steps higher, and *Several* there you have eight other bells *bells.* in the cross pieces of the windows of this tower, and nine others 30 steps above these, hung in the same manner, some bigger than the other, and some two and two, which you get at by wooden ladders, the one of twenty steps, the other of ten. From the top of this tower you see the city with all possible advantage, and the great number of stone churches it is full of; the domes and steeples of some of which being gilt, have a fine effect when the sun shines out; but there is nothing so magnificent as the church of *Sa-* *Church of* *boor*. Besides this, there are many *Saboor.* fine buildings of stone in this city; where they are now at work upon a new arsenal, a great wooden build- *New arse-* ing, before the gate of St. *Nicolas*, *nal.* for the presenting of theatrical pieces. They have even this year sent for comedians from *Dantzick*, who *Comedians.* played some pieces at the hotel of the deceased General *le Fort* this winter; and the *Russians* have al- *Imitated by* ready begun to imitate them, hav- *the Russi-* ing made a little attempt that way, *ans.* no great matter, in truth, as you may imagine; but this is certain of them, they do not want a genius; *Their genius.* besides that they are fond of imitation, let it be good or evil; and when they are made sensible of any fine manners very different from theirs, they frankly confess themselves out done, though, say they, our way is good.

Having thus spoken of this first part of the town, I go on to the second, which nearly covers a fourth

1702. part of the caſtle next to the city. It is called the *Kut Kietay Gorod*, and is in about the midſt of the city in general, and ſurrounded with a high wall of ſtone, called *Kraſnajaſtenna*, or the *red wall*, becauſe it really was of that colour formerly, having been whitened in the reign of the Princeſs *Sophia Alexeſna*, and her younger brothers. The church of St. *Troytſa*, or the *Holy Trinity*, built by an *Italian* architect, and the chief in the city, is within this wall, oppoſite to the caſtle. Here alſo is the great market which daily ſwarms with people, the principal houſes, the merchants warehouſes, and the fineſt ſhops, in particular ſtreets, according to the goods they deal in. The ſame there are, in covered places, for thoſe who ſell cloths, ſtuffs, gold-works, ſilks, furs, and the like. The foreign merchants have alſo their warehouſes there, and go there every day upon the buſineſs of their trade. The artificers and pedlars, or ſmall chapmen, have, like the reſt, ſtreets peculiar to themſelves.

Second part of the town.

The red wall.

Great Church.

Market.

Warehouſes of Merchants.

The third part or diviſion of the town is called *Beloy Gorod*, or the *white wall*. This and the *Kietay Gorod* entirely incloſe the caſtle to the river of *Moska*, and this alſo has its wall. The ſmall river of *Neglina* goes through it, and has on the one ſide the arſenal, and on the other the great *Kabak*, or houſe where brandy is ſold.

The third diviſion of the Town.

The little River of Neglina.

The fourth part or diviſion contained within the earth-wall, is called *Skerodum*, or *made in a hurry*, this wall having been raiſed in a very ſhort time, and eſpecially towards the rivers *Moska* and *Neglina*, to keep out the *Tartars* in the reign of the Czar *Fedor Iwanowitz* in 1584. This Prince was the ſon of the Czar *Ivan Weſſielewitz*, the firſt that aſſumed the title of Czar after he had ſubdued to his empire the kingdoms of *Kaſiernof*, *Caſan*, *Aſtracan* and *Siberia*. The word Czar, which is a native of the *Sclavonic*, ſignifies a King and not an Emperor, as ſome authors would have it; the *Sclavonians* writing the word *Keiſer* or Emperor, *Zeſar* or *Kezar*, and the word *Koning* or King, *Karotie*. The *Germans* are likewiſe miſtaken when they imagine the word *Czarietſe* ſignifies *Keiſerin* or Empreſs; it ſignifies no more than Queen.

Fourth part of the City.

Firſt Czar of Muſcovy.

1702.

Moſt of the ſlabodes or habitations of the *Strelſes*, or military men, are in this part, though they were before wont to be within the circuit of the red and white walls; but the Czar has thought fit to diſlodge them thence on account of their inſolence and frequent mutinies.

Now with regard to buildings, nothing ſurprized me more, than the houſes and rooms they ſell here at market. Theſe houſes or rooms are framed of timbers or trees, which you may take to pieces and carry to where you pleaſe, and ſet them up again preſently. They ſell this ſort of building to the value of one or 200 rubles, each ruble worth five *Dutch* florins, and the rooms in proportion.

Houſes and Rooms ſold at Market.

Beyond the earth-wall you ſee certain ſuburbs, villages and monaſteries, which are all round about the town, ſome of them pretty cloſe and full of people, and ſome of them are even cloſe to the wall. The ſlabode of the *Germans* is not above a mile and half off, and there are many other villages to be ſeen beyond it.

The churches and monaſteries of the city of *Moſcow*, the caſtle, the other diviſions of the city, and near the earth-wall on the outſide are ſo many in number that they reckon no leſs than 679 of them, including chapels. The ſtructure of theſe churches is round like an apple, not as ſome pretend to imitate the vault of Heaven, but to help the chaunt of the Prieſts. Some have imagined the *Ruſſians* attributed a certain virtue to bells, which was ſome how or other agreeable to God; but they are equally miſtaken; they only conſecrate them, and ring them upon holydays before divine ſervice.

Great number of Churches and Monaſteries.

Structure of their Churches.

The monaſteries at *Moſcow* and about it, have different names; there are two of them in the caſtle, the firſt of men, called *Zudoff Monaſtir*,

Monaſteries.

1702. or the monaſtery of miracles, and here they intomb the Czarina's and the Princeſſes; the Czars themſelves lie in another place to be mentioned hereafter. The other of theſe monaſteries in the caſtle is for women, and called *Woſneſenskoi*, or of the aſcenſion of Jeſus Chriſt. There are ſome very rich ones too without the ſtone wall of the city, as *Spaskoi Monaſtir*, or that of the Saviour of the world: *Simonofskoi*, dedicated to a Saint called *Andronius*: *Douskoi*, ſacred to the mother of Chriſt, of whom they tell of miracles performed on the *Don* or *Tanais*: *Danilof*, or that of *Daniel*: *Dewitſe*, or the great monaſtery of maids: *Nooinskoi*, *Slatouſtenskoi*, or that of *Chryſoſtom*: *Iwanofskoi*, or that of St. *John*: *Roſiheſtrumskoi*, or that of the *Incarnation*: *Warſonofskoi*, to a certain Saint of that name; *Satzatoi*, or that of the *Reception*: *Moiſefskoj*, or that of *Moſes*: *Straſnoi*, or the terrible: *Sawiſenskoi*, ſo called from the place where it ſtands: *Stretenskoi*, or that of the meeting: *Mikolaeſkoi*, or that of St. *Nicolas*, with two others of the ſame name, making in all twenty two monaſteries. The ſtreets of the city are almoſt all of them laid with timbers, or wooden bridges, and are not paſſable in ſummer when it rains, for the mud and dirt there always is upon ſuch occaſions. The number of thoſe who keep ſhop in this city, is ſo very great, that they muſt take up with a ſmall place to do their buſineſs in, which they ſhut up when they come home at night, though there are ſome pretty large ſtreets too: There are alſo ſeveral *Prickaes*, courts or offices, the chief of which is that of *Poſſolſe*, for foreign affairs: the *Roſred*, where they keep the regiſter of the *Ruſſian* Nobility, Governors and other Miniſters; the *Dworets* where they keep the accounts of the Czar's houſhold; the *Poſnew*, or regiſter-office for all the lands in *Ruſſia*; and in ſhort, that of the regiſter of the *Strelſes* or ſoldiery, whoſe number has inconſiderably decreaſed ſince the laſt ſedition. All theſe prikaes are built 1702. in ſtone, and are full of writers or clerks, in ſeveral apartments that look more like priſons than any thing elſe; and indeed they are not ſeldom converted to that uſe; for there they keep criminals chained in ſeparate places, and even debtors, who walk about there with irons at their heels. The chief clerks have rooms or offices apart, and in ſome of theſe prikaes they ſit at a long table covered with a red cloth like the hangings of rooms. The regiſters of the offices of thoſe who had the charge of foreign affairs, is kept in that of *Moſens*. Thoſe of the lands of the kingdoms of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, and the provinces thereunto annexed, in that they call *Kaſans d'Woores*. A new office has been erected for the admiralty called *Ruſchewne*, where they keep a regiſter of the arms. The apothecary is in *Apothecary.* the ſame place, as well as the regiſter of the names of the goldſmiths in his Majeſty's ſervice, and who receive their pay there. The regiſters of the beſt part of the revenues of the ſtate are in the *Bolſchaia Kaeſna*. The nobility, and the commiſſioners or chief clerks, have their trials in thoſe of *Soednoi Wolodinerskoi*, and *Sudnoi Moskoſskoi*. The duties of the ſeals are paid into that of *Petſutnoi*, and are there regiſter'd. All the religious houſes are ſubject to the prikaes of the monaſteries, and ſpiritual cauſes are adjudged in that of the patriarch, *(viz.)* all caſes of marriage, inheritances, arbitrations, diſputes in families, adulteries and the like. That of *Jamskoi* is the office for regiſtring of the carmen or drivers, imployed every year in his Majeſty's ſervice. When I was at *Moſcow*, theſe eighteen prikaes were all kept in the caſtle, but without there were alſo ſeveral others, as that of *Puſchkariſch* for the regiſtring of canon; the *Sibierſch* for the affair of *Siberia*; the *Rosboina*, where they try for murders and other crimes. The head of theſe prikaes is generally one of the chief favorites, and one of the firſt officers of ſtate, whom

1702. whom the Czar inveſts with this dignity by favour, or in reward for ſervices. It is a ſtep alſo towards the very higheſt employs, which are thoſe of *Boyard*, or Counſellors of ſtate, who cannot more aptly be compared than with the Grandees of *Spain*, and the Peers of *France*; thoſe of *Okolnitſches*, who are thoſe that wait on the Czar when he goes out; of the *Doemnie Dworens*, or noble Counſellors; of the *Doemnie Diack*, or Secretaries of the Council; of the *Stoliniks*, or Officers of his Majeſty's table; of the *Worenes*, or Officers of the court; and of the *Schilſi*, an office ſomewhat inferior. The firſt of the Nobility, and thoſe who have the honour to be related to the Czarina, are raiſed to be Spalnicks, or Gentlemen of the bedchamber: After theſe follow the ſtewards, the carvers, the cup-bearers, and ſo on. His Majeſty, ſince his return from the *Low-Countries*, has created an order of Knighthood under the patronage of St. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, wherewith he has already honoured five Gentlemen. The Count *Fewdor Alexewitz Gollowin*, Boyard, firſt Miniſter of State, and high Admiral; *Hetman*, the great General of the *Coſſacs*; Mr. *Printz*, Embaſſador extraordinary from the King of *Pruſſia*; the General Velt-marſhal *Boris*, and *Petrowitz Czeremetof*; to theſe he made a preſent of the croſs of St. *Andrew*, with the image of that Saint, ſet in diamonds. To the grandeur of this court we may add, that the Prince is a Monarch abſolute over all his ſubjects, that his will is the law, that he may diſpoſe of the lives and poſſeſſions of all his people from the loweſt to the higheſt; in ſhort, that his power extends itſelf alſo to things ſacred, and that he may model the divine ſervice, juſt as the fancy takes him, which is what other crown'd heads forbear to meddle with, for fear of provoking the clergy.

Officers of ſtate.

Order of St. Andrew.

The Czar an abſolute Monarch.

Puniſhments. Having thus ſpoken of the rewards beſtowed upon merit, and thoſe who acquit themſelves handſomely of their duty, either in peace or in war, and have the adminiſtration of public affairs, we will now take ſome notice of the puniſhments inflicted on crimes. The moſt ſevere and dreadful is that of the flames; to which purpoſe they erect a little ſquare wooden houſe, which they load with ſtraw within and without; in this the criminal is ſhut up when his ſentence is pronounced, they then apply the fire, and the unhappy party is preſently ſtifled and reduced to aſhes. They behead with an ax upon a block, and hang as elſewhere. They alſo bury alive up to the ſhoulders, as has already been noted. Now all theſe executions are performed with ſuch ſilence, that when they happen at one end of the town, the other knows nothing of the matter. As for thoſe who are judged to be not quite worthy of death, they puniſh them with the knoet, a great leather thong or whip with which they ſtrike ſo furiouſly upon the bare back, as ſometimes to put an end to life. Their way of giving this puniſhment is pretty odd; for the executioner pitching upon the man who ſeems to be the ſtrongeſt and moſt robuſt of the ſtanders-by, mounts the criminal upon his back, with his arms over the man's ſhoulders, and meeting upon his breaſt: he then ties his feet, and one of his aſſiſtants taking him by the hair of the head, he gives him the number of ſtrokes he is doomed to have, which when well applied, never fail to take off the ſkin. Drubbing with a ſtick is for leſſer crimes; they in this caſe lay the criminal flat upon his belly, one ſits upon his head, and another upon his heels, while the ſentence is executed. When they torture for confeſſion, they hang the criminal up, and ſtrike him with the aforeſaid knoet, and then draw a red hot iron over the wounds he has received: but the moſt cruel of all tortures is when they ſhave the crown of the head, and drop cold water upon it. The puniſhment of inſolvent debtors, or of ſuch as can and will not ſatisfy their creditors is thus: they expoſe them without the Prikaes, and at ſeveral times give them

Burning.

Beheading and hanging.

Burying alive.

Whipping.

Drubbing.

Torture.

The puniſhment of debtors.

1702. them three ſtrokes of a cudgel on the ſide of the legs. Thoſe who are indebted to the amount of 100 rubles, or 500 florins, are ſerved in this manner every day for a month together, and thoſe whoſe debts fall ſhort of that ſum, are puniſhed in proportion. And when after all this, they cannot clear themſelves, they make an appraiſement of all they have, and deliver it to the creditors; and in ſhort, if this will not do, they deliver up them, their wives, and children, to the creditors to make them amends by ſervice; for which ſervice they wipe off but five rubles a year for a man, and the half of it for a woman, becauſe they muſt both feed and cloath them; and thus it is that they muſt remain in the ſtate of ſervice till the laſt penny is paid.

They ſay *Moſcow* is in the center and beſt part of *Muſcovy*, 120 leagues from the frontiers all around; 86 from thoſe of *Poland*, and 460 from the empire of *Perſia*, or the town of *Tarku*, which is under the *Muſcovite* on this ſide the *Caſpian*, allowing each league to be equal to an hour. From *Moſcow* alſo to the laſt frontier place belonging to the Czar in *Siberia*, or to the river of *Argoen*, which divides the dominions of this Prince from thoſe of the Cham of *China*, 7600 werſts, or 1320 leagues, and from thence to *Pekin*, the capital of *China*, 2500 werſts, as I have been told by the Sieur *Everhard Isbrants*, who travelled this journey in quality of Envoy from *Ruſſia*. As for *Muſcovy* in general, what the *Latins* call *Ruſſia*, *Nigra*, or *Rubra*, *Black* or *Red Ruſſia*, and ſometimes the *Leſſer Ruſſia*, that is in the ſouthern parts of *Poland* between *Poleſia*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, *Tranſilvania* and *Hungary*; while *Ruſſia* is to the northward of the *Red*, and is the largeſt country in *Europe*, lying between the *Jey* ſea, the river of *Jaick*, the *Caſpian* ſea, a part of the *Wolga*, the *Crim* or *Precopian Tartary*, the *Nieper* or *Boryſthenes*, the great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, *Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, *Ingria*, *Sweden*, and the *Swediſh Lapland*. Its chief cities are *Moſcow*, *Wolodimet*, *Novogorod*, *Smolensko*, *Caſan*, *Bulgar*, *Aſtracan*, *Wologda*, *Plekow*, *Reſan*, *Jeroſlaw*, *Pereſlaw*, *Archangel*, and St. *Nicholas*. In the year 1533, this empire of *Ruſſia* was under the Great Duke or Czar *Iwan*, or *John Baſilowitz*, an horrible tyrant, who died in the year 1584. His ſon *Fedor* or *Theodore Iwanowitz*, ſucceeded him that ſame year, and died in the year 1598. *Boris Goudenon* poſſeſſed himſelf of the crown, and died ſuddenly in the year 1605. He was ſucceeded by his ſon *Fedor Boriſſowiſz Gudenon*, who reigned but three months, and was put to death by the falſe *Demetrius* in 1606. He uſurped the throne, and was burnt by the *Ruſſians* after he had reigned a year. He was ſucceeded by *Baſil Zuski*, whom his ſubjects delivered up to the *Poles*, and died in the year 1610. Prince *Uladiſlaus*, the ſon of *Sigiſmond* King of *Poland*, reigned in his ſtead, and in the year 1613. *Michalowitz*, or *Michael Federowitz* of *Romanof*, ſeized on the ſcepter, and reigned till the year 1645. He was ſucceeded by his ſon *Alexius Michalowitz*, who died the 29th of *January* 1676. *Fedor Alexewitz* appeared in his place, and died the 27th of *April* 1682, without iſſue. The *Ruſſians* ſoon after elected his brother *Peter Alexewitz*, and a faction againſt him crowned his brother *Ivan Alexewitz* the ſame year, whom they made a partner in the throne with him. He died on the 29th of *January* 1696.

1702. *Chief cities of* Muſcovy.

Situation of Muſcovy.

Czars of Muſcovy.

They reckon here but eleven Patriarchs down to the year 1700 (1) *Joff*, (2) *Germogen*, (3) *Ignatius*, whom, however, they do not reckon among the reſt, becauſe he was a *Roman Catholic* under the pretender *Demetrius*, (4) *Philaret*, (5) *Joſaff*, (6) *Joſſiff*, (7) *Nikon*, (8) *Joſaph*, (9) *Peſterim*, (10) *Joachim*, (11) *Advan*; ſince whom no one has been choſen to this day.

Patriarchs.

In the year 1689, there were 44 *Boyars* or Counſellors of State, of the following families, (2) of the Family

Counſellors of State.

1702. ly of the *Zerkaſſes*, (3) of that of the *Galithens*, (1) of the *Odoeſkoy*, (3) of the *Ptoſorefskoy*, (5) of the *Sollickowes*, (3) of the *Wruſorey*, (3) of the *Czeremetof*, (1) of the *Dolgoruki*, (1) of the *Bonodanofski*, (1) of the *Trokurof*, (1) of the *Repum*, (1) of the *Wolenskoy*, (1) of the *Koſlofskoy*, (1) of the *Berantenskoy*, (1) of the *Tzerbatof*, (2) of the *Golowins*, (1) of the *Scheyn*, (2) of the *Bakurlino*, (1) of the *Puskin*, (1) of the *Chilkoff*, (1) of the *Stueſchnoff*, (1) of the *Sabakim*, (2) of the *Miloſlafskoj*, (2) of the *Nariulkuns*, (1) of the *Sokoffmus*, (1) of the *Tuſchkoff*, (1) of the *Matunskin*. Theſe ſerve the Czar in his councils, and have the public Adminiſtration of affairs.

The Czar's forces. The troops this Prince commonly keeps on foot amount to 46 or 50 thouſand, beſides ſome regiments of horſe and lances, who are paid out of the royal treaſury, and receive an annual ſtipend in money, in corn and in other neceſſaries. In times of war they ſummon the whole body of the *Ruſſian* Nobility, a potent body, which they compute at 200000, including their ſervants, many of theſe Gentlemen coming attended with 10, and others with 20 perſons, and the leſs conſiderable with two or three.

The revenues of Ruſſia. The principal revenues of *Ruſſia*, which have been already mentioned, ariſe from the skins and furs, corn, leather, aſhes, hemp, matts, tar, tallow and the like. A great ſum ariſes alſo from the *Kabaks*, which are houſes belonging to the Czar, and where they ſell brandy, beer, and mead. The cuſtoms inward amount alſo to a conſiderable deal. From *Archangel* they tranſport into foreign countries *Caviar*, and iſinglaſs, which is the bladder of the ſturgeon, and is taken in quantities at *Aſtracan* and other places on the *Volga*. This ſame iſinglaſs is uſed for the fining down of wine, and 1702. makes a good glue. It is alſo of uſe in dying.

Length of the days and nights. I think it may not be amiſs here to give you the length of the days and nights in *Ruſſia*. The equinox falls out upon the eighth of *September*, and makes the days and nights equal. Upon the *twenty fourth* the day is 11 hours and the night 13. Upon the *tenth* of *October* the day is 10 hours and the night 14. Upon the *twenty ſixth* the day is 9 hours and the night 15. Upon the *eleventh* of *November* the day is 8 hours and the night 16. Upon the *twenty ſeventh* the day is 7 hours and the night 17. Upon the *twelfth* of *December* the days begin to lengthen. Upon the *firſt* of *January* the day is 8 hours and the night 16. Upon the *ſeventeenth* the day is 9 hours and the night 15. Upon the *ſecond* of *February* the day is 10 hours and the night 14. Upon the *eighteenth* the day is 11 hours and the night 13. Upon the *ſixth* of *March* the vernal equinox makes the day and night equal. Upon the *twenty ſecond* the day is 13 hours and the night 11. Upon the *ſeventh* of *April* the day is 14 hours and the night 10. Upon the *twenty third* the day is 15 hours and the night 9. Upon the *ninth* of *May* the day is 16 hours and the night 8. Upon the *twenty fifth* the day is 17 hours and the night 7. Upon the *twelfth* of *June* the days begin to ſhorten. Upon the *ſixth* of *July* the day is 16 hours and the night 8. Upon the *twenty ſecond* the day is 15 hours and the night 9. Upon the *firſt* of *Auguſt* the day is 14 hours and the night 10. Upon the *twenty third* the day is 13 hours and the night 11. Then comes the autumnal equinox and makes the day and night equal again.

1702. 1702.

CHAP. X.

Change of Faſhions and Manners in Ruſſia. *Triumphal Arches raiſed at* Moſcow. *The Czar's Triumphant Entry for the taking of* Notteburgh.

Changes brought into the Empire.

TIME has wrought great changes in this Empire, and eſpecially ſince the Czar's return from his travels. He immediately altered the faſhion of dreſs, as well with regard to the men as to the women, and particularly with regard to thoſe who had dependance on the Court, or enjoyed any office there, not excepting one ſoul, not even children; and the *Ruſſian* merchants and others dreſs ſo as not to be diſtinguiſhed from the people of our country. The ſame year an order was publiſhed, forbidding all *Ruſſians* to appear out of doors, without a coat of the *Poliſh* faſhion, or being dreſſed after our manner. The ſervants to ſtrangers were the firſt that were compelled to this; for if they did not comply, they were ſure to be taken from behind the ſledges, and pay a fine before they had their liberty again; but this did not affect the peaſants and people in the country. As this great alteration may in time blot out the remembrance of the ancient dreſs of the country, I painted the dreſs of the Ladies upon canvaſs, and have given a ſide view of it, that you may the better diſtinguiſh the ornaments behind the head. This you have in N° 13, and the whole figure in N° 14.

Change of faſhions in dreſs.

It muſt be obſerved that to have the hair uncovered is the ſign of a maid; it would be a kind of infamy for a married woman not to have hers covered. Theſe have a fur cap upon the head, flat at top, and round at bottom, pointed round in form of a crown and inriched with precious ſtones as well at top as bottom. It is a little longer behind than before, and has two points; this cap is called *Tryoegh*.

The ornament upon the head of the young Ladies here repreſented is alſo in form of a crown, or diadem rather, ſet off with pearls, and diamonds, and called *Perewaske*. Some tye a ribbon to it, which they call *Swirtske*; what they wear about there neck *Oſarelje*, and the earrings *Sergé*. The upper garment lined with furs, is called *Soebe*, the garment beneath *Telagree* or *Serrataen*; the ſhift *Roebaćtis*; the ſleeves of which are ſo wide and ſo plaited that they take up ſixteen or ſeventeen ells of cloth. The bracelets or ornaments for the arms, which fall upon their hands, are called *Sarokavie*. Their ſtockings, which are not to tye up, *Zoelki*; and their ſlippers, which are either red or yellow, with very high and ſharp heels, *Baſmakje*.

Beards cut off.

Beſides this alteration in dreſs the *Ruſſians* were obliged to ſhave the face, all but the upper lip, and thoſe about the court, as well as ſome others, do not even ſpare that. That this order might be executed to the utmoſt, there were perſons imployed to cut off the beards of all manner of perſons without diſtinction; this ſeemed ſo very ſevere to ſome that they offered to dazzle the eyes of thoſe, who had this extraordinary commiſſion, with money; but to no purpoſe, for they immediately met with others who would give them no ſort of quarter. And this was even done at the Czar's table, and every where elſe, to people even of the very firſt quality; nor it is to be conceived what grief it cauſed; many there were who could not be comforted for the loſs of their beards; their beards which they had worn ſo long, and looked on as marks of honour and diſtinction; numbers there were who would

1702. would have given any thing in the world to have been free from the power of this deſtructive law.

Alterations in dreſs however have not been ſo very extraordinary among the women, excepting among the higher ſort, who dreſs juſt as the women do with us.

But to effect all this thoroughly at the beginning, it was neceſſary to ſend for hats, ſhoes, and the like, from beyond-ſea; but as this was both inconvenient and chargeable, the *Ruſſians* began to imitate thoſe things, ill enough, as you may believe in the beginning; but they did better afterwards when they had once got workmen from abroad to inſtruct them a little; for as we have already ſaid, they are good at imitation, and love to learn.

Regulations concerning beggars Good regulations were alſo made concerning beggars, who uſed to be about the ſtreets in ſuch numbers, both men and women, that you was alſo ſurrounded with them if you but ſtept into a ſhop to buy any thing at *Moſcow*. But what is worſe thieves uſed to mix with them, to have the opportunity of cutting a purſe or picking a pocket, things which a *Ruſſian* conſcience knows how to digeſt with great eaſe. The Czar reſolving to put a ſtop to theſe things ordered that no beggar ſhould preſume to ask for alms in the ſtreets, and that no one ſhould preſume to give them any thing, under a forfeiture of five rubles or 25 florins. But that the poor might have ſome ſubſiſtence, hoſpitals were erected for them not far from each church as well within as without *Moſcow*, which the Czar endowed with an annual income. And thus were people delivered from a terrible inconvenience; for there was no ſtirring out of a church without being perſecuted by theſe wretches from one end of the ſtreet to the other: And it produced ſtill another good effect, for many of theſe beggars bethought them of working for fear of being locked up in an hoſpital; for beggars naturally hate work, nor can indure to have begging thought

Hoſpitals for beggars

ſhameful; which juſt puts me in mind of a ſtory which I muſt tell. 1702.

A ſtory of a young beggar. There came one day a young man to the houſe where I lodged, to ask charity of a merchant who hapned to lodge there. The merchant asked him why he did not rather chuſe to work for his bread, or get into ſome ſervice. The young beggar anſwered he did not know how to work, having never been taught to do any thing, and that as for going to ſervice there was nobody would take him. The merchant upon this obſerving him to have a good honeſt face, aſked him if he would come and ſerve him, if he would do it with diligence, and if he could get any body to anſwer for his fidelity; for it is quite neceſſary, and very common in this country, to require ſecurity from ſervants, for if you have it not, you have no remedy to reſort to if you are robbed. The poor lad anſwered he knew nobody that would be bound for him but God, whom he called to witneſs that he would ſerve him honeſtly. The merchant was ſatisfied with this, took him into his ſervice, and he proved a faithful ſervant; but it hapning that the young fellow grew a little too great with a ſervant maid, and he getting her with child, it was no ſooner confirmed to her, than ſhe told him of it, and ſince he had brought her to ſhame, he was ſeriouſly adviſed to marry her. He had no great mind to this, becauſe ſhe was an overmatch for him in years, but being urged to keep his promiſe with her, and others aſking him if he thought to juſtify his conduct with his ſecurity, [meaning God] he confeſſed he ſhould be put to it ſo to do, and promiſed to marry the woman. He did ſo, and began a little trade with what he had ſaved in his maſter's ſervice, and he thrived ſo well that he keeps now one of the top woollen-drapers ſhops in *Moſcow*, and is reckoned to be worth above 30,000 livers. His wife is ſtill with him and they live very well together; but as ſhe is upwards of *ſixty* and the children he had of her are dead,

1702. he would fain perſuade her to let him maintain her in a convent, that ſo he might have the propagation and enjoyment of a new family, which he might without any infringement of the laws of *Ruſſia*, but he has not as yet been able to prevail on her.

Alterations in the offices. Theſe alterations have even affected the publick offices, where all writings are now performed after our manner. The Czar has this much at heart, as well as every thing elſe that may be for the good, welfare and ſecurity of the ſtate, where nothing is done without his participation, every thing goes through his hands. He has with extreme diligence already fortified *Novogorod*, *Places fortified.* *Pleskow*, *Aſoph*, *Smolensko*, *Kieof*, and *Archangel*; and notwithſtanding the vaſt expence of all this, he has been ſo good a manager that he has ſtill *Treaſury of the ſtate.* 300,000 rubles in his coffers; this he told me himſelf, and I had it afterwards from ſeveral others; and that after having provided for all the expences of the war, for the building of ſhips, and all the other exigences *The expence of ſhip building raiſed upon the public.* of the ſtate. It is true indeed with regard to the building of ſhips, that is at the publick expence, every thouſand of the peaſants being obliged to bring in all that is neceſſary for building of a ſhip, and every thing relating thereto. Theſe peaſants are either the vaſſals of this Prince or of ſome Lords, or gentlemen, or monaſteries, which laſt have great numbers of them, and particularly that of *Trooytz*, as has already been ſaid.

And thus the ſubjects of this Prince have great reaſon to pray to God to preſerve him, and to bleſs his reign, that they may draw nearer and nearer to the knowledge of ſuch things as may be of uſe and benefit to them. And great reaſon they have to hope they ſhall, for the *Fine qualities of the young hereditary Prince.* young Heir to this Empire, now is but 14 years old, who, young as he is, treads already in the footſteps of his father, and gives great ſigns of underſtanding and genius; he takes notice of every thing, is very inquiſitive, and is of a fine diſpoſition; nor is the Czar unmindful to cultivate all this in him, taking a moſt particular care of his education, and, among other points, making him learn *Latin* and *German*. 1702.

Upon the *fourteenth* of *September*, Swediſh 800 *Swediſh* priſoners, men, women *Priſoners.* and children, were brought into this city, and many of them were ſold for 3 or 4 florins a head, ſoon after they raiſed the price to 20 or 30. This incouraged the ſtrangers to buy ſome of them, to the great good luck of theſe poor people, it being their intention to keep them no longer than the war laſted, and then to give them their liberty. The *Ruſſians* alſo bought ſeveral, but miſerable was the lot of thoſe who fell into the hands of the *Tartars*, who carried them off into ſlavery, a moſt deplorable circumſtance.

Upon the *twentieth*, news was Notte- brought that *Notteburgh* had been *burgh taken.* taken by his Majeſty's arms, and that the place had ſurrendred upon certain conditions, after it had ſuſtained three aſſaults, and upon the *twenty third* they ſung *Te Deum* upon this occaſion.

Towards the end of this month it began to ſnow, and in the beginning of *October* it froze, but nothing came of it, it rained ſoon after, as it had to our great inconvenience for a long while before.

A great number of merchantmen *Ships at* arrived this year at *Archangel*; they *Archangel.* reckoned no leſs than 154, *viz.* 66 *Engliſhmen*, under the convoy of 4 men of war, as many *Dutchmen*, under the convoy of three, 16 *Hamburghers*, 4 *Danes*, and one *Bremener*. The truth is there were ſeveral ſmall ſhips among the *Engliſh*, whoſe cargoe was no great matter.

In the middle of *November* the river of *Yuſa* was frozen over behind our ſlabode, and ſeveral of the *Dutch* and ſome of the *Ruſſians* ſkated over it, no ſnow having as yet fallen. I had got a hand-ſledge made after the manner of our country, and I took this opportunity to divert a young Lady upon the ice with it,

1702. a ſight they had never ſeen before. This was the ſecond time I had had ſkates on for 32 years before, and I found a man does not eaſily forget what he has once well learned; but this was a ſhort-lived diverſion, ſnow falling the next day.

An office burnt. Upon the *twenty-fourth*, the *Prikaes* or office of *Poloſske*, in the caſtle, was reduced to aſhes, and cauſed a great conſternation.

In the beginning of *December*, word came that the Czar was arrived at the town of *Peſchik*, 90 werſts from *Moſcow*; from thence he came to *Salnikof*, a country-houſe belonging to Prince *Lofreilis*, his uncle, 30 werſts from this capital, from thence to *Nikoolskie* at the houſe of the *Knez Mighalo Sakoliets Serkaske*, Governor of *Siberia*, but 7 werſts from this city.

Preparations for the Czar's entry. Every thing was then got ready for his Majeſty's entry; and moſt of the foreign merchants had orders to provide themſelves with a greater number of horſes than uſual, with a ſervant, dreſſed in the *German* faſhion, to conduct the artillery that had been taken from the *Swedes*. The foreign Miniſters, our Reſident, and the *Engliſh* Conſul, and ſome of the merchants, went the next day to pay their compliments to the Czar at *Nikoolskie*, and returned the next day in the morning, which was the *fourth*, and the day this Prince was to make his entry. *Triumphal arches.* To this purpoſe there had been prepared triumphal arches of wood in the ſtreet of *Meeſniets*, the firſt in the red-wall oppoſite to the *Greek* monaſtery, near the printing-houſe, and the houſe of the Velt-Marſhal *Czeremetof*, the ſecond in the white-wall, near the Admiralty office, about 400 paces from the other. The ſtreets and the fields were full of people to ſee this ſolemnity, and I croſſed the town, and went out of it to ſee the beginning of the fight. When I came I found there was a ſtop, to put things in order, and that the Czar was buſy about it in perſon, and being on foot I drew near to him to pay him my compliments and congratulate him upon his return: He thanked me, and embraced me, and ſeemed to be pleaſed I was ſtill in his dominions. He then took me by the hand and told me, *He would ſhew me ſome ſhips colours, and that he gave me leave to draw whatever I would.* While I was ſo doing, a certain *Ruſſian* Lord, attended by ſome ſervants, came and took the paper out of my hand, and called a *German* officer to know what I was about; but when he underſtood I was at work by the order of the Czar, he gave it me back again, and I made an end of my work, which it had been impoſſible for me to have done without his Majeſty's leave. 1702.

Triumphant entry. This entry was made in the following order; firſt came the regiment of guards conſiſting of 800 men, and commanded by Colonel *de Ridder*, a *German* by birth. One half of this body was cloathed in ſcarlet, in the *German* manner, the other in the *Ruſſian*, becauſe there had not been time enough to finiſh their new cloaths. The *Swediſh* priſoners as well ſoldiers as peaſants walked between two, three abreaſt, and were divided into ſeven bands, each of about 80 or 84 perſons, making in all about 580 men, between three companies of ſoldiers. After theſe came two fine led-horſes, and a company of granadiers in green lined with red, in the *German* faſhion, except that they had bear-ſkin caps inſtead of hats; theſe were the firſt granadier-guards, and after theſe came ſix halberdiers, five hautboys and ſix officers. Then came the royal regiment of *Probroſensko*, 400 of them new cloathed after the *German* manner, in green lined with red and white-laced hats; with the Czar and Prince *Alexander* at the head of them, preceded by nine *German* flutes, and ſome fine led-horſes. This regiment was followed by a party of that of *Semenoskie*, his Majeſty's guards alſo, in blue lined with red, and after theſe came the colours taken from the *Swedes*. Firſt two ſtandards followed by a

1702. great flag which had been diſplayed upon the caſtle of *Notteburgh*, carried by four ſoldiers; and then ſix ſhips colours, and 25 enſigns, blue, green, yellow and red, each carried by two ſoldiers. Moſt of theſe enſigns had two golden lyons, and a crown at top. After theſe came 40 pieces of cannon, ſome drawn by four, ſome by ſix horſes of a colour, four great mortars, 15 great braſs field-pieces little and big; then another mortar, and then very long and heavy braſs cannon, ſome drawn by ſix and ſome by eight horſes. After theſe came a great cheſt of kitchen utenſils, ten ſledges with fire-arms, three drums, and another ſledge with ſmiths-tools, and a great pair of bellows. Then came the officers that were priſoners, about forty in number, walking each of them between two ſoldiers, and then ſome ſledges with the ſick and wounded, followed by ſome of the *Ruſſian* ſoldiers, cloſed up the march. It was one in the afternoon when they entred the city; and having paſſed the gate of *Twerskie* which is to the *northward*, they advanced up to the firſt triumphal arch, and the regiment of guards went through, and here the Czar halted a good quarter of an hour, to refreſh himſelf and receive the congratulations of the clergy. As the ſtreet here was pretty broad the triumphal piece erected was compoſed of three arches, a large one in the middle, and a ſmall one on each ſide, and was ſo covered with tapeſtry, pictures, figures and devices that there was no ſeeing the wooden work, with a balcony at the top where were eight young muſicians, two and two, moſt ſumptuouſly dreſſed. The great arch was crowned with an eagle and trophies of colours and the like; and the houſes near it were alſo hung with carpets, tapeſtry, and pictures; the balconies were full of ſtreamers, muſicians and all ſorts of inſtruments accompanied by an organ, which made moſt delightful harmony. The ſtreets were ſtrewed with green branches and other verdure in this place, where was a great number of the Nobility. The Princeſs, his Majeſty's ſiſter, the Czarina and the Princeſſes her daughters, attended by a great number of *Ruſſian* and foreign Ladies were a little beyond, at the houſe of the Sieur *Iakof Waſſieliof Feuderof*, to ſee the ſhow. The Czar having ſaluted the Princeſſes, advanced on to the ſecond arch, adorned like the firſt, and having in this order marched through the city, he went out at the gate of *Meeſnietſe*, and proceeded towards the ſlabode of the *Germans*, where being arrived, the *Dutch* Reſident made him an offer of wine, but he choſe beer, and I had the honour to preſent him a glaſs of it. He drank but a little of it, and went on to *Probroſensko*; but night coming upon him, as he was going out of the ſlabode, he mounted his horſe and there was an end of the ſhow. Tho' there flocked together an unſpeakable number of the people upon this occaſion, there hapned no miſchief that I know of; every thing went on orderly and quietly, to the ſatisfaction of every body, tho' the ſtreets were full of ſcaffolds. 1702.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Conſecration of the Palace of Iſmeelhoff. *Preſents carried thither. A* French *Surgeon killed. Cuſtoms with regard to Births, Funerals and Marriages, even among the Foreigners.*

UPON the *twelfth* of this month the Czar came unexpectedly to dine, at ten in the morning, with the Sieur *Lups*, juſt arrived from *Archangel.* I went, without knowing his Majeſty was there, to wiſh that merchant joy of his return: the Czar had only two *Ruſſian* Noblemen with him, and having had a ſight of me, he ordered me in to him, and I took the opportunity to preſent him with ſome verſes I had made upon the taking of *Notteburgh*, deſiring him to excuſe their Imperfections, in conſideration I was no poet, and to look on them only as the effects of my zeal for his honour, and joy for his victories. He received them very graciouſly, made me ſit down, and ordered me to give the Sieur *Lups* an account of his entry, which I did to his full ſatisfaction, and having drank ſome bumpers to a continuation of ſucceſſes, his Majeſty went away at two in the afternoon.

The Author congratulates the Czar upon his conqueſts.

Upon the *nineteenth* I had orders from the Empreſs to carry the young Princeſſes pictures, I had painted a ſecond time, to the palace of *Iſmeelhoff.* They went from *Moſcow* juſt at the inſtant I did, and had but juſt ſtept out of the coach when I came. The Empreſs's brother and ſome prieſts waited to introduce them in proceſſion into the palace, which having fallen to ruin was rebuilt this ſummer; and this was the day it was to be conſecrated before the court came to live in it My orders were to ſtop in the firſt apartments, where I found ſeveral Ladies of the Court. The floor was covered with hay, and on the right hand there was a large table on which were both ſmall and great loaves, upon ſome of which there was an handful of ſalt, and on others a ſilver ſalt-ſeller full. It is the cuſtom of this country that the relations and friends of ſuch as are going to live in a new houſe, ſhould, in ſome ſort, conſecrate it with ſalt, and that for ſeveral days together; which they mean alſo as a token of the proſperity they wiſh the parties, and that they may never want the neceſſaries of life: And even thoſe that remove from one houſe to another, leave hay and bread upon the ground of the houſe they go out of, to expreſs the bleſſings they wiſh on thoſe who are to come to live in it after them. The rooms of the apartment where I ſtopped were hung, above the doors and windows, with 17 different pictures in the *Greek* manner, repreſenting their principal ſaints, whom they commonly have in the firſt room, nor are they wanting in others. The Empreſs's brother was at the end of this room, accompanied by ſome prieſts ſtanding with books before them, and ſinging of hymns; and while they were about this, which laſted a good hour and a half, her Imperial Majeſty was in an inner apartment next but one; and the ceremony being over I was carried into another room where this Princeſs came, and having an interpreter by my ſide I wiſhed her all ſorts of proſperity. She took me by the hand and ſaid, *She would ſhew me ſome other apartments*, which was a ſurprizing courteſy in a perſon of her high rank. She then ordered one of her maids to fill me out a little gold cup of brandy, which

Conſecration of the palace.

The Author congratulates the Empreſs upon her coming into a new palace.

1702. which ſhe preſented to me herſelf, and then did me the honour to give me her hand to kiſs, as did alſo the three young Princeſſes then preſent; after which ſhe diſmiſſed me with orders to come again in three days time.

The Author's preſent to the Empreſs.

As the *Chriſtmas* Holydays were coming on, I took the liberty to preſent the Empreſs with a picture I had drawn of the birth of Chriſt, together with ſome beads I had brought from *Jeruſalem*, and prayed her to accept of them inſtead of bread and ſalt. She ſeemed to be very much pleaſed at this, and thanking me, made me a preſent in her turn; and as I had alſo brought beads for the young Princeſſes, ſhe ordered me to carry them to them myſelf. I did ſo, and finding them at table in another room, and having made them my preſent, I returned again to the Empreſs; but one of them followed me to her mother, and preſented me with a ſmall cup of brandy, and then gave me a great glaſs of wine; upon which I withdrew, with returns of my moſt humble thanks.

Upon the *twenty fifth* the *Ruſſians* celebrated the feaſt of *Chriſtmas*, according to their rites, and the Czar began his round of viſits to his friends as he had done the year before.

We had very wet weather till the end of the year, which had made the ways ſo bad, that the merchants and others from *Archangel* and other places, were five or ſix days longer upon the road than uſual; ſuch a winter had not been known for many years before. But upon the beginning of *January*, the weather changed all at once, it cleared up, and began to freeze in good earneſt. The *firſt* day of this year was taken up in preparing for a fire-work to be played for the taking of *Notteburgh*; it was upon the ſide of the river *Moska*, behind the caſtle, in a place called the royal mead, the graſs or hay of which is according to antient cuſtom, carried upon a certain day into the churches. This fire-work did not differ from the former in any thing but the figures and devices.

1703. *Fire-works for the taking of* Notteburgh.

The next day the Czar came to Mr. *Brants*, attended by 200 perſons, who were all entertained in a room below, with the ſound of trumpets and kettle-drums. Here, among other things, was ſhewn a ſword of prodigious ſize, five foot and half long, and three inches and half broad in the ſheath; it was well proportioned, and weighed 30 pounds. I deſired the perſon whoſe it was, to draw it, and found it was waved on each ſide; the blade however was pretty light, and ſerviceable, in proportion to the hilt. When it was in the ſcabbard and the point upon the ground, it was as much as a man of good ſtrength could do to poiſe it with one hand; but three of us, one after the other, did it, without flattering the gentleman it belonged to, who was the ſon of the laſt Governor of *Aſtracan*, called *Petrofski*, who was put to death by the *Strelitſes* or ſoldiers, who threw him down from the top of a tower. This ſon of his was but a child when this hapned; and yet they were ſo cruel as to hang him up by the heels, and ſuffer him ſo to hang for 48 hours together; which ſo ſpoiled his feet that it made him a cripple, and obliges him to have ſhoes of a particular make, and crutches to enable him to walk.

1703. *The Czar viſits Mr.* Brants. *An extraordinary ſword.* *Barbarous uſage and miraculous deliverance*

Towards the evening there appeared one to repreſent the Patriarch, habited in a pontifical mantle, and ſinging to the ſound of a bell. This was a ſignal to depart, and the Czar immediately went his way, with all his train to make an end of his viſits. Upon the *ſixth* of this month they kept the *Twelfth-day* in the manner they had the year before; but it is to be obſerved there were not ſo many churchmen as before, nor ſo great a number of the fine caps or mitres we mentioned; ſo that there is reaſon to believe time will make ſome notable changes in this anniverſary ſolemnity. Upon the *twentieth* the Czar ſent an order to the chief of the *Ruſſian* Noblemen, Ladies and others to the number of 300, to be at *Iſmeelhoff* at nine in the morning. The ſame had been

Arrival of the perſon who repreſented the Patriarch. *Twelfth-day.*

1703. communicated to the foreign miniſters, merchants, and their wives; ſo that there was an appearance of about 500 perſons, and it had been expreſly recommended to every body to come with a preſent for the Czarina to be given her at the time of congratulation. Theſe preſents conſiſt uſually in curious toys of gold and ſilver, pretty medals, and ſuch like things, according to the abilities and inclinations of the donor; but before they are preſented, they are regiſtered with the name of each perſon, and then they were delivered to one of the young Princeſſes, who in return offered her hands to kiſs. Moſt of the Lords and Ladies of the country withdrew immediately, but the reſt were detained to dinner, after which there was dancing and diverſion till midnight.

Preſents to the Czarina.

An ugly accident.

That ſame night there happened an ugly accident at the wedding of Captain *Staets*, where two Surgeons dancing with their wives, two officers who were juſt come in, would have taken them to dance with them. Words upon this aroſe, and one of the officers in the ſervice of the *Czar*, called *Bodon*, ran his ſword through the body of one of the Surgeons, called *Gurée*, a *Frenchman*, who had nothing to defend himſelf, and fell down dead on the ſpot. The other, whoſe name was *Hovy*, was at the ſame time wounded by another officer, whoſe name was Captain *Saks*; perceiving himſelf wounded, he ſtopped his wound with his Finger, and got away, but the Captain purſuing him, he was obliged to come into the houſe, and in a fainting fit fell down by the ſide of his dead companion, but one of his friends ſucking the blood out of the wound, he came to himſelf again. Theſe officers had attack'd them once before, but one of the Surgeons getting hold of a ſword, and the other laying hands on a chair, drove them out of the room; enraged at which, they returned to the charge, and before the whole company committed the fact here related. It is not hard to conceive what a terrible diſorder and conſternation this murderous violence cauſed, by the favour whereof the perpetrators of it made their eſcape for the preſent, tho' they were taken two days afterwards. Their Colonel who was preſent when they did this, by good words prevailed on his ſervant to take the crime upon himſelf, and to ſay it was he who committed the murder, promiſing him not only a pardon, but to make him an Enſign; and the innocent man prevailed on by this means, gave out that he was the criminal: but he was no ſooner put to the queſtion by torture, than he diſowned the whole, and named the aſſaſſin, tho' too late, as ſhall be obſerved in a proper place. 1703.

The murderers taken.

The *Czar*, at this time, reſolved upon a tour to *Veronis*, attended by ſome *Ruſſian* Noblemen, and ſome *Germans* whom he ordered to be ready for the journey. Upon the twenty fifth, I received the ſame order by the Sieur *Heinſius*, who told me his Majeſty was deſirous I ſhould ſee that place, the ſhips there, and whatever elſe was remarkable.

Preparations to go to Veronis.

But it is now time to talk of the marriage of the Boyar, *Iwan Feuderowitz Golowin*, or *John Theodore* the ſon of Count *Golowin*, firſt Miniſter of ſtate, with the Lady *Boreeſowitz Czeremetof*, the Daughter of *Boris Theodore*, Velt-marſhal of *Czeremetof*, who was employ'd by his *Czarian* Majeſty on ſeveral Embaſſies, and particularly to the Court of *Vienna*, where he acquired a very great reputation, and received the order of *Malta*.

As there is ſomething remarkable in this wedding, and as it was celebrated between two of the moſt conſiderable perſonages of the ſtate, I will here give a particular account of it, which was upon the twenty eighth of this month in the palace of the Boyar *Feudor Alexewitz Golowin*, which was fitted upon this occaſion. This is an handſome wooden edifice, well deſigned according to the rules of art, full of fine apartments above and below, and upon an eminence, a little beyond the ſlabode of the Ger-

Extraordinary wedding.

1703. *Germans*, on the other ſide of the river *Youſa*. In the great Salon were ſeveral tables placed in good order, with muſic, and in another apartment was a table for the *Czar*'s ſiſter, the Empreſs and the three young Princeſſes; for ſeveral Ladies of the Court, and for the Lords and Ladies of the country who were apart; nor was there wanting a great crowd of ſpectators. About eleven o'clock the bridegroom appeared alone in the chamber of audience, on the left hand, where he received the congratulations of the Nobility, whom he treated with diſtilled liquors. About noon they came and acquainted him it was time to repair to the place where he was to be married, and he was conducted with trumpets and kettle drums, that waited for him at the door, to a ſmall chappel in the palace, but a few ſteps off. It would be no eaſy matter to diſplay all the pomp of this feſtival wherein the *Czar* condeſcended to officiate as Marſhal, and was every where. As ſoon as the bridegroom had got into the chappel, the bride was ſent for; ſhe had paſſed the night before at the houſe of the late Mr. *Houtman*, in the ſlabode of the *Germans*, oppoſite to the *Dutch* church, and had by the Czar's order been ſome time delivered up to the Velt-marſhal, the bride's father. All the *Ruſſian* and *German* Ladies invited to this wedding, repaired thither alſo to wait on this Lady, who was conducted to the place in the following order. The firſt that appeared was a kettle drummer upon a white horſe, followed by five trumpets mounted upon the ſame: then 16 ſtewards of the houſhold, as it were, choſen from among the *Ruſſians* and the ſtrangers: then the Czar himſelf in a fine coach made in *Holland*, and ſix dapple gray horſes. After him, five empty coaches and ſix; then a calaſh and ſix for the bride, and ſome other Ladies. In the midſt of this, the Princeſs his Majeſty's ſiſter, the Czarina, and the three young Princeſſes came to the nuptial palace in coaches without wheels, after the manner of ſledges, each in one, and each drawn by ſix horſes; beſides a great number of Ladies of the court. In about half an hour the bride herſelf appeared with the Ladies of her train, who had got into the empty coaches. When got out at the palace, ſhe was received by two Noblemen who were to be her fathers, the one a *Ruſſian*, the other Count *Koniſgegg*, Envoy from *Poland*, who taking her by the hand, conducted her into the chappel, and placed her on one ſide of the bridegroom. She was followed by the Czar's ſiſter, the young Princeſſes, and other Ladies of the court, who ſtopped in the entrance of the chappel; and ſome *Ruſſian* and foreign Ladies ranged themſelves on the ſides without, the chappel being ſo ſmall it could not hold above ten or a dozen perſons; ſo that thoſe who went in, were only the Czar, the Czarian Prince, the Bride and Bridegroom, the two Fathers, and two or three other *Ruſſian* Noblemen; but as I was very deſirous to behold this ſolemnity, I got behind the bridegroom, who was richly cloathed, after the *German* faſhion, as well as his bride, who was in white ſattin wrought with gold, with her head-dreſs ſet off with diamonds; and behind her hung a great treſs of hair, under her fontange, a faſhion which has been long in uſe with the *Germans*, and upon her head ſhe had a ſmall crown with diamonds. When the ceremony opened, the prieſt came and ſtood between the couple, and began to read in a book, he held in his hand, in conſequence of which, the bridegroom put a ring on a finger of the bride's. Then the prieſt took two crowns joined together, of ſilver gilt, which he made them kiſs, and then put upon their heads. After this he began to read again, and the couple gave their right hands to each other. and in that manner went three times round the chappel. The prieſt then took a glaſs of red wine, and made the new married pair drink of it, which when they had done, they returned it to him, who gave it to

1703. thoſe who officiated near him. The Czar who was walking about all the time, with a marſhal's ſtaff in his hand, perceiving the prieſt was going to his book again, commanded him to cut his work ſhort, and a minute afterwards he pronounced the nuptial benediction. His Majeſty then ordered the bridegroom to kiſs his bride, which ſhe refuſed to let him, till the Czar repeated his command, and then ſhe obey'd. The ceremony over, they went to the bridal hall. During the time of the ceremony the Czarina and the Ladies of the court were at the windows oppoſite to the chappel. In a little time they ſat down to table, the bridegroom among the men, and the bride among the women, at the common table in the great hall. The rejoicings continued for three days together, which were ſpent in dancing, and all kinds of merriment. The third day they regaled the gentlemen who had appeared in the character of ſtewards. This wedding was very different from the old way of celebration, which it were needleſs for me to ſpeak of, ſo many having done it already.

Having thus ſufficiently dilated on the head of marriages, I paſs on to the cuſtoms at births and burials among this people.

Ruſſian cuſtoms at births.

As ſoon as ever a child comes into the world, they ſend for a prieſt to purify it. This purification is extended to every one preſent, whom they call over by their names, and give them the bleſſing, never ſuffering any one to enter the room till the prieſt is come, and when he is, they name the child after the Saint, whoſe day was kept eight days before the birth of the child, or that is to be kept eight days afterwards. They adminiſter the ſacrament after their rite, to the child, before the baptiſm, and eſpecially among people of diſtinction, and ſeldom baptize but at the end of five or ſix weeks, when the infant is ſtrong and hearty. When it is a boy they church or purify the mother at the end of five weeks, and when it happens to be a girl, at the end of ſix. They then chuſe a godfather and a godmother, and never change them afterwards; nor can theſe godfathers and godmothers marry together, nor thoſe in the third degree from them. 1703.

Funerals.

At the funerals of the better ſort, all the friends of both ſexes follow the body, tho' uninvited. They put the body upon a bier carry'd by four or ſix men, the coffin being covered with a fine pall, and the women neareſt of kin, make loud lamentations, as I mentioned in my firſt travels. The prieſts intonate the funeral hymn; but all this is done with much leſs ceremony among the common people.

Cuſtoms among ſtrangers.

The cuſtoms among the foreigners are different from theſe with regard to births and marriages, and the ſame with us, excepting in the form of celebrating a wedding excluſive of the religious part, and this is carry'd on with great ſolemnity. They ſend two repreſenting ſtewards to invite thoſe they would have, and theſe ſtewards do it in winter, in a fine ſledge, drawn by two horſes dreſſed up in ribbons, and attended by two ſervants behind the ſledge. The number of gueſts is commonly 100 or 150, and ſometimes more, according as it is thought proper, and according to the number of the Gentlemen and Ladies of the country that are asked. The Marſhal is the chief man at theſe feſtivals, and goes about with a truncheon and a ribbon at the end of it, and he, aſſiſted by the ſtewards, begins all healths; and beſides theſe it is uſual to have four or ſix, or eight under-ſtewards, who have the care of preparing all things in the houſe, as well with regard to the furniture as other neceſſaries. Theſe help the ſtewards to ſerve the gueſts, and are to be known by a fine ſcarf on the right arm, which they have in common with the ſteward, except that his is richer; theſe the bride-maids tye on for them. Theſe maids are introduced into the hall where the feaſt is, with great ceremony, and the ſound of inſtruments; and the more to honour the bride and bridegroom, they

1703.

on

1703. on each ſide chuſe two fathers, two mothers, two brothers, and two ſiſters, who are introduced in the ſame manner; then they ſit down to table in the places appointed for every one. The carver gets between the two bride maids oppoſite to the bride, and they tye him on a ſcarf upon his arm. The bridegroom ſits between the fathers and brothers, and the bride between the mothers and ſiſters. When they have done, they in another room entertain the Marſhal, the ſtewards, and the carver. Then they dance, the Marſhal opening the ball with the bride, and then the other Ladies are deſired to dance with the ſtewards. The fathers and mothers dance after theſe, then the brothers and ſiſters, and at laſt the new married pair, and two or three other couple. This done, the Marſhal cries out *Liberty*, and then dance who will: theſe doings commonly laſt three days together, and upon the laſt, the bride-maids entertain the Marſhal, the ſtewards, their deputies, and the carver.

Funerals. Their funerals are in this manner. They keep the body for ſome days, and invite the chiefs of the nation, and afterwards moſt of the merchants, and other friends, as well in the city as in the ſlabode; which is done by two perſons of their nation, appointed for that purpoſe, or choſen by the friends and relations of the deceaſed; and theſe wear long black cloaks, and a crape hatband. Tho', upon theſe occaſions, the company commonly meet at two in the afternoon, it is night before the body is committed to the ground in winter, and pretty late in ſummer. They have 15 or 16 mourners, and 12 bearers, all married and dreſſed in black, with great cloaks of the ſame, which they keep for that purpoſe in the churches. The mourners ſit in the beſt room on the right hand, with the male relations of the deceaſed, and every one that comes in ſalutes them. The bearers have a crape hat-band, and a ſcarf over the ſhoulder of the ſame, and ſometimes white gloves. They have all ſorts of refreſhments upon two different tables, and they are 1703. continually ſerving you about with wine, flip, ſweatmeats, toaſted bread, and lemons, when they are to be had. Before the corpſe goes out of the houſe, it is uſual to preſent each of the bearers with a ſilver ſpoon, with the name of the deceaſed engraved upon it; the ſame is alſo ſometimes preſented to the miniſter, the ſchoolmaſter, and the mourners; but when it is a maid they are carrying to the grave, they give gold rings with the name alſo of the deceaſed inſtead of ſpoons. The bearers nail up the coffin before it goes out, and as ſoon as they begin to move, the ſchoolmaſter and the ſcholars begin to ſing with each a book in his hand; but the *Calviniſts* do ſo only at the church-yard. The young ſcholars go before, followed by their maſter, the miniſter, and the chiefs of the funeral; then comes the body, and after it, the neareſt relations, the mourners, the merchants, and officers, who do not go regularly two and two as with us, but four or five at a time, juſt as it happens, or as they pleaſe. When they have reached the church-yard, and depoſited the corpſe in the grave, they begin again with ſome funeral pſalms and chaunts; then the miniſter makes a diſcourſe, and thanks thoſe who have attended the corpſe for the honour they have done him; and the bearers who have each a ſhovel in their hand, throw in the earth till the grave is nearly filled up; then all that were invited are deſired to return to the houſe of the deceaſed, but few go in beſides the bearers, who are entertained with drink and tobacco. Sometimes they have a funeral ſermon at church, and the women are invited to be there. The widow of the deceaſed comes with her neareſt female relations all covered over with crape, and theſe oftentimes give evident tokens of their grief even in the ſtreets. Sometimes alſo they give an entertainment afterwards. They go in coaches or on horſeback in ſummer, it being impoſſible to go on foot. The coffins

1703. were formerly made of oak; but this is now forbidden, the Czar designing to preserve that wood for other uſes.

The number of *Calviniſts* here may amount to about 200. The *Lutherans* are much more numerous, and indeed they have two churches, 1703. while the others have but one in the ſlabode. There have been two *Jeſuits* for ſome time ſettled here, who teach *Latin* to ſeveral children of their rite.

CHAP. XIII.

His Czarian *Majeſty's departure for* Veronis, *whither the author and ſeveral others attend him. Things remarkable on the way. Arrival at* Veronis.

Journey to Veronis. THE time appointed for the Czar's departure being come, he was attended by *John Alexewitz Moeſin Poeskin*, firſt inſpector and viſitor of the monaſteries of *Ruſſia*, who had been Governor of *Aſtracan*, an office he had executed with great honour; *Alexis Petrowitz Iſmeelhoff*, the Knez *Gregory Gregoriwitz Gagarin*, *John Andrewitz Tolſtoy*, Governor of *Aſoph*, *Ivan Davidewitz*, Governor of *Kolomna*, *Alexander Waſſelewitz Kisken*, great Steward of the houſhold, and Gentleman of the chamber to his Majeſty; *Nariskie*, the ſon of his Majeſty's uncle, and by many other Lords who came to *Veronis* after us. The Czar alſo did the Sieur *Konigsegg* Envoy extraordinary from *Poland*, the Sieur *Keiſerling*, Envoy from the King of *Pruſſia*, the Sieur *Bellöſeur*, Agent from the Sieur *Ogienskie*, one of the firſt Generals, and one of the beſt friends to the King of *Poland*, to ſome officers of his houſhold, and the ſons of the famous General *le Fort* the honour of requeſting their company. He took with him alſo three merchants, Mr. *Steel*, a fine gentleman much eſteemed by this Prince, and Mr. *Hill*, *Engliſhmen*, and the Sieur *Kinſius* a *Dutchman*, all three extremely well affected to his Majeſty, who deſired I ſhould go before with them, and we ſet out upon the *thirty firſt* of *January*; and the next day the Czar came after us with all his company. We had got the bottom of our ſledges ſhod with iron, that they might the better be able to carry us thro' our journey, the ground being ſcarcely covered over with ſnow; and his Majeſty had granted us poſt-wodens, and we had ſix ſledges for us and our ſervants. We left the ſlabode of the *Germans* about three in the afternoon, and we were to have relays of freſh horſes every 20 werſts. There are poſts at the end of every werſt between this and *Veronis*, upon which in *Ruſſian* and *German* characters you ſee the date of the year 1701, the time when they were ſet up. Between each of the pillars which are painted red and pretty high there are 19 or 20 ſmall trees on each ſide, and ſometimes three or four together, interwove with branches like gabions, to defend them and keep them in the ground. There are 552 of theſe pillars, amounting to near 110 leagues, reckoning five werſts to a league, and which give you the diſtance between *Moſcow* and *Veronis*, and the neighbouring places; and, I believe, the number of the ſmall trees I have mentioned may amount to about 200,000; a contrivance ſo much the more uſeful, as without theſe poſts and trees it would be next to impoſſible to keep the road for the ſnows on the ground, beſides that you may by this means travel as well

1703. by night as by day. In two hours we came to *Sgelina*, and there changed horſes to go to *Oeljamina*, where we arrived about eight of the clock; and here we got out at a Kabak belonging to his Majeſty, a pretty good wooden building with ſeveral apartments in it. You there go up by a fine ſavare of five ſteps with five angles, and were entertained with beer and good fires, the Czar himſelf being expected, who has cauſed theſe houſes to be erected every twenty werſts for the convenience of travellers. Here we ſtay'd but two hours, and went our way in a very damp night. Horſes were every where ready for us, and there was fire in all the villages, where the peaſants ſtood at their doors with truſſes of ſtraw lighted to ſhew their joy for his Majeſty's arrival, which in the night time had a very pretty effect. We had 30 werſts to travel from hence to *Kolomna*, where we had got before day, and there waited for his Majeſty, who came about nine in the morning, while I was gone to take a view of the inſide and outſide of the town. I went out by the gate of the *Pjaetnietske*, or of the *Friday*, or of the fifth day of the week, and went to that of *Coſſi*, which are the only gates here. This town is ſurrounded with a good ſtone wall, about ſix fathom high and two thick, and flanked with ſeveral towers, ſome round and ſome ſquare, about 200 paces diſtant from each other, but not adapted for cannon. It is about a mile and half round, and the little river of *Kolommenske*, whoſe name it borrows paſſes by it. I ſhould here have ſpoken of the river of *Moſcow*, but as we croſſed it afterwards by water, I ſhall defer it to another time, while I go on with the deſcription of this city. The wall is almoſt all fallen down on one ſide, and you muſt go over a pretty high hill to get at the hinder gate, where the land lies low beyond the river; and there is a ſuburb at the other gate, where they expoſe their goods to ſale, and by this gate I ſaw a great number of

Situation of Kolomna.

1703. the country people come in with things to ſell in the town. The form of it is almoſt round, and there is a dry ditch on the higheſt ſide, where there is alſo a very high wall. Its fineſt building is the church of *Uſplenja*, or of the ſeparation of the mother of God, well built of ſtone, and indifferently large; whereto we may add the archiepiſcopal palace; the reſt is ordinary enough. Having ſatisfied my curioſity, I went to the Governor's houſe, *Ivan Davidewitz*, where I found the Czar and all the company at table. When I had got up to this Prince to pay my duty to him, he turned about and kiſſed me, and when I had given him an account of what I had done, he made me ſit down. At two in the afternoon we proceeded on our journey, being to go to the country houſe of Mr. *Alexander Waſielewitz Koecken*, five werſts from this city. There we were well entertained. It is a wooden building of two ſtories, with fine rooms. We ſtaid there till five of the clock, and about nine in the morning we arrived at the little lake of *Ivan*, near the village of *Ivanofra*, 130 werſts from the houſe of Mr. *Koecken*. The *Don* or the *Tanais* riſes in this lake, from whence it flows in a long canal, whoſe water is very clear and well taſted, as the Czar himſelf thought, and the reſt of the company; tho' the lake, which might be better called a pool, is very marſhy. One half of its water goes one way, and the reſt another, a very remarkable circumſtance. Here it was that his Czarian Majeſty in the year 1702, began to dig a canal to open a communication between the *Don* and the *Baltic*. The Czar ſurveyed the whole ground then in perſon, as he did now again with us. This canal which is very deep derives its water from the *Don* or *Tanais*, and is to croſs the lake *Ivan*, to the little river *Schata*, which falls into that of the *Upa*, and this into the *Occa* which falls into the *Wolga*; and by this means might be attained the end propoſed of making a communication between this river and the

Little lake of Ivan.

The Don *of* Tanais.

Great Canal.

1703. the *Baltic* ſea. And it is to be effected by the contrivance of ſluices 80 paces in length, and 14 in breadth, under the direction of Prince *Gogarin*, whoſe worth and excellent endowments, as well as his zeal for his Czarian Majeſty's ſervice is not to be expreſſed. His Majeſty had us carried in ſledges upon theſe canals, having firſt ordered the horſes to be ſhod for ice, and ſhewed us this work compleated and conſiſting of ſeven *Great cloſe ſluices.* cloſe ſluices of grey ſtone. I there alſo ſaw a mud engine, made after the *Dutch* manner, with which, and the ice broke, the Prince got up earth proper to make turf, which they there order as they do in our *Turf made in thoſe parts.* provinces. There were ſeveral houſes full of it, which we tried and found to be very good.

His Majeſty having entertained us at noon, we went away about three of the clock to go 30 wreſts to a country-houſe belonging to Mr. *le Fort*. As this village is not upon the high-road, three of our guides turned to the right, inſtead of following the company, and went to a houſe of his Majeſty's five werſts from thence. The night being come on I went in there with two *French* officers, and there we ſtaid till 10 at night expecting our companions, but perceiving noboby came near us we continued our journey through a deſart, where we met with nothing but ſome coppice, here and there. Upon the *third* at nine in the morning we arrived at Prince *Alexander Danielewitz de Menſikof*, 110 werſts from Mr. *le Fort*'s. It is a great and a fine building like a houſe of pleaſure, with a turret or lanthorn upon it, covered with a detached roof, and neatly painted on the outſide with all ſorts of colours; this houſe contains many fine and good rooms and lofty enough; nor is there any way to it but by the gate of the fort, they being both within one common enceint of earth, of no very great extent. Here are ſeveral fine works well mounted with cannon, and covered on the one ſide with a hill, and on the other by a fen, or kind 1703. of lake. I had no ſooner got into the Czar's preſence than he asked me where I had been? I anſwered where it had pleaſed Heaven and our guides, ſeeing I knew nothing either of the way or the language. This he laughed at and told the *Ruſſian* Lords that were with him. He then gave me a bumper by way of puniſhment, regaled us to perfection, and had the cannon fired at every health. When we had done he carried us upon the ramparts, and there treated us with different liquors upon each work. Then he ordered ſledges to be ready to carry us upon the lake, then frozen over, that we might thence take a view of the whole at leiſure; and he took me into his own ſledge, ſtill mindful of the liquor which followed us every where at the heels in great plenty; and from thence we returned to the caſtle, where the glaſſes began to dance about again, and to warm us till at laſt the place having never as yet been named, his Majeſty called it *Oranjenburg*. Prince *Alexander*'s village, which is on one ſide, is called *Slaboolke*. From this agreeable place we went at nine in the night. Upon the *fourth* we went a great way, but afterwards we travelled at a much leſs rate, becauſe of the little ſnow upon the ground. The Czar, however, did not ſtop till we had reached *Stepena*, where they had built ten ſhips. We held on our way in the night, and upon the *fifth*, at one in the morning, we arrived at *Veronis*, which is 190 werſts from the new *Oranjenburg*. The company being divided in the night, we dropped in one after another, the firſt that appeared at the place being young Mr. *le Fort* and my ſelf, and as there had been no regulation made as to the article of lodging, we went directly to the houſe of Vice-Admiral *Rees*. We were told he had kept his bed for three weeks paſt, for a hurt he had received by a fall; and as ſoon as it was light we waited on him with aſſurances of the ſhare we had in Oranjenburg.

his

1703. his misfortune; he received us very kindly, and desired us to be quite free with his house and table. The Czar himself arrived at one in the afternoon, under the discharge of the cannon in the castle and in the ships that were frozen up; and in an instant afterwards he came to see the Vice-Admiral. He thence went to Mr. *Fewdor Mafhewitz Apraxin*'s a Lord of the Admiralty, who commanded in the place. We had orders to follow him, and were well entertained, in the midst of the noise of the artillery, fifty cannon being from time to time fired off, and so the day was brought to an end. In the mean time orders were given for rooms to be ready in the castle, for the strangers, that they should be made much of, and have whatever victuals they had a mind to; nor was there any forgetfulness as to drink, and Monsieur, the Envoy *Konigsegg*, who had the charge of the table, accquitted himself very handsomely. The Sieurs *Steel*, *Kinsius* and *Hill* lodged at a friend's, and Mr. *le Fort* and I at the Vice-Admiral's; going every now and then to eat at the castle. His Majesty was at a private house upon the key with the *Russians*. Upon the *sixth* we went to see the ships, and tippled with great gaiety. *Fewdor Mafhewitz* treated us at noon, and the next day; and so ended our feastings, the great fast of the *Russians* beginning upon the *eighth*. Upon the *ninth*, I sollicited the Czar for leave to draw what was most worthy of notice, and he immediately gave it me, saying, *Come, we have lived well, and been merry, and have had a little rest after it, it is now high time to think of work.* 1703.

CHAP. XIII.

Description of Veronis. *The* Don *or the* Tanaïs. *Return to* Moscow. *His Majesty departs for* Sleutelenburg.

Situation of Veronis. THE City of *Veronis* is upon a high hill in 52 degrees and a half of *northern* latitude; surrounded with a wooden wall, all rotten, and divided into three parts, in one of which called *Jakatof*, the chief of the *Russian* merchants have their abode. There is a great rope-walk in this city, and the powder is kept in subterraneous magazines without the wall. Upon the side of the hill, along the river, there are several houses, in an extent of 400 paces; the chief of them belong to the Admiral *Golowin*, Mr. *Apraxin* of the admiralty, the Boyard *Lofkrielowitz*, Prince *Danielowitz*, and other *Russians* of quality. Most of these houses are over against the citadel, and those of the Vice-Admiral and other officers on the side of them, and behind these are streets for those employed in ship-building and the like. This city stands on the *west* of the river of *Veronis*, whose name it borrows, and the citadel is on the other side, to which there is a large bridge of communication. The ditches about it are full of water from the old river. This citadel is a square building with towers at the four corners, has very large apartments, and makes a great figure from without. The sands of the downs so choak up the new river that it is not navigable, and the ships are obliged to go through the old one. The citadel is the chief magazine, and indeed they so term it, and have above 150 pieces of canon in it, though most of them without carriages for the more ready transporting them in case of need. Again, this citadel is defended with palliſades *The Citadel.*

L
K

I
H
F
E
D
C
M
B
A
N
O

1703. palliſades in ſeveral places, and filled with a pretty good garriſon, as well as the country about, to withſtand the *Tartars*. The conveniences for ſhipbuilding are one ſide of the citadel, whereas before they built them all about. The ſtorehouſe is on the other ſide, a great building, three ſtories high, the two firſt of which are of ſtone, and the third and uppermoſt of wood. Here are many places full of all ſorts of naval ſtores, each in a place apart, even to cloaths for the ſeamen, and every thing elſe they can want. The ſail houſe or loft is on one ſide of this ſtorehouſe; and they compute that in the town and about it, there may be ten thouſand perſons. You ſee two or three villages in the plain.

Docks for ſhipping.

Number of inhabitants in the town and about it.

Upon the *tenth*, I went in queſt of a proper ſtand, from whence to take a ſketch of the city; and I pitched upon the higheſt part of a hill, which is but two werſts to the ſouth-weſtward of it; there I began my work, but could not go on with it for the bitterneſs of the cold and ſtrength of the wind. The next day I walked thither to get myſelf a little heat by the way, with nobody but my ſervant, and three men belonging to the Vice-admiral, to keep off ſuch *Ruſſians* as might have the curioſity to interrupt me. I ordered them to get a mat, ſome poles, an ax, and a ſpade, to dig a pit for me, where I might conveniently take my ſtand. When this was done, I ſcreened myſelf from the wind in my back with the mat; and in this plight it was eaſy to ſee me from the town and from the river ſide. And indeed I was not here long without a diſcovery; two *Engliſh* ſhipwrights taking notice of me from the river, ſent two or three of their people to know what I was about. Seeing them come towards me, I ordered my ſeamen, who were armed with half-pikes, to keep them off; to tell no ſoul what I was about, and if they were asked the queſtion, to ſay they knew nothing at all of the matter. In the mean time a number of above 50 *Ruſſians* got together upon the hill, drawn thither by the novelty of the ſight, unable to conceive what ſhould be the meaning of it; but my people driving them back, they did not dare to come near enough to me. When I returned to the town, the Vice-admiral told me the vogue had been, that, upon the top of the hill, one of the Czar's domeſtics had been buried alive, nobody knowing wherefore, or who it was; and that the ſaid man buried up to the middle held a great book in his hand, which was the paper I was drawing upon; and that no one was allowed to approach him, three centinels being appointed to keep off all that attempted it; nay even the officers themſelves enquired of each other, who it was that was under the circumſtances of execution. But obſerving, upon the *twelfth*, that the criminal had ſhifted his place, and conſequently that they were miſtaken, they took another whim into their heads. There was a little farther off an old burying ground, where they had ſeen me ſome days before, and where I went that day to take a draught of it. The *Ruſſians* at their wits end, now fancied I might be ſome prophet from beyond ſea to viſit the old burying grounds, ſay maſſes for the dead, and perform other religious offices, and particularly as I always appeared with a book in my hand. They took notice to one another that I had commonly a *Hungarian* veſt on, and that I was attended by a ſervant, who carried after me a kind of blue cloak; in ſhort that I had three of the Vice-admiral's people ſet to guard me. This whim, extravagant as it was, might have been attended with ill effects, had not the Czar himſelf been in theſe parts, and been a check upon the crowds that would otherwiſe have gathered together. 1703.

You have a repreſentation of the town in number 15. the letter *A* diſtinguiſhes his Majeſty's place of reſidence; *B* the place where the ſhips are built; *C* the *d'Woritz* or the citadel; *D* the *Ambaet* or the ſtore-houſe; *E* the ſail-houſe or loft;

Repreſentation of the town.

1703. loft; *F* the houſe of Prince *Alexander Danielowitz*; *G* that of *Feudor Maſhewitz*; *H Uſplenje Dogeroditza*, or the church of the conception of the mother of God; *I Cuſma Idemjan*, or church dedicated to *Coſmus* and *Damian*, brethren, in the liſt of Saints; *K Saboor*, or the church of the aſſembly of the Saints; *L Petritza Bogoroditza*, or the *Friday* church, ſo called; becauſe there the Virgin *Mary* appeared in an extraordinary manner upon a certain *Friday*, and was judged thence to have required it to be ſet apart in honour of that day of the week; *M* the old river; *N* the new river; *O* the hill from whence I drew the proſpect of the town. The old tombs, mentioned before, ſeeming to me very extraordinary in their kind, I drew them as well as the ground they ſtand in. They are upon a hill which has ſuffered by the injuries of time; this hill is by itſelf, and from the top to the bottom ſcattered over with ſkulls and bones, and pieces of coffins. There are two at the top, the one a little damaged, the other to pieces. I ordered a *Ruſſian* to climb this hill, which has two trees upon it, to try if he could not get ſome bones which appeared upon the ſurface, and which had been blanched by the air, to the whiteneſs of chalk, which had a pretty odd effect in that black ſoil; but the earth was ſo frozen he could not bring them with him. You have all this repreſented in number 16. what lyes before this burying ground was formerly a part of it, and the way to it on this ſide the river, is beneath this hill on the left hand, and on the right you have *Sieſofskie* in the bottom near the river, with ſome mills. With regard to the ſhips here, we ſaw fifteen in the water, four men of war, the biggeſt of 54 guns, three victuallers, two fireſhips, and ſix bomb-ketches. On ſhore and ready to be launched, were five men of war, after the *Dutch* faſhion, from 60 to to 64 guns, two after the *Italian* from 50 to 54, a galeaſs after the *Venetian*, and four gallies, beſides 17 gallies at *Sieſofskie*, two werſts from the town. Beſides all this, they were at work upon five men of war after the *Engliſh* built, two bored for 74 guns, and two for 60 or 64; the fifth which is called after his Majeſty, becauſe he had the direction of her upon the ſtocks, is bored for 86 guns. They were at work alſo upon a packet-boat, and aſhore on the other ſide of the river, were about 200 brigantines, moſt of them built at *Veronis*; and at this time there were 400 ſtout brigantines upon the *Nieper*, and the *Boryſthenes*, in the neighbourhood of *Crim Tartary*, and 300 flat bottom veſſels upon the *Volga*; beſides 18 men of war at *Aſoph*, a bomb-veſſel and a yacht. The Czar has ſeveral other ſhips, the largeſt of which is of 66 guns, four from 48 to 50, five of 36, two of 34, and others ſmaller, the leaſt of 28 guns.

Ships.

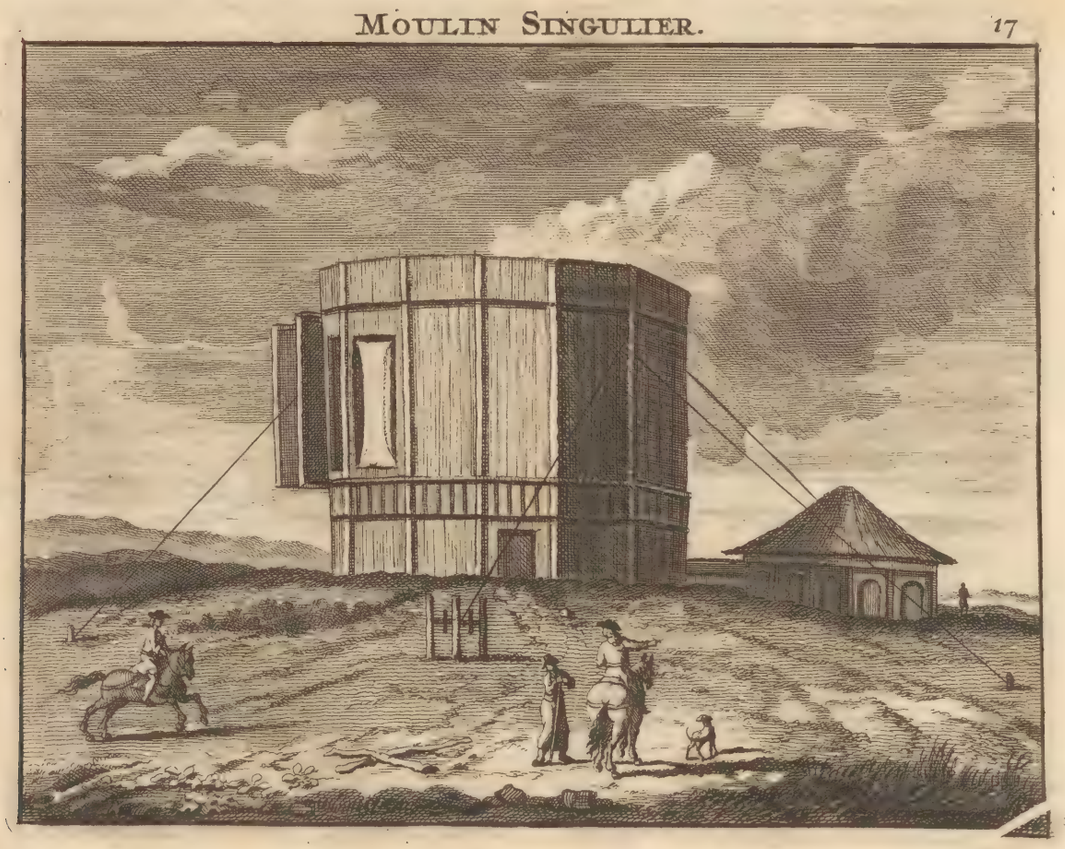
1703.

That day the Czar took the diverſion of ſailing upon the ice, in a level place fit for the purpoſe. Upon the *thirteenth* at night they fired a ſcore of bombs from two veſſels, and ſeveral from a pinnace or galley of 20 oars; when I returned the Vice-Admiral told me the Czar had ſent a meſſage to me. I went immediately on board the ſhip where he was, and ſaw ſeveral bombs fired off in my way: I found his Majeſty at his liquor, and underſtood he was the next day, being the *fourteenth*, to go with all his train to the *Don* or *Tanais*, about 12 werſts from *Veronis*, to take a ſurvey of the ſhipping there. We ſet out at three in the afternoon, moſt of us on horſeback, and the reſt in waggons or coaches, and when we had got a little way from the town, his Majeſty ſtopped at a ſmall church, and we went a little aſide to ſee a mill of an extraordinary contrivance by a *Circaſſian*, and of an *octogon* form. Within it are four mills which work together, without ſails or ought elſe for the wind to take hold on outwardly; but within there are ſeven ſails, like thoſe of a veſſel, and ſhut up without by great windows or doors; when there is wind

Journey to the Tanais.

An extraordinary mill.

MOULIN SINGULIER. 17



1703. wind ſtirring they open two or three of the windows on the ſide next to it, ſo that ruſhing upon the ſails, it ſets the machine a going with great violence. You have this repreſented in number 17.

The Czar came up with us in a calaſh, and deſired us to mend our pace, which every body was not able to do; but we got to our journey's end before it was night. There was a general diſcharge of guns immediately from the ſhips, and we went to ſee ſome of them where they made us drink moſt heartily; and at night we were entertained at the houſe of *Ivan Alexewitz Moeſin Poeskin*. Supper over ſeveral of the company retired to the ſhips for lodging which was not to be had on ſhore; for they have not as yet begun to build in this place, tho' they talk of a town intended to be here. The next day we went to ſee the works they were about in order to ſtop the courſe of the *Don*, and turn it another way; to which purpoſe they had a ſluice, on the ſide they deſigned it ſhould run: This river called *Tanais*, and by the inhabitants *Donetz*, is famous in *Ruſſia*; it croſſes the *Precopian* or *Little Tartary* to the eaſtward, and having winded for a great way, it takes a vaſt ſweep towards the *Volga*; and having been ſwelled by ſeveral ſmaller rivers, falls, by *Aſoph*, formerly *Tanais*, into the lake *Mæotis*, or ſea of *Zabaskey*, where it divides *Europe* from *Aſia*. In theſe parts, we to our great ſurpriſe found ſeveral elephant's teeth upon the ground, one of which I keep as a curioſity, but cannot conceive how they ſhould happen to be there. It is true indeed, the Czar told us that *Alexander* the Great having croſſed this river, as we read in hiſtorians, came as far as the little town of *Koſtinke*, but eight werſts from thence, and that poſſibly it might have been that ſome of his elephants died there, and that theſe teeth might be the remains of them.

Arrival at the Tanais.

Courſe of the Don.

Elephant's teeth.

Return to the ſhips.

We then returned to the fleet, where they made very much of us. Here were in all eleven men of war and victuallers. One of theſe ſhips was built under his Majeſty's directions, and outſhone the reſt with all ſorts of ornaments, and the Captain's cabbin was lined with walnut-tree; tho' there was another along-ſide of this of great beauty alſo, and built by an *Engliſhman*; but the reſt made no great matter of ſhow. We were entertained with fiſh at noon, and then returned to the ſhips where we drank deep to the roar of the cannon. 1703.

In the midſt of theſe carouſals, a *Ruſſian* ſeaman was fool enough to put his hand to the mouth of a gun, and was ſo hurt thereby that he fell from the top to the bottom, and by the fall, it is likely, broke ſome of his ribs. They endeavoured to keep this from the Czar; but he coming to the knowledge of it, went to ſee the poor wretch, and found him drawing towards his laſt.

An unlucky accident.

We broke up about *eight* in the evening, and at *ten* got to *Veronis*, in the midſt of rain. Upon the *ſixteenth*, having obtained the Czar's leave for that purpoſe, I prepared to return to *Moſcow* with my three friends; but the rains having made the roads very bad, we were obliged to get eight waggons, and to arm the wheels with iron. Upon the *ſeventeenth*, in the morning, we took our leave of his Majeſty, who gave us his hand to kiſs, and then embracing us, wiſhed us a good journey; and recommended it to us to take a ſight of ſome mortars, upon the river ſide, about two werſts from the town, which we did without making any ſtay there. They were againſt a hill, near a barn, where they had been caſt. About noon I had orders to repair once more to the Czar, who was taking the diverſion of ſailing upon the ice; his veſſel was overſet in taking of a ſhort turn, but ſhe was ſoon ſet upright again. About half an hour afterwards he ordered me to follow him alone. He got into a hired ſledge with two horſes, one of which fell into a hole, but the other ſtanding firm upon the ice, he was ſoon got out again; he made me ſit by him, ſaying, *Come let us go*

The author takes leave of the Czar at Veronis.

to

1703. *to the ſhallop, I will have you ſee a bomb fired off, becauſe you was not there when the laſt were fired.* Being arrived, we examined the veſſel, and the wooden bed where the mortar was fixed, and which you might turn to all directions. The bombardeer being ready, the ſignal was given for thoſe in the plain to get out of the way. We then went out of the veſſel, and fire was ſet to the fuſee, but the bomb burſted in the flight. This being a kind of diſappointment, his Majeſty was ſo good as to ask me if I would ſee any more, but I told him it was needleſs. I then waited on him to Mr. *Sleits*, and ſoon after to his own abode, which was not far off, and there I had the honour to take leave of him: He embraced me, and as his uſual way was, ſaid, *God preſerve you.*

It was about three in the afternoon when I returned to my lodging, whence I made all the haſte I could to depart, after a ſhort meal. I thanked the Vice-admiral for the honour he had done me, and for all his favors, and to my great joy, left him in a better way than I found him. He is a very worthy man, much eſteemed by every body, but by nobody more than by the Czar himſelf.

Departure for Moſcow. We departed in the evening, and that night we had ſnow, and after it ſome rain. Upon the eighteenth in the morning we were 58 werſts from *Veronis*, having three horſes to each waggon, which carried us back the ſame way we came.

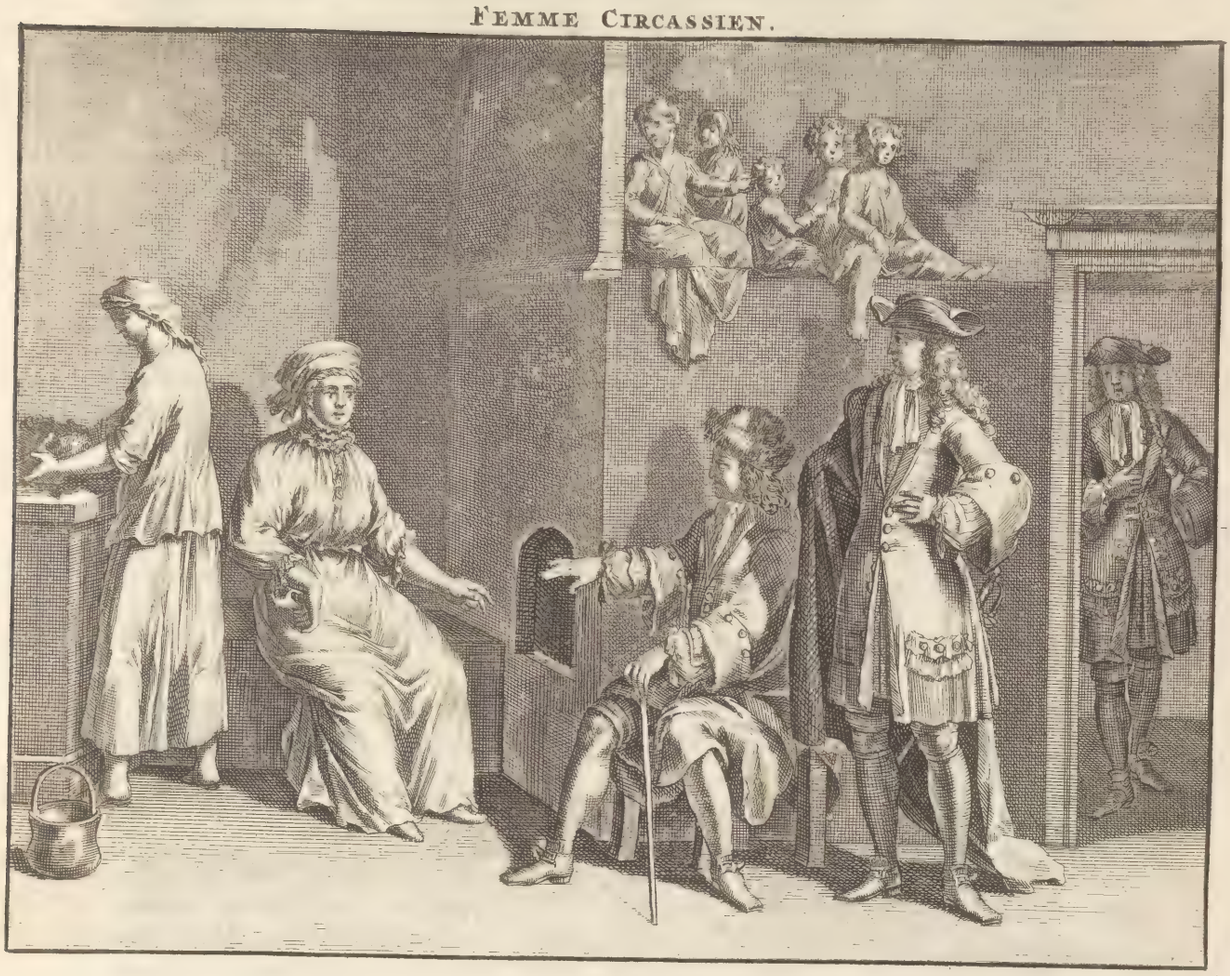
We took notice that moſt of the *Kabacs*, or Czar's houſes towards *Veronis*, are inhabited by *Circaſſians*.

Manners of the Circaſſians. Theſe are a neat and cleanly people both in their perſons and in their houſes; they are of a pleaſant humour, and live agreeably, diverting themſelves every day with the violin, and another ſtringed inſtrument. You have theſe minſtrels in all his Majeſty's houſes to that of Prince *Alexander*; they never fail to play as ſoon as you come in, and they commonly ſell you mead or brandy, and among them are women who are kind to ſtrangers. Their dreſs is remarkable, and quite different from 1703. the *Ruſſian*, and eſpecially with regard to the women. Their common dreſs is a ſhift with a girdle, round which they plait a piece of ſtriped ſtuff, which hangs down to their feet like a petticoat. They wear a white linen cloth wound round the head, and a part of their chin is covered; one end of this cloth is genteely turned up on one ſide of the head, and the reſt are ſometimes looſe or hang down. They wear alſo a piece of linen in gathers upon the forehead, which goes over the head, and is flat behind after the manner of the *Arabs* and *Jews* in the eaſt. Their ſhift is gathered two fingers breadth about the neck, as formerly with us when they wore ruffs; but you will beſt comprehend this by the plate beneath, which I drew in ſmall from one of the moſt agreeable of theſe women, and juſt as we found her in her ſtove. Near was a maid-ſervant kneading of dough for bread, and ſome children ſitting after their manner upon the oven. It was three in the afternoon when we left this place, in mizzling weather with ſome ſnow; but an hour afterwards it came on to blow from the northern board, and began to freeze. When we had travelled 15 werſts, we came to a ſmall river, partly frozen over, but too deep to ford, which we ſought to do for two hours, to no purpoſe. In ſhort we ſent two of our ſervants over on horſeback, and a third to a village to enquire if there was not ſome place where we might croſs; but he brought us word there was none, and did not dare to croſs the water a ſecond time, ſo that we ſent him back to the village whence he came, with orders there to wait for us till morning. Mean time we had no news of one of our ſervants who had got drunk the day before, and whom we had thrown into a countryman's ſledge; and as in this caſe our people were in danger of freezing, we crowded our waggons together to ſhelter them, while we conſulted what we had beſt to do. It was nine in the night,

Violent cold.

1703. 1703.

FEMME CIRCASSIEN.



and we were ſtill quite at a loſs, till, at length, conſidering there were no houſes in this part of the country, we reſolved to go back again, in queſt of a village out of the main road, where we arrived at eleven in the night, and got ſome refreſhment for ourſelves and our horſes. The ſervant we had loſt came here to us that night, and told us his driver had taken the horſes out of the ſledge while he was aſleep, and carried them away, that he perceived nothing of the matter till he awoke, and that he had been obliged to look out for another, which he had done in vain, had it not been for the prevalence of money and good words; and to conclude, that it was with great difficulty that he had got to us. The next day I diſcovered, that by the negligence of our people, the axle-tree of my waggon was broken, in conſideration of which, as well as of the froſt, and of the ſnow that had fallen in the night, I reſolved to fix it upon the bottom of a ſledge, and to take the wheels with me, in caſe a change of weather ſhould happen. For the reſt, one of our drivers had given us the ſlip, a thing not unuſual in this country, and had left us his horſes, in hope, his companions would bring them back with their own; ſo that we were obliged to take another in his ſtead. We took three, with ſledges and horſes, and provided ourſelves with plank and timber to help us in croſſing the river. The ſun ſhone

1703. out, but it was exceſſively cold, and about ten o'clock, we came back to the place where we had endeavoured to croſs the evening before, and found the river ſo frozen, that ſeveral horſes went over upon the ice, tho' indeed ſome of them fell in. We took our horſes out, that our waggons might croſs the ſafer, and we made uſe of our boards and timbers in the deepeſt places, and yet ſome of our people fell in; but as every body was ready to lend a helping hand, they were ſoon got out again. At one in the afternoon we went on, and in an hour's time came to a place where we found freſh horſes ready to put to. We had now, in all, travelled but 28 werſts, and had two more to go, before we got to a ſmall town called *Romanof*, where we croſſed the river of *Belle Kolodis* or the *White Pit*, by a bridge cover'd over a foot and a half thick with ice, and dined to the ſound of the *Circaſſians* inſtruments. It was eleven in the night before we could get away from hence, for before then we had not been able to prevail with the Governor for horſes. Here they took the wheels off from the other waggons, and loaded them upon ſledges as I had done, and in the night we went thro' a great village called *Stoeduncke*; and upon the *twentieth*, at break of day, we came to the pillar of 136 werſts, where we took freſh horſes without ſtopping. Two werſts from thence, we paſſed the town of *Dobri*, a werſt from the great road, upon the river *Veronis*. At the end of 151 werſts we came to a great village, and another at the end of 154, where you go up a hill ſo very ſteep, that there are rails on the left hand from top to bottom, to prevent your falling. We afterwards went through three villages, upon the poſt of the laſt of which we ſaw 157 werſts. Soon after we found the high road ſo full of ice, it was impoſſible to keep it, ſo that we looked for a better way on the right hand, and ſucceeded, ſo that we all got thro', except one waggon, which being very heavily laden, fell through the ice, but was got out again without damage done to any thing in it. In ſhort, after we had again skirted it along ſome villages, we reached the houſe of Prince *Alexander*, 190 werſts from *Veronis*; but here we made no ſtay, and went on to a village not far off, and there we dined. It was ſix in the evening, and we waited till ten before our horſes were ready. Upon the 21ſt, at four of the clock we were at 218 werſts, ſoon after at 238, and then 257 werſts, whence, on the right, we ſaw the town of *Schoppin*, which ſeems conſiderably large, and ſome villages between that and us; and as our poſtwodens reached no farther, we went thither, and croſſed over a bridge a werſt in length, and over a great moor. This town, however, is in itſelf no great matter, and the caſtle where the Governor reſides, and which ſtands at the end of the high ſtreet, has nothing remarkable either within ſide or without. They immediately appointed accommodations for us, and the burgomaſters came to us on the part of the Governor, and brought us refreſhments of brandy, mead, beer, bread, and the like. Here we made a demand of 30 horſes, inſtead of 24, the better to carry our wheels with us, and this being granted us, we departed hence an hour before ſunſet, and that night travelled 40 werſts, then changing horſes we reached 311 werſts, and came near the houſe of Mr. *le Fort*, where we arrived upon the *twenty ſecond*, at nine in the morning. This gentleman had written to his ſervants, ordering them to uſe us the beſt they could, and to let us have horſes, and every thing elſe we might want. Here we left our waggon-wheels behind us to be the leſs incumbered, and to rid the more way, with the fewer horſes, the froſt and ſnow having much mended the ways. Here we had freſh horſes, and having ſtopped about an hour, we proceeded on our journey, and got the length of 329 werſts, and at three in the afternoon we came to 347, and to the

1703.

Schoppin.

Governor's caſtle.

1703. the village of *Podaſſincke*, where we cheered up the heart. It ſnowed, and continued both to freeze and to blow, and having again changed horſes in the evening, we went thro' ſeveral villages in the night, and thro' the town of *Nikole Saraiske*, a place tolerable enough; but it was not without difficulty we got thro' it, becauſe of the great number of country people who had crowded it with their ſledges laden with things for *Moſcow*. Upon the *twenty third* in the morning, having got to the end of 420 werſts, we held on our way, with freſh horſes, to *Grodno*, where we got at nine o'Clock, but made no ſtay, and ſeven or eight werſts from thence we met with the river of *Occa*, which we were ſome time in croſſing. We had then to go over a very ſteep and lofty hill, where there was but one narrow gut on the left hand of the river; and as we were going up we met with ſome ſledges, who obliged us to ſtop that they might get by, which they could only do upon the very brow of the hill, the way being too narrow for them and for us too, and the way they took was ſo bad, ſo ſteep, and ſo full of great ſtones, that both horſes and ſledges were in great danger, moſt of the horſes going on at a venture without drivers; and not only ſo, but words ariſing between theſe ſledgemen and our ſervants, they came to blows, the cauſe alledged, that the one had not made room timely enough for the other. Several of theſe people being in liquor, exaſperated thoſe who had already got down below, and made them come up after us, to the number of about twenty. I was lying along in my ſledge when I underſtood this, and leaped out immediately with Sword and Piſtol in hand, and the Sieurs *Kinſius* and *Hill* came after, armed alſo, the one with his piſtols, the other with his ſword. In this poſture we went down to Mr. *Steel*'s ſledge, who was the laſt of us, and moſt expoſed to the fury of theſe madmen. He had but juſt got out, but had no arms, and the *Ruſſians* about him were at him with their Threats; but he, like a prudent man as he was, made ſigns to his ſervant to get out of the way, and began to ſooth them with fair ſpeeches, judging, and with good reaſon, that a contrary procedure might prove fatal, obſerving there was beneath us a great number of *Ruſſians* who would have infallibly fallen upon us, on the very firſt onſet. And theſe obſerving we came up to them without any ſeeming Diſpoſition to quarrel, kept back thoſe that were drunk, and ſubmitted to reaſon. The moſt troubleſome of them being gone off, we went our way on each ſide, tho', for my own part, I would not go again into my ſledge till we had gained the height of the hill, tho' I had much ado to walk, it was ſo ſlippery, and the wind ſo ſtrong; beſides that it was ſo exceedingly cold I could hardly ſtir my fingers. In the midſt of this I took notice of a ſledge and one horſe going down without a driver, tho' heavily laden; the poor horſe, unable to turn a corner ſo nicely as he ſhould, for the wind and the ice; in ſhort, unable to keep the beaten track, and borrowing too much upon the precipice, he fell perpendicular down upon the bank of the river, a ſight dreadful to behold. The ſledge broke into a thouſand pieces, and the horſe it is moſt likely broke all his ribs, tho' I afterward ſaw him lift up his head. At length, having with difficulty reached the top of the hill, we went on, and at one in the afternoon came to the city of *Kolomna*, 456 werſts. We waited in the ſuburbs for an anſwer to a letter of the *Czar*'s, which we ſent in, and the Diack or Secretary of the city no ſooner received it, than he came to us, and offered us his ſervice, and even deſired us to go into the city to entertain ourſelves; but we excuſed ourſelves, and he ſent us mead, brandy, beer, and ſome proviſions, which we returned back again, having ſufficiently provided ourſelves with *neceſſaries*. We talked with him about two hours, and drank

1703.

Nikole Saraiske

Great danger.

Terrible fall of an horſe.

1703. ſomewhat briskly about, and at four we departed with freſh horſes, and travelled 25 werſts before nine to the village of *Koſachof*, where we baited two or three hours, for the ſake of our horſes, who were to carry us quite to *Moſcow*. Upon the *twenty fourth* by eight in the morning, we had got near the village of *Oſtraweets* in 46 werſts farther. We here reſted and fed our horſes, and in two hours went away, and about noon arrived in the *German* ſlabode at *Moſcow*, in 25 werſts ſtill farther.

An aſſaſſination. Upon the *twenty ſeventh*, the ſchoolmaſter and reader of the *Lutheran* Church called *John Frederick Maes* of *Koningsberg*, was without any provocation murdered by a *German* Enſign, called *Kraſſo*, who being taken confeſſed the fact.

The author indiſpoſed. I thought to have reſted me after ſo fatiguing a journey, but upon the fifth of *March*, towards the evening, I was taken with an extraordinary heat of body, like a fever, and going immediately to bed, had a very troubleſome night of it. I roſe up, however, at break of day next morning, but was ſo weak, I could hardly ſtand upon my legs, and had beſides a continual cough day and night. The fire within me was ſo fierce, that had I drank an hundred times a day, it could not have been extinguiſhed. Sometimes I drank milk, ſometimes I drank beer, and ſometimes water boiled up with tamarinds and ſugar, which I found relief from in *Egypt*; and to keep my ſtomach in ſome degree of ſtrength, I drank alſo of rheniſh wine, and other things good for that end. In this manner did I paſs five days and five nights without any reſt, and in the night particularly was apt to be ſomewhat delirious. My friends, upon this, obſerving me to grow weaker and weaker, adviſed me to ſend for a phyſician, but I told them I was always my own phyſician, that I knew my conſtitution better than any body, and conſequently what was beſt for me; that I was perſuaded, as I knew the cauſe of my ſickneſs, a good regimen would do me more good than all the phyſicians in the world; beſides that, I had been for ſome time ſenſible of what was coming upon me. Upon the ſixth night and that following I reſted indifferently well, and found myſelf greatly relieved; in ſhort, after a continual regimen for ten days together, I began to take in ſtronger broths, and eat meat. I bled alſo a little at the noſe at night, and that eaſed my head.

He is his own phyſician.

1703.

Upon the *eleventh*, the Czar returned, with all his train, from *Veronis*, and upon the *thirteenth* he cauſed Colonel *Bodon*, already mention'd, to be beheaded in his preſence. He was executed in the *German* ſlabode, on one ſide of the poſt, on which the ſword and ax had been hung up, and Enſign *Kraſſo* was at the ſame time hanged; he then fixed up an order, that no one ſhould preſume to draw a ſword, upon pain of death.

Colonel Bodon beheaded, and Kraſſo hanged.

Upon *Sunday*, the *fourteenth* of the month, Monſieur *Caſimir Bolus*, Envoy from *France*, who had been ſome time incognito at *Moſcow*, had a private audience of the Czar at Count *Feudor Alexewitz de Golowin's*.

The Envoy of France admitted to an audience of the Czar.

This Prince, the ſame day, went with a ſmall attendance to ſee Mr. *Brants*, where he was entertained with cold meats and ſome other refreſhments. I came out of my room upon this occaſion, to have the honour of taking leave of his Majeſty, and to beg he would grant me a paſſport to go out of his dominions. Obſerving me to be much altered, he was ſo good as to ask me what was the matter with me, and what had been the cauſe of my illneſs; and upon my telling him I attributed it to ſome exceſſes on my journey from *Veronis*, he anſwered, nothing in the world was ſo good as a hair of the ſame dog; but the Reſident and ſome others coming in upon us, we were interrupted.

The Czar viſits Mr. Brants.

Having obtain'd the leave I wanted, and an order to count *Golowin* for a paſſport, I took leave of the Czar, who did me the honour to give me his hand to kiſs, and then beſtow-

The author takes leave of the Czar.

1703. ed on me his bleſſing, *God preſerve you.*

It was about ten when this Prince went away to Mr. *Lups*, and to ſeveral *Engliſh* Merchants, before he ſat out for *Sleutelenburg*; and upon the *fifteenth*, early in the morning he ſat out, without ſo much as going to *Probroſensko*.

Malefactors puniſhed.

Upon that day they were to execute the two other criminals, Captain *Sax*, and the ſervant of Colonel *Bodon*, whoſe head and body lay ſtill upon the ground, as *Kraſſo* hung upon the gibbet, guarded by ſome ſoldiers. They were both upon the block, and the executioner ſtood by with the ax in his hand, ready to give the fatal blow, when they were at once reprieved, the Captain to be ſent a perpetual Exile into *Siberia*, and the ſervant to receive thirty ſtrokes of the knoet, and then be a ſlave in the gallies for life; but I a little while afterwards heard he died of the knoet. 1703.

Our Reſident having demanded a paſſport for me, in the name of his Majeſty, Count *Golowin*, whoſe buſineſs it was, ordered it to be immediately diſpatched.

Upon the *twenty firſt* they celebrated *Palm-Sunday*; upon the *twenty fifth*, the Annunciation of the bleſſed Virgin *Mary*, in high reverence with the *Ruſſians*, and upon the *twenty eighth*, the feaſt of *Eaſter*. Nothing elſe remarkable occurr'd, except that a fire broke out at *Moſcow*, upon the *thirtieth*, and that the river of *Moska* thawed, and was open upon the *firſt* of *April*. So thorough a thaw made the ways very bad, and upon the *third* the waters were riſen higher than had been known in the memory of man. At this time I was taken with a tertian ague, but after three or four fits it left me.

CHAP. XIV.

The Author is ſhown every Thing remarkable in the Churches. Cloth that waſtes not in the Fire.

WHEN I was recovered of my ague, I went to *Moſcow*, to wait on *Ivan Alexewitz Moeſin Poeskin*, whom the Czar had ordered, at *Veronis*, to ſhew me every thing that deſerved to be ſeen in the churches, and other places of this city. This Nobleman, whom I have elſewhere mentioned, favoured me with a very civil reception, and told me he was ready to obey his Majeſty's orders, whenever I required it: I told him it ſhould be as ſoon as he pleaſed, becauſe, as his Excellence knew, I was on the point of ſetting out for *Perſia*. Upon this he appointed me to be with him at his houſe upon the *tenth* in the morning, which I took care to be, and found him ready to mount to go into the country; but he obligingly told me, the Gentleman with him would take care to go with me every where. In the firſt place we went to the church of *Saboor*, where they pretend to ſhew a picture by St. *Luke*, and Chriſt's garment upon which the ſoldiers caſt lots. They ſay this garment fell to the lot of a ſoldier, who happened to be a *Georgian*, and that he carrying it into his own country, made a preſent of it to his ſiſter, who was a maiden; that ſhe conceiving a great veneration for it, deſired upon her deathbed it might be buried with her, and that ſhe might be covered with it; that this being done, there aroſe a great tree from out of her tomb; that the *Perſians* afterwards poſſeſſing themſelves of *Georgia*, the King heard of this tomb, ordered it to be opened, and took out the Garment, which

A ſtory about Chriſt's garment.

1703. he carried away with him into *Perſia*; that ſome time afterwards ſending an embaſſy to *Moſcovy*, he made a preſent of it to the Great Duke, as he was a Chriſtian; that the *Muſcovites* deſirous to be certain it was the very garment, got together all the blind, the lame, and others labouring under other afflictions, not doubting, but if it was, what it was ſaid to be, it would heal them; that the effects proved equal to their wiſhes; that it had ever ſince been kept to be of uſe upon the ſame occaſions, and that it had never once failed to anſwer the end. All this they affirm for goſpel, and therefore I reſolved it ſhould be the firſt thing I took notice of.

The church of Saboor. This church is ſquare within, and 96 foot in length, the vault is ſuſtained by four great pillars, and the whole is full of pictures of Saints and the like. There are ſome of them in the *Greek* taſte, not to be called bad, even in the five little domes, in form of lanthorns, the largeſt of which is in the middle, and the other four at the four corners. The picture they will have to be by St. *Luke*, is on one ſide of the high Altar, and is a half length of the Virgin, repreſented with Chriſt kiſſing her, their faces being cloſe together. It is very gloomy and almoſt black; but whether this proceeds from the effects of time, or the ſmoke of the tapers, or the fancy of the painter; certain it is there is no great matter in it, beſides that it is all gilt but the faces and the hands. This Virgin has a fine crown of pearls and precious ſtones upon her head, and a collar of pearls which hangs down from about her neck. In ſhort this picture is placed in a nich, under which there is a ſtall or ſeat. Between the two pillars of the high Altar, there is a great ſilver hanging ſconce with branches, made at *Amſterdam*, like thoſe in our churches; and beſides this, there are three of copper well diſpoſed of in the body of the church; tho' it muſt be obſerved there are few or no ornaments in their churches, however it happens that there are ten ſilver lamps about the Altar of this. But in theſe lamps they burn no oyl, which is not in uſe with the *Ruſſians*, but tapers which are put into noſſels fixed upon the lamps. To the bottom of their great ſconces, they commonly hang an Oſtrich's egg. As we went out of this, we went into the Patriarch's church, which is above ſmall, and in form of a dome. On the right hand over-againſt the chappel there is an apartment, with Chriſt repreſented ſitting in a chair, in a picture all gilt except the face and hands; the Virgin *Mary*; St. *John Baptiſt* on the left, and on each hand an Apoſtle kneeling, with a ſilver lamp. Between this piece and the door of the chappel there is a bench, raiſed upon ſome ſteps, and thereon the Patriarch's ſeat covered with black velvet; and as you go into this little church, you ſee an Altar, behind which is a ſmall choir, full of pictures from top to bottom, each repreſenting ſtories of Saints, divided from each other by columns in the manner of windows, and here every thing is gilt: the other ſide of the walls is painted blue. Again in the crown of the dome there is a head of Chriſt, which nearly fills it, and about it ſeveral other repreſentations. The Patriarch's hall of audience which is tolerably large, is over-againſt this church; on the right as you go in you have the patriarchal chair all gilt, with a green velvet cuſhion and gold fringes about the arms, and upon an eſtrade of three ſteps high; it has at top a ſmall Chriſt in painting. As we went out of this hall they carried us up to a room where they keep the treaſures of moſt of the Patriarchs, and full of cheſts and trunks, which they opened for me. In the firſt were ſix patriarchal caps, two of which were of great value, divided from the others, and enriched with great pearls, large diamonds and other precious ſtones; the others were the ſame, but not ſo coſtly. There was a ſeventh adorned with pearls only, and belonging to the metropolitan; then they ſhew'd a box full of jewels, and among

1703.

Picture by St. Luke.

Church of the Patriarchs.

1703. mong the reſt diamond croſſes hanging by golden chains. All theſe things had belonged to ſeveral Patriarchs who had appeared in them upon proceſſions, and upon other ſuch public occaſions. There were alſo ſeveral *pojaſſes* or girdles with precious ſtones; many of the combs that had been uſed by the former patriarchs, moſt of them large and made of tortoiſhell; their croſiers with jewels at the end; ſeveral preſſes full of patriarchal robes and veſtments, 79 in all, and all of gold brocade, and adorned with pearls and precious ſtones. In the chief of them were nine veſtments, of extreme magnificence and beauty, and all ſet with precious ſtones: in others were fine ſtoles, a palm and a half broad, and among the reſt that worn by the Patriarch *Conſtantine* in the year 6176, as the *Ruſſians* compute: it is of a plain ſilk, and has ſuffered ſomewhat by time; they have an extraordinary regard for it, and keep it among their moſt magnificent veſtments. In the ſame place you ſee ſeveral diſhes of ſilver gilt, with great vaſes, and other veſſels of the ſame. Having ſatisfied my curioſity in this place, I deferred till the next day, being *Sunday*, to ſee the reſt of the churches. Firſt I waited upon Mr. *Moeſin Poeskin* to know of him if I could not have a ſight of Chriſt's garment; but he told me it was impoſſible, being in a place ſealed up with the Czar's own ſeal, and that without an expreſs order from him there was no ſetting eyes on it; and ſorry I was I had not had ſome intimation of this in time. In ſhort, I went again to the church of *Saboor* to ſee what there was ſtill curious to be ſeen; and they ſhewed me a great chalice or cup of gold, about two palms high, which they uſe in the adminiſtration of the ſacrament, crowned with four fine jewels, and the foot enamelled with the ſufferings of the Saviour of the world: A great diſh of the ſame metal, enamelled like the chalice, and in like manner adorned with four jewels; two plates, a ſpoon with an agate handle, a golden ſtirrer for the wine in the cup, and a crown all adorned with pearls and precious ſtones, together with two other ſmall chalices of agate, enriched alſo with jewels. All theſe jewels, ſay they, were found at the bottom of the great cask which St. *Anthony* the *Ruſſian* got fiſhed up by certain fiſhermen, when he was tranſported from *Rome* to *Nieugart*, ſitting on a mill-ſtone, having made it his bargain to have all that came up in the net. Then they ſhewed me a great book, which, upon certain holidays, they carry in proceſſion; it is adorned with precious ſtones, full of ſcripture ſtories in paint, and all in characters of gold; all theſe things are kept ſeparate in caſes of red velvet. They ſhewed alſo the body of the archbiſhop *Peter* in ſilver, with a baſs relief of him above; a ſmall reddiſh ſlip of Chriſt's garment, already mentioned in a caſe covered with glaſs; the body of the archbiſhop *John*, in a coffin like the former, and that of *Philip* in another. Then they ſhewed me the reliques of ſaints; the hand of *John Satoeſteva*; the ſkull, and all the head of *Gregory Bagaſlovo*, and the like. From hence, having thanked the Prieſt for the trouble he had been at, I went to the church of St. *Michael* the Archangel, very fine within, and full of pictures like the former. Here all the great Dukes of *Moſcovy* are entombed all in one place, excepting the two laſt, brothers to the preſent Czar, who are in another. Their tombs are raiſed up, and upon them you have rich habits of red velvet, with bands of green velvet, and thereon in *Ruſſian* characters, their birth, their age, and time of their deceaſe, with great pearl croſſes; but none of them for magnificence comes near the laſt of *Ivan Alexewitz*, which is all adorned with precious ſtones. I left this church and went to that of the Annunciation, or, as they call it, *Blagoweeſine*, ſmall and full of pictures like the laſt. Here, in a room, they ſhewed me 36 ſilver boxes, and ſome gold ones full of the reliques of ſaints, which they had taken the

Miracles of St. Anthony.

Reliques of Saints.

Church of St. Michael.

Church of the Annunciation.

1703.

1703. pains to ſpread out upon a long table againſt I came. In the firſt there was ſome of the blood of Chriſt, and in the others, a ſmall croſs made of the true croſs; a hand of the Evangeliſt St. *Mark*; ſome bones of the prophet *Daniel*, and other Saints, like *Mummy*; ſeveral heads, and other reliques all very brown. Having ſhewn me all this, they would have carried me to ſee other churches, but my curioſity being ſatisfied, I excuſed my ſelf, and thanked my conductor for the trouble I had given him, and the reſt for the favour they had done me, which was quite unuſual, and perhaps without example in that country.

Upon the *fifteenth* of this month, I went with Mr. *Poppe* to viſit the Knez, *Bories Alexewitz Galietſen*, at a pretty country houſe five werſts from *Moſcow*, and as we went thither paſſed by the fine eſtate of the Knez, *Mighaile Serkaskie*, the richeſt of all the Princes of this dominion, and ſo powerful that beſides a great number of villages he is lord of, he has above 20000 peaſants his vaſſals. We found the Knez, and I begged of him to grant me a paſsport from the office of the prikaes of *Caſan*, of which he was Vice-roy, as well as of *Aſtracan*. And this I did, becauſe Mr. *Poppe* had given me to underſtand that the Governour of *Caſan* and him of *Aſtracan*, would pay no regard to a paſsport from the prikaes of *Poſſolſch*, and might put a ſtop to my journey. The Knez *Bories* agreed to it, and diſpatched me one, in conſideration of Mr. *Poppe* who was his friend, and at the ſame time wrote to the Governors of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan* in my behalf. For which we returned him our thanks, and took leave of him. This Lord had, ſome months before, been at *Caſan* to make up a difference between two *Tartar* Princes, father and ſon, which aroſe as follows. The ſon having with him a woman the father was in love with, the latter got her ſpirited away from the former, who enraged at what had been done, declared war with his father, and appeared in the field at the head of 20000 men; the father on his ſide in a hurry got together 40000, and they were ready to fall on each other, when the Knez arrived and made them friends. The *Tartar* Prince among other things made him a preſent of a piece of coarſe cloth, which neither burns nor conſumes in the fire; and the Knez giving ſome of it to Mr. *Poppe*, he gave it to me. He told me it was made in *Katay*, between *China* and *Boggaer*, and that they there continued to make it. From the iſland of *Cyprus* I formerly brought ſome of the ſtone *Aſbeſtos* which may be ſpun into thread, and will not waſte in the fire, and in former days they made a cloth of it, but the art of doing it is now loſt. *Pliny* mentions ſuch a kind of cloth, as do ſome moderns who have treated of the *Roman* antiquities, and the uſe of lamps in the monuments of the ancients.

Difference between two Tartar Princes.

1703.

Remarkable cloth.

Upon the *ſixteenth* I dined in the city with Mr. *Poppe*, and returning to the ſlabode, I obſerved there was a fire in a certain place, whither I went to ſee how they contrived to put it out, but they do no more than throw down the next houſes.

My paſsports being diſpatched, I prepared for my departure, in company with an *Armenian* merchant, called *Jacob Daviedof*, who had travelled from *Iſpahan* to *Holland*, and had been ſome time at *Amſterdam*. We agreed to ſet out upon the *twenty ſecond*, and to fall down the river to *Aſtracan*. The time I had left was employ'd in taking leave of my friends, and particularly Mr. *Vander Hulſtd* our Reſident, and the Sieurs *Brants* and *Lups*, to whom I owed a thouſand obligations, and eſpecially to Mr. *Coyet*, who being perfectly ſkilled in the language, and informed of the cuſtoms of the country, gave me ſuch hints and inſtructions as were of great uſe to me in the ſequel of my journey. I went from *Moſcow* about noon, and finding no veſſel to carry me on board of the ſhip where the *Armenian* was already embarked, and which was fallen down

Departure from Moſcow.

1703. down to *Malsko*, to have the benefit of high water over the sands, I was obliged to hire three waggons to carry me thither. 1703.

CHAP. XV.

Departure from Moscow. *Course of the* Wolga. *Description of the Towns and Places upon that River. Arrival at* Astracan.

Kolommenske. IN my way to the ship I passed by the town of *Kolommenske*, on the right hand upon an eminence; it makes a good figure, has a fine monastery, a church and two towers. You enter the two sides of it by crossing a raft of timbers fastened together, so that part of them may be removed when ships are to pass, and be put together with the rest again. I also went by several villages, charmingly situated on an eminence on the right hand of the river. Towards evening I got into a wood of low trees, and being some hours in going through it, it was late before I got to *Matsko*, where I heard the barks of the *Armenians* were not yet come. Here were two houses, and yet I lay that night in a barn half open, and upon the hard floor. Upon the *twenty third* in the morning, my fellow-traveller came down with four barks, and three other *Armenians*, who were going also to *Ispahan*, and informed me the ship we were to go in, and on board of which he had a great quantity of cloths, was fallen down still 60 wersts lower; so we followed her by water, and reached her at ten at night; but as it was late, and every thing topsy-turvy, we did not care to go on board, but went on shore, where we made a good fire, and fed upon good pike and perch we had, as we came along, bought of some fishermen for three pence. From hence I wrote some letters to my friends in *Moscow* and in *Holland*, and upon the *twenty fourth*, about ten in the morning we imbarked. In these parts they have small flat-bottomed vessels, which the *Russians* call stroeks, and which carry about 300 bales of silk, or about 15 lasts: They are capacious, and have but one mast and one sail, a very large one, and of use chiefly when the wind is aft; but when the wind is not either right astern, or well upon the quarters, they row with sixteen oars. They have no rudder, but a long kind of paddle, broad at the end in the water, the other end is supported by a kind of crutch adapted to the purpose, and this the patron or master manages by a tackle reeved on each side, which keeps it steady, and which may be taken on or off at pleasure. We had on board 23 sailors, and 52 passengers, as well *Russians* as *Armenians*, reckoning servants into the number. The river hitherto winds very much, and is every way about 40 fathom in breadth. In about two hours time we came to the monastery of *Smolenski*, which makes a figure at a distance, and has a fine steeple, and is on the side of a wood about 100 wersts from *Moscow*, nor did we lose sight of it till about four of the clock; and after this we, on each hand, saw a country more open and full of villages, and afterwards a more lofty scene of land, and dropt anchor when it came on to be dark night. Upon the *twenty fifth*, about nine of the clock, we arrived at *Kolomna*, to the south-west of the river of *Moska*, an episcopal see in the southern parts of *Russia*, to the eastward of *Moscow*. This city I drew on the north-side, without any sight of the river,

Form of the vessels called stroeks.

Monastery of Smolenski.

Kolomna.

1703. river, and you have the prospect of it in N°. 18. This city, which has already been mentioned in my journey to *Veronis*, is 180 werſts from *Moſcow* by water, becauſe of the great ſweeps of the river, upon which it has a bridge, or a raft rather, ſuch as we juſt now deſcribed; and here we ſtaid ſeven hours to give our people time to get ready their canvaſs and geer for ſailing. Towards the evening we came to the river of *The* Occa. *Occa*, which comes from the ſouth, where the *Moska* falls into it: It is very broad as well as the *Moska*, which till then had ſeemed but ſmall to us, and its ſource is not far from the *Crim Tartary*. It croſſes the ſouthern parts of *Moſcovy*, and flows away to the eaſtward of the city of *Moſcow*, through the dutchy of that name, and falls into the *Wolga* at *Niſi-Novogorod*. This part of the country is very pleaſant, and on the right hand is the town of *Kiekiena Serophof*, where there are two great buildings, in one of which the Governor reſides, and on the left a village, with another large edifice, 10 werſts from *Kolomna*. The courſe of the river being more direct than hitherto, we advanced at a greater rate, and did not come to in the night. Upon the *twenty ſixth* in the morning, we paſſed by the village of *Dedenawa* on the left hand, and here there is a fine church upon the river, 30 werſts from *Kiekiena*; and here to the right and the left you ſee a wood of ſmall trees, and the river is every where of the ſame breadth. That day alſo we paſſed by ſeveral villages, and then met with lands higher, yet very agreeable, but there the river begins to wind again. Steering our way eaſt-north-eaſt, the land and the trees appeared to us of a charming verdure, and at the laſt turn of the mountain I took the view you have in N°. 19. Being beyond theſe mountains which we had only to the right of us, we found the river much ſtraitned, and about even we had, to the right and left of us, hills covered with ſmall trees. Upon the *twenty ſeventh* in the morning we ſaw a lofty mountain to the right, 1703. and ſeveral villages to the left, with cows and ſheep feeding about the country: In the mean time we had every day fiſhermen, who came to us in ſmall boats [canoes] hollowed out of the trunk of a tree, and ſold us more pike and perch for three or four pence than ſeven or eight perſons could eat. Advancing ſtill eaſtward, we, on the left hand of us, met with an iſland of ſome length full of trees, and afterwards with ſeveral villages at the foot of mountains, and the fine monaſtery of *Bogoſlova*, built of ſtone, *Fine monaſtery.* and very agreeably ſituated among trees, upon a hill, and on one ſide a great green plain full of cattle, quite down to the river. This monaſtery is north-weſt 20 werſts from *Pereſlaw*; a proſpect of which you Pereſlaw. have in N° 20. The ſoil here is very fine and full of villages. About *three* we had a low country, and an hour afterwards we came in with a gulf of the river *Prorater*, 15 werſts from *Pereſlaw*; and ſoon afterwards we came in with another, as big as a river, and ran up a great way into the land; and an hour afterwards a third, on the right, which ſtretched up the land, towards the mountains, and ſpread out on both ſides; for my part I take it to have been a flood; and here the river again begins to take its ſweeps. About ſix we had ſight of the village of *Fabrenewa* upon an eminence, and the country overflowed all beneath, nay over the tops of the trees; it had the look of a ſea; the ſoil here appeared to be ſandy. There we often met with veſſels coming from *Caſan* and other places, towed along with a rope, by men with great labour and difficulty; tho' they have the relief of ſailing when the wind can ſerve them. Here we ſaw ſtore of ducks, ſnipes, and other game, and at the evening arrived before the monaſtery of *Borofske*, built of ſtone, and upon a hill not far from the river, and near a village, three werſts from *Pereſlaw*, where we ſtaid all night. Upon the *twenty eighth*, we paſſed by this town, in thick cloudy weather,

KOLOMNA.

20.

CLOITRE BOGOSLOVA.

VÛË SUR LA RIVIERE.

VÛË SUR LA RIVIERE.

1703. which prevented us from ſeeing it as I could have wiſhed. It is upon a riſing ground not far from the river, in latitude of 45 degrees 42 minutes, and is called *Pereſlaw Reſanske*, a name it derives from the province of *Reſan*, the capital of which it is. We afterwards went by ſeveral villages upon hills, and ſaw overflowed land, which looked like our combuſtible ſoil of which we make turf, in the paſſage between *Leyden* and the *Hague*. Eight werſts from *Pereſlaw* we ſaw a great village belonging to *Tiſmaffe*, *Ivanitz*, *Erfofskie*, Governor of *Aſtracan*, and ſome *Ruſſians* under tents, diverting themſelves along the river ſide; but farther on we ſaw many villages, and all a flat country to the right and left, covered with water above the tops of the trees. The river is very broad in this place, and in the evening we were ſurrounded with trees; but the water had ſo covered its banks, it was hard to know them to walk upon. The weather was very fine, tho' very hot. I went on ſhore with the boat, which did ſo every day for wood, to ſee if I could meet with no game, and about the evening a great bark rowed by us from *Moſcow*. Upon the *twenty ninth* in the morning, 10 werſts beyond *Rezan*, upon the left, we met with an opening of many fathoms within the land, where the river having made its way, formed a great lake, navigable for ſmall craft; but the weather being thick and hazy we could ſee no villages. A league from thence we had ſight of another gulf, where the lake, juſt mentioned, terminated in a round form; the meadows hereabout were full of horſes and cattle, and beyond them were high mountains. At nine we ſaw more lands under water, but coming to a point where the river formed a little gulf, we ſaw dry ground again, and a place called *Kieſtrus*, where were only ſome poor wretched houſes, and ſeveral veſſels. Here we hoiſed ſail for the firſt time, with an eaſy gale, and to the right of us, ſaw the monaſtery of *Terigho* with a ſmall village, and ſoon after 1703. that of *Soloſade*, with a church indifferently large, and built of ſtone. Then we came again to great Inundations, and ſaw ſeveral great trees with water up to their branches, and this is every year the caſe till *July*, when the waters begin to abate. Upon the *thirtieth*, coming to a pretty place 100 werſts from the city of *Keſiemof*, I drew the proſpect of it as in N°. 21.

We got under ſail a ſecond time, with the wind at north-eaſt, but we did not continue to be ſo long, and were obliged to handle our oars again; and having paſſed by ſome villages, we came up with a country ſo drowned, that we could ſee nothing but sky, water, and the tops of trees. Towards evening we met with a veſſel belonging to his Czarian Majeſty, and laden with anchors for *Aſoph*, with another with her of ſmaller dimenſions; and we ſaluted each other with firing of muskets. When we were within 30 werſts of *Kaſiemof*, we Kaſiemof. made uſe of but eight oars, that the crew might take turns to relieve one another, half and half. Upon the *firſt* of *May*, at one in the afternoon, we appeared a long ſide of *Kaſiemof*, ſeated upon the left hand of the river, and upon the top and declivity of an hill. Tho' it be conſiderable for extent, it has no walls, and all the houſes are of wood, as well as the four churches. Here is a tower to a moſch, belonging to the *Turks* and *Tartars*, that live here, where I landed with ſome *Armenians*, to buy proviſions and beer, but could get none. We rowed after the bark that kept on her way, and had much ado to overhaul her, in a full hour, paſſing by ſeveral villages in our way. But our people who went aſhore in our abſence found aſparagus, and got a good ſtore of it. They were long and ſlender, but well taſted, and good to ſtew; and taking the largeſt of them, I dreſſed them after our manner. Having gone by ſeveral villages, there came up ſo ſtrong a gale againſt us, that it was as much as we could do to avoid ſtriking on the ſtarboard

1703. board ſhore. The wind was at ſouth-eaſt, and we did ſtrike and ſtick a little once, but we ſoon got afloat again; and upon this occaſion I obſerved of theſe barks, that they are not ready at Alaetma. anſwering the helm. At night we came up with a village, ſpreading down the declivity of the hill towards the river, and there I took a proſpect which you have in N°. 22. Upon the *ſecond*, in the morning, we arrived at *Alaetma*, 60 werſts beyond *Kaſiemof:* It is upon the top of a hill, and lies inwards the land, ſo that it is not quite to be viewed from the river; is conſiderably large, has eight churches, and has ſome houſes on the ſides of the river; and is ſurrounded with ſeveral villages, and has pleaſant woods on each ſide. We afterwards ſaw ſeveral villages, and a great mead full of cattle, and beyond that another gulf of the river, which ſeemed to wind among the meadows and their trees to a village at the foot of a mountain. The river is here very broad, and the banks on each hand are full of trees, and here we ſaw a prodigious flock of geeſe in the air. Moruma. Upon the *third* we paſſed by *Moruma*, a town upon the declivity of a hill, tolerably large, with ſeven ſtately ſtone churches, and ſeveral others of wood; and here they ſay is the beſt bread in all *Ruſſia*. It is inhabited both by *Ruſſians* and *Tartars*, and here begin the *Tartars* of *Mordua*. As we went on we ſaw again ſeveral villages and lands under water; the river is here very broad, and one of theſe villages was at the foot of a mountain, which runs away ſome leagues farther. The ſoil is ſandy and ſo full of ſtones, that it is difficult to land: Here we ſaw a *Beggars.* man continually making ſigns of the croſs, and every now and then bowing down to the ground; which our *Ruſſians* obſerving, went in the boat to him, with what every one had been pleaſed to give him, and among other things ſome loaves; for he was a poor beggar, and a little after we in the ſame manner ſaw three women with their children, on whom alſo we beſtowed our alms. Theſe 1703. poor people live in the mountains, and no ſooner ſee a veſſel approach than they come down for charity. After this we came among ſome lofty hills, bare of trees, and yet very green. At length, reaching a kabak, we landed in hopes of getting ſome beer, but it was bad, and we had a good deal of trouble to fetch the bark; then a brisk gale ſprung up againſt us, which forced us to lie ſtill for ſome hours. After this we croſſed the mouths of two rivers, the *Molſua Raka* to ſtarboard, and eight werſts further on the larboard ſide the *Cleſma*, which comes from *Volodimer*. Upon the *fourth* we came into the midſt of a lofty country, and got down to the village of *Isbuletz*, 40 werſts from *Niſen*. Here we met a bark with ten oars, which made good way againſt the ſtream of the river, whoſe banks were very level on each ſide, and covered with trees, with hills at a diſtance. About *three* we drew near to the monaſtery of *Dudina*, moſt pleaſantly ſituated amidſt trees, upon the declivity of a hill, on whoſe top is a village, of which you can only ſee the ſpires of the ſteeples. At night it came on to blow ſo ſtrong, and ſuch a ſea was raiſed, that we were glad to take ſhelter on the larboard ſhore of the river. Upon the *fifth* the wind fell, and we got under way again before it was day, and having gone by ſeveral villages, we came at length to the ſhipyards, which lie along the river, and reach to the ſuburbs of *Niſen*, where there is a fine and great monaſtery ſurrounded with a wall; a ſtone church in the bottom, beſet with wooden houſes down to the river; another ſtone church, indifferently large, and well built againſt the hill, on the top of which is a village. The *Ruſſians* commonly call this city *Niſen* or *Niesna*, others *Niſi-Novogorod*, or the little *Novogorod*, and ſome *Niſen Nieugarten*. It is the capital of the ſmall Dutchy of the name, and has a citadel upon a rock, or the conflux of the *Occa* and the *Volga*. This city *Its ſituation.*

VEUË SUR LA RIVIERE.

22

ALAETMA.

23

1703. is begirt with a fine ſtone wall, and you go through a great bazar or market before you get to the gate called *Iwanofskie*, which is towards the river. This gate is built of huge blocks of ſtone, and is very deep; from hence you aſcend by a great ſtreet full of wooden bridges, till you come to the gate called *Diawietrofskie*; near which is the great church, built of ſtone, and with five domes varniſhed over with green, and adorned with fine croſſes. On one ſide of this church is the archiepiſcopal palace well built of ſtone; and within its incloſure a pretty little church with a ſteeple, and two other churches, the one of ſtone, the other of wood. The prikaes or chancery is alſo near this gate, and of wood, as is alſo the Governor's houſe. However, there is no great ſight to be ſeen in this city, whoſe circumference is not very great, and all its houſes of wood; nor has it more than two gates. The country about it is pleaſant to the eye, full of trees, and well ſtored with houſes. Its walls are flanked with towers both round and ſquare, and among them is one more conſiderable than the reſt, and to be ſeen at a great diſtance. In the gate on the land-ſide, in the paſſage to the guard room, were four pieces of cannon. But the ſuburbs of this city are very large, eſpecially next the river, where are ſeveral churches of ſtone, and where the hill, divided into ſeveral parts, on which there are churches and houſes, has a very fine effect; but there is no ſeeing of the circuit of it, becauſe of the heights and the depths which intercept the ſight. The river here is always crowded with a great number of embarkations going and coming from all parts. Upon the ſide of it is a great village belonging to Mr. *Gregory Demitri Strogenof*, where there is a fine ſtone church, and a great houſe of the ſame where this merchant ſometimes reſides. About eight there went away 48 great barks with ten oars each, and 40 hands to load wood; and all theſe belonged to this Gentleman, who is reckoned to be the richeſt merchant in all *Ruſſia*; and to each of thoſe who went to fetch his wood he gave three rix-dollars. At night they began to ring the bells for the feaſt of the Aſcenſion which was to be kept the next day. Here we took in a ſtore of proviſions, and particularly brandy, which is at this place both good and cheap, for you have eight bottles of it for 40 pence; nor did the *Armenians* forget to take as much of it as they thought they ſhould want. Nor are eatables leſs plentiful: You may here buy a lamb or an ordinary ſheep for thirteen or fourteen pence; two ſmall ducks for a penny; a good pullet for three-pence; twenty eggs for a penny; two white loaves, reaſonably big, for a penny; a brown loaf of ſeven or eight pound for the ſame price, and the beer is both good and cheap. This city is computed to be 800 werſts from *Moſcow*, which make about 160 *German* leagues, tho' the diſtance is not above 100 of the ſame leagues by land; and ſtands upon the *Occa*, which we entered at *Kolomna*, as we have ſaid; and here this river falls into the *Wolga*, formerly called the *Rha*; and theſe two rivers thus united, are about 4000 foot broad, if we may rely upon thoſe who have meaſured them in winter upon the ice. This place is at preſent inhabited by none but *Ruſſians*; here are no *Tartars*; it is very populous, and in the latitude of 56 degrees 28 minutes. I ſhould have been glad to have ſeen it in front, and have taken a view of it from the river, but they would not ſuffer me to do it, no not for money, becauſe of the holiday; for upon holidays, the *Ruſſians* do nothing in the world but get drunk; and in this pickle did I ſee many of them wallowing in the ſtreets. It is odd enough to ſee how the poor keep all day long before the kabaks, or houſes where they ſell brandy; I ſtaid ſome hours in that where we bought ours, to ſee the pranks and mummery of theſe drunkards, when the liquor firſt begins to operate; but they muſt ſtand in 1703.

1703. the ſtreet, they muſt not preſume to go into the houſe. At the door there is a table where they depoſite their money, and then they give them the quantity of brandy they want, which is taken out of a great kettle, with a wooden ladle, and poured into a cup of the ſame material, the ſmalleſt meaſure of all coſting an halfpenny. And thus are they ſerved by a particular perſon who all the day long does nothing elſe, attended by another, who receives the money; nor is this publick practice of drunkenneſs common to the men only, it is the very ſame with the women. In ſhort, I ſaw this ſcene over again at a kabak for beer, where they are allowed to go in to drink. Upon the *ſixth* we embarked to get our people on board, and paſſed the night upon the river; early the next day we proceeded on our voyage, and as we paſſed by the city and the ſuburbs, I like the view of it ſo well, that you will find it drawn by me in N°. 24. Advancing forward we ſaw two villages on the larboard of us, one of which was very great and called *Weeſna*, and on the ſtarboard the monaſtery of *Beſtjerske*, a great building all of ſtone, the roofs excepted, with ſeveral houſes to the right and left, a werſt from the city. We alſo ſaw a ſmall church called *Jaſſooſni* upon a hill, and ſome hundreds of perſons going to it from all parts to celebrate the feſtival, and ſpreading their tents to divert themſelves under. We continued at three werſts from the city till the *ſeventh* at *ſeven* in the morning, and about noon we came up with an iſland, about two werſts in length, and covered with trees. We then went by ſeveral hills, and another iſland without trees; and left the river of *Kerſimia*, and the monaſtery of *Macaria* to the larboard of us. This monaſtery is a great building of ſtone, and looks like a caſtle or fort, being ſurrounded with a fine ſquare ſtone wall, with a tower at each corner of it: I ſhould have been glad to have taken a view of it, but the day was too far ſpent. On one ſide there was a village, and a chan

The Ruſſians *love to drink.*

or caravanſerai built of wood, where the merchants keep their goods; and is a place where there is a great fair every year, in the month of *July*, whither moſt of the traders in *Ruſſia* reſort, tho' it laſts but a fortnight. Our *Ruſſians* going thither to buy fiſh, were told, that not above a fortnight before a certain Governor coming from *Moſcow*, had been there attacked by three barks, manned with each 18 *Ruſſian* pirates; that the Governor's was ſo well provided with arms, and defended itſelf ſo well as to kill three of the pirates, and oblige the reſt to betake themſelves to flight; that this accident had driven the Governor back again to *Moſcow*, but that he had left one of his people in the village to be dreſſed of his wounds he had receiv'd in the ſkirmiſh.

1703.

This made us reſolve to keep upon our guard, and we prepared our arms to defend us in caſe of need, being provided with about 40 muſkets and piſtols, and all the night we had a *Ruſſian* and *Armenian* paſſenger upon the watch.

Upon the *eighth*, at break of day we arrived at *Bormino*, 100 werſts from the laſt town we had paſſed; and here we had the ſhore on each ſide full of trees, and the river of ſmall iſlands, and about eight we got to the town of *Goekina*, which belongs to Count *Golowin*. This place ſtretches a good way along the river, and is ſaid to contain 7000 houſes; and here the country people brought us bread to ſell. As we held on our courſe we ſaw ſeveral floating iſlands upon the river, which is here very broad; and about *ten* we croſſed the mouth of the *Soera*, which comes from the ſouth, where begins the high mountains, at the foot of which is a great village called *Waſſiel*, and at top the town *Waſſieligorod*, which is not to be ſeen from the river. They told me it was ſmall, had no wall, and all wooden houſes 120 werſts from *Niſen*; and theſe parts are full of *Czeremiſſian Tartars* who reach quite to *Caſan*. About *four* we arrived at the town of *Kuſmademianski*, 40 werſts from the laſt. It is tolerably large, and ſtretches along the river,

Waſſieligorod.

Kuſmademianſki.

NIESNA.

CASAN.

SAMARA.

1703. river, and partly up the hill, but has no wall. The wind being ſouther-ly we got up our ſail, and as we went on, we obſerved the two ſhores to be full of linden trees, and ſeve-ral iſlands, but ſaw no hills. In the
Sabakzar. night we paſſed by *Sabakzar*, which is 40 werſts from the former; upon an eminence alſo, and I thought it looked very pretty; and 30 werſts
Kokſhaga. from thence we ſaw the town of *Kok-ſhaga* on the larboard of us. Up-on the *ninth* we were at ſome high hills, and came up with a great bark attended by ſeveral others, bound for *Caſan:* The weather calm, moiſt and hot. About noon we paſſed be-fore *Blowolska*, but 80 werſts from *Caſan*, on the ſtarboard ſide, and thence to *Bellawalska*, where our people went for ſome refreſhments. At *three* we ſteered by the town of *Swyatski*, with a fair wind. This place is upon an eminence, is pro-vided with a citadel, and has ſeve-ral churches and monaſteries of ſtone, but the houſes and walls are of wood; and the whole is formed in-
Swyage. to an iſland by the *Swyage*, which comes from the ſouth-eaſt, and here falls into the *Wolga*. Over againſt the town, on the ſide of the *Wolga*, at the point of a hill, you ſee the village of *Soldaetske* ſlabode, between which and this town this river falls into the *Wolga*, as has been ſaid, and as appears by N°. 25. where you ſee an iſland before the river of *Swyage* or *Swyatski*. We coaſted this hill or mountain, and ſteered away ſouth half eaſt, and at ſix had ſight
Caſan. of the city of *Caſan*, on larboard of us, diſtant four werſts. It makes a great figure becauſe of the churches and monaſteries it is full of, and its citadel ſurrounded with an enceint of ſtone. We had a little before ſailed by the yards where they build the ſhips, ſix or ſeven werſts from the town, in a reach where the ri-ver is very broad, and here we ſaw 40 veſſels of all ſorts upon the ſtoc[illegible] and many others more near-ly compleated, on the ſide of the town. They told us they were to build 380, moſt of which were to go to *Aſtracan* for the ſervice and 1703. care of the *Caſpian* ſea, and the reſt to other places. I took a view of *Ca-ſan* as we went by, in the beſt man-ner I could, and as you may ſee in N°. 26. It is in *Aſia*, and in the *Its ſitua-tion.* ſouthern parts of the *Muſcovite Tar-tary*, upon a river of the ſame name, which the inhabitants call *Caſanske*, and falls into the *Wolga*, and is the capital of the kingdom ſo called, be-tween that of *Bulgar* and the *Cze-remiſſians.* This city has a wall of wood. Beyond this we met with ſeveral iſlands, which ſeemed like foreſts in the river, and upon the hills took notice of a kiln, where they were at work, and on the left of us lands under water. Upon the *tenth*, we came to the mouth of the river of *Kama*, which falls on the *River of* Kama. larboard ſide into the *Wolga*, at the diſtance of 60 werſts from *Caſan*; it is very broad and comes from the north-eaſt, and falls with ſuch a tor-rent into the *Wolga*, as alone to hur-ry on veſſels for ſome leagues. They ſay the water of it is brown, which I did not perceive, tho' it is certain ſo ſweet, that it mends the *Wolga* ve-ry much for drinking. About noon we came to the ſmall town of *Te-* Tetoetſie. *toetſie* or *Tetus*, upon a lofty hill, 90 werſts from *Caſan*; it is ſurrounded with a wooden wall, and conſiſts of poor wooden houſes, and ſmall churches: You can only ſee a part of the walls as you go by. There is alſo, upon the river ſide, a ſmall village, where our people went for proviſion and ice to cool our drink. We then went by a great iſland cal-led *Stariſo*, 40 werſts from *Tetus*, and at night by ſeveral others full of trees; and here the river is a good league in breadth, and has moun-tains on the ſtarboard ſide of it: As the wind was both ſtrong and againſt us, we rode at anchor a part of the night. Upon the *eleventh* I went a-ſhore with my *Armenians* and ſome *Ruſſians*, to buy proviſions near the town of *Simbierska*, which is on the Simbier-ſka. right upon a hill, three werſts from the river. They ſay it was former-ly a large city, and deſtroyed by the great

1703. great *Tamerlane*; tho', as I understand, there are no remains of it at this day, nor had I time to ſearch for any. Some will have it there were other cities and iſlands higher up, of which there are ruins ſtill to be ſeen, but it is a matter to be doubted: Tho' they aſſured me, that near *Zariets* there were ſtill ſome footſteps of an old caſtle and its walls. Upon the whole they affirm, there are very conſiderable and very ancient cities between *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, and among the reſt *Acktoeba*, upon the river of *Oeffa*, tho' concerning this I have been able to gather nothing certain. True it is the *Oeffa* is known between *Saratof* and *Zaritha*, on the other ſide of the *Wolga*, and that it falls into this river and waſhes even a part of *Siberia*. It is known alſo that the city of *Acktoeba* was upon this river, but there are not the leaſt traces of it left now, all the ſtones having been removed to build *Aſtracan*, and ſome other places. Being on ſhore I found the purlieus of the village of *Simbierska* of great extent, partly upon the river, and partly upon the hill which we were to go up, before we got to the *Bazar*. When we came a fire had juſt broke out among ſome houſes upon the hill, and had already deſtroyed five or ſix of them, and in leſs than half an hour there were above 20 burnt down; for the wind was ſo high that they were in flames before they could pull them down to ſtop it: We here found every thing as cheap as at *Nieſna*; I ſhould have been glad to have gone quite up to the place itſelf, which is 180 werſts from *Caſan*, but our veſſel being under way there was no doing it. I was however informed it was large, ſurrounded with a wooden wall; that in it were eight ſtone churches, three or four monaſteries, and above 10000 houſes all inhabited by *Ruſſians*, the *Tartars* keeping in the villages. We were almoſt two hours before we could overtake our bark, nor was it without danger we rowed after her, the river whirling about violently in ſome places, and being very deep, has ſuch a troubleſome ſwell that a ſmall boat can hardly live in it. We again met with ſeveral places covered with trees, and very pleaſant to look at, and hills alſo that ſhew themſelves through theſe ſame trees. Thirty werſts from this town we came to the village of *Siengiela*, and ſeveral others inhabited by *Ruſſians*, and ſoon after to the town of *Nove Devitzke Salo*, of great extent, very cloſe, with many churches and a great ſteeple. In the night we met with a bark rowing and full of *Ruſſians*, who aſked us whence we came, whither we were bound, and what we were? We anſwered, we belonged to his Czarian Majeſty, and adviſed them to come no nearer for fear they repented it; we apprehended them to be rogues. Upon the *twelfth* in the morning we ſaw hills on each hand of us, ſome of them covered with fir, a ſight we had not ſeen till now. The river was not a werſt broad in this place, tho' to make amends it was very deep. It had been ſo high this year, that it had drowned all the land we have ſpoken of, ſo that there were even rivers that could not be diſtinguiſhed. The *Ruſſians* are very ignorant in thoſe things, and could tell me nothing of the cauſe of it, neither could I get any information on ſhore, becauſe our veſſel made no ſtay here. At *nine* we got to the village of *Siera Barak*, 40 werſts on this ſide *Samara*; here our people went aſhore for proviſion, and the river widened, and we ſaw an iſland under water, and on the left of us a high round hill with hardly any trees, called *Sariol Kiergen*. The *Ruſſians* told us it was the tomb of a King, or Emperor of *Tartary*, called *Mammon*, who came up the *Wolga* with 70 other *Tartar* Kings to ſeize upon *Ruſſia*: That dying in this place, his ſoldiers whom he had brought in great numbers on this expedition, filled each his helmet and buckler with earth, to raiſe him a mountain, which is this hill. A ſmall league from hence you meet with

River of Oeffa.

Story of a Tartar *King.*

1703. another called *Kabia Gora*, covered with trees, and extending to *Samara*, thoſe on the left are ſo thick that there is no ſeeing thro' them, the growth being chiefly alders and willows. Here they find the beſt ſulphur in the world, a diſcovery which has not been made above two years; and here were then at work upon it 4000 perſons, as well *Ruſſians* as *Czeremiſſians* and *Mordwatians*; over whom the Czar has ſurveyors and ſoldiers. Theſe hills are on the weſt of the river, and at two in the afternoon we came to *Samara*, on the eaſt of the ſame, and upon the acclivity and top of a hill, not very high, and bare of trees, and ending with the town itſelf upon the river ſide, as you ſee in N°. 27. and not as others have written, two werſts from the river. At the end of this town you have the river *Samar*, whoſe name it bears, and they ſay it falls into the *Wolga* five or ſix werſts from thence. This town is indifferently large, all of wood, with poor wretched houſes. Its walls are of wood alſo, and flanked with towers, of which there is a very great one on the land ſide. The city covers almoſt the whole hill, and the ſuburbs ſtretch along the ſide of the river. They compute it to be 350 werſts from *Caſan*, and as you go by it, you ſee a gate, and ſeveral ſmall churches with ſome monaſteries. *Twenty five* werſts from hence, we, on the ſtarboard ſide, ſaw a river called *Askula* fall into the *Wolga*, and into this does the *Samar* diſcharge itſelf. Here we loſt ſight of the hills and mountains, the river was very broad, and ſhortly after we had ſight of them again very near us upon the right hand. We met with ſeveral veſſels that day, and ſaw ducks of an extraordinary ſize, brown and white, and thwarted the river *Waſſiele* on the larboard of us; it is but ſmall, and near it, in the *Wolga*, a narrow ſlip of an iſland covered with trees, and under water, which we thought very ſtrange. Then we met with another veſſel from *Aſtracan*, whoſe

Fine ſulphur.

Samara.

Its ſituation.

Waſſiele.

maſter told us he had fourteen others coming after him, all bound for the fair of *Makaria*, we have mentioned elſewhere; part of them went by us in the night. Upon the *thirteenth*, on the left of us we ſaw *Kaskur*, 120 werſts from *Samara*; it is ſmall, with a wooden encient flanked, with towers of the ſame, and has alſo ſome churches the ſame. Its ſuburb or village is on one ſide, as may be obſerved N°. 28. About a league farther there is another town, called *Sieſeron*, indifferently large, and with ſeveral ſtone churches. The mountains here are dry and bare; but they are much better a little farther on. The *Calmuc Tartars* ſcour theſe parts, and carry off man and beaſt, and whatever elſe comes in their way. A little ſtill farther on, the river winds very much, among great iſlands full of trees, and the country was ſo overflowed, that it was difficult to diſtinguiſh the bed of *Wolga*. We then ſaw the hills again upon our right, but parched up with the great drought and heat of the ſun, whereas at other times they are covered with verdure; and indeed the country people earneſtly longed for rain, being at a loſs for wherewithal to keep their cattle. We then went on to *Sela* at the foot of the mountains, 60 werſts from *Kaſkur*; and there we met with three great *Stroeks*, one of which belonged to his Czarian Majeſty; they were full of *Coſſac* women, whom they were tranſporting to *Caſan*, and whoſe huſbands had been hung up the year before for their robberies, concerning which we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak hereafter. From hence we croſſed the entrance of the river *Waſſiele*, oppoſite to which you have the *Nove Derevene*, or the *New Village* belonging to Count *Golowin*. We rode part of the night at anchor, to eaſe our people, who had been fatigued with a ſpell of 60 werſts. Upon the *fourteenth* we had the wind aft, and went down the river at a great rate. A veſſel laden with crockery, and bound for *Aſtracan*, paſſed by us; and about *eleven*

Kaskur.

Sieſeron.

Calmuc Tartars.

1703. *ven* we got to *Woſkreſinska*, 65 miles from *Saratof*, where the hills were very ſteep, covered with a grey ſand, and full of ſtones. Here we met with fiſhermen, who gave our people a great deal of fiſh for a little brandy, which they are not allowed to ſell: This part abounds with oaks. Soon after this we were taken with a violent ſtorm of wind, thunder, and rain, which made the river as rough and boiſterous as a ſea, and obliged us to come to anchor under the larboard ſhore, where our veſſel ſtruck ſo hard againſt ſome trunks of trees, that we were in imminent danger, and had like to have loſt our boats; for theſe barks have but a ſmall anchor, which they dare not let go in the open channel, when the wind is high, becauſe it would not be ſufficient to keep them from driving; but the ſtorm did not laſt long. At night we went on ſhore, 20 werſts from *Saratof*, where we lighted up a good fire, and met with oaks, wild roſes, and other flowers; and having recovered ourſelves, we returned to our veſſel: But we had no ſooner got on board, than one of our *Armenian* merchants had a fit which made us deſpair of his life; and in it he continued for two or three hours, when he began to move a little, but without any power to ſpeak. In the midſt of this we came to *Saratof*, and brought him upon deck, where we ſaw clotted blood come out of his mouth, which made us fancy he had an impoſthume in his throat, and that he would hardly recover. In the mean time we ſent to the town for a Phyſician or Surgeon, but none being to be found, and perceiving I could be of no uſe to the ſick man, I went to ſee the town, which is in the ſouth-eaſt of *Ruſſia*, and on the north-eaſt of the *Wolga*, againſt, and in part upon a hill, its ſuburbs ſtretching along the river. I found it had no walls in the higheſt parts, but wooden towers at ſome diſtance from each other. It has a gate a quarter of a league from the river, and another on the left hand, ſeparate from the town, and a third on the ſide of *Moſcow* by land, with ſome paliſades between them. When you come to the ſide on the right hand of the river, you have a deſcent with gardens; and beyond this laſt gate you ſee an open country and a beaten road, frequented by thoſe who travel from *Aſtracan* to *Moſcow* by land; and here are ſeveral wooden churches, beſides which there is nothing remarkable; except that the inhabitants are not only all *Ruſſians*, but almoſt all ſoldiers, under the command of a Governor. Eight years ago this town was reduced to aſhes by a fire, but is now all rebuilt. In theſe parts the *Tartars* commit continual ravages, extending quite home to the *Caſpian* and the river of *Jaika*. They reckon it is 350 werſts from *Samara*, and in the latitude of 52 degrees 12 minutes. There we ſaw ſeveral veſſels full of ſoldiers, deſigned for *Aſoph* and elſewhere, and we departed before noon. From the river you ſee nothing but the towers and the tops of the churches, becauſe the ſuburbs is between the city and the river.

1703.

A ſudden illneſs.

Situation of Saratof.

Tartars *ravages.*

When we came back to our veſſel, we found the ſick man in the condition we had left him, and he died about *three*, which ſurpriſed us the more, as we had before ſeen him aſhore briſk and ſeemingly in good health. His companions expreſſed great ſorrow for him, and covered him over with a cotton cloth, which they tied about his legs, putting a book upon his head, a croſs upon his breaſt, and incenſe at his head. Then two of them began to read out of a book for two hours together, and in the mean time they prepared him a ſheet, a ſhirt and drawers of new cloth: This done, his ſervants went on ſhore to look for a proper place to bury him, but before they carried him thither, they read and ſung a ſecond time beſide him: When he was on ſhore they ſtripped him, waſhed his head, and then his whole body, which they placed upon a plank, and put him on his

Death of an Armenian.

Grief of his countrymen.

Their funeral ceremonies.

VÛE SUR LA RIVIERE.

ZARITSA.

1703. his new drawers and ſhirt, a croſs about his neck, which fell upon his breaſt, a chaplet of beads in his right hand, and a taper in his left. They then put plaiſters or linens upon his eyes, mouth and ears, and croſſed his arms; and this done, they wrapped him up in a ſheet, and put him upon a bier covered with a carpet. Thus they carried him in proceſſion to the top of the hill, where they had dug a grave for him, and then began again to ſing and to read; and the *Armenians* kiſſing his forehead one after another, they committed him to the earth, and threw each a handful of ſand upon him, with ſigns of the croſs and other ceremonies. At laſt they filled up the grave with earth and ſtones, and placed a great wooden croſs at his head, and three ſmall ones acroſs one upon another, and threw great ſtones upon the grave, and ſtrewed gunpowder about it; not forgetting a taper at the head. Theſe ceremonies over, they each of them in order kiſſed the higheſt ſtone, and burned the incenſe upon it, and ſetting fire to the gunpowder, they preſented every one preſent with a ſmall glaſs of brandy. Every one belonging to our veſſel attended this funeral, nor could ſeveral forbear to mix their tears with thoſe of the *Armenians*, ſo mournful was the office, and eſpecially for a man we had ſo very lately ſeen in perfect health. His name was *Peter Archangel*, and he lived at *Iſpahan*, where his wife and children longed to ſee him with the utmoſt impatience.

This hill, which is divided from the reſt, was ſurrounded with oaks, willows, alders, and here and there had roſe trees in the bud; and if the ground had been a little moiſter, we ſhould certainly have met with flowers and herbs; tho' we could not go down to the village for the waters that were out: This mountain is called *Goroſoponofskie*, and is 26 werſts from *Saratof*. After this we had ſeveral of the moſt pleaſant proſpects in the world. Upon the *ſixteenth* we had ſight again of ſteep mountains crumbled away in ſeveral places, very ſandy, and full of ſwallows neſts, and ſaw there birds continually flying in and out. The river is here alſo full of iſlands, and at a diſtance we deſcried the *Golden* mountain, which they call *Soloftogori*, and ſome others more covered with verdure and trees; and between two the ſmall river of *Doezinke*, which runs towards the north-weſt, 25 werſts from *Saroegamis*. Then we met with a wood between us and the hills, partly in the water, and where two barks had been caſt away when the river was at the higheſt, and were ſtill entire. We here alſo ſaw ſome fiſhermens huts, and towards night we paſſed by *Saroegamis*, a town they had been building for four years, and was now pretty far advanced, indifferently large, and ſurrounded with a mud wall, which they were hard at work upon; and near 400 families were already come to ſettle here from *Moſcow*. The hill it is built upon is lofty towards the river, ſteep, and very rocky. On the left hand, beneath the town, you have the river of *Kamuſchinka*, which goes away weſterly, and they ſay it ſprings from the canal of *Iloba*, which falls into the *Don*, which diſembogues itſelf into the lake *Mœotis*, and divides *Europe* from *Aſia*. They ſay the *Coſſacs* upon the banks of the *Don* were uſed to come upon the *Wolga* in boats, and commit great depredations in thoſe parts, though men of warlike profeſſion were frequently ſent to repreſs their inſolence; but as all was in vain, this town was built as a bridle upon them. They were alſo at work upon a fort, with a mud wall on the other ſhore of the *Kamuſchinka*; but this building went on heavily, the workmen not being able to ſtand the badneſs of the air: And had it not been for this, the Czar would have dug a canal from hence into the *Black Sea*. I went to ſee this work, and they told me the firſt deſign was to have built this town, where the firſt was begun; but that it had been given over, on account of the

The hill of Goroſopo-noſſkie.

River of Doezinke.

Saroega-mis.

1703.

1703. the badneſs of the air. It was reſolved alſo to make a dyke from one mountain to the other, to intercept the courſe of the *Kamuſchinka*, and prevent it from falling into the *Wolga*; but this alſo they were obliged to give over, becauſe the gates of the ſluices could not bear up againſt the weight and violence of the waters, which from time to time come down from the mountains; beſides that the ſoil beneath the ſtream was ſo ſtony, and even ſo much upon the ſolid rock, that there was no driving into it. All this conſtrained the projector to deſiſt from his undertaking, to avoid the vexation of mind he muſt have ſuffered by a diſappointment.

We had got ſo far, very little by the help of our ſails, but by the rapidity of the current, and the uſe of our oars, going on at the rate of 120 werſts a day, or 24 hours. Upon the *ſeventeenth* in the morning we thwarted the river of *Bobloclea*, 90 werſts from the laſt town we went by, and there met with a ſtout bark belonging to the Czar, and coming from *Aſtracan*. In this place I drew a proſpect, which you have in N°. 30.

About eleven we had a violent ſquall from the hills, and were forced to double man our oars, and with all their pulling, it was as much as they could do to keep clear of the larboard ſhore: And at laſt we were obliged to make faſt to ſome trees in the water, at the foot of the mountains, but fair weather coming on again, we went our way, and came to an iſland on the left of us, called *Alinda-Loeka*. The mountain runs out ſo in a point towards this iſland, that the paſſage between them is very narrow; this place is 60 werſts from *Zaritſa*. A flurry blew us aſhore ſoon afterwards, but we were not long before we were on float again; but the wind continuing, and even gathering ſtrength, and the rain falling apace, we thought it beſt to ſhelter ourſelves under the lee of the hills, and make faſt a ſecond time to the trees. We then went aſhore in our 1703. boat, which had been impracticable with the bark, and made up a fire to cook ſome victuals; while the reſt were at this, I went up the hill to look for flowers and plants, but every thing was burnt up and withered, and beſides the wind was ſo high, it was difficult to ſtand againſt it, and I went back again as faſt as I could, but in my return, I found upon the withered plants and herbs, a ſort of butterflies, blue on the outſide, and of a grey ſpeckled within, ſome of which I brought away with me for the eauty of their colours variety.

Iſle of Alinda-Loeka.

The weather continued as it was, and with a nipping cold till eight at night, when the wind began to grow duller and ſhifted in our favour. Whereupon we immediately got up our canvaſs, and at two in the morning we arrived at *Zaritſa*, where we ſtaid till the day broke, being the *eighteenth*, and at ſun-riſe we departed. This town is upon a low kind of a hill; is ſmall in compaſs, and ſeemed to be ſquare, with a wall flanked with towers. Its ſuburbs ſtretches along the ſhore, and goes partly about the town, and its chief church is of ſtone, but not then finiſhed, the reſt are of wood only, and ſcarce at all to be ſeen; I took a view of it however as we paſſed by as you may ſee in N°. 31. It is in the latitude of 48 degrees 23 minutes. From hence to *Aſtracan* the woods abound with liquorice, with a ſtalk three or four foot high, and the iſle of *Serpinske*, which is twelve werſts in length is not far from hence. Behind this iſland there is a canal of communication between the *Don* and the *Wolga*, which it ſeems is not navigable, and which, as well as the iſland, the *Ruſſians* call *Serpinske*. We then began to loſe ſight of the mountains, and by *ten* we were 60 werſts from *Zaritſa*, having paſſed by ſeveral iſlands in our way. Mean time the hills ſtretched away farther and farther from us up the country to *Tzenogar*, from whence we were as yet 40 werſts, the river

The town of Zaritſa.

Iſle of Serpindske.

1703. being here three or four werſts in breadth. After this we had the wind right aft, but ſo briſk that we had much ado to keep our veſſel from yawing to one ſide or the other, ſo as to run aground; and one of our boats ſtruck with ſuch violence againſt our rudder, that we were obliged to cut her away, and let her ſink; a loſs which might have been ſpared, for I had not been out of her a minute, on account of a hound I had in her, which I removed into the other boat upon obſerving her to make water; nay even ſome of our paſſengers lay in her in the night, there not being ſufficient room for them in the veſſel herſelf. At ſun-ſet we arrived at *Tzenogar*, 200 werſts from *Zaritſa*, the wind having ſtood fair for us all the day. This town is 300 werſts from *Aſtracan*, and upon a hill on the ſtarboard ſhore. The firſt thing you ſee here is a *corps de garde*, of which you only ſee the top or roof, and on the other ſide you have another of wood, and in form of a Lanthorn. The town itſelf is ſmall, ſurrounded with a wooden wall, and defended with towers; but it has nothing remarkable within, and no more than ſeven or eight wretched houſes without. The *Ruſſians* wanted to land here, as I believe, to diſtribute ſome money they had raiſed among them, in the bad weather, to the poor; but the wind was ſo high, and the current ſo rapid, that we ſhot a good way beyond the town, and were forced to come to anchor, but the cable, too weak to bear the effort both of the gale and ſtream, parted, and we were adrift. This I had foreſeen, and adviſed our people to hand their ſail, before they had quite reached the town, and come to with their oars; but as it was, and the ſhore being very ſteep, they were obliged to get into the water to hale our veſſel on ſhore with hawſers; and then they took the boat and went to the town, while we ſtaid under the lee of the hills. I went alſo to the town, but being ſomewhat belated they would not let us in, the ſoldiers and the country people ſhutting the gates upon us; tho' indeed they were ſo good as to bring us beer, bread, milk and eggs to ſell. Every body returning to the veſſel, ſearch was in vain all night made for the anchor; but the next morning they found it. This town is inhabited by none but ſoldiers, who are kept here to withſtand the ravages of the *Calmuc Tartars*, who ſometimes come and carry off cattle, and ſcour the country quite to *Samara*. Upon the *nineteenth* the wind was againſt us, and we got out our oars, and, as we rowed along, we ſaw ſeveral ſteep hills, green at top, and all about the ſides ſandy; and here the river was a werſt broad. We then rowed away to a great wear or fiſhery, 80 werſts from *Tzenogar*, called *Kaſtarskie*, and which produces moſt admirable fiſh; and here alſo we ſaw a gulf the *Wolga* has formed by incroachment on the lands. Having gone 125 werſts we came to an anchor in the night; at break of day, upon the *twentieth*, we weighed and departed; and the wind being fair for us, we were by noon within 100 werſts of *Aſtracan*. There we doubled a point where the river ſweeps round with ſuch a torrent, that veſſels are frequently loſt; and here you have 40 fathom of water. A little farther we met with a number of ducks, and an iſland ten werſts long, in a reach where the river is very wide. At the point of this iſland there was a guard of 30 ſoldiers, in three or four cabbins, where all veſſels muſt ſtop. While we were here, we ſaw two barks from *Aſtracan* on the oppoſite ſide, but the ſoldiers having ſight of them, they got into a boat and ſailed after them. We had at anchor with us two large veſſels bound for *Caſan*, but we ſtaid here no longer than an hour, and at a diſtance ſaw hills which ſtretch away to *Aſtracan*. About *ſeven* we were within 22 werſts of this city, and an hour afterwards we ſaw a ſtout bark on ſhore, and partly to pieces, tho' there were people ſtill on board of her. Soon after this

The town of Tzenogar.

1703.

1703. we had ſight of the church of *Saboor*, a very great one, and about eleven at night we arrived at *Aſtracan*, 2000 werſts, or 400 *German* leagues from *Moſcow*, *Caſan* ſtanding in about the mid-way. 1703.

CHAP. XVI.

Deſcription of Aſtracan. *Situation of the gardens. Abundance of fiſh. Manner of living among the* Tartars.

Arrival at Aſtracan.

WHEN we landed they ſearched every thing we had on board, except my baggage. I went directly to wait on the Governor *Timaſe Ivanowitz Urſofskie*, and preſented him my two paſſports and a letter from the Knez *Boris Alexewitz*. He received me very kindly, and having peruſed my letter, made me an offer of his houſe, and every thing I might want during my ſtay in this city; but I returned him thanks, and told him, I was under a neceſſity to be with my *Armenians*, whoſe language I underſtood, and with whom I was to go on to *Perſia*. He was ſatisfied at this, and ſent for my things, which, unſearched, he ordered to be carried to the Caravanſerai of the *Armenians*, where I lodged with Mr. *Jacob Daviedof*, of whom I have made mention before. We had ſcarce dined when eight or ten perſons came to us from the Governor with a preſent of refreſhments, conſiſting of a ſmall caſk of brandy, a large veſſel of copper tinned, full of red wine, and two others like it, full of mead and beer; four large loaves, two geeſe, and ſeveral pullets. Theſe, to whom, as my way was, I made a ſmall preſent in return, were no ſooner gone, than two ſoldiers came to do duty at my door, and were to be relieved every eight days. They alſo ſent me a *Ruſſian* Enſign who underſtood *Dutch*, to carry me about, and be my interpreter. At that time the Governor received advice of the taking of the fortreſs of *Neyen*, which the Czar had carried by aſſault upon the 2d of *May*, and where he found 80 pieces of cannon, 8 mortars, and a *Swediſh* garriſon of 3500 men, to whom, as the report was, he had given their liberty.

The Author well received by the Governor.

Fortreſs of Neyen *taken by the Czar.*

I went to walk about the town, which is upon the eaſt of the *Wolga*, in the ancient *Scythia*; tho' now the whole tract between the *Wolga*, the *Jaika*, and the *Caſpian* is called *Nojaia*, and the country in general the kingdom of *Aſtracan*, from the city of *Aſtracan*, the capital of that name, which is in the *Aſiatick Tartary*, upon the frontiers of *Ruſſia*, and upon the principal branch of the *Wolga*, which a few leagues from thence empties itſelf into the *Caſpian*; concerning which we ſhall be more ample in what is to follow. This city is in 46 degrees 22 minutes of northern latitude, in a little iſland called *Dolgoi*, formed by a ſmall river which may be ſeen from one of the towers. The beſt ground about it is eaſtward towards and quite to the river *Jaika*. To the weſtward of it, there is a great heath, which is ſaid to be 70 leagues, and to extend towards the *Black Sea*, and even ſome leagues ſoutherly quite to the *Caſpian*. Here you have a very fine ſalt, which is ſent all over *Ruſſia*.

Situation of Aſtracan.

This town is defended by a good ſtone wall, a league in circumference, and with ten gates. I went out by that of St. *Nicholas*, or the *Nikoolske Warate*, and followed the river upwards to go round it. From thence I went to the *Red Gate* or *Kraſnie*

Gates of the city.

1703. *Kraſnie Warate*, in the higheſt and moſt advanced part of the town. From thence ſtriking into the country, I came to the gate of the *Granary* or the *Gietnie Warate*, which is ſhut up, but there is another which goes into the citadel, where they go in and out. This *Granary* which is without the enceint of the town, is ſurrounded alſo with a ſtone wall. From hence you go to the *Motſagotskie Warate*, near which at ſome diſtance from the city, is another gate of wood, which is not reckoned into thoſe of the town; it is the gate of the *Tartars*, who live on that ſide, and where there is always a guard of *Ruſſians*. Afterwards you come to the gate of *Reſoltiſnie* and that of *Wiſneſenske*, between which there are two towers in the walls, 300 paces from each other. From hence you turn down towards the river to go to that of *Spaskie*, and from thence to that of *Iſadnie*, without which is the fiſh-market, the bread-market, the herb-market and the like. At ſome diſtance from hence you ſee another tower, and then the gate of *Garenskie*, and near that without, the wood-market, and the place aſſigned for bakers, who are not allowed to be within the town. From this gate you go to that of *Kabatskie*, paſſing by a tower between that and the former. Six of theſe ten gates are upon the river, and two belong to the citadel, which makes a part of the city wall; and it has a third called *Prieſtmiskinske*, or the *clean gate*, which goes into the city oppoſite to the *Bazar*, or great ſtreet called *Bolsjaulitz*, where you have the greateſt ſhops both of the *Ruſſians* and *Armenians*. As you go through this gate to go into the citadel, you have on the left of you the church of *Saboor*, which they had begun five years before, at the expence of the metropolitan, whoſe name is *Samſon*. This prelate has his peculiar rights over the clergy, and an office or ſpiritual court of his own; and is alſo the metropolitan of *Tirk*, a city under his Czarian Majeſty, on this ſide the *Caſpian*, upon the mountains of *Circaſſia*, about 700 werſts from *Aſtracan*. As they were laſt year at work upon the dome of this church, a part of it fell down, thro' fault of the foundation, which was too weak, and they are now about building five ſmall ſteeples with domes, upon which they are to have croſſes. This church is ſquare, and about 200 paces in circumference, the front is 67 broad, and the ſides 47 long, and the back part of it is partly upon the wall of the metropolitan palace, the chief edifice of the town, of great extent, and all of ſtone. Not far from thence, and in the fine part of the ſpace within the citadel is the Governor's palace, a large wooden building, ſurrounded with a wall of its own, which is of wood alſo, with two gates, the one before, the other behind, and the chappel of the court is without the incloſure of this palace. Between the front gate, where there is always a guard, and the Governor's palace, there is a fine yard, and the enceint of this court is called *Iwan Bogaſloof*. In this palace are many apartments, well lighted, and very pleaſant, but eſpecially a great and very lofty ſalon with charming proſpects on every ſide. There is always a guard at the gate of the citadel, which is well mounted with artillery. As you go into it on the right hand you have the chancery, a ſtone building with many rooms, and in the Governor's chamber there is a table covered with a red cloth or carpet.

The great church.

1703.

The chief church after that of *Saboor*, is that of *Iſdwieſinje*, of brick plaiſtered over. The dome of it is gilt as well as the croſs, which is three fathom in length; that beneath is green as well as thoſe of the ſteeple. All the reſt of the churches are of wood, as well as the monaſteries of *Troyts* and *Pettenske*, the laſt of which is for women.

Church of Iſdwieſinje.

In the morning there is every thing to be had at the *Tartar Bazar*.

Tartar market.

1703. *zar* or market, where the *Ruſſians* and *Armenians* alſo have liberty to expoſe their goods to ſale; but this market is over by the afternoon, when the *Ruſſians* have theirs, tho' to this alſo the *Armenians* are admitted; as for the *Indians* they do their buſineſs in their caravanſerai.

Streets. As for the city moſt of the ſtreets are narrow, and well enough to walk in when it is dry weather, but impaſſable when it is wet, becauſe the ſoil is very fat and full of ſalt, the reaſon why the ground has a whitiſh caſt when it is dry.

Government. It is governed by the Governor and three burgo-maſters, the firſt of which is preſident of the town-houſe; the ſecond has the inſpection of the kabbacs or houſes where they ſell wines, beer, and mead, and the third has the direction of his Majeſty's fiſhery.

Beyond the river and without the enceints of the city, you ſee the monaſtery of *Iwan*, a fine ſtone building, and two other cloiſters, and ſeveral ſlabodes or ſuburbs, the chief of which is that of the ſoldiery, to the eaſtward of the city, along the river of *Koetoeme*, which falls into the *Wolga*. His Majeſty's ſhips lie along that of *Balda*, over againſt the city. Thoſe of *Caſauſe* and *Stepielewe* are for all ſorts of people. The ſlabode of the *Tartars* is divided from the reſt, and almoſt all built of earth and clay hardned in the ſun; and here they are during winter, but in ſummer they are in the open country. Laſt year one half of this town was reduced to aſhes, and many ruins are ſtill to be ſeen, but they are hard at work in rebuliding it.

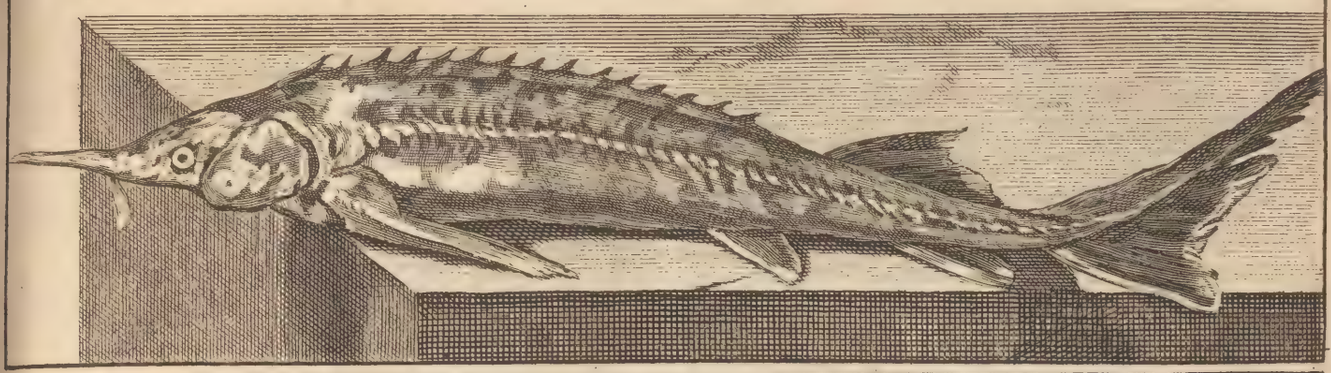
Having thus in part ſatisfied my curioſity, I deſired the Governor to give me leave to draw what I ſhould think fit, and he granted my requeſt upon the ſpot. With this intent I went upon the water in a ſmall bark with oars, but I found the river too rapid to let me do my work, upon which the Governor was ſo good as to let me have a larger veſſel provided with an anchor; but it coming on to rain when I would have made uſe of her, I was obliged to defer what I would have done till we had fairer weather. I thought the town looked very handſome from the ſide where the ſhips are, and took it as you may ſee in N°. 32; where every particular is diſtinguiſhed by figures, (1) The monaſtery of *Iwan* or St. *John*. (2) The *Wieſniſſenske* or monaſtery of the Aſcenſion of our Lord, both without the town. (3) The *Wieſniſſenske Warate*, or gate of the Aſcenſion. (4) The church of *Smolenske*. (5) The *Spaske monaſtir*, or monaſtery of Jeſus Chriſt in ſwadling clothes. (6) The church of *Ariſhetwa*. (7) Of the *Wieſinje Sirko*, or church of the Annunciation. (9) The gate of the *Cabbac*. (10) The *Kreml* or citadel whoſe wall begins in the town. (11) The *Klocknitſe* or the ſteeple. (12) The *Siaſloeni* or the clock tower. (13) The *Saboor* or the great church. (14) The monaſtery of *Troyts*. (15) The gate of St. *Nicholas*. (16) The Governor's palace. (17) *Iwan Bagaſloef*, or church ſo called, in honour of a certain Saint. (18) The *Woskriſſinie Sirko*, or church of Chriſt repreſented in ſwadling clothes. (19) The *Red Gate* the fartheſt advanced towards the river on the ſide of the *Caſpian*. (20) The *Wolga* on the other ſide of which are the ſhips over againſt the city. There were two of them aground, and all rotten, by the miſconduct of a certain *Hamburgher* called *Meyer*, a captain of a ſhip. And a little higher there were fifteen other ſhips that were come that year from *Caſan*. There is a great number of gibbets in this part, and on the other ſide of the town, to each of which hung half a dozen naked *Coſſacs*, whoſe cloths had been ſold at market by the *Ruſſians*, who had ſtripped them. Theſe carcaſſes had been ſo broiled by the heat of the ſun, that they were as black as a coal, and frightful to look at; but thoſe that had been hung up nearer to the city had been carried off by their friends. Theſe who had been joined by ſome rebels and deſerters

1703. *Gibbets.*

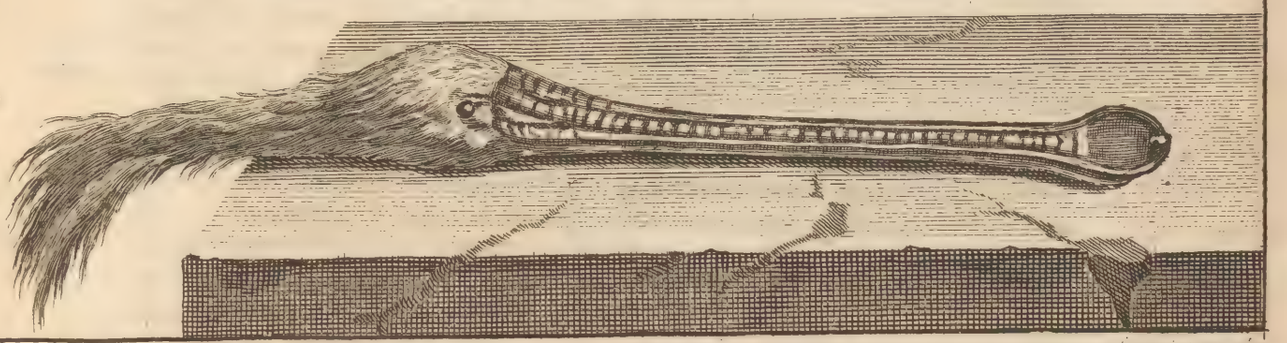
1
2
3
4
5

ASTRAKAN.

POISSON STRELET.



LA TETE D'UN OISEAU NOMÉ LEPELAER. 34



ESPECE D'UN HERON. 35

1703. deſerters from *Aſtracan*, had poſted themſelves at a place called *Gargan*, upon a river of the ſame name, with three pieces of cannon and two enſigns; here they were beſieged and in a fortnight's time obliged to ſurrender at diſcretion, after a ſtout defence; this happened upon the 10th of *Auguſt* laſt year. Moſt of them were hanged upon the frontiers of *Ruſſia*, where they had been moſt guilty of their robberies, and ſome of them ſuffered the ſame death at *Aſtracan*, beſides 30 of the ring-leaders, who were ſent to *Moſcow*, where ſome were beheaded and ſome hanged; as for their wives and children they were ſent to *Caſan*. The Prince or Knez *Aldrige Chan Bolatuwitz*, a *Circaſſian*, was preſent upon this expedition with 400 of his *Tartars*, and Mr. *Wigne*, a *Swede* by nation, was there with 1000 *Ruſſians*, whom he commanded in chief; and to theſe were joined 500 Strelſes. The regiment of *Wigne* had four pieces of canon and two mortars, and the Strelſes had eight pieces of canon, but theſe arrived too late. Mr. *Wigne* declared to me, that during the whole courſe of the ſiege, he had at midnight heard the howling of 4 or 500 jackalls or wild dogs, in a moſt inconceivable manner, and that none of them were either heard or ſeen after the ſurrender of the place.

Rebels puniſhed.

Extraordinary howling of wild dogs.

The troops at this time in garriſon at *Aſtracan*, were the regiment of *Wigne*, of 1000 men, without the officers, *(viz.)* the Colonel, two Majors, five Captains, ten Lieutenants, and ten Enſigns, the Serjeants and Corporals being included in the number of common men; 600 *Muſcovite* Strelſes commanded by ſix Captains, and twelve Serjeants; three other regiments of Strelſes, natives of the country, of 300 men each, commanded by a Colonel and three *Stolnics* or Captains; two regiments of horſe, each of 500 *Ruſſians*, natives of this city: in all about 3500 men. The regiment of *Wigne* had 13 pieces of canon, the reſt more or leſs in proportion.

Provifions abound in this country, wheat excepted, which is brought from *Caſan* and other places, but eſpecially fiſh, of which the moſt eſteemed is the *Baloege*, ſome of which are two fathoms in length. The *Strelet* is an ell long, and we may ſafely ſay it is the beſt fiſh in all *Ruſſia*. One of them alive at *Moſcow* will ſell for ſix or ſeven rubles, but here you may have one for two-pence or three-pence. They clean it and boil it, much as we do ſalmon, and it is certainly the moſt delicious fiſh one can eat. They are of two ſorts, the one with a longer beak than the other, but in general it is not very unlike a ſturgeon, as you may ſee in N°. 33. I got two of them dried to keep. The *Severoekes* differ in nothing from a ſturgeon, which they call *Aſſetrine*; and cavear is made from the *Beloeges*, the *Aſſetrines*, and the *Sevroeſmes*, and from hence exported to all parts. They have alſo a very good fiſh which they call *Soedak*, which they dreſs like the *Melwel*, or the ſtock-fiſh; quantities of pike and perch, a fiſh like a herring, and many other ſorts. The largeſt of thoſe that are worth the leaſt are the *Modienes*, with great heads. The fiſh-market is twice a day full, morning and night, and the *Wolga* affords ſuch a glut, that what they cannot ſell is every day given to the hogs. They will give to the common people three or four fiſh, a foot in length, for a bit of bread, and bread is far from being dear. As for bream and carp they abound no leſs. In ſhort you may buy of the fiſhermen without the town, *Severoekes* as big as cod, for the value of five-pence or ſix-pence, and ſo I leave you to judge what muſt be the price of fiſh in general. Beſides theſe they have a ſmall round fiſh, three or four inches broad, and long in proportion, which they call a *Vioenie*, and which are found as it were in pits near the mouth of a ſmall river, where I have taken numbers of them in a ſieve, and of ſeveral ſorts, ſome of

1703.

Abundance of proviſions.

The Strelet fiſh much eſteemed.

Soedak.

1703. which I preſerved in ſpirits with ſmall Soedaks; and I ſhould have ſaved others of them had they been ſmaller.

There are about forty *Armenian* families about this city, who keep ſhops, as I have already obſerved. The *Indians* live in their caravanſerai, where they carry on their buſineſs; and are not inferior in number to the *Armenians*, but they have no women.

This caravanſerai is indifferently large, and ſurrounded by a ſquare ſtone wall, with ſeveral gates, at the two chief of which there is a guard, and at a certain hour of the night they are ſhut up. The *Armenian* merchants who only go and come, take up their lodging here alſo, and here it was that I ſtaid with them; and there are, indeed, ſome who even live and keep ſhop there, where they have chans or ſeparate places for themſelves. That for paſſengers or travellers is two ſtories high with galleries, and that of the *Indians* is on the other ſide, and all of wood; but they have lately built them a ſtone ware-houſe for fear of fire; a building tolerably ſpacious, being 40 foot ſquare: And the *Armenians* are following their example, the foundations of theirs, when I was there, being raiſed ſix foot.

Place for the Indians *and* Armenians.

The Author viſits the deputy-governor.

I had not been long in this city, when the Deputy-governor, or King's Lieutenant, *Mekiete Ivanowitz Apcochtem*, ſent to deſire I would come to him. I went the next day, and had the good luck to find there the Governor with all his family, and ſome Ladies in the *German* dreſs, upon juſt going away, their coaches waiting for them in the yard. They received me very handſomely, and having entertained me with beer and brandy, the governor ſaid I had not only been recommended to him by the Knez *Bories*, but even by his Czarian Majeſty, and then turning to me, deſired *I would come to ſee him every day, and let him know in what he could be of uſe to me.* I returned him thanks, and he went away a minute afterwards. When he was gone the Deputy-governor carried me and my fellow traveller Mr. *Jacob Daviedof*, into another room, and gave us ſome *Perſian* refreſhments, and behaved to me with great kindneſs and complaiſance, which is quite in his nature. 1703.

Moſt of the gardens about the city are full of vines and fruit trees, and particularly apple trees, pear trees, plum trees, and apricot trees, but their fruit is far from the beſt: But you have water-melons here which ſurpaſs even the *Perſian*. They let their vines grow to the heighth of a man, and prune them ſo as to ſhoot no higher, and faſten them to poles or props. Their grape is indifferently large, black or of a deep blue, as they ſay, for I was not there at the ſeaſon. Thoſe that grow in the gardens of private perſons, whether *Armenians* or others, which are in no great number, are ſold at market; but they make wine of thoſe in the vineyards, which belong moſtly to the Czar, who has all the profits of them. Theſe wines are red and pleaſant enough, the ſoil is very ſandy, and as they have ſtore of ſprings, they ſink pits in their gardens, and ſupply them with water by ſubterraneous canals; and out of theſe pits they draw it with a great wheel to which they faſten buckets, which deliver it into wooden gutters or ſpouts which diſtribute it as they pleaſe in the garden; and one camel is enough to turn all theſe wheels. Theſe gardens or vineyards are two or three werſts from the city, and their number increaſes every day, and being open they have guerites or watch-houſes at certain diſtances, where they have ſentries to take care no body makes free with the grapes in the ſeaſon. They told me it was above 100 years ſince they began to plant theſe vineyards, and that it was thought to have been firſt done by *Perſian* merchants, who had brought ſome plants or ſlips from their country.

Gardens.

Water-melons.

Vineyards.

Some days after my arrival, I went to pay a viſit to Mr. *Serochan Beek*, who was deſigned ambaſſador to *Sweden*

The author viſits the Perſian *ambaſſador*

1703. *Sweden* by the King of *Perſia*; but the Czar who was at war with that kingdom, refuſed him a paſſage through his dominions, and even put him under arreſt, ſo that he had been three years in *Moſcovy*. He had about 60 perſons in his train, and had left *Moſcow* ſome days before I did. He was ſitting upon a ſofa, after the eaſtern manner, received me very obligingly, and gave me coffee and *kullabnabat*, a very pleaſant white liquor made of ſugar and roſe water.

His picture. He was a man of a comely preſence and great affability; his muſtaches reached to his very ears, and his beard hung a quarter of an ell below his chin, which was ſhaved. His turban was white, and his kaftan or veſt was tied about him with a ſaſh of gold cloth; he had a fine ganjar at his ſide, and ſmoked with a *kaljan*, after the *Perſian* manner. He had two ſervants at his ſides, and he on the right hand was armed with a great ſabre, whoſe hilt appeared out of a red bag. Among other diſcourſe, he asked me, if I would not go with him to *Iſpahan?* but I excuſed myſelf.

I then went to viſit Mr. *Wigne*, a man of worth and honour, and Captain *Wagenaer*, who came to ſee me upon my arrival. Mr. *Wigne* carried me upon the river in a veſſel of 24 oars, manned with 44 ſoldiers, and had with him ten or a dozen flutes and hautboys, and ſome drums who beat the march as the *Germans* do. We went ſeven werſts from *Aſtracan*, to the place where the old city had ſtood, about 120 years before, tho' no traces of it be now to be ſeen, except the bones depoſited there, ſome of which I ſaw. About

Saltpeter diſcovered. ſeven years ago they made a diſcovery of ſaltpeter in the mountains, and work upon it with good ſucceſs. The place where it is found is to the eaſtward of the city upon the left hand of the river as you go down. We amuſed ourſelves with ſhooting at pigeons as we returned, and went by the ſhips on the other ſhore.

Upon the *fourth* of *June* there came on a violent ſtorm, which wrecked a veſſel laden with wood before the town; and of 71 ſouls that were in her 29 were drowned. 1703.

Upon the *ſixth* there arrived eight barks from *Perſia*, four of which belonged to *Ruſſians*, and the reſt to *Mahometans*; they had ſome *Armenian* merchants on board of them.

All the time I was in this city the governor never once failed me in his kindneſſes, ſending me frequent preſents, and entertaining me at his houſe with all ſorts of *Perſian* refreſhments, and continually urged me to tell him in what he could be of uſe to me; but of all his offers I accepted of nothing but his beer, for ſuch was not to be had for money, nor did he forget to let me have a ſtore of it. As he knew I was to be ſome time in this city, he deſired me to draw him the picture of himſelf and his ſon, which I could not refuſe him; and he on his part did every thing he could to oblige me. Among other things he made me a preſent of a bird which had been ſhot in the plain, but was ſtill alive. In the body and feet he did not ill reſemble a heron, but not at all in the head, which was quite beautiful, as well as his bill. He had a white cop on the head, and his bill was black, ten inches long, and an inch and half broad, and the end of it was like two ſpoons, with a ſmall yellow ſpot. It is called a * *Lepelnaer* and *Colpetſe* in the *Ruſſian* language. They ſay they have them alſo in *Perſia*, where they are called *Goli*. I kept the head of one of them, which you may ſee in N°. 34. They have herons alſo in this country, which they call *'t Sepoere*. They are of different colours, as white, and purple like peacocks, grey and black. I have drawn one of them with his neck ſhortned, as you may ſee in N°. 35.

An extraordinary bird.

* Lepel *ſignifies a ſpoon.*

I often went with Captain *Wagenaer* to the place where the *Tartars* are, which is but three or four werſts from the city. They camp in troops, each family apart, and at ſome diſtance from the reſt. Their tents are made like parrot cages, except that

The Tartar manner of living.

1703. that they are not ſo lofty in proportion, and are built with laths of three or four inches broad, covered over with a felt, or a hair cloth. There are ſome which do not fall but within a foot or two of the ground, and are done round with thatch or ſtubble. The chief of them have a covering of cloth, with an opening at top to let out the ſmoke, with a pole in the middle, which ſticks out four or five foot to the end of which they faſten a kind of ſail of various colours, which falls down to the ground, where it is faſtned by a large ſtrap without one of the ſides of the tent, and by the means of which, they turn this ſail as they pleaſe, to keep out either the wind or the ſun. When all the ſmoke is gone out of the tent, and they have a mind to be warm, they cover it up, and it is as hot as a ſtove. The bottom of them is covered with pretty ſtuffs or fine carpets, and eſpecially among the better ſort they have a ſofa raiſed a little, after the *Turkiſh* manner, which takes up a third part of the tent: and in ſome of them you ſee fine cheſts and trunks, in which they lock up their valuable things, and in general every thing about them is extremely neat and in good order. When they change their place, they put their tents upon waggons, and take off the covering, and the women and children ſit in them, while the men attend them on horſeback. When they perceived it was curioſity only that drew me among them, they ſhewed me whatever I wanted to ſee, but they were ſhy of me at firſt, never ſuffering any body to come near the tents where their women are. In one of them I ſaw a very charming and well dreſſed brunette, whoſe head attire was very remarkable, being of gilt ſilver or copper, and all covered with gold ducats, pearls and precious ſtones; I was delighted with her, and reſolved to paint her, as I afterwards did. In the mean time I drew ſome of their tents, as they were pitched one by another, as you may ſee in N°. 36. and one in particular in N°. 37. at the letter *A*. In the ſame you have the form and manner of their waggons in letter *B*. upon two great wheels: It is of painted wood covered with ſtuff, ſupported by two croſs ſticks before, and reſted upon two beams. When they mount their tents upon them the wheels of them are covered. Their chappel is on one ſide diſtinguiſhed by the letter *C*. Their common tents are covered only with felt, and of the ſame is the ſail above, and very ordinary within. As theſe people ſubſiſt but by their cattle, they look out for the beſt paſtures. Their women are imploy'd in making of cloaths, and the like, which they go to town to ſell. They ſew as the *Ruſſians* do, and ſpin as we do with a turning ſpindle, and card wool for the felts of their tents, and for other ſtuffs. Their firing is cow dung, which they take and dry, much as we do our turf, and have it in heaps on the ſide of their tents. While I was buſy in drawing them, they crouded about me, and ſeemed to be much pleaſed, and to wonder at my dreſs as much as I did at theirs, which procured me ſome liberty among them. Their manner of living is not very unlike the *Arabian*, and they appear to be as ſatisfied with their wandring abode as thoſe with us who are ſettled in palaces and the fineſt houſes; and this calls to my mind the ancient manner of the orientals; and I ſuppoſe it was thus that *Abraham* ſojourned and the reſt of the patriarchs, and that if we were uſed to the ſame, we ſhould not diſlike it. 1730.

As for the dreſs of the women, I drew the picture of a young Lady of this nation at the Governor's palace where I had a more commodious opportunity to do it than in their tents. She had a fine upper garment, covered with a white veil which hid her face; but ſhe took it off at my requeſt, and appeared with her head covered with another very fine white linen, ty'd about her neck in a very genteel manner, and through which I could ſee her head attire. I beg'd of her alſo to pull that off, be- *Dreſs of the Tartar women.*

CHARIOTS & CHAPELLES DES TARTARES. 37

1703. 1703.

FEMME TARTARE.

cauſe it concealed her fineſt ornament which I wanted to paint, and ſhe appeared ſuch as they are in their *kaftan* and in their tents. This attire was all covered with gold ducats, as has already been ſaid, and pointed at top like a mitre, bordered with a great number of pearls, ſome of which were ſtrung, and hung before her like treſſes. A kind of coloured ſcarf faſtned behind this mitre came about her neck, and partly fell down before. Beſides this, ſhe had ſilver chains over her ſhoulders, and about her waiſt, by one of which there hung ſome little boxes of the ſame, where ſhe had her little prayer books and toys. Her hair was done about with a broad black ribbon, with two great tufts of ſilk at the end, as appears by the plate above. This Lady was one of the moſt conſiderable among the *Tartars*, and was attended by three women of her train, and uſhered by a *Tartar* who was known to the governor.

The *Ruſſians* call the *Tartars* hereabouts by the name of *Jurtſge*, be-

1703. cauſe they are born there; nor indeed do they pay any tribute to the Czar; they are only obliged to ſend a certain number of their people to war when he requires it; and yet they can bring 20000 men into the field upon occaſion. The *Tartars* who are called *Indians* at *Aſtracan*, ſhave their heads in a ſtrange manner at a certain time of the year; they tear it up by the roots with the point of a penknife, ſo that the blood runs down their cheeks. Their prieſt, or the perſon they call ſuch, has the firſt ſtroke, and when he does it not as he ſhould, they all begin again, crying out, *Sukſemakſe*, *Sukſemakſe*, or *Baſſou*, *Bakſou*, dancing and jumping about at the ſame time; and this they look upon as a kind of offering to their idol *Sukſemakſe*. This ceremony was performed near the granary, without the town, ſometime before I arrived; and thoſe who practiſe it are *Indians*, ſome of whom live in the ſlabode of the *Tartars*. Thoſe of *Nojay* are in tents about the city of *Tirck*; but the *Tartars* of *Crim* never ſettle there, and only from time to time bring their cattle to market.

How the Tartar Indians ſhave the head.

Governor's feaſt.

Upon the *twentieth* of this month, the governor gave a great entertainment, to which I was invited, as well as the principal of the *Ruſſian* officers, and moſt conſiderable of the *Armenian* merchants. Firſt they conducted us into an apartment, where were the governor's wife and daughter in law attended by ſeveral women of their train, and on the right hand was a table full of dainties and liquors fit for the morning. Theſe Ladies preſented us each with a ſmall cup of brandy, a piece of civility uſual in this country, and from thence we went into the hall where the dinner was ready, and they ſent us home in coaches. The *twenty firſt*, being St. *Peter*'s, was his Czarian Majeſty's name day, and the governor gave another entertainment where the patriarch was preſent, and all the chiefs of the city; but being out of order, I could not be there myſelf, nor go with them to the church of *Saboor*, to aſſiſt at the ſolemnity to which I had been invited ſome days before: and upon this occaſion they had great rejoicings and repeated firing of canon upon the ramparts and before the palace. The Ladies were in another apartment, according to cuſtom, and the next day they treated the ſubaltern officers, and ſent them away early. 1703.

Another Feaſt upon his Majeſty's name day.

Upon the *ſecond* of *July*, news came that the Czar had got within 15 werſts of *Nerva* with his army, and had taken every thing in his way.

The next day I went in a chaiſe towards the heath, with the governor's ſon, and ſome officers who had a hawk with them. We ſaw a good deal of game about 20 werſts from the city, but we could get at none of it, becauſe of the waters which covered the country; tho' I happen'd to kill a duck that was flying by me. Mean time we diverted ourſelves with fiſhing in a ſmall river, where we caught a good deal of pike and perch, which we dreſſed and ate. That day we ſaw a number of *Tartars* encamped, and fine paſture lands full of horſes belonging to the inhabitants of *Aſtracan*. Some of them were handſome enough, and we would have drove ſome of them in our chaiſes, but they were too ſkittiſh, having been at graſs all the ſummer, in fine fields which are very frequent in theſe parts. All the carmen of this city have fine horſes; you ſhall hardly ſee a bad or a lean one among them, which is what I never obſerved any where elſe.

Tartar horſes.

As the time of my departure drew near, I deſired and obtained as much room as I wanted in ſuch of the barks I liked beſt; ſo I made choice of the largeſt and fitteſt for my purpoſe. Moſt of the *Armenians* alſo prepared to depart, as well as ſome *Perſians*, who were returning from *Moſcow* to *Samachi* [*Samaſhi*]. The *Cham*'s falconer was among the reſt, with 5 or 6 hawks he was carrying into *Perſia*, from whence he had brought an elephant for the Czar of *Muſcovy*, which

1703. he had delivered to the governor of *Aſtracan*, who ſent it to *Moſcow* under the care of ſome *Ruſſians* and a *Georgian*, but it dy'd in the way at *Zaritſa*. This falconer came in the governor's name to deſire me to allow him a place in my bark, and I went on board of her the next morning with that intent, but I found the *Armenians* had crammed her ſo full there was no room left. I went to the governor with complaint of this, and to deſire he would order ſome of the bales out, that we might have a little elbow room; but he anſwered there were ſtill other veſſels to go in, and that I had nothing to do but to take out of them what I would, to be at my eaſe. I embraced the favour, and took up what place I wanted, having ſuffered much upon the *Wolga*, before I reached this city.

Mr. *Wigne* at that time had news that the Czar had promoted him to the rank of Colonel, and upon the eleventh he entertained the governor and chief officers of the garriſon. I was of the number, and he treated us very ſplendidly, with the diſcharge of artillery, and the ſound of drums and trumpets. Leaving him, I went with ſome *Armenians* to take a little country air at a houſe upon the river. The grapes were at this time tolerably large, but moſt of the other fruits had been deſtroy'd by inſects. 1703.

When I was on the point of departure, and had got every thing I might want, not forgetting wherewithal to ſave me from the flies which are very troubleſome in theſe parts, the governor ſent me two ſmall casks of brandy, the one of the beſt, the other of the common ſort; a ſmall cask of vinegar, four of beer, one of wine, three flitches of bacon, a quantity of dry'd fiſh, and a bag of biſket, and ſome other proviſions. He granted me alſo a ſmall bark, to go before, and unlade the great one of part of her cargoe, as we drew near the *Caſpian*, a thing abſolutely neceſſary, becauſe of the great droughts that ſometimes happen in thoſe parts. I took leave of the governor at four of the afternoon, and returned him a thouſand thanks for all his favours. When I had got back again to my lodging, he ſent me three ſealed bottles of diſtilled liquors. At length I embarked in a ſmall veſſel, with five ſoldiers to carry my things on board of the ſhip. The three *Armenians*, my companions, had, in like manner, each of them a ſmall veſſel, for the ſame purpoſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Reaſons for inſerting in this place the rout of Mr. Isbrants Ides *thro'* Muſcovy *in his way to* China. *His departure from* Moſcow. *Source of the* Dwina. *Arrival of that miniſter in the country of the* Syrenes. *Deſcription of the people of that province,* &c. *He embarks upon the* Kama, *and croſſes from* Europe *to* Aſia.

1692. *Mar.* 14

Reaſons for inſerting in this place the rout of Mr. Isbrants Ides.

MUSCOVY is now grown to be very conſiderable in the world, and has for ſome time been ſo much the ſubject of diſcourſe; and the Prince at preſent on the throne having made himſelf famous for his conduct, his victories and care he takes to cultivate the minds and manners of his ſubjects, by introducing into his dominions all that can contribute to their advantage, all *Europe* is attentive to what concerns this great empire, and inquiſitive to know what paſſes therein. It would be difficult to give a more circumſtantial, more ſincere and more intereſting an account of it, than that of Mr. *Le Bruyn* contained in this voyage; but as he only traverſed a part of it, it has been thought it might be acceptable and uſeful to the publick to add in this place the rout that was held by Mr. *Isbrants Ides* from *Muſcovy* to the court of *China*, by the way of *Tartary*, a country but little known, and almoſt wild, in quality of envoy extraordinary from their Czarian Majeſties *John* and *Peter Alexowitz* in 1692. and the rather as this miniſter has enriched the account of his journey with very judicious and inſtructive remarks.

His departure from Moſcow.

He left *Moſcow* in a ſledge upon the *fourteenth* of *March*; but he had hardly got on his way, when it began to rain ſo plentifully, that he was expoſed to a thouſand dangers by the abundance of waters in his way to *Wologda*, where he ſtay'd three days to recover himſelf from the fatigues he had undergone, and wait for fair weather. The froſt began again upon the ſecond day, and was ſo very hard, that at the end of twenty four hours, all the ways were paſſable; whereupon he began his journey further, the *twenty ſecond*, towards *Suchina*, where he arrived upon the *twenty third*, and thence proceeded without delay to the city of the great *Uſtiga*, where the *Suchina* and the *Irga* uniting their ſtreams, form the famous river of *Dwina*, whoſe name ſignifies a *double River*.

Source of the Dwina.

The *Suchina* runs almoſt directly north in a fertile ſoil; with ſeveral good and well-peopled villages on its borders, and on the left a pretty good town called *Totma*. A great number of travellers fall down this river every year, to go from *Wologda* to *Archangel*, with their goods, while the waters are open: but the bottom being rocky, care muſt particularly be taken to ſecure the ſtem and ſtern poſt, and rudder, as well becauſe of the many rocks in this river, as becauſe of the rapidity of its current, or you might be in danger of being loſt. *23 March.*

The great Uſtiga.

The city of the great *Uſtiga* is at the mouth of this river, where this miniſter was obliged to ſtop for 24 hours, to refreſh himſelf and to ſee the *Waivods*, his friends, who entertained him very chearfully. Upon the *twenty fourth*, he arrived at

1692. Solowitzjogda. *Solowitzjogda*, a great town with many good merchants, and excellent workmen in ſilver, copper, and ivory. Here alſo are fine ſalt-pits, which produce a great quantity of that mineral, which is from hence tranſported to *Wologda*, and many other places.

Country of the Syrenes. *The people of it deſcribed.* From hence he departed upon the *firſt* of *April*, and the ſame day arrived in the country of the *Syrenes*, or of *Wolloſt-Uſgy*. The inhabitants here ſpeak a language, which has no affinity with the *Ruſſian*, tho' it has ſome with that ſpoken in *Livonia*, as he was informed by ſuch of his train as were of that country. They are of the *Greek* rite, and ſubject to his Czarian Majeſty, to whom they pay the cuſtomary dues, but have neither governor nor waivode. They chuſe their own judges, and when any diſpute ariſes which theſe judges are unable to decide, they go to *Moſcow* where they have recourſe to the prikaes of *Poſolske*, or office for foreign affairs. In dreſs and ſtature they differ hardly at all from the *Ruſſians*, and are thought to have been originally from the frontiers of *Livonia* or *Courland*, tho' they know nothing of it themſelves, no more than how it comes to paſs they ſpeak a language different from that of all *Ruſſia*, whither they may have been in times paſt driven by the calamities of war, or by ſome other accident which they now have no remembrance of. They ſubſiſt by agriculture, all but a part of them, who are upon the banks of the river *Ziſol*, where they have grey furs. This country is about 70 long *German* leagues in length, and extends quite to *Kaigorod*. Theſe people hardly live at all in towns, but for the moſt part in ſmall villages and hamlets, ſcattered up and down in the woods.

This country butts upon a great foreſt, where this miniſter was a ſecond time taken with a violent thaw, and a heavy rain, which in one night's time cauſed a flood of the waters all about the wood, where in this condition he was retarded for four days, without being able to go either backwards or forewards, the ice being 1692. ſcarce able to bear on the rivers. At length, with inexpreſſible difficulty he got away, by throwing of bridges over theſe rivers, and by the means of ſeveral other helps. And upon the *ſixteenth* of *April*, quite fatigued and thoroughly wet, he arrived at *Kaigorod*, a tolerably conſi- Kaigorod. derable fortreſs upon the *Kama*.

He would willingly have held on his way quite to *Solikamskoi*, the capital of the great *Permia*, to go by land to *Syberia*, over the mountains of *Wergotur*; but the thaw continuing, he was put beſide his purpoſe; and being juſt at the tail of the winter ſeaſon, he ſtay'd ſome weeks in this city, expecting when the *Kama* ſhould be navigable. Here in the mean time he provided himſelf with every thing neceſſary for the continuation of his journey, as alſo for defence againſt the free-booters in theſe parts, and who not long before had pillaged even the city of *Kaigorod* itſelf.

Pillaged by pyrates. The governor of this place informed our author, that upon a certain day, about noon, they ſaw a number of barks full of men falling down the river, with colours flying, and drums beating, and making directly for the town, which they had no ſooner reached, than the people of them jumped on ſhore; that the inhabitants not in the leaſt dreaming of a ſurpriſe in the face of the ſun, and at a time of peace, ſuffered them unmoleſted to draw near, not doubting but they were neighbours and friends who were come from the villages round about to divert themſelves: that theſe pirates ſet fire to the ſouth end of the town, and put all they met with, at the other, to the ſword: that they then went to the *Waiwodes*, where they committed all ſorts of hoſtility, and uſed their ſervants in the very worſt manner they could, and upon the whole went their way laden with booty, and none to oppoſe them: that it was afterwards underſtood they were vaſſals of certain lords, from whoſe obedience they had withdrawn themſelves,

1692. selves, to commit all sorts of violences, and that some of them had been taken and executed as an example to the rest. This made it prudent for him to provide himself with arms, and to stand upon his guard.

He departed hence, upon the *twenty third* of *April*, when the *Kama* was become navigable, and happily upon the *twenty seventh* got to *Solikamskoi*. From hence he was to have taken the way of the mountains of *Wergotur*; but as that is impracticable in summer, because the country is full of fens and marshes, travellers and merchants must stay the summer in this city, till winter comes on and it freezes again, that they may cross these mountains. It is, indeed, possible to go about by water to the westward, but that is absolutely forbidden: the governor of this town, however, apprised of the importance of this minister's business, dispatched him without delay, and furnished him with the necessary embarkations, that he might commodiously navigate the *Susawaya*.

Solikamskoi.

Description of Solikamskoi, *and its salt-works.*

Solikamskoi is a very fine, large and rich city, where are numbers of considerable merchants, very fine salt-works, and above 50 boilers of 25 or 35 ells in breadth. They here make very great quantities of salt, which are every year sent on all sides, in large vessels built for that service, in each of which they load one hundred and twenty thousand weight of salt, or eight hundred or a thousand lasts, without reckoning seven or eight hundred hands, for whom they have kitchens, furnaces, and other things necessary for transportation. These vessels which are 35 or 40 ells in length, have but one mast and one sail, which is thirty fathom long, which they use in going up the river when the wind is fair; whereas in going down, they use their oars only, to keep their vessel steady in her steerage, which the helm alone would not be sufficient to do. They are flat at bottom, and have neither bolts nor nails; and thus it is they fall down the *Kama* to go into the *Wolga*; they then turn back against the stream, by the help of tow-lines. or of their sail, when the wind is fair, and go with their salt to *Casan* and *Nisna*, and other places upon that river. 1692.

Upon the *fourteenth* of *May*, he embarked at *Solikamskoi*, and having crossed the little river of *Usolkat*, half a league from this city, he entered the *Kama* again, and crossed that river from *Europe* to *Asia*. Upon *Whitsunday* he went on shore, and went up a pleasant hill where he ate his last meal in *Europe*, and then returned to his vessel to continue his way.

He embarks on the Kama, *and crosses over from* Europe *to* Asia.

CHAP. XVIII.

His arrival in Asia. *Description of the country of the* Tartars *of* Syberia; *their religion and manner of life.*

1692. 14 *May.* THIS minister being arrived in *Asia*, upon the *Susawaia*, observed it to be not so pleasant as the *Kama*, which is a very fine river, full of all sorts of fish, and adorned with fine large and populous villages, fine salt-works, ploughed lands, woods, fine meadows enamelled with all sorts of flowers, and every thing else that can be pleasant to the sight, from *Solikamskoi* quite hither. Not but that the country watered by the *Susawaia*, which falls westward into the *Kama*, is very fine and very good, but it is tiresome to go up against the stream, one rids no way, and especially when the waters are swelled, and it is necessary to use the

His arrival in Asia.

1692. the tow-line. Upon the *twenty fifth* of *May*, he arrived in the country of the firſt *Tartars* of *Syberia*, called *Wogulski*; which is indifferently well peopled along the banks of this river, and of charming beauty. At the entrance and going out of the hills, they have all ſorts of flowers and odoriferous herbs, and prodigious numbers of deer, and all ſorts of game. As the *Tartars* of *Wogul*, upon this river, are heathens, he had the curioſity to go on ſhore and talk with them, concerning their belief, and manner of life.

Deſcription of the country of the Tartars of Syberia.

Their religion and manner of life.

They are robuſt, with large heads, and their religion conſiſts of no more than making an offering once a year. To this purpoſe they aſſemble in the woods about, and there kill a beaſt of each kind; tho' their chief victims are horſes, and a kind of goats. They flea them, and hang them up by a tree, and then fall down before them, and this is their only worſhip. Then they eat the fleſh together, and returning home, perform no other religious office that year; and why ſhould we, ſay they? they can aſſign no manner of reaſon for their belief or worſhip: we had it, ſay they, from our fathers, and that's enough for us.

They pray but once a year.

He aſked them if they had no knowledge of God, and if they did not believe there was a ſupreme being in heaven, who created all things, and governs the world by his good providence, and who gives rain and fair weather? They anſwered the thing might very likely be ſo, ſeeing the ſun and moon, thoſe fine luminaries, which they worſhip, and the other ſtars were placed in the firmament, and that there was doubtleſs a power which ruled them. But they would by no means agree there was a devil, becauſe he had never made himſelf known to them. And yet they deny not the reſurrection of the dead, but know nothing of what is to be their lot, or what is to become of their bodies. When one of them dies, he is depoſited in the ground, and covered with his moſt precious ornaments, whether the deceaſed be man or woman; but tho' they erect no monuments to commemorate their dead, they put money by them, in proportion to their means when living, that they may want nothing neceſſary for them on the day of reſurrection. They cry out and make loud lamentations about the bodies of their deceaſed, nor muſt any man marry a ſecond wife till he has buried his firſt a year. When it happens that they loſe a dog, that has been ſerviceable to them in hunting, or any other way, they in honour of him erect a little wooden hut, ſix foot high, upon four poſts, where they place him, and let him remain as long as it laſts. They may have as many wives as they can maintain, and when the women draw near the time of their delivery, they retire into a wood, to a cabbin prepared for them on purpoſe, where they ly in, nor may the husbands go near them for two months.

They acknowledge no devil.

Their funerals.

1692.

Thoſe of their dogs.

They allow of polygamy.

Lyings-in.

When they want to marry, they buy their wives of their parents, and have ſcarce any ceremony at their weddings, they only invite their neareſt relations to be preſent, and having entertained them, the new married man goes to bed to his wife without more ado. They have no prieſts, and may not marry but in the fourth degree of conſanguinity. This miniſter arguing with them, exhorted them to acknowledge the Saviour of the world, and be converted unto him, aſſuring them that in ſo doing they would be happy in this world, and in the world to come. To this they anſwered, That they every day ſaw a great number of poor *Ruſſians*, who had much ado to earn a living, as much Chriſtians as they were; that with regard to eternal life, it was what they did not trouble their heads about, and in ſhort that they would live and die as their fathers had before them, whether their faith was founded well or ill. You may judge of their dreſs and manner by the plate following.

Their marriages.

Their dreſs.

They

Their habitations. They live in ſquare wooden hutts after the manner of the *Ruſſian* peaſants; but uſe hearths inſtead of ſtoves, and burn wood. They cover the opening of the roof where the ſmoke goes out, with a piece of ice, as ſoon as the wood is burnt to a coal, and by that means retain all the heat in their room, without at the ſame time keeping out the light, which ſhines through the ice at top. They have no uſe of chairs, but inſtead of them have benches of three ells in breadth, and an ell from the ground, upon which they ſit croſs-legged after the manner of the *Perſians*, and the ſame ſerve them for beds at night. *They ſubſiſt by hunting, and bow.* They ſubſiſt by hunting, the chief of their game being elks, which abound in this country. They ſhoot them with arrows, and dry their fleſh which they cut into ſlices or ſlips, and hang it up in the air about their houſes; and when it has been thoroughly wet, and is quite putrified, they dry it a ſecond time, and then it is they account it moſt delicious food. For the reſt they eat neither poultry nor hogs. They fix great croſs-bows in the woods, to which they faſten a bridle, and bait, leaving the mouth open, and when an elk or other deer comes to ſeize on it, the bow unbends, and ſhoots them thro' and thro'. They dig alſo pits in the earth, which they cover with brambles and the like, into which theſe creatures fall as they run, and cannot get out again. Upon the whole, theſe *Tartars* live in villages, along the river of *Suſawaia*, quite to the caſtle of *Utka*, and under the protection of the Czar, to whom they pay a tribute, and live at eaſe. *They live under the protection of the Czar.* Their habitations extend above 800 *German* leagues, to the northward of *Syberia*, and even to the northward of the country of the *Samoëds*.

1692. 1692.

CHAP. XIX.

Arrival at the fortreſs of Utka, *and at* Neujanskoi; *at* Tumêen, *and at* Tobol, *or* Tobolska. *Deſcription of that city. How it became ſubject to the Czar, together with all* Syberia.

Arrival at the fortreſs of Utka.

HAVING quitted the country of theſe heathens, Mr. *Isbrants* upon the *firſt* of *June* arrived at the fortreſs of *Utka*, upon the frontiers of the *Tartars* of *Baskir* and *Uffimi*. While he was here there came there a *Tartar* gentleman of *Uffimi*, a country in the Czar's dominions: this gentleman was in queſt of his wife, who had left him without any provocation, tho' they were but juſt married: but not finding her, he comforted himſelf with this ſaying, That ſhe had left ſix before him, and that by what he could judge ſhe was fond of variety.

Upon the *tenth* he left this town by land, and went by the caſtle of *Ajada*: he then croſſed the river of *Neuia*, and coaſted along that of *Reeſh* to the caſtle of *Arſamas*, and from thence went to the fortreſs of *Neujanskoi* upon the river of *Neuia*. A finer country is not to be ſeen than that between *Utka* and this place, being full of fine meadows, woods, lakes, well cultivated lands, abounding with every thing, and well peopled with *Ruſſians*. Upon the *twenty firſt* this miniſter went away by water, and found the banks of the river inhabited by *Ruſſian* Chriſtians, adorned with good villages and fine caſtles, quite to the *Tura*, which comes from the weſt, and falls into the *Tobol*.

At Neujanſkoi.

Upon the *twenty fifth*, he arrived at the town of *Tumêen*, which is alſo well peopled, full of *Ruſſians*, and pretty ſtrong by ſituation. Three fourths of the inhabitants are Chriſtians, the reſt are *Mohammedan Tartars*. They have a great trade with the *Calmuc Tartars*, the *Bugarian* and others, and thoſe of the country ſubſiſt by tillage and fiſhing; but they have few or no furs except bear ſkins, and red fox ſkins. But there is a wood, ſome leagues from thence, called *Heetkoj-Wollock*, which affords moſt admirable grey furs, which never change colour in winter, and whoſe ſkins are very ſtrong. They are no where to be had but in *Muſcovy*, and it is, under ſevere penalties, forbidden to tranſport any to other parts: they are all ſet apart for the court. Theſe animals ſuffer none to be in their woods but thoſe of their own kind, and deſtroy all the reſt, which are leſs by the half.

At Tumêen.

Admirable furs.

When the envoy arrived at this place, he found the inhabitants and all the people of the neighbourhood, in a conſternation, on account of the *Coſſacs* and *Calmuc Tartars*, who had juſt then made an invaſion upon *Syberia*, where they plundered ſeveral villages, and killed the inhabitants, and now threatned this town from which they were not above 15 *German* leagues diſtant. But the governor ſent for troops from *Tobol*, and ſome other places, with which he purſued theſe *Tartars*, who loſt a number of their people.

The town of Tumêen *alarmed by the* Calmuc Tartars.

The governor provides againſt them.

For this reaſon, he choſe to make no ſtay here, but, on the *twenty ſixth* embarked on the *Tobol*, with a new gang of rowers, and a guard of ſoldiers. The borders of this river are low and ſubject to be overflowed in the ſpring, and yet they are inhabited, partly by *Mohammedan Tartars*, and partly by *Ruſſians*. This river produces every ſort of good fiſh.

He embarks upon the Tobol.

Upon the *firſt* of *July*, he happily arrived at *Tobol* or *Tobolska*, a ſtrong place, with a great ſtone monaſtery, adorn-

His arrival at Tobolſka.

1692. adorned ſo with high towers, that it might well be miſtaken for a fortreſs. This city ſtands upon an hill at the conflux of the *Tobol*, and the *Irtis:* the foot of this hill and the ſhore of the *Irtis* are inhabited by *Tartars*, and *Mohammedan Bucharians*, who drive on a great trade with the *Calmucs* upon the river, and go even beyond, as far as *China*. When it happens to be ſafe to go through the country of the *Calmucs*, it is the ſhorteſt way to *China*, by the lake *Jamaſchowa*.

Deſcription of it. *Tobol* is the capital of *Syberia*, and its juriſdiction extends ſouthward beyond *Barabu*; from *Wergotur* to the river *Oby* to the eaſtward of the *Samoëds*; to the northward, quite to the country of the *Oſtiacs*; and weſtward as far as *Uſſa*, and the river of *Suſawaia*. The country about is well peopled, as well by *Ruſſians* who follow tillage, as by ſeveral other people, *Tartars* and *Heathens*, who are tributary to the Czar. Grain is ſo plenty there, that they do not give above 16 *Cops* or pence for one hundred weight of barley flour. An ox is not worth above ſix or ſeven florins; a good hog 30 or 35 pence; and there is ſo much fiſh in the *Irtis* that a ſturgeon of 40 or 50 pound weight is not worth above five pence or ſix pence; and they are ſo fat withal, that the ſurface of the water they are boiled in ſhall be above an inch thick of greaſe. This country, in like manner, produces a number of elks, ſtags, deer, and the like; hares, pheaſants, partridges, ſwans, wild-geeſe, ducks, ſtorks, and all ſorts of game, which are cheaper than butchers meat. For the reſt this city is provided with a good garriſon of regular troops, and can ſend above 9000 men into the field, at the firſt order of his Czarian Majeſty. Here are alſo ſome thouſands of *Tartars* who are bound to ſerve his Majeſty on horſeback, when occaſion requires.

Depredations of the Calmucs *upon the Czar's frontiers.* The hoards of the *Calmucs* and *Coſſacs* that depend upon the *Teſticham* or chief of the *Bugarian Tartars*, commit frequent depredations upon the Czar's frontiers, as well as thoſe of *Uffimir* and *Baskir*, but the 1692. garriſon of *Tobol* is preſently at their heels. In this city there is a metropolitan, who is ſent from *Moſcow*, and has juriſdiction over all the clergy of *Sibêria* and *Dauria*.

It is now about an hundred years ſince this city and all *Siberia* became ſubject to his Czarian Majeſty, and that, after the following manner. A certain pyrate, whoſe name was *Jeremak Timofeiewitz*, having greatly haraſſed and ruined certain lands belonging to the Czar *Ivan Waſilewitz*, to the great damage of his ſubjects, and underſtanding the troops of that Prince were advancing towards him, he haſtened back again up the *Kama* with his companions, and then entered the *Suſawaia*, which falls into this river, and retired to the juriſdiction of the Lord of *Stroginof*, a very great landed man, who was poſſeſſed of all the land of the river for 20 *German* leagues about. He implored the protection of the grandfather of this Lord, and upon that condition offered to ſubdue all *Siberia* to the power of the Czar, in recompence for the evils he had inflicted on his ſubjects. This Lord accordingly ſupply'd him with the veſſels, arms and artificers, he might want for his expedition, and promiſed he would obtain his pardon. Fraught with this, he embarked with his companions, and went up the river *Serebrenkoi*, which comes from the north-eaſt of the mountains of *Wergotur*, and falls into the *Suſawaia*. He then cauſed his people to march by land to the river of *Tagin*, which went down quite to the *Tura*, poſſeſſed himſelf of the fortreſs of *Tumêen*, which ſtands upon that river, where he ſlew all he met, then he returned up the *Tobol* quite to the city of that name, where he found a *Tartar* Prince of twelve years old, and called *Altanas Kutzjumowitz*, whoſe grandſon is at preſent at *Moſcow*, and honoured with the title of *Czarowitz* of *Siberia*; he poſſeſſed himſelf of this place, which he fortified, and ſent the young Prince priſoner to *Moſcow*.

How Siberia was reduced to the obedience of the Czar.

After

La Ville
Irtis fluv.
Tobol fluv.

e Tobolska

1692. After this train of ſucceſſes, this *Corſair* went down the *Irtis*, and was attacked in the night by a party of *Tartars*, at no great diſtance from *Tobol*. In this ſkirmiſh he loſt the beſt part of his people, and endeavouring to jump out of one veſſel into another, he fell into the river and was drowned, and his body hurried away by the rapidity of the ſtream, was never afterwards found. The Lord of *Stroginof* had in the mean time ſent to court, and obtained a pardon for *Jeremak*; nor did they fail to ſend troops to the places he had taken, or to fortify them: thus was it that *Siberia* fell under the power of the *Muſcovite*, who continues ſtill to be maſter of the ſame.

Divine ſervice of the Tartars.

The *Tartars* in *Tobol*, and many leagues about are all *Mohammedans*. Mr. *Isbrants* was deſirous to ſee their ceremonies, and went with the Waywod into one of their Moſchs, for without him he could have had no admiſſion. They are ſurrounded with great windows which are left open, and the pavement is covered with a carpet without any other ornament. As they go in they leave their ſhoes at the door, and ſit in order and croſs-legged. The *Mufti* appears in a ſtuff of white cotton, and has a white turban on his head. He whiſpered to one that was preſent, who cry'd out aloud, upon which they were all on their knees. The Mufti then muttered ſome words, and cry'd, *Alla*, *Alla*, *Mohammed*, and the reſt did the ſame after him, bowing three times down to the ground. He then fixed his eyes upon his hands, as if to read ſomething, and cry'd out a ſecond time, *Alla*, *Alla*, *Mohammed*. This done he looked back over his right ſhoulder, and then over his left, without ſaying a word, and all that were preſent obſerving to do the ſame, the ſervice was at an end. 1692.

This Mufti was by birth an *Arab*, and in very high eſteem among them, inſomuch that they had a particular value for every body that underſtood or could read *Arabic* for his ſake. He invited the envoy to his houſe near the *Moſch*, and entertained him with tea. In theſe parts are great numbers of *Calmuc* ſlaves, and even ſome deſcendants of Princes who were formerly made priſoners.

CHAP. XX.

Departure from Tobol. *Deſcription of the* Irtis. *Sledges drawn by dogs, and how. Departure from* Samoroskoi-jam. *Arrival at* Surgut.

Departure from Tobol.

THIS Miniſter departed from *Tobol* upon the *twenty ſecond*, having provided himſelf with veſſels and every thing neceſſary, and particularly with a good guard: thus he fell down the *Irtis*, upon the ſhores of which are ſeveral villages inhabited by *Tartars* and *Oſtiacs*, and among the reſt *Demianskoi*, *Jamin*, and others, where the ſmall river of *Pennouka* falls into the *Irtis*. Upon the *twenty eighth*, he arrived at *Samoroskoi-jam*, where he changed his rowers, and raiſed maſts in the larger veſſels to be able to ſail up the *Oby*, when the wind ſhould be favourable, the *Irtis* falling into this river by ſeveral openings not far from *Samoroskoi-jam*.

Deſcription of the Irtis.

The water of the *Irtis* is white and light, and comes from the mountains in the country of the *Calmucs*. This river runs from the ſouth to the north-eaſt, and paſſes through the two lakes of *Kebak* and *Suzan*. To the ſouth-eaſt it is bordered by lofty mountains, which are crowned with cedars, and the land on the other

1692. ther ſide, to the north-weſt, is low and full of paſture grounds, where are great black bears, wolves, foxes, red and grey; and upon the banks of the river of *Kaſimka*, which diſcharges itſelf into the *Oby*, not very far from *Samoroskoi-jam*, are the fineſt grey furs of all *Siberia*, excepting thoſe in the woods of *Heetkoi-Wollok*, we have mentioned before. The inhabitants told him that, the autumn before, there came a great bear into a ſtable, which looked upon a meadow, whence he took a cow, holding her between his fore-paws, and walking upon his hind: that the people of the houſe and their neighbours, hearing the noiſe the cow made, ran to ſee what was the matter, and fell upon *Bruyn* who would not part with his hold, till they ſhot at him, and killed the cow.

Adventure of a bear.

Inhabitants of the banks of the Irtis.

Moſt of the inhabitants in this part are *Ruſſians* in the pay of his Czarian Majeſty, and who are obliged to furniſh the waivodes ſent thither, and all thoſe that travel into *Siberia*, upon the Prince's buſineſs, with carriages and guides, as well to go by water in ſummer as upon the ice in winter, as far as the city of *Surgut* upon the *Oby*, at reaſonable rates. It is remarkable of them, that they keep a great number of dogs to draw their ſledges in the winter, ſeeing they cannot uſe horſes on account of the depth of the ſnow, which is ſometimes a fathom deep upon the *Oby*. 1692.

Sledges drawn by dogs.

They put two of thoſe dogs to a very light ſledge, upon which they may load two or three hundred weight, and neither the dogs nor the ſledge make the leaſt impreſſion in the ſnow. The inhabitants pretend there are ſome of theſe dogs that have a fore-knowledge of when they are to be imploy'd, and that upon theſe occaſions they meet in the night and keep a terrible howling, whence their maſters conclude they are to have ſtrangers among them; but this is not at all likely. When they travel, their guides have a gun upon their ſhoulder, and certain long ſhoes upon their feet fit to run with upon

the

1692. the ſnow. They ſometimes go with their dogs to hunt in the woods, where they ſometimes meet with fine black foxes, whoſe ſkins they keep, and give the fleſh to their dogs; ſo that they at once reap ſervice and profit by them. Theſe dogs are of middling ſize, with ſharp noſes, and pointed ears which prick up, and turn-up tails, like wolves or foxes; and indeed they may be eaſily miſtaken for ſuch in the woods, they are ſo much alike. It is certain that they often mix together, and that they appear in the neighbourhood of villages when preparations are making to hunt.

Deſcription of theſe dogs.

Departure from Samaroſkoi-jam.

Upon the *twenty ninth* of *July*, this miniſter departed from *Samaroskoi-jam*, and with two veſſels went down the principal branch of the *Irtis* towards the *Oby*, where he arrived the next day. On the eaſt-ſide of this river there are mountains, and on the weſt meadow grounds which reach beyond the ſight, and in this place the river is a good half league in breadth.

Arrival at the town of Surgut.

Upon the *ſixth* of *Auguſt* he arrived at *Surgut*, which ſtands upon the eaſt-ſide of this river. In theſe parts, up the country to the eaſt-ward, and as you go up the *Oby* from *Surgut* quite to the city of *Narum* are very fine ſables, as well of a pale brown as a black; as alſo the fineſt ermins of all *Siberia*, and even of all *Ruſſia*, and black foxes of unſpeakable beauty; the fineſt of which are ſet apart for his Czarian Majeſty, and are ſometimes valued at 2 or 300 rubles a piece: Some of them, in this colour, exceed the fineſt ſables of *Dauria*. They take them with dogs, upon which take the following ſtory as it was related to our author by the inhabitants.

Adventure and cunning of a fox.

A black fox, of the fineſt ſort, appearing in the beginning of the year before, in full day time, near *Surgut*, was purſued by a peaſant who had dogs of the ſame colour. The fox finding he could not eſcape, turned ſuddenly towards the dogs with an air of courteſy, and laid himſelf upon his back, and began to lick their chops; after which he began to run and play with them, the dogs all the time offering him no violence: at length watching the opportunity, he ſlunk into the woods, where the country-man, who had no fire-arms, ſoon loſt ſight of him, as well as the hopes he had had of ſo rich a booty. 1692.

This fox, two days afterwards, returned to the ſame place, when the country-man ſeeing him again, went after him a ſecond time with the ſame dogs, and a white one that he had obſerved to exceed all the reſt in cunning: the black dogs having allured him once more among them, the white one who knew him better than the reſt, made ſlily towards him, and would then have jumped upon him, but the fox gave a ſpring on one ſide, and made his eſcape a ſecond time into the woods.

After this the country-man blackned his white dog that the fox might not know him again, and going back to the woods, this dog ſoon found him out; at length the fox taking him for one of his black companions, came to him to play with him, and thereby fell into the ſnare prepared to deceive him; for the dog ſeized on him to the great joy of his maſter, who ſold his ſkin for 100 rubles.

They have here alſo foxes that are but half black, and mixed with grey, but it is ſeldom they take any that are all black; as for the red ſort, they are here in abundance. This country abounds alſo in otters and beavers; the former living only upon prey are very dangerous creatures; they climb up trees, and there take their ſtand till they ſee an elk, a ſtag, a deer, a hare, going by, when ſpringing upon them, they never leave them till they have killed them, after which they devour them. A waiwode who had one of them alive, ſent him into the river, and two dogs after him; but finding himſelf purſued, he flew at the head of the firſt dog, and held him under water till he was drowned; and then made towards the other, who had met with the ſame fate, if they had not been at hand to ſave him.

Deſcription of otters.

1692. They tell very extraordinary ſtories, and ſuch as ſeem to deſerve no great credit concerning the beavers, that have their holes and burroughs along the banks of this river, in the leſs frequented places, and where there is the moſt fiſh, which is what they chiefly live upon. They pretend that theſe creatures meet together by pairs in the ſpring, and form themſelves into a neighbourhood; that after this they take priſoners of their own kind, and drag them to their holes or houſes to ſerve them as ſlaves; that they fell trees by gnawing them beneath, and remove them to their abodes, where they cut off branches of a certain length, which they uſe to ſecure the ſtore they lay up in ſummer, when their females bring forth their young. They add, that after this, theſe creatures meet a ſecond time, and that after having brought down a tree, of ſometimes an ell in circumference, they reduce it to the length of two fathom, and then float it along to their habitations, before which they raiſe it up to the depth of an ell, without touching the bottom, and 1692. place it in ſo exact an equilibrium, that neither the ſtrength of the winds nor the force of the waters may diſturb it. Tho' this may appear ſupernatural, this miniſter aſſures us the thing was confirmed to him by all *Siberia*, and many others, concerning theſe creatures, which he has ſtudiouſly ſuppreſſed, becauſe to him they ſeemed incredible, and more bordering upon human reaſon, than the nature of brutes.

Of beavers.

Incredible things related of theſe creatures.

Indeed he adds, there are many people in the country who attribute the erection of this tree to the magic of the *Oſtiacs*, and other *Heathens* in thoſe parts; but that it is certain the country people know how to diſtinguiſh between theſe creatures, as whether they be maſters or ſlaves, theſe being thinner, and their coats worn to the ſtumps with working.

The *Ruſſians* and *Oſtiacs* who hunt them, never deſtroy a whole ſet, and are always mindful to leave a male and a female behind them for procreation.

CHAP. XXI.

Arrival at Narum. *Deſcription of the* Oſtiacs; *their religion, and the like. The* Oby *abounds with fiſh; its ſhores uncultivated.*

HAVING been ſome time mounting the *Oby*, ſometimes by the help of the ſail, ſometimes by the ſlow labour of the tow-line, Mr. *Isbrants*, upon the *thirteenth* of *Auguſt*, thwarted the mouth of the river of *Wagga*, which falls down from the mountains of *Trugan*, whence it has its ſource. It is a great river whoſe waters are of a brown black, and empties itſelf into the *Oby*, to the north-north-weſt, below *Narum*, a ſmall city where he arrived upon the *twenty fourth*. It ſtands on the river ſide, in a fine country, and is defended by a citadel with a good garriſon of *Coſſacks*. This part ſwarms with foxes, black, grey, and red, beavers, ermins, ſables, and the like.

Narum.

The banks of the *Oby* are hitherto inhabited by a people called *Oſtiacs*, who worſhip idols, tho' they at the ſame time acknowledge there is a God in heaven, to whom they notwithſtanding pay no adoration. They have idols of wood and idols of earth, in human form, which they faſhion with their own hands, and which ſuch of them as can afford

Deſcription of the Oſtiacs, *and an account of their religion.*

1692. ford it clothe in ſilk, in imitation of the *Ruſſian* habit. Theſe idols ſtand in their cabbins, which are of the bark of trees, ſew'd together with the guts of deer, and have on one ſide of them, bundles of hair, and a little bucket full of a ſort of broth, of which they give them every day with a ſpoon made on purpoſe, which conſtantly running down the corners of the mouth, has an effect very diſagreeable to the ſight. When they worſhip theſe idols, or pray to them, they ſtand upright, and make ſtrange motions with the head, without bowing the body at all, and keep a noiſe like thoſe who call dogs.

Strange machine. They call theſe idols *Saitan*, a name not very wide from *Satan*. It happen'd that ſome of theſe *Oſtiacs* being on board of Mr. *Isbrant*'s veſſel, he ſhewed them a bear contrived at *Nuremberg*, which by ſprings could beat a drum, and at the ſame time move both head and eyes. When they beheld this, and ſaw that it began to move, they fell to ſinging and dancing, and paid all the worſhip they uſually did to their *Saitan*, ſaying this was a true *Saitan*, very different from thoſe they made, and that if they had ſuch a one, they would clothe him in the fineſt ſables, and the ſkin of the black fox. They then aſked if it was to be ſold; but it was taken out of their ſight to put an end to their idolatrous behaviour.

Marriages of the Oſtiacs. Theſe *Oſtiacs* marry as many wives as they can maintain, and make no ſcruple to wed with their neareſt relations. When death ſnatches a friend from them, they lament about the body for ſome days without ceaſing, with their head covered up, and on their knees, without ſeeing any body, and then they carry it to the grave upon poles. They are very poor, and in ſummer live in miſerable huts; but they might eaſily better their condition, the country about the *Oby* affording plenty of furs, and the river itſelf ſtore of fiſh, and eſpecially ſturgeon, a ſcore of the largeſt of which they will give for three penny-worth of tobacco. But they are too lazy to work, and ſeek after no more than what may ſerve them for a miſerable ſubſiſtence in the winter.

Their funerals.

The Oby *abounds with fiſh.*

1692.

They eat hardly any thing but fiſh when they travel, and eſpecially when they are fiſhing. They are of middling ſtature, with hair either fair or red, and with broad flat faces and noſes. They are not at all given to war, and know nothing of the uſe of arms; tho' they have both bows and arrows for hunting, but they are not dextrous with them. They cover themſelves with the ſkins of certain fiſh, and particularly with that of the ſturgeon, and have no manner of linnen. Their ſtockings and ſhoes are all of a piece, and over all they wear a ſhort kind of looſe waiſtcoat, to which they faſten a kind of cap, which they pull over their head when it rains. Their ſhoes which are alſo of fiſh ſkin, are not waterproof, ſo that they are always wet ſhod. Without any ſeeming pain they undergo all the rigors of a moſt frightful cold upon the water, clad no otherwiſe than has been deſcribed, except the winter prove a very hard one indeed, and in that caſe they put on two of the looſe waiſtcoats above. And when this happens, it is a kind of an æra with them, aſking each other, if they do not remember the winter when they wore two waiſtcoats? They wear but one when they hunt in winter, and never cover their breaſts, imagining they ſhall ſufficiently heat themſelves with running up and down on the ſnow with ſledge ſhoes. But when they happen to be overtaken with an extraordinary froſt, which they are unable to withſtand, they ſtrip themſelves as faſt as they can, and bury themſelves deep in the ſnow, that they may dye the ſooner, and with the leſs pain.

The dreſs of the Oſtiacs.

They periſh in the ſnow.

Much

Much as the men dreſs, ſo dreſs the women, whoſe chief diverſion is hunting the bear. Upon this occaſion they go in companies, but armed no otherwiſe than with a kind of a ſharp knife made faſt to the end of a ſtaff about ſix foot long. When they have killed a bear, they cut off his head, and hanging it up to a tree, they run about it, and pay it great honours. The ſame they do about his body, aſking him, *Who was it killed thee? The Ruſſians*, ſay they themſelves, *Who was it cut off thy head? It was the ax of a Ruſſian. Who ript up thy belly? 'Twas the knife of a Ruſſian.* In a word, whatever they do to this creature, they throw upon the *Ruſſians*.

Oſtiacs *how they behave to a bear they have hunted down.*

They have petty Princes among them, one of which called *Knez Kurza Muganak* came on board to ſee Mr. *Isbrants*. This man was appointed over ſome hundreds of cabbins, and gathered the tribute theſe people are obliged to pay to his Czarian Majeſty's waiwodes. He came with all his train; brought him a preſent of freſh fiſh, and returned with an exchange of brandy and tobacco, with which he ſeemed to be highly pleaſed. He came a ſecond time to invite this miniſter to his palace; and Mr. *Isbrants* having the curioſity to accept of this invitation, he went and was received by the Knez himſelf, who in perſon did the honours of his houſe, into which he conducted him. It was made of the barks of trees, like the other cabbins, but not extremely well ſewed together. Mr. *Isbrants* here ſaw four of this Prince's wives, the youngeſt had on a red cloth petticoat, with a good deal of coral and glaſs about her neck and her waiſt, as alſo in the treſſes of her hair, which hung down on each ſide, and upon her

Petty Princes.

The author viſits one of them.

Deſcription of his cabbin and his women.

1692. her ſhoulders; ſhe had great rings or buckles in her ears, from whence hung ſtrings of coral beads. Theſe Ladies, each of them, offered him a little tub, made of bark, full of dry'd fiſh, and the youngeſt a tub of ſturgeon, yellow as gold itſelf; in return for which he regaled them with brandy and tobacco, which are great delicacies with them. This cabbin had no other furniture than ſome cradles, and trunks made of bark, in which were their beds, full of wood-duſt, as ſoft as down itſelf. The cradles were at the end of the cabbin, full of naked children, and the fire was in the midſt. There was no kitchen utenſils, ſave one copper kettle, and ſome others of bark, which they can never uſe, but when there is no flame.

The furniture.

Manner of ſmoaking.

When they ſmoak, to which they are much addicted, both men and women, they take a mouthful of water, and ſwallow the ſmoke of the tobacco with it. This affects them in ſuch ſort, that they fall down, and lye for ſome time on the ground inſenſible, with their eyes open, and foaming at the mouth like thoſe in the falling ſickneſs; ſome of them even dye in this condition; ſometimes they fall into the river, or into the fire, and there come to a miſerable end, and ſometimes they are quite ſuffocated to death with this ſmoke.

Their manners.

They fall into a great paſſion, if any mention be made of their relations, nor can they bear to hear them ſo much as named, tho' they may have been dead for a long time. They are abſolutely ignorant of every thing that has paſſed in the world before their time, and know not either how to read or to write. They in no degree apply themſelves to the culture of the earth, tho' they are remarkably fond of bread.

Their embarkations.

They have neither temples nor prieſts. Their boats are made of the bark of trees, and the timbers and frame-work within of very ſlight pieces of wood. They are two or three fathom in length, and not above an ell broad; and yet they make a ſhift to live it out in very bad weather. In winter theſe *Oſtiacs* live under ground, with an hole at the top of their caves for the ſmoke to go out at. When it ſnows, and they ſleep naked about the fire, as their cuſtom is, it often happens that they have one half of the body covered with ſnow, and when they awake, they turn themſelves on the other ſide towards the fire, and feel no inconvenience by it. 1692.

Their habitations in winter.

When it happens that an *Oſtiac* is jealous of his wife, he cuts away ſome fur from the belly of a bear, and carries it to the perſon he ſuſpects to be great with his wife. When the party is innocent, he accepts it; but when he is guilty, he fairly owns it, and comes to an amicable agreement with the huſband for the price of his wife. Nor dare they act otherwiſe, perſuaded, that if any man ſhould preſume to accept of the hair, and at the ſame time be guilty, the bear from whom the hair is cut, would devour him before three days were at an end. Upon the ſame occaſions, they alſo preſent bows and arrows, hatchets and knives, not doubting but thoſe who accept them under the circumſtances of guilt, muſt come to an untimely end in a few days. This is what they unanimouſly affirm, and is confirmed by the *Ruſſians* who live in thoſe parts: but enough has been ſaid of the *Oſtiacs*.

Their jealouſy.

The banks of the *Oby*, inhabited by them, lye uncultivated from the ſea quite to the river of *Tun*, becauſe of the exceſſive cold, whence they produce neither corn nor honey, nor ought elſe of fruit but the cones of cedars.

The banks of the Oby *uncultivated.*

CHAP. XXII.

Arrival at Makofskoi *upon the* Keta. *Want of Proviſions. Departure from* Makofskoi. *Deſcription of the* Keta. *Journey continued by land. Arrival at* Jenizeskoi. *Deſcription of that town.*

1692. *He leaves the* Oby.

HAving for ſome weeks navigated the *Oby*, and ſpent ſome time among the *Oſtiacs*, Mr. *Isbrants*, upon the *firſt* of *September*, arrived at the town of *Keetskoi* upon the *Keta*, which falls north-weſt into the *Oby*; upon the *twenty-eighth*, he came to the monaſtery of St. *Sergius*; and upon the *third* of *October* to the village of *Worozeikin*, where the ſame day died of a fever, *John George Weltſel*, of *Sleſwic*, a painter, in the train of this miniſter.

Death of one of his ſervants.

Arrival at Makofskoi *upon the* Keta.

Upon the *ſeventh* of *October*, he happily arrived at *Makofskoi*, where he buried the ſaid *Weltſel* upon an eminence on the river ſide. He was more tired, and ſuffered more pain upon this river, than in all the reſt of his journey; for he was five weeks in going up it, without ſetting eyes on a ſoul, except ſome *Oſtiacs*, who immediately ran into the woods. Theſe *Oſtiacs* are different from thoſe along the banks of the *Oby*, and ſpeak another language, but are as much idolaters as they.

Inconveniency upon the Keta.

He ſuffered much in this paſſage for want of proviſions, and eſpecially meal; for he had had no ſupplies from the time he left *Tobol*, excepting now and then ſome freſh fiſh. Tho' it muſt be confeſſed, he would not at this time have been in want, had he been leſs liberal to the poor *Oſtiacs* he had in his veſſel, who ſometimes towed her, tho' they would have deſerted their work, if they had not been well looked after; for they were quite tired out, and accordingly deſerted every day. And at laſt they were ſo thoroughly ſpent, that they muſt have ſunk under it, if help had not come from the governor of *Jenizeskoi*, who upon application, immediately ſent to this Miniſter's aſſiſtance, or he muſt have ſtopped 30 leagues ſhort of *Makofskoi*, and have been expoſed to the danger of periſhing among the ice and ſnows; the banks of the *Keta* being ſo far deſtitute of inhabitants. 1692.

Departure from Makofskoi.

He had ſcarce got from this village, when this river, which is not navigable in winter, began to be taken by the froſt. It runs through a country full of woods and thickets, and winds, ſo as frequently to aſtoniſh the traveller, when at night he perceives how near he is to the place he left at noon. This country abounds with heath-game, pheaſants and partridges, and a pleaſure it is to ſee them in flocks drinking morn and even, upon the banks of the river, where, as you paſs by, you may kill what number you pleaſe, which proved a great help to them in the ſhortning of their proviſions. The ſoil here produces gooſberries, both red and black, as alſo ſtrawberries and raſberries; but the river affords no great ſtore of fiſh.

Teeth and bones of the Mammut.

Near this place, in the mountains to the north-eaſt, they find the teeth and bones of a creature they call a *Mammut*, and eſpecially upon the banks of the Rivers of *Jeniſia*, of *Trugan*, of *Mongamſea*, and of *Lena*, near *Jabutskoi*, and quite to the icy ocean. And this chiefly happens when a great Thaw has flooded this laſt river, and the ice has torn away earth from the ſides of the hills. Then in this earth frozen almoſt quite to the bottom, they find carcaſſes of this creature; and eſpecially when the thaw is not extreamly great indeed. A perſon who attended on the envoy, and who had been ſeveral years imployed in this reſearch, aſſured him he had found the head of

1692. of one of these *Mammuts* in such thawed grounds; that having split it and opened it, he found the flesh almost all putrified, with teeth sticking out like those of an elephant, and so fast set that he had much ado to pull them out. That afterwards meeting with a fore-quarter of this creature, he carried a bone of it to the city of *Trugan*, and that this bone was as thick as the middle of an ordinary man, and in a word, that he observed something that had the resemblance of blood about the neck of this creature.

Different opinions concerning the Mammut.

There are different opinions concerning this animal. The *Jakutes*, *Tunguses* and *Ostiacs* maintain he never comes forth from the bosom of the earth, and that he moves from place to place under ground. They even say they see the earth rise and sink in when he is in motion, so that he leaves a considerable trench behind him. They assure moreover, that he dies as soon as he sees the light, that he never appears above the surface but by accident, whence it is that he is found dead upon high banks, and that he is never seen alive.

The opinion of the Russians *concerning the same.*

But the *Russians*, who have been now a long time in *Siberia*, believe these *Mammuts* are creatures like elephants, except that their teeth are more hooked and closer. They say there was of them in this country before the flood, the climate in those early days being warmer than at present; and that their dead bodies being born away by the waters of the deluge, were buried deep in the earth, and that the frost which has so constantly and intensly frozen them up, has preserved them from utter decay, and in short, that it is owing to thaws they ever appear in sight, which bids fair enough to be the case. Nor indeed is it necessary to make this out, for us to suppose there has been any alteration in the climate of these parts, seeing that these bodies may have been brought hither by the waters which covered the whole face of the earth at that time. When the teeth of this creature have been a whole summer exposed on the shore, they find them split and black, and then they are good for nothing, whereas those that are entire and clean, are as good as ivory. They carry them to all parts of *Muscovy*, where they make combs of them, and other pieces of work. 1692.

Prodigious teeth of a Mammut.

The same servant told him, that he had found two teeth, in one and the same head, which weighed about twelve hundred weight of *Russia*, or about four hundred weight *German*, so that these creatures must be of enormous dimensions. For the rest, Mr. *Isbrants*, says, he never met with any body that had ever seen one of these *Mammuts* alive, nor ever any one that could give him an exact description of their form.

He continues his journey by land.

When this Gentleman had reached the village of *Makofskoi*, he would no longer expose himself to perils on the water, and resolved to perform the rest of his journey by land. Having travelled sixteen leagues in this manner, he, upon the *twelfth* of *October* came to *Jenizeskoi*, where he staid some time to repose himself, and to wait for the settling of the winter season, that he might continue his journey in a sledge. In the mean time he made preparation of every thing he might want, and had time enough to examine into every thing remarkable in the city.

Arrival at Jenizeskoi.

Description of that city.

It borrows its name from the river of *Jenisha*, which arising from the south, crosses the *Kalmuc* mountains, and holds on almost in a strait line to the northward, till it disembogues itself into the icy sea of *Tartary*, but not after the manner of the *Oby*, which discharges itself into the bosom of its own waters, and runs from them into the sea. It is a full quarter of a league broad at this town. Its water is white and light, but produces no great quantity of fish. About seven years ago the inhabitants of this place fitted out a ship to go upon the whale-fishery; but she never returned, nor have they ever had any news of her since. But the inhabitants of *Fugunia*, a town farther down the river, send ships

1692. ships every year upon that expedition; however, they time it better than the others did, and consider when the wind blows the ice off the shore, and so fish with safety. The city of *Jenizeskoi* is indifferently large, well fortified, and well peopled. Corn, butcher's meat, and poultry abound there. Its jurisdiction extends over a great number of the heathen *Tunguses*, who inhabit along the *Jenisia*, and the *Tunguska*, and the neighbourhood about. They pay their tribute to his Czarian Majesty in all sorts of furs. The cold is here so intense, that the fruit-trees here produce no fruit. They have nothing of the kind but red and black gooseberries, and some strawberries. 1692.

CHAP. XXIII.

Departure from Jenizeskoi. *Arrival at the isle of* Ribnoi; *at* Ilinskoi; *and to the fall or cataract of* Shamanskoi, *or the* Magician. *Description of the* Tunguses.

1693. *Departure from* Jenizeskoi, *and arrival at the isle of* Ribnoi.

THE Envoy departed from *Jenizeskoi* in a sledge, and upon the *twentieth* of *January*, 1693, arrived at the island of *Ribnoi* or *of Fish*. It stands in the middle of the river of *Tunguska*, and abounds in fish, especially in sturgeon and pike, of extraordinary size, and is almost wholly inhabited by *Russians*. Upon the *twenty-fifth* he arrived at *Ilinskoi*, upon the river of *Ilni*, which rises to the south-south-westward, and discharges itself into the *Tunguska*, north-north-west. To this place there are both *Russians* and *Tunguses* upon the banks of this river.

At Ilinskoi.

Shamanskoi *or the torrent of the Magician.*

At some days journey from hence, you meet with the great fall, cataract, or torrent of water of *Shamanskoi*, or the *Magician*, so called from a famous *Shaman* or Magician who there takes up his abode. The fall of this torrent is half a league in extent, and the sides are high hills of rock, and all the bottom is rock: Terrible it is to behold, as may be perceived by the plate annexed; and makes a most frightful noise as it falls among the rocks, some of which appear above, and some are concealed below. When the air is still, it is heard at the distance of three *German* leagues around.

The vessels wherewith they navigate up this torrent, are often six or seven days in getting up, altho' they be quite light, and drawn up by capstanes, windlasses, anchors and men. Sometimes it happens that they shall work a whole day, in places where the water is low, and the rocks are high, and not gain the length of the vessel, which is all the time in great danger. 1593. *Dangers to which vessels are exposed upon this torrent.*

They unlade these vessels to go down, as well as to go up this torrent, and carry the goods by land till there is no longer any danger; and the fall is so precipitate, that they are seldom above twelve minutes in going down. For the rest, there are but few either of the *Russians* or the *Tunguses* that are quite dextrous at this piece of navigation, tho' they are provided with a rudder both fore and aft, and tho' they have oars shipped on each side. The steersman directs the men at the oars with the motion of an handkerchief, the noise being so rude and boisterous, as to drown the human voice; and besides this, they take care to have their vessel close covered up to prevent their shipping the water that goes over them. However, there happens every year some sad acci-

Chute ou Torrent

de Schamanskoi.

ravens, fiſhes, owls, griffins, hatchets, ſaws, ſabres, knives, and the like, which made a ſtrange ſort of clinking and noiſe. His feet and his legs were covered with the ſame, and his hand with two great bears paws made of iron. His cap was alſo hung with pieces of iron like his gown, and upon his fore-head he had a large pair of horns of the rein-deer, made alſo of iron. When he exerciſes his diabolical art, he takes a drum in his left hand, and a flat ſort of ſtick in his right, covered with the ſkin of the mountain mouſe; then jumping firſt upon one foot, and then upon the other, the pieces of iron make a moſt frighful din; he beats upon his drum at the ſame time, and rolls his eyes, and imitates the noiſe of a bear. This fine prelude over, he demands his rewards before he ſtirs a ſtep farther, towards the diſcovery of what the

How he exerciſes his art.

privities, and is ſomewhat like a fringe: The women wear their hair dreſſed up with coral, to which they hang little iron figures. Upon their left arm they carry a kind of pot full of a ſmoaking wood, which keeps the flies from biting them. Theſe inſects ſo ſwarm upon the river of *Tunguska*, that a man is obliged to cover over his face and his hands; but theſe pagans are ſo uſed to them, that they hardly feel them. They are fond of beauty, but have very odd notions about what it is; for to add thereto they quilt their forehead, their cheeks and their chin, with thread ſteeped in a black greaſe, which being afterwards withdrawn, leaves marks behind it, which are thought to be very great ornaments. And indeed, there are few of this people without them, but you will have a clearer idea of this matter by conſulting the plate annexed.

Their ornaments.

1693. dent or other for want of ſkilful pilots, who run upon the rocks, in which caſe there is no reſource, and they are either ſwallowed up by the furious torrent, or inevitably daſhed to pieces againſt the rocks: nor is it eaſy to recover the dead bodies of thoſe ſo loſt; tho' on the ſhore are many croſſes erected at the places where ſuch wrecks have happened, and where the people have been buried. The water that flows hither from the northern ocean ſwells this torrent in winter to that degree, that it is difficult to diſcern any fall, ſo that it was formerly croſſed in ſledges, but in ſummer it is very low.

Many are loſt by the unskilfulneſs of pilots.

Tunguſes and their Shaman.

Some leagues from hence are numbers of *Tunguſes*, and their famous *Shaman* or Magician. The great reputation of this impoſtor excited the curioſity of the Envoy to go to the place of his abode. He ſays, he was a large made man, pretty far advanced in years, that he had twelve wives, and bluſhed not for his profeſſion. This *Shaman* ſhewed his magical habit, and every article elſe he uſed in acting the magician: Firſt a garment all hung about with irons, repreſenting the figures of all ſorts of animals, birds, ravens, fiſhes, owls, griffins, hatchets, ſaws, ſabres, knives, and the like, which made a ſtrange ſort of clinking and noiſe. His feet and his legs were covered with the ſame, and his hand with two great bears paws made of iron. His cap was alſo hung with pieces of iron like his gown, and upon his fore-head he had a large pair of horns of the rein-deer, made alſo of iron. When he exerciſes his diabolical art, he takes a drum in his left hand, and a flat ſort of ſtick in his right, covered with the ſkin of the mountain mouſe; then jumping firſt upon one foot, and then upon the other, the pieces of iron make a moſt frighful din; he beats upon his drum at the ſame time, and rolls his eyes, and imitates the noiſe of a bear. This fine prelude over, he demands his rewards before he ſtirs a ſtep farther, towards the diſcovery of what the *Tunguſes* want to know of him, whether it be to help them to any thing that has been ſtollen, or to tell them any thing elſe they want of him. This done, he begins to ſkip and to cry out again, till he perceives a blackbird perched upon his cabbin at the place where the ſmoke goes out; laſtly, he falls backward, as if deprived of his ſenſes, and the bird flies away again. In about a quarter of an hour's time he recovers himſelf, and declares what he was deſired to tell, and what he ſays never fails to happen. The dreſs of this magician is ſo heavy, that it is as much as a man can do to lift it up with one hand. This man was very rich in cattle, and thoſe who came to conſult him, gave him whatever he had a mind to aſk.

Deſcription of his perſon.

How he exerciſes his art.

Riches of this magician.

Theſe *Tunguſes* of *Niſovier*, are heathens, robuſt, and well made of body. They wear their long black hair, knotted behind, and which falls down upon their back like a horſe's tail; their face is generally broad, but their noſe is not flat, and they have little eyes like the *Kalmucs*. Both men and women go naked in ſummer, excepting a leather about their middle which conceals their privities, and is ſomewhat like a fringe: The women wear their hair dreſſed up with coral, to which they hang little iron figures. Upon their left arm they carry a kind of pot full of a ſmoaking wood, which keeps the flies from biting them. Theſe inſects ſo ſwarm upon the river of *Tunguska*, that a man is obliged to cover over his face and his hands; but theſe pagans are ſo uſed to them, that they hardly feel them. They are fond of beauty, but have very odd notions about what it is; for to add thereto they quilt their forehead, their cheeks and their chin, with thread ſteeped in a black greaſe, which being afterwards withdrawn, leaves marks behind it, which are thought to be very great ornaments. And indeed, there are few of this people without them, but you will have a clearer idea of this matter by conſulting the plate annexed.

Deſcription of the Tunguſes.

Their dreſs in ſummer.

Their ornaments.

A. *Cabane avec l'Idole.* B. *Corps de leurs Amis Morts,*
C. *Chiens pendus, d'ont ils se nourrissent.*

Their dreſs in winter. In winter they wear undreſſed ſkins of the rein-deer, adorning the fore-part with horſe-hair, and the bottom with dogs-ſkin, they have no uſe either of linen or woollen; they make themſelves a kind of ribbon and thread of fiſh-ſkin. Upon their heads alſo they wear the ſkin of rein-deer with the horns on, and particularly when they are about to hunt that creature, whom by that means they get near, gliding along upon the graſs, till they are within reach, when they ſeldom fail to diſpatch him with their arrows.

Diverſion. When they would divert themſelves, they form a ring, while one is in the midſt of them with a ſtick in his hand, with which he endeavours to ſtrike the legs of the reſt as they run round him, and they avoid a blow ſo artfully, that it is but ſeldom any of them feel the cudgel; but if at any time it happen that one of them receives a blow, he is immediately ducked in the river.

They place the bodies of their dead ſtark naked under a tree, and there leave them to rot, after which they bury their bones in the ground.

They have no prieſts beſides their *Shaman* or Magician; but they have all of them wooden idols in their cabbins. Theſe idols are about half an ell in length, and in human ſhape, and theſe they pretend to feed with the beſt they have like the *Oſtiacs*, and with as little cleanlineſs. *Magicians and idols.*

Their cabbins, which are made of the bark of birch, are, on the outſide, adorned with tails and mains of horſes, with their bows and arrows, and moſt of them with the dead bodies of puppies hung about them. They feed upon fiſh in ſummer, and have boats of the bark of trees ſewn together, big enough to hold ſeven or eight perſons; they are long, narrow, and without benches. *Deſcription of their cabbins.*

1693. They row upon their knees with a double paddle or oar, which they hold by the middle, and handle very dextrouſly, dipping all at once, as well upon great rivers as upon ſmall. They fiſh in ſummer, and hunt in winter, during which they feed upon deer of ſeveral ſorts, and the like. 1693.

CHAP. XXIV.

Arrival at Buratskoi, *and at* Bulaganskoi. *Deſcription of the* Burates, &c. *Arrival at* Jekutskoi; *a Deſcription of it. A burning Cavern. Departure from* Jekutskoi. *Arrival at the Lake of* Baikal. *Deſcription of that Lake*, &c.

Arrival at Buratskoi. UPON the *firſt* of *February*, the Envoy arrived at the fortreſs of *Buratskoi*, upon the river *Angara*, which falls into the lake of *Baikal*, and is well inhabited by a people that are heathens, and called *Burates*.

Arrival at Bulaganſkoi. Upon the *eleventh*, he arrived at *Bulaganskoi*; where alſo the vales and low country are inhabited by theſe *Burates*, a people rich in cattle. Their beeves are very thick of hair, and their cabbins are low, made of wood, and covered with earth: They light their fire in the middle, and the ſmoke goes out of a hole in the top of the building. They have no notion of agriculture, or of fruit grounds or gardens; and their villages are for the moſt part on the ſides of rivers, whence they are not uſed to remove like the *Tunguſes*, and others of the heathen. On one ſide of their doors, they have ſtakes planted in the ground, upon which they impale goats or ſheep, and faſten thereto alſo the ſkins of horſes.

Hunting of the Burates. In the ſpring, they meet together in great numbers on horſeback, to hunt the ſtag, the rein-deer, and other wild beaſts which they call *Ablavo*. When they have ſight of them at a diſtance, they divide themſelves into troops and ſurround them; then they drive them together into a cloſe body by degrees, and in this manner frequently hedge in ſome hundreds of them, which they ſhoot with their arrows, when they are within reach; ſo that few of them eſcape, every ſportſman being provided with thirty arrows.

When they have finiſhed the chaſe, during which it ſometimes happens that they wound each other in the confuſion of the attack, and ſhoot their horſes, they look out, every one for his arrows, which they always mark, and then they flea their game, drying the fleſh of it, which they divide from the bones, in the ſun: And when this ſtore is near upon exhauſted, they return again to their ſport. This country ſwarms with fallow-deer, and eſpecially in wild ſheep, which upon the mountains are met with by thouſands. But there are few or no creatures that afford furs for 5 or 6 leagues about, excepting ſome bears and ſome wolves. *Accidents upon that occaſion.*

When it happens that among this people you want oxen, or camels to travel with to *China*, you muſt agree with them for goods in exchange; they have no notion of money in coin. They truck with you for pale ſables, pewter or copper baſons, red cloths of *Hamburgh*, otter-ſkins, ſilks of *Perſia* of all ſorts of colours, and gold and ſilver in ingots. In this manner you may buy an ox, which dreſſed, would weigh from 800 to 1000 weight, for the value of four or five rubles; and a camel for the value *Price of cattle.*

1693. value of ten or a dozen, the rubles being here eſtimated at five livers as in *Ruſſia*. The inhabitants of this country, as well men as women, are robuſt and large of ſtature; have a face handſome enough in their way, and ſomewhat reſembling the *Tartars* of *China*. In the winter-time, both the one and the other wear gowns of ſheep-ſkin, with a great girdle, and a cap called *Malachaven*, which comes over their ears; and in ſummer they wear gowns of an ugly ſort of a red cloth. For the reſt, as they never waſh but upon the day they come into the world, and never pare their nails at all, they, if the expreſſion may be allowed, look like a kind of Devils.

The ſtature and habit of the Burates.

The men wear a beard under their chin but pluck out all the reſt; the ſeams of their cloaths are adorned with furs; their caps are of fox-ſkin; their gowns of a blue-cotton ſtuff, pleated in the middle, and their boots are of ſkins with the hair outermoſt. The women wear coral, rings, and pieces of money in the treſſes of their hair; and the hair of the girls or maidens is in ſnakes, that they look like furies.

Their maids and women.

The women have their hair falling down on each ſide, and adorned with all ſorts of figures in pewter; and when they dye, they bury them with their beſt cloaths, and a bow and an arrow. Their only worſhip is to make certain motions of the head, at certain times of the year, to the goats and ſheep that are impaled at their doors. The ſame honour they pay to the ſun and moon, but upon their knees, with their hands joined together, tho' without ſaying a word, or uſing any ſort of verbal invocation. They have prieſts, which they put to death whenever they pleaſe, and then bury them with money and cloaths, that they may go before them, and pray for them.

The place where they ſwear by oath.

When they are under a neceſſity of taking an oath among themſelves, they repair to the lake of *Baikal*, upon a high mountain, which is ſacred with them, and which they may reach in two days journey: They are perſuaded they ſhould never come down again alive, if they took a falſe oath. This mountain has for a long ſeries of years paſt been in high veneration with them, and upon it they make frequent offerings of cattle. 1693.

Creatures that yield muſk.

In theſe parts they have the muſc creature, like thoſe to be ſeen in the plate. It is not very unlike a deer without horns, but is darker, and with a head not very unlike the head of a wolf. His muſk is contained in a ſmall bladder at the navel, covered with a little ſort of down. The *Chineſe* call it *Yehiam* or the muſk-deer; but beſides that he has not the head of a deer, his teeth are like the tuſks of a wild boar, except that they are hooked.

It is met with in China.

Martini, in his *Chineſe* atlas, obſerves, that this creature, is in the country of *Xanxi* in the neighbourhood of the city of *Leao*; in that of *Xenxi*, and particularly in that of *Hanchungfu*; in the country of *Suchuen*; in that of *Paoningfa*, and in the neighbourhood of *Kiating*, and the fortreſs of *Tienciven*; in many parts of the territory of *Junan*, and other places to the weſtward. The deſcription he gives of it is curious enough: "The muſk creature, ſays he, is not very unlike a "young deer; but he is of a deeper "colour, and ſo lazy, that it is as "much as the hunters can do to "rouſe him, ſo that he ſuffers his "throat to be cut without the leaſt "ſtruggle or reſiſtance; they ſave "his blood, and are careful to keep "it. Under his navel, he has a "ſmall bladder full of blood, and a "certain coagulated and odoriferous "fluid; this they take from him, "then they ſkin him and cut him in "pieces.

Firſt ſort of muſk.

"In order to make the beſt musk, "the *Chineſe* take the hind quarters "of this creature, from the kidneys, "which they bray with a little "blood in a ſtone mortar, 'till the "whole become a jelly, which they "dry, and with it fill little cods, "made of the skin of this ſame crea-"ture.

"If

1693. *Second sort.* "If they would have it of an inferior degree, tho' at the ſame time "genuine and very good, they without diſtinction pound and bray all "the parts of this creature together, "and reducing them to the conſiſtence before-mentioned, which they "mix with a little blood, they fill "cods with it as before.

Third ſort. "Beſides theſe two ſorts, they "have a third, much eſteemed alſo, "tho' not ſo pure and good as the "former. This is made of the fore-"quarters of this creature, that is, "from the head to the kidneys, "which together with the reſt, ſerve "to make common musk, ſo that "no part is loſt, and all is good." For the reſt the Envoy pretends not to ſay, whether or no the *Burates*, and the other ſavages their neighbours, practiſe with this creature, as the *Chineſe* do.

Arrival at Jekutskoi, and a deſcription of it. Having made ſome ſtay among this people, he went to *Jekutskoi*, upon the river of *Angara*, which riſes from the lake of *Baikal*, about 8 leagues off. This town, which has been but lately built, is flanked with good towers. Its ſuburbs are very large, and corn, ſalt, butchers-meat and fiſh, are there ſo cheap, that they do not give above ſeven pence for an hundred weight of barley, *German* weight. The country about is very fertile, and abounds in grain as far as *Wergolenskoi*, which is only ſome leagues diſtant. The *Ruſſians* in theſe parts have ſome hundreds of villages, and are very careful to cultivate the land.

A burning cave. Oppoſite to this town, to the eaſtward, there is a burning cavern, which has belched forth flame with a degree of violence for ſome time paſt, but at preſent nothing appears from it but a little ſmoke. The fire came out by a large fiſſure, which continues to be hot, as may be experienced by thruſting a long ſtick into it. 1693.

There is alſo a fine monaſtery on one ſide of this town, in the place where the *Jakut*, whence it derives its name, falls into the *Angara*. In theſe parts they feel great earthquakes, during the autumn ſeaſon, but they never do any damage.

Here the Envoy met with a *Taiſcha*, or a Lord of the *Mongales*, who had ſubmitted himſelf to the protection of their Czarian Majeſties, and had embraced the *Chriſtian* faith after the *Greek* rite. *Taiſcha or Lord of the* Mongales.

This Lord had a ſiſter who was a nun after the *Mongale* profeſſion, who had alſo had ſome inclination to become a Chriſtian. When ſhe was talked to about it, ſhe would ſay ſhe was convinced that the God of the Chriſtians muſt be a very mighty God, ſeeing he had driven theirs from out of paradiſe: That, however, a time would come, when he would return thither again, and that he would not be expelled a ſecond time. When any of theſe religious or devoted women come into a room, they do not ſalute any body, contrary to the cuſtom of the *Mongales*; their order not indulging them in that ſort of complaiſance. She had a ſtring of beads in her hand, which ſhe was continually counting with her fingers, and was attended by a *Lama*, or *Mongale* prieſt, who had a ſtring of beads alſo in his hand, after the manner of the *Mongales* and *Kalmucs*, which he continually counted with her, and was continually moving his lips as a perſon that prayed to himſelf; and had ſo worn his thumb, his nail, and joints of his fingers, with turning and telling his beads, that he had loſt all feeling in them. *His ſiſter a nun of the* Mongale *profeſſion.* *Her belief.* Lama *or* Mongale *prieſt.*

Departure from Jekutskoi.

The Envoy having reſted himſelf ſome time at *Jekutskoi*, upon the *firſt* of *May* departed thence in a ſledge, and croſſed the country, to the lake of *Baikal*, where upon the *tenth* he arrived, and found it frozen over ſtill.

Lake of Baikal *deſcribed.*

Having croſſed it, he came into the country of *Katania*. This lake is about 6 *German* leagues in breadth, and 40 in length, and the ice upon it was 2 *Dutch* ells in thickneſs; tho' it be very dangerous, when it happens to ſnow, and the wind high at the ſame time. Care muſt particularly be taken that the horſes be very well ſhod for the purpoſe, becauſe the ice is very ſmooth and ſlippery, and becauſe the ſnow is always driven off from it by the wind. There are in it alſo great holes, very dangerous for travellers, when the wind is high, and the horſes are not properly ſhod, and into which they are frequently forced. The ice here alſo ſometimes cracks with the violence of guſts, and with a noiſe like thunder; but is never long before it joins and knits together again.

Accidents cauſed by the violence of winds.

How they croſs this lake with camels and oxen.

The camels and oxen uſed in the journey to *China*, muſt croſs this lake as they go from *Jekutskoi*, and that they may be able ſo to do, the former have boots put on them, which boots are ſhod for the ice, and very ſharp irons are put upon the hoofs of the others, without which they would not be able to ſtand upon this ſmooth ſlippery ſurface. For the reſt, the water of this lake is very ſweet, tho' at a diſtance it appears to be as green and as clear as the ocean. In the breaks of the ice it has numbers of ſeals, which are black, whereas thoſe in the white ſea are of a mixed colour. This lake is full of fiſh, and particularly ſwarms with ſturgeon and pike, ſome

1693. of which are of ſuch ſize, as to weigh two hundred of *German* weight. The only river that goes out of this lake is the *Angara*, which runs to the north-north-weſt; but there are ſeveral that fall into it, the chief of which is the *Silinga*, which riſes to the ſouthward in the country of the *Mongales*; beſides ſome brooks and rills that fall into it from the rocks, nor is it without ſome iſlands. Its borders, and the country round about, are inhabited by *Burates*, *Mongales*, and *Onkotes*, and produce very fine black ſables; beſides that they here ſometimes take a creature called *Kaberdiner*.

Strange ſuperſtition about this lake.

It is particularly obſervable, with regard to this lake, that when you are near it, on the ſide of the monaſtery of St. *Nicholas*, which ſtands in the place where the *Angara* goes out of the lake, the inhabitants are very ſcrupulouſly cautious in adviſing all travellers that are to croſs the lake, by no means whatſoever to call it by the name of *Oſer* or *Still-Water*, but a lake; for fear they periſh by the violence of a ſtorm, as many have before them, who have been ſo indiſcreet as to call it *Oſer*; a caution which appeared ſo ridiculous to the Envoy, that he called it ſo as he went over it, without any fear of what the inhabitants had ſo predictively threatened him with; and it happened, that in the midſt of very fine weather he came to the caſtle of *Katania*, the firſt fortreſs in the province of *Dauria*, heartily commiſerating the wild ſuperſtition of theſe poor people, who fear the wrath of the elements, inſtead of putting their truſt in God, who is the Creator and the Lord of the whole world, and whom the winds and the elements obey. 1693. *Caſtle of* Katania.

CHAP. XXV.

Departure from Katania. *Arrival at* Udinskoi. *Deſcription of that town and its dependencies. Departure from* Udinskoi. *Arrival at the fortreſs of* Jarauna. *Deſcription of the people of that country. Arrival at* Nerzinskoi. *Deſcription of the town, and of the inhabitants round about. Arrival at* Argunskoi, *the laſt fortreſs belonging to the Czar on the ſide of* China. *Its ſituation.*

Departure from Katania.

THE next day, the Envoy departed from the caſtle of *Katania*, and upon the *twelfth*, arrived at the great burg of *Ilinskoi*, or of *Bolſoi Saimka*, moſt of whoſe inhabitants are *Ruſſians*, who in winter hunt for ſables, the product of the earth affording them no more than a bare ſubſiſtence, becauſe the country is incumbered with barren hills.

Upon the *fourteenth* he arrived at the caſtle of *Tanzinskoi*, where was a good garriſon of *Coſſacks*, to make head againſt the incurſions of the *Mongales* who inhabit upon the frontiers of that country. Upon the *nineteenth*, he arrived at *Udinskoi*, a town ſeated upon a high hill, at the foot of which moſt of the inhabitants take up their abode, under the cannon of that fortreſs, along the river *Uda*, which falls into the *Silinga*, *At* Udinſkoi.

1693. *linga*, a quarter of a league below the town, in which there is also a good garrison of *Russian Cossacks* to watch the motions of the *Mongales*.

This town, which is the key of the province of *Dauria*, is very much exposed, even in the summer time, to the ravages of the *Mongales*, who often carry off horses as they feed in the meadows. The land, which is there very mountainous, is fit for no sort of tillage, tho' it abounds in cabbages, carrots, turnips, and such like vegetable productions; but no trees have as yet been planted here to this day.

Description of its soil.

An earthquake.

Here, about nine at night, the Envoy was surprized with a great earthquake, which in the space of an hour, shook all the houses three times, without doing any farther mischief.

The river of *Uda* produces little or no fish, if you except pike and roach; but every day in the month of *July*, there are prodigious shoals of a certain sort of fish which they call *Omuli*, and which swim up this river from the lake of *Baikal*. These *Omuli* are of the size of an herring, and hardly ever appear beyond this town, at the foot of a crumbled hill, where they stay only for a few days, and then swim back again to the lake. They take great quantities of them, by only throwing of sacks in the river, and these sacks are frequently as full as they can hold. The Envoy was obliged to stay here till the *sixth* of *April*, to provide himself with camels and horses.

Upon the *twenty sixth* he went by land to the river of *Ona*, which comes from the north-north-west, and falls into the *Uda*.

Upon the *twenty seventh*, he reached the river of *Kurba*, whose source is to the north-north-west, and in like manner discharges itself into the *Uda*. He skirted this river towards its spring, till he had got to the middle of it; he was frequently obliged to leave it at some distance, but never lost sight of it.

Jarauna. Upon the *twenty ninth*, he arrived at the fortress of *Jarauna*, and was ravished to meet with towns again, after having crossed a desart country full of high rocks; an irksome journey, during which he saw no soul from the time he left *Udinskoi*. This fortress is provided with a good garrison of *Cossacks*, and here also are many *Russians*, who subsist by the sale of sables. The *Konni Tunguski*, the heathens who inhabit along the rivers of *Tunguska* and *Angara*, spread all over this country, and speak a language peculiar to themselves. When they dye they are buried with their cloaths and their arrows, and stones are put over their grave. Then they plant a stake, to which the best horse of the deceased is tied, and there sacrificed. They live by the sale of sable furs, which are perfectly fine in this country, and of an admirable black. Here also are fine luxes, and a sort of squirrels of a a black-grey, which the *Chinese* were formerly wont to carry off with them. To the north of this fortress you see three small lakes not far from each other, which, together, are 2 leagues in circumference, and abound with pike, carp, perch, and the like. From hence are two ways which lead to *Zitinskoi* or *Plabitscha*. The Envoy sent part of his servants by the one, and the caravan advanced to the southward, skirting it along the lake of *Schakze Oser*, and then crossed the hills of *Jablusnoi*, or of *Apples*; tho' none grow there, and they produce no other than a kind of red fruit, which has something of the taste of an apple. The other way he took himself, with a train of fourteen followers, notwithstanding it was very mooriſh, and that he was to go over lofty rocks, from *Jarauna* to *Telimta*. There are numbers of *Russians* in this fortress, who in the winter season take sables of a very fine black, well fed, and equal to the very finest in all *Siberia*, and the province of *Dauria*.

People of the country.

Telimta.

Here

Beuf Velu.
Pag. 120.

1693. 1693.

A Tungus Prince. Here he paſſed a night, and a *Knez* or Prince of the *Tunguſes*, called *Liliulka*, came to ſee him. This Lord had his hair done up with leather, and ſo very long, that it went three times round about his ſhoulders. The Envoy intimating a curioſity to ſee it looſe, and the *Knez* being far gone with brandy, obliged him with the favour, and his hair being meaſured, proved to be 4 *Dutch* ells in length. He had with him a ſon of no more than ſix years old, whoſe hair, which hung upon his ſhoulders, was an ell in length. Theſe *Tunguſes* live in great numbers upon the hills and mountains of this country, and are generally rich, which proceeds from their large dealings in ſables.

For two days together they went over ſtony mountains, very lofty, to the north-weſt and the ſouth-eaſt. The river of *Konela*, which afterwards aſſumes the name of *Wittim*, riſes there to the north-ward; runs away to the north-eaſt, and goes and falls into the *Lena*, and from thence into the icy or northern ſea. The *Zitta* commences from the other ſide of the mountains, half a league from thence, and falls into the *Ingodda*, or *Amur*, and from thence into the eaſtern ocean.

Upon the *fifteenth* of *May*, he arrived at *Plodbitſcha*, as the *Caravan* did the day before, having greatly ſuffered on the way from the *Tunguſes*, who had ſet fire to the dry graſs; ſo that the cattle being in want of forage, they had been obliged to go into the mountains for it, at the diſtance of a league off. Plodbitſcha.

The Envoy was obliged to make a ſtay of ſome days at *Plodbitſcha*, upon the *Zitta*, to reſt him a little, and to get ready ſome rafts, by which to fall down the rivers of *Ingodda* and *The rivers of* Ingodda *and* Schilka *very low.*

1693. *Schilka* to *Nerzinskoi*; for the waters were so low there was no such thing as going in boats, nor was it quite safe to go upon rafts in the rocky places, where two of them were broke: they were laden with part of the Envoy's equipage; but with some trouble it was all saved.

When every thing was ready, he sent his camels and other beasts of burden before him towards *Nerzinskoi*, by the way of the mountains, and upon the *eighteenth* he followed them in person. Upon the *nineteenth*, he reached the river of *Onon*, which rises from the fens of *Mongal*, and to the north-east throws itself into the *Ingodda*, where having united their streams, they go away together by the name of *Schilka*. Their waters are very white, and their borders are inhabited by several hoards of the *Mongales*, who commit frequent ravages on the other side of the *Schilka* quite to *Nerzinskoi*. But they are not always attended with the best of luck upon these occasions; they are not seldom repulsed, and when any of them happen to be taken, they are sure to be executed as common robbers. The *Russian Cossacks* also scour the country along the *Onon* to take vengeance on them; they spare no soul they meet with, and destroy all before them where-ever they come.

Nerzinskoi. Upon the *twentieth*, he happily arrived at *Nerzinskoi*, a town upon the *Nerza*, which comes from the north-north-east, and discharges itself into the *Schilka*, a quarter of a league from this fortress, whose works are not bad, and provided with a good number of brass artillery, as well as with a good garrison of *Daurian Cossacks*, who serve both on foot and on horseback. This place, tho' surrounded with high hills, does not want for grass grounds to feed its camels, its horses and its cattle. And here and there, at the distance of two leagues upon the hills, you may see patches of land fit for tillage, and for the production of such things as the inhabitants stand in need of.

1693. Four or five leagues upon the *Schilka*, above this town, and ten leagues below it, you meet with several *Russian* gentlemen, and some *Cossacks* who subsist by tillage, grazing and fishing. The environs of this town and the hills produce all sorts of flowers and plants; bastard rhubarb or *rapontica*, of extraordinary size; fine white and yellow lilies; red and white pionies of a charming scent, and of several sorts; rosemary, thyme, sweet marjoram, lavender, besides many odoriferous plants unknown in our countries: but they have no sort of fruit here except gooseberries. The heathens, who have a long time been in this country, and who are under the dominion of the Czar of *Muscovy* are of two sorts; the *Konni Tunguſi*, and the *Olenni Tunguſi*. The first are obliged to appear on horseback at the first orders of the *Waiwode* of *Nerzinskoi*, or when the borders are infested by the *Tartars*; and the *Olenni* are obliged to serve on foot, and armed in the town, when occasion requires. The chief of the *Konni Tunguſi* is a *Knez* called *Paul Petrowitz Gantimur*, or in their language *Catana Gantimur*. He is pretty far advanced in years, and of the country of *Nieuheu*, where he had been a *Taiſcha*, under the dominion of the King of *China*; but falling into disgrace with that Prince, who deposed him, he removed into *Dauria*, with his hoards or vassals, and embracing the christian faith of the *Greek* church, threw himself under the protection of the Czar. He can bring 3000 men into the field in twenty four hours time, all well mounted and good soldiers, provided with bow and arrow. It often happens that a score or two of this people shall drive three or four hundred of the *Mongale Tartars* before them. Those of them who live near the town, subsist by cattle; but those upon the *Schilka* and the *Amur* hunt for sables, which are here of exquisite beauty and very black.

Two sorts of the inhabitants that are heathens.

Chief of the Konni Tunguſi.

1693. They live in cabbins which they call *Jurtes*, the inſide of which are poles joined or framed together, and which they can eaſily remove from place to place, as they are often obliged to do. When theſe poles are erected, they cover them over with ſkins, except where the ſmoke is to go out at top, and their fire places round which they ſit upon turf, are in the middle of the cabbin. Their worſhip is the ſame with that of the inhabitants of *Dauria*, from whom they pretend to be deſcended, and differs in no point from that of *Tartary*, quite to the frontiers of the *Mongales*. The women here are robuſt, with broad faces like the men, and when they are on horſeback, are armed like them with bow and arrow, which they uſe with great dexterity, even when young maidens. Nor does their dreſs differ from that of the men, as appears by the plate annexed. Water is their common drink; but thoſe who have wherewithal drink tea, which they call *Kara'tza*, or *black Tea*, becauſe it tinctures the water with black inſtead of green. They boil it in mare's milk, and a little water, to which they add ſome greaſe or butter. They have alſo a kind of diſtilled liquor which they call *Kunnen* or *Arak*, extracted from mare's milk, which they heat and put into a veſſel, with a little ſour milk, which they ſtir once every hour: having continued a night in this ſtate, they put it into an earthen pot well covered up and luted with paſte, and then diſtil it over a fire as with us. This is to be twice repeated before this liquor is fit to drink, and then it becomes as ſtrong and as clear as a malt ſpirit, and fuddles as eaſily. It is to be obſerved of the cows of *Siberia*, *Dauria*, and generally ſpeaking of all *Tartary*, that they will not ſuffer themſelves to be milked while they have calves at the dug, and that they ceaſe to give milk as ſoon as they are out of their ſight. Hence it is, they are under a neceſſity of uſing mare's milk, which is much fatter and ſofter than that of the cow.

Their habitations.

Their worſhip.

Dreſs and arms of the women.

Water diſtilled from mares milk.

Why they uſe mare's milk.

They hunt in ſpring time.

Theſe heathens hunt in the ſpring time, and lay in their ſtore of veniſon after the manner of the *Burates*, drying it as they do in the ſun. Their bread they make of the dried roots of yellow lilies, which they call *Sarana*, and which they apply to ſeveral other uſes. They are very adroit at ſhooting fiſh in the water with their arrows, tho' at the diſtance of fifteen or ſixteen fathom. As their arrows are heavy, they are fit to kill nothing but pike and trout, which ſwim in clear water towards the banks, and upon the gravel, and theſe they ſplit in two as if they had done it with a cleaver, the points of their arrows being three fingers broad. 1693.

Their bread.

Their fiſhing.

Here follows an abominable cuſtom, which is in practice among this people, when they are under a neceſſity to take an oath to diſculpate themſelves from any crime they have been accuſed of; they open the vein of a dog on the left ſide, from which the perſon that would thus clear himſelf, ſucks the blood till the creature falls dead by the emptying of his blood veſſels. The Envoy ſaw an example of this at *Nerzinskoi*, with regard to two *Tunguſes*, who were there as hoſtages to anſwer for the fidelity and good behaviour of their people ſcattered up and down in *Siberia*, and who come and ſue for his Czarian Majeſty's protection: One of theſe *Tunguſes* had accuſed the other of having bewitched ſome of his companions, who were dead of his practices upon them; but the party purged himſelf by the means above, and his accuſer was puniſhed in his ſtead.

An abominable cuſtom among the Tunguſes.

This Miniſter ſtaid ſome weeks at *Nerzinskoi*, to provide himſelf with camels, horſes, and oxen, and every thing elſe neceſſary for the continuation of his journey, and departed from *Nerzinskoi* upon the *eighteenth* of *July*. Upon the *third* of *Auguſt*, he arrived at *Arganskoi*, the laſt fortreſs belonging to his Czarian Majeſty on that ſide. It ſtands upon the river of *Argun*, which riſing to the ſouth-eaſtward, falls into the *Amur*, and ſerves for a common boundary between the dominions of this Prince, and thoſe of the King of *China*.

Arrival at Argan-skoi.

CHAP.

1694. 1694.

CHAP. XXVI.

Mr. Isbrants's *return through the dominions belonging to his Czarian Majesty in* Tartary.

MR. *Isbrants*'s journey beyond *Tartary*, and his embassy to *China*, bearing no affinity with the travels of Mr. *Le Bruyn* to the *East-Indies*, by the way of *Muscovy* and *Persia*, it has not been thought advisable to follow that Minister beyond the bounds of the countries under his Czarian Majesty. But as there are many curious and important particulars in his return from *Tartary*, and which are of a piece with our design, it has been thought the publick would not take it amiss to see an account of them here.

1694. Upon the *nineteenth* of *February* 1694, he departed from *Pekin*, and upon the *twenty fifth*, arrived at *Galgan*, near the famous wall which divides the empire of *China* from *Tartary*. From thence he advanced towards the river of *Naun*, and came to the frontiers of *Tartary*, to the edge of the great desart which has been already mentioned. There he stopped for some days, to provide things necessary for continuing of his journey, having had his expences hitherto defray'd by the King of *China*; but as that is to be so no longer, as soon as an Ambassador has got into the territories of *Argun*, the border of the dominions of his Czarian Majesty; this Minister sensible of this, had taken care to furnish himself with camels and mules at *Pekin*, where they are to be purchased cheap.

Arrival on the frontiers of Tartary.

This precaution had its good effects, for he would have come short off, if he had reckoned upon the horses and camels he had left at *Nuna*, most of which had dy'd in his absence for want of forage.

Upon the *twenty second* of *February*, he entertained the *Mandarin* who had waited on him so far, by the order of the King his master, and took leave of him, and of all his train. Upon the *twenty sixth*, he entered the great and frightful desart, and in two days arrived at *Targasinia*, upon the little river of *Jalo*, where the season was so backward, there was hardly any grass in the country. There he rested himself some time, and was advised to be upon his guard, as he went through the desart, and came near the borders of the rivers of *Sadun* and of *Kallar*, for that 3000 *Mongales* lay in wait for him at the passage. He took all the necessary measures to prevent a surprisal from them, and ordered sixty men well armed, on horseback, to patroll every night about the *Caravan*; nor was he attacked, and held on his way the next morning. When he had reached the mountains of *Jalisch*, there was hardly any forage at all to be got, and the next day he went over them in the midst of an excessive cold and plenty of snow, which happen'd very bad for his horses and camels, which had nothing to feed upon but dry and withered grass. In this place he consulted with those about him, whether he should adhere to the ordinary rout, or take a sweep about to avoid the *Tartars* that waited for him at the passage. The last was the resolution taken, tho' extremely difficult to execute, and particularly on account of the cattle that were laden.

Great desart of Tartary.

In taking this track they were to go over lofty mountains, and to cross deep fens for a fortnight together. In the beginning he lost twelve camels and fifteen horses, and in proportion to them afterwards, which sunk beneath the weight of their burdens, for want of food to sustain them; for these desarts afford nothing but a withered grass, as has been observed before; and even this failed afterwards, the *Tartars* setting fire there-

Bad ways.

1694. to, ſo that he was obliged in that condition to undergo a double journey, to find a place where there was any to be had.

Moſt of the merchants who waited on him, having loſt their horſes, were conſtrained to go on foot; and as thoſe that remained were quite exhauſted and ſpent, they had been reduced to the neceſſity of leaving a good part of their goods in theſe deſarts, if they had not had the precaution to provide themſelves with a great number of camels which they led by the bridle.

In ſhort, having undergone a thouſand fatigues and hardſhips, he, with inexpreſſible difficulty, got to the river of *Sadun*, where he found the climate more temperate, and the graſs growing. Here he ſtaid two days to reſt his horſes and camels which were almoſt quite off their legs.

Arrival of a Chineſe Envoy. Here a *Chineſe* Envoy from the town of *Maſgeen*, and whom the Emperor had ſent to the *Waiwode* of *Nerzinſkoi* fell in with him, and joined him with a train of one hundred perſons, and thereby put him into a condition of withſtanding the attacks he was threatned with from the *Mongales*, having then with him a body of ſix hundred men.

Upon the *fifteenth* of *March* he came to the river of *Kailan*, which he forded in a place where the water was very low, and went and encamped in a valley a league farther, where, however, there was ſcarce any forage. Here he ſtaid that night, and at break of day perceived a great ſmoke which came from the north-weſt, and which gave him ſome pain, miſtruſting, and with reaſon good, that the *Tartars* had ſet fire to the withered graſs, to attack him by the favour of the wind and this ſmoke. And as, after God, his welfare depended upon the ſafety of his camels and horſes, he ſent them behind a hill to a place where there was graſs, and where they might be out of danger of the flames; and at the ſame time ordered an hundred men to advance towards the ſmoke with felts, wherewith they were uſed to cover the camels, to endeavour to ſtifle the fire, and ſtop it before it reached the place where the *Caravan* was. But notwithſtanding all theſe precautions, the fire hurried along by the fury of the wind, in an inſtant burnt up all the withered graſs, which was half a foot high, and did not give him time enough to ſtrike and remove off his tents, a dozen of which it reduced to aſhes, and flew like a flaſh of lightning over the *Caravan*. The flames alſo deſtroy'd ſome goods, and caught hold on fourteen perſons, tho' but one of them dy'd, who happen'd to be a *Perſian*. The Envoy in the mean time had retired to the top of a hill, where there was no graſs, and only attended by two ſervants, who covered him over with a felt. 1694.

A dreadful fire.

From hence, the flames in an inſtant flew away to the place where the *Chineſe* Envoy was retired, at ſome diſtance on the hills; but as they were ſpent before they quite reached him, he was in no great fear about the matter.

To conclude, this fire ſpreading along in a moment to the river of *Kailan*, about a league from the *Caravan*, it there went out. This fire having thus deſtroy'd all the graſs that was near the Envoy, he ſent his guide in queſt of ſome place where the *Caravan* might paſs the night, but he returned not till the next day, and informed him, there was no forage to be had in two days journey from thence, the flames having deſtroy'd it all, and that even in the places where there was any left, there was not half enough to feed ſo large a number of camels and horſes; a ſad hearing for the whole *Caravan*.

Great trouble of the Caravan. Upon this he propoſed to repaſs the river of *Kailan*, where the flames had ſtopped, and beyond which they might have a chance of meeting with graſs; but there was no daring to do it, for fear of the *Tartars* who were on that ſide, and it was thought better to be expoſed to a march of two days, tho' deſtitute of every thing, than to run the hazard of falling

1694. ling into the hands of thoſe *Barbarians.*

At break of day, the *Caravan* began to move, and, juſt as night came on, halted on the ſide of a great fen, having ſuffered great hardſhips, and loſt eighteen camels and twenty horſes in the bogs. And this was the harder upon them, as the cattle that was left, ſtaggered under the weight of the loads and harneſſes of thoſe that had been thus loſt, the merchants being unable to away with the thoughts of leaving them behind.

Danger it is in. The next day, they again croſſed ſeveral marſhy valleys and lofty hills, and at length appeared on the river of *Margeen*, where the graſs had not ſuffered. Having forded it, they marched on with great trouble and difficulty, their camels which were quite tired out, decreaſing in number as they went on, the fatigue of following the *Caravan* being too much for them to undergo; and what was ſtill a heart breaking circumſtance, their ſtore of proviſions viſibly dwindled away, and conſiſted of nothing now but a certain number of rawbon'd cattle, which had much ado to keep pace with them, and were by no means a ſtore for ſuch a number of people; and the rather as it is not the cuſtom, upon theſe occaſions, to make any great proviſion of bread and the like; becauſe the merchants want their cattle to carry their goods, and becauſe it would be too great an expence to them to buy camels to carry provender for the reſt.

All this being maturely weighed, 1694. and conſidering they had ſtill a ten or twelve days journey to *Argum*, upon the frontiers, they began to think of ſhortning their allowance, and to ſurvey their whole ſtore in general, that they might be able to make an eſtimate of what each man might be allowed.

Upon the *eighteenth* of this month, after many dangers and almoſt inſurmountable difficulties, they reached the river of *Gan* which they croſſed, the waters being at that time very low, and on the other ſide they luckily met with good graſs. The Envoy reſolved to ſtop here for three days to recover himſelf a little, after what he had gone through; and here he had ſtaid even much longer, if the merchants, the *Coſſacs*, and the guides of the *Caravan*, who began to be in want of every thing, had not repreſented to him, the deplorable ſtate they were miſerably fallen into; that they were obliged to eat the blood of the cattle they killed, which they ſaved to make a kind of liver of it to ſerve them inſtead of bread, that ſome even fed upon the ſkins of the ſame, which they freed from the hair, and cutting them into pieces broiled them for their ſubſiſtence: In ſhort that ſome there were that fed upon the entrails of the ſame, and that they muſt in the end be reduced to the frightful neceſſity of imitating the *Cafres* and the *Hottentots*, and eat raw fleſh, excrements and all.

CHAP. XXVII.

Arrival at Nerzinskoi. *Departure from that city. Arrival at* Tobol, *and afterwards at* Moſcow.

A lucky chaſe. THE Envoy underſtanding that the neighbourhood of the river of *Gan* abounded with ſtags and rein-deer, detached ſome perſons of his train, who were expert at the bow, to go in queſt of them. They had the good luck to return laden with fifty rein-deer, which this Miniſter

1694. niſter cauſed to be diſtributed among the *Caravan*, who were ready to devour them, and had ſcarce patience enough to ſtay till they were dreſſed, to ſuch a degree were they famiſhed; and indeed there is nothing ſo dreadful as hunger, nor any pleaſure comparable to that of appeaſing it, except it be that of quenching the thirſt.

They go in queſt of proviſions. However, the Miniſter ſent a Gentleman, with eight *Coſſacs*, to the Governor of *Argum* to acquaint him with their ſad condition, and to deſire that he would ſend them the proviſions they wanted. The Governor failed not to comply with this requeſt, but it required time to do it, and time was precious, for every minute ſeemed a year to people, who were on the brink to periſh with famine.

An intolerable famine. In the midſt of this, it was reſolved to leave the banks of the *Gan*, and to advance as far as they could. But at the end of three days they fell into a deeper degree of famine than ever, the rein-deer abovementioned not proving ſufficient to ſubſiſt ſuch a number for ſo long a time, in a horrid deſart where nothing was to be found. But they were now to make a virtue of neceſſity, and to bear with patience an evil which could not be removed. At length, exhauſted by toil and hunger, they came to a ſmall river which flowed from the mountains, and which abounded with trouts and pike, which in that country they ſhoot with arrows. *A lucky fiſhing.* The *Coſſacs* and the *Tunguſes*, in the Envoy's train, took a great quantity of them, which, together with ſome rein-deer, which they caught in the evening, ſerved to moderate the hunger which oppreſſed the whole *Caravan*.

The abode of a Shaman *or magician.* Thoſe they had ſent to hunt in the mountains there, met with a *Shaman* or magician who was uncle to the Envoy's guide, a *Tunguſe* by nation, who have many of theſe magicians among them. The Envoy was at midnight awaked out of his ſleep by a loud cry, which made him come out of his tent, to aſk the watch whence it came? they told him it was his guide who was diverting himſelf with the *Shaman* his uncle; which raiſed his curioſity to that pitch, he had a mind to go into his hutt, attended by one of the watch; and being at the door of it, he there diſcovered the *Shaman* and his guide deep in magic; and tho' they had almoſt finiſhed their diabolical myſtery when he arrived, he nevertheleſs took notice that the *Shaman* held an arrow, with the blunt end upon the ground, and the point at the tip of his noſe. This magician got up a minute afterwards, and bauling out with a loud voice, and jumping ſeveral times round, he at length ſunk into a ſleep. The next day, the *Coſſacs*, the Envoy had ſent out in queſt of proviſions, returned and told him this *Shaman* had met with his nephew, and had carried him off in their ſight, a thing eaſily enough to be done amidſt the ſhades of the night, and among mountains; without the help of magic. At the ſame time he had the agreeable news, that in three days time, he was to receive the relief he had requeſted from *Argum*, a piece of news which reſtored life to the *Caravan*, who was now in extreme want of all neceſſaries. 1694.

Arrival of the proviſions. Accordingly this ſuccour, by the aſſiſtance of God, arrived upon the third day, and conſiſted of 25 oxen and cows, together with bread and oatmeal. But the ſutlers who brought this ſtore, laid hold on the opportunity to fleece the *Caravan*, obliging the merchants to give them a crown for a loaf, and in proportion for other things. Nor did they think themſelves ill ſerved, conſidering the circumſtances they were in.

At length, having refreſhed themſelves a little, they continued their journey, and came to the end of the deſart where they had ſuffered ſo much, meeting with more and more paſture the farther they got from it.

Upon the *twenty ſeventh*, they, with inexpreſſible joy, reached the banks of the *Argum*, which they croſſed the next day, and upon the *thirty firſt* of *March*, happily arrived

1694. *Arrival at* Nerzinskoi.

at *Nerzinskoi*, where they returned thanks to God who had been pleaſed to deliver them out of their diſtreſſes.

There they reſted themſelves, and upon the *fifth* of *Auguſt* departed thence by land, coaſting it along the river, and upon the eighth came to *Udinskoi*, where they met with veſſels on which they embarked, and fell down with a fair wind, and by break of day were on the frontiers of *Siberia*. Upon the *twelfth* they arrived at *Jakutskoi*, whence, upon the *ſeventeenth* they departed for *Jenizeskoi*, where they arrived after having eſcaped danger of being drowned in the floods, which had come down for ſeveral days.

At Jakutskoi. *At* Jenizeskoi.

Upon the *twenty ſixth*, the Envoy continued his journey by land, and went through a wood which was almoſt 20 leagues in length, where there was plenty of game both of the fur and feather, which went off as ſoon as approached.

He afterwards came to the town of *Makofskoi*, where he met with as many veſſels as he wanted to carry him down the *Keta*, together with all his train, and upon the *twenty eighth* of *September*, arrived at the caſtle of *Ketskoi* upon the *Oby*. He happily fell down that river, and upon the *ſixteenth* of *October*, arrived at the town of *Samorofskoi-jam*, at the mouth of the *Irtis*. Here he ſtaid ſome days, waiting till he could uſe ſledges to proceed on his journey by land, and upon the *twenty ninth*, he reached *Tobol*, where he ſtaid three weeks to refreſh himſelf, and to provide himſelf with what was neceſſary for the remainder of his journey, which he heartily wiſhed to ſee an end to.

1694.

At Tobol.

Upon the *twenty fourth* of *November*, he went through the city of *Wergotur*, without any accident by the way, and upon the *firſt* of *January* 1695, he happily arrived at *Moſcow*, where he waited on the Czar, with an account of his negotiation, after a journey of near three years, during which he had undergone inexpreſſible hardſhips and difficulties.

1695. *At* Moſcow.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Siberia *in general. Many ſorts of* Samoëds. *Deſcription of* Weygat's *ſtraits, illuſtrated by the Burgo-maſter* Witſen. *The mountain of* Pojas, *&c.*

Mr. Isbrants's *declaration.*

MR. *Isbrants* who has added what follows to the account of his journey to *China*, declares that he wholly applied himſelf to the purſuit of truth; without the addition of any thing to give it an air of the marvellous, or to ſet it off with embelliſhments, as the cuſtom is with moſt travellers, who often relate great events upon a bare hear-ſay, without weighing the circumſtances, and without knowing whether they be true or falſe. For the reſt, he acknowledges he has not always followed the order of things, and that he has omitted ſeveral that it might be well worthy to mention, and even to be dilated on; for which he aſks pardon, and leave to retouch and inſiſt on them with a little more exactneſs, and more at length.

Recapitulation of his journey.

He, as we have ſeen, croſſed *Siberia* and *Dauria*, and has deſcribed the cities, towns, countries, and rivers from north to eaſt, that is, from *Weygat*'s ſtraits to the river of *Amur*, and from the weſt of the *Uffa* quite to the country of the *Mongales*, and afterwards from the weſt quite to the ſouth.

1695. *General description of Siberia.*

The frontiers of *Siberia*, ſays he, are every where provided with *Ruſſian* troops, who do not ſo much as dream of ſubduing the *Tartars* in the ſouthern parts of that country, or to make them ſubject to the Czar, becauſe that Prince could reap no manner of benefit by it. The kingdom of *Siberia*, and the country about, is of very great extent, as appears by the map at the beginning of theſe travels: concerning which, particular regard muſt be had to the degrees, nor muſt the peruſer be nice to a league more or leſs, in the diſtance of towns and rivers within the limits of this country; becauſe, ſays he, the geographers and hiſtorians that have ſpoken of this country, never croſſed it, and becauſe it has never been meaſured with any accuracy. Upon the whole, he aſſures us nothing has been wanting in him to attain this knowledge, and that, to this purpoſe, he made uſe of all the neceſſary inſtruments for the taking of obſervations, and that he afterwards ranged and fixed all the parts and places the moſt regularly he could: concluding, that he with pleaſure leaves it to others who may perform that journey after him, to reap the honour of more ample diſcoveries, thinking it enough for him that he has broke the ice, and that he was the firſt *German* that ever traverſed thoſe vaſt tracts quite to *China*, both going and coming.

He declares moreover, that he is obliged for his firſt inſtructions, towards forming a general map of this country, to Mr. *Witſen*, Burgo-maſter of *Amſterdam*, for whom he ſhall always retain, together with the whole body of the learned, a moſt extraordinary reſpect and veneration: that this Burgo-maſter was the firſt man that ever preſented *Europe* with a general map of *Siberia*, and of the countries of the *Kalmucs* and *Mogales*, and many other people, quite to the famous wall of *China*, and in ſhort, that this map was his guide when he travelled in thoſe parts, and as a foundation for the map you ſee at the head of this work.

1695.

He begins to the northward, that is, at the country of the *Samoëds* and *Wagules*, which are under the juriſdiction of *Siberia*, and under the *Waiwodes* of *Pelun* quite to the ſea. Of theſe *Samoëds* there are ſeveral ſorts, of different languages, as thoſe of *Bereſofsky* and *Puſtorſe*, who are reckoned as the ſame nation; thoſe that inhabit the ſea coaſt, to the eaſt of the *Oby*, quite to *Truchamskoy* or *Mangazeiskoy*, and thoſe who are in the neighbourhood of *Arckangel* upon the *Dwina*, one part of the year, and in the winter under hutts in the woods. Theſe laſt are the averſion of thoſe along the ſea coaſt, which they have forſaken to come into thoſe parts. *Several ſorts of Samoeds.*

As for the *Samoëds* upon the coaſt of the northern ſea, they have no more of mankind in them than the form, are almoſt quite void of underſtanding, and, upon the whole, look more like bears than men. Like wild beaſts they feed upon the carcaſſes of horſes, aſſes, dogs and cats; whales and ſeals that are driven on ſhore by the ice, and that, frequently without giving themſelves the trouble of dreſſing their carrion, ſo idle they are and lazy, tho' the country they inhabit abounds with game, fiſh and cattle.

They have, nevertheleſs, certain chiefs among them, to whom they pay certain dues, which theſe afterwards ſend to the governors of places under the dominion of his Czarian Majeſty. A perſon who had been ſome time at *Poſtoi-oſer*, informed this Miniſter of the manner how they make uſe of their ſledges drawn by rein-deer, which with an incredible pace traverſe the mountains covered with ſnow. Here beneath you have a repreſentation of a ſledge with the deer harneſſed thereto, as alſo of the *Samoëds* themſelves, who drive them, covered with the ſkins of rein-deer, the fur outwards, and the bow and quiver upon their ſhoulder. Their chiefs have the like drawn, ſome by ſix, and ſome by eight rein-deers, and have gowns of ſcarlet. The point of their arrows is made of the tooth of the narwhale, in the ſtead

Samojedian Hart ſleds.

of iron or ſteel. With regard to their perſons it may be truly ſaid they are hideous, and that there is nothing more diſguſtful upon the face of the earth. Their ſtature is ſhort and lumpiſh; their ſhoulders and face are broad, their noſe is flat, they have blubber lips hanging down, and a wide mouth, and ugly eyes. They are much weather-beaten, and have a great deal of hair, which hangs down upon their ſhoulders, ſome red, ſome fair, and moſtly black; but they have little or no beard, and a very thick ſkin: they are however very nimble and dextrous in running or driving. The rein-deer they harneſs to their ſledges, are not very unlike ſtags, their horns or branches are like theirs, with the neck of a dromadary; but what is moſt extraordinary of them, is that they are white in winter and grey in ſummer. Their food, for the moſt part, is a moſs which grows upon the ground in the woods.

For the reſt, theſe *Samoëds* are truly heathens, and morning and night worſhip the ſun and the moon by a ſmall inclination of the body, after the manner of the *Perſians*. They have alſo idols hung to trees, near their cabbins, ſome of wood, of human form, and others clothed with iron, to which they pay certain honours. Their hutts are covered with the bark of birch ſewn together. When they remove them from one place to another, as they frequently do, in winter and ſummer, they fix the poles to one another, and then cover them with the bark of trees, leaving a hole at top for the ſmoke to go out at. Their fire place is in the midſt of this hutt, and they lye naked about it in the night, both men

1695. and women, and put their children into boxes or cradles, made in like manner of the barks of trees, and full of the raſpings of wood, as ſoft as down, and cover them up with the ſkins of the rein-deer.

They marry without any regard to the proximity of blood, and buy their wives either in exchange for rein-deer, or for furs; and of wives they may have as many as they can maintain. When they divert themſelves in company, they place themſelves two and two, one before another, and making certain motions with their legs, they give themſelves great ſlaps with the hand upon the ſoles of the feet. They make a noiſe like bears, and neigh like horſes, inſtead of ſinging. They have alſo their magicians, who perform all ſorts of diabolical practices, or cheats rather: but we have ſaid enough of the *Samoëds*.

All the quadrupeds that are met with upon this coaſt, quite to *Weygats Straits* and to *Meſeem*, whether wolves, bears, foxes, rein-deer, and the like, are white as ſnow during the winter ſeaſon; and the ſame it is with ſome of the birds, as ducks, partridges, and ſome others. For the reſt, the cold is there ſo exceſſive, the crows and ſuch birds freeze as they fly, and fall down dead at your feet, a fact our author avers to have ſeen with his own eyes.

Weygat's Straits.

As for *Weygat*'s *Straits*, of which the *Engliſh*, the *Danes* and the *Dutch* have given ſeveral accounts, after ſeveral efforts to go through the frozen channel of it, which they have never been able to do but once or twice, becauſe of the impediments of the ice in thoſe ſeas, no body has ſpoken ſo amply of it, and with ſo much knowledge, as Mr. *Witſen*, a Burgo-maſter of *Amſterdam*. And indeed he ſpared no pains to inform himſelf aright on this head, having to that purpoſe conſulted with ſeveral perſons who had been upon the Spot. This appears by the fine map he has given us of theſe ſtraits, and its ſhores quite to the *Oby*, by which it appears, that ſea is by no means navigable, from theſe *Straits* 1695. quite to the icy *Cape*, though even a ſecond *Chriſtopher Columbus* ſhould undertake the voyage, ſeeing it is impoſſible to penetrate the mountains of ice that bar up the paſſage, notwithſtanding the ſtars continue to point out the courſe you are to ſteer. The divine Author of nature has ſo invironed and fortified the coaſts of *Siberia* with ice, that there is no ſhip that can poſſibly reach the river of *Jeniſia*, far from being able to double the *Icy Cape* to go down to *Jedſo* or *Japan*.

Mr. *Isbrants* had been told by ſome *Ruſſians*, who had often been through the *Straits* of *Weygate*, as far as the mouth of the river *Oby*, in certain veſſels, to take *Seals* and the *Narwhale*, that when the wind comes from the offing, that whole coaſt is ſo crowded with ice, that thoſe who happen to be there are obliged to ſhelter themſelves in little gulfs, or ſmall rivers, to avoid the danger, and there to ride, till a wind from the ſhore blows the Ice off again to ſea, which it does ſo effectually, that not the leaſt of it is to be ſeen in thoſe *Straits* for the diſtance of ſeveral leagues. That then they put out to ſea again, with all poſſible diſpatch, but take care how they quit the coaſt, till another gale from the ſea reduces them to the neceſſity of running their Noſe again into ſome gulf or place of ſafety, that their veſſel may not be cruſhed or otherwiſe deſtroyed among the ice.

He ſays alſo, that about fifty years before, certain *Ruſſians*, who live in *Siberia*, obtained leave to provide themſelves, in places ſituated on the coaſt, with the proviſions they might want, as corn, flour, and the like, and in exchange for them to tranſport the productions of *Siberia*, by *Weygate*'s *Straits*, in full liberty, in the ſame places, upon paying ſuch duties as ſhould be impoſed by his *Czarian* Majeſty. But that theſe people having abuſed this privilege, by conveying of ſeveral ſorts goods

by

1693. by other rivers in *Ruſſia*, to the great damage of the revenues of his ſaid Majeſty, it was forbidden to trade any longer in thoſe *Straits*, and ordered that the ſaid goods and merchandiſe ſhould come by *Bereſova*, the *Kamenskoi*, or the rocks of *Pojas*. This however is very difficult, and very inconvenient, becauſe in going from *Bereſova* they are obliged to cut their little barks or canoes, for they are hollowed out of the trunk of a tree, into two, and to draw them thus over the mountains for ſeveral days; and when they have reached the very northernmoſt parts of the country, they join them together again, and proceed on their voyage to *Archangel*, or to other places of *Ruſſia* ſituated upon the *Oby*.

Deſcription of the Pojas. The Envoy alſo went to the *Pojas*, which is a rock, or rather a chain of mountains of ſtone, which begins at *Petzerkai*, and extends without any diſcontinuation acroſs the country of *Wergatur*, comprehending alſo that of *Wolok*; and from thence to the ſouth on the ſide of the caſtle of *Utka*, quite to the country of the *Uffian Tartars*, from whence iſſues the river of the name of *Uffi*, and to the eaſt of thoſe of *Nitra* and of *Tuna*; the laſt of which falls into the *Kama* to the north-weſt. Theſe mountains then ſtretch away ſouthward towards the frontiers of the *Calmucs*, and the 1693. great river of *Jaika*, which abounds in fiſh, comes out of it to the weſtward, and goes and diſcharges itſelf into the *Caſpian*: The *Tobol* alſo iſſues out of it to the northward. They go on afterwards to the eaſtward, along the country of the *Calmucs* and the frontiers of *Siberia*, on one ſide of the two lakes of *Saiſan* and *Kalkulan*, from the firſt of which iſſues the *Oby*, and from the ſecond the *Irtis*. From this great lake of *Kalculan*, the *Poja* ſtretches away again to the ſouthward, from whence iſſues the *Jeniſia*, whoſe mouth is in the icy ſea of *Tartary*.

Theſe mountains then form an elbow, and afterwards divide into north-eaſt and ſouth; to the northward along the river of *Jeniſia*, and to the ſouthward on one ſide of the lake of *Kofogol*, from whence iſſues the *Silinga*, which diſembogues itſelf into that of *Baikal*. From thence this *Pojas* extends ſtill farther to the ſandy deſart of the country of the *Mongales*, where having penetrated a great way, it again divides and ſtretches on to the ſouthward, quite to the great wall of *China*, and then eaſtward quite to the Sea, as may be ſeen in the map of the travels of this Miniſter.

CHAP. XXIX.

Tartars *of* Uffi *and* Baſkir. *Other hoards. The towns of* Tora *and of* Tomſkoi, *the country round about*, &c. *The* Tunguſes *and the* Burates, *&c. Deſcription of* Dauria, *of the* Koreiſi, *and of other nations*; *of the* Icy Cape; *of the town of* Jakutskoi, *and the like.*

THE inhabitants of the country which extends between *Pelin* and *Wergotur* along the river *Zuſawaya*, quite to the country of *Uffi*, are almoſt all *Heathens*. The

The river of Kungur. river of *Kungur*, in the neighbourhood of which are the *Tartars* of *Uffi*, has its ſource in the country of *Uffi*, between the *Suſawaya* and *Uffa*, and goes on till it throws itſelf into the *Kama*, upon which is the town of *Kungur*, where his

1695. *Czarian* Majeſty has a garriſon. Theſe *Tartars* of *Uffi* and thoſe of *Baskir*, are in the country about the town of *Oſſa*, ſcattered up and down in Hamlets and villages, built after the *Ruſſian* manner, to the weſtward, quite to the *Kama*, and along the *Wolga*, and ſtretches almoſt quite to the cities of *Saratof* and *Sarapul*, upon the laſt of theſe rivers, where the *Czar* alſo keeps garriſons to bridle the *Tartars*, and receive his duties which are paid in furs and honey. The governors of theſe places, however, are obliged to be gentle with the inhabitants of theſe parts, for fear they ſhould revolt and withdraw themſelves from the obedience they owe that Prince.

Tartars of Uffi and of Baſkir.

Other Tartars.

There are alſo other hoards of the ſame *Tartars* to the ſouth-weſt, and in the kingdom of *Aſtracan*, who are free from ſubjection, and join with the *Calmucs* near them to ſcour the country of *Siberia*. They nevertheleſs till the ground, and ſow barley, oats and other grain, which they carry home, after they have reaped and threſhed it in the field. They have among them alſo the fineſt honey in the world, and in very great abundance. They commonly dreſs in a *Ruſſian* cloth, of a light grey, after the manner of the peaſants of *Muſcovy*. Their women are commonly in their ſhifts from the girdle upwards, except it be very cold indeed, and their ſhifts are ſtriped and worked with ſilk of all ſorts of colours. As for the reſt, they wear petticoats after the *German* faſhion, and Slippers which cover only the end of the foot tied about the ankle. Their head-dreſs conſiſts of a ribbon, four fingers broad, tied behind, and wrought like their ſhift with ſilk of various colours, and adorned with coral and glaſs beads, which hang about their eyes. Some of them wear them higher upon the forehead. When they go abroad they cover this dreſs of their head with a ſquare handkerchief, wrought with ſilk, and done round with fringe.

Their dreſs.

Theſe *Tartars* of *Uffi* and *Baskir*, 1695. are brave and good horſemen, and have no other arms than bows and arrows, which they uſe with great dexterity. They are robuſt; they are tall of ſtature, with broad ſhoulders and great beards, which they ſuffer to grow. Their eyebrows are ſo thick they cover their eyes, and almoſt all the forehead. They have a particular language of their own, and underſtand that of the *Tartars* of *Aſtracan*. As for their religion, they are almoſt all *Heathens*, but ſome of them are *Mahometans*, which is what they have had from the *Crim Tartars*, with whom they have a very good underſtanding. The *Calmucs* are between the ſprings of the *Tobol* and the *Oby*, quite to the lake of *Jamuſowa*, which is all full of a rock ſalt. Hither from the town of *Tobol* come yearly twenty or twenty-five *Docheniques*, or *Ruſſian* barks, up the *Irtis*, with a guard of 2500 men; and as this lake is at ſome diſtance from this river, they travel the reſt of the way by land; they cut this ſalt as it were ice upon the borders of the lake, and then carry it off to their veſſels, notwithſtanding all the oppoſition of the *Calmucs*, with whom they, upon theſe occaſions, have frequently very ſmart ſkirmiſhes.

They are good ſoldiers.

Lake full of ſalt.

As you go down the *Irtis*, beneath this lake, upon the little river *Tor*, you meet with the town of *Tora*, the laſt frontier place belonging to the *Czar*, bordering upon the dominions of a *Calmuc* Prince called *Buſtu-chan*. The inhabitants of this country are called *Barabinſy*, and it extends from the city of *Tora*, to the eaſtward, quite to the *Oby*, over-againſt the river of *Tom*, and the city of *Tomskoi*. They croſs the country of *Barnabu*, both winter and ſummer, and eſpecially in winter, becauſe in that ſeaſon, the *Oby* is not navigable by *Surgut* and *Narum*, ſo that travellers are obliged to go by *Tomskoy* and *Jenuſeskoi* to go into *Siberia*. Theſe *Barabinſy*, who are a kind of *Calmucs*, pay a tribute to

Deſcription of Tora *and the country about.*

1695. his *Czarian* Majeſty, and to the Prince *Buſtu-chan*. They have three Chiefs or *Taiſhi*, who receive the duties impoſed on them, and account with the Czar for the part that is due to him; the firſt at the town of *Tora*, the ſecond at the caſtle of *Teluwa*, and the third at the caſtle of *Kulenba*, the whole in furs. They are a miſchievous and warlike people, who live in cabbins in the woods, like the *Tartars* of *Siberia*. They make no uſe of ſtoves, but of chimneys or tubes, or pipes rather, by which they let out the ſmoke, and which they ſtop when the wood is burnt to a coal, to keep in the heat, and open them again when it is over.

Their habitations. They live in a kind of villages, under ſlight huts in ſummer, and in firm wooden cabbins in winter. They have tillage in uſe with them, and they ſow barley, oats, *French* wheat, and the like, but they have no rye; though they do not refuſe the bread made of it when offered to them; indeed they only chew it with ſeeming diſguſt, and as it were againſt the ſtomach, and throw it away, or *Their bread.* ſpit it out for the moſt part. Inſtead of bread, they take clean barley, which they parch in a hot iron pot, till it become as hard as a ſtone, and then eat it the ſame day. They make alſo flour of *Sarana* or roots of yellow lilies, of which they make a *Their drink.* broth; and they drink a diſtilled liquor made of mares milk, which they call *Kumis*; and *Karaza*, which is a black kind of tea, which the *Bolgares* bring them.

Their arms. They have no other arms than bows and arrows, no more than the reſt of the *Tartars*. Their cattle conſiſts of horſes, camels, cows, and ſheep, but they have no hogs. In this country alſo they have all ſorts *Furs.* of furs, that is, ſables, ſquirrel-ſkins, ermins, foxes, and the like. It extends from *Tora* quite to the *Oby*, and here you meet with no mountains; but it is full of cedars, birch, alders, and woods, divided by ſtreams, whoſe water is clear as chryſtal. Theſe people, as well men as women, dreſs after the manner of the *Calmucs*, and they are allowed to have as many wives as they can afford to maintain. When they go out to hunt in the woods, they carry with them their *Saitan*, which is *Their idol.* a wooden image coarſely cut out with a knife only, and covered with ſtuff of various colours, after the faſhion of the women of *Ruſſia*. This *Saitan* is ſhut up in a box, which they carry upon a particular ſledge, and offer to it the firſt fruits of their chaſe without diſtinction.

When it happens that they have had good luck, they, upon their return, place this idol in the moſt conſpicuous part of their cabbin, in its box, and cover it over with the fineſt furs, in acknowledgment of the good it has procured them, and there leave them to rot, being perſuaded they ſhould be guilty of a ſacrilege in taking them away, or applying them to any other purpoſe. *Preſent to their Saitan.*

Beyond the *Oby*, you come to *Tomskoi*, a frontier place belonging to his Czarian Majeſty: it is a fine and a large city, well fortified, and provided with a good garriſon of *Ruſſians* and *Coſſacks*, to withſtand the incurſions and ravages of the *Siberian Tartars*. In the ſuburbs alſo, beyond the river, there are a great number of *Buchar Tartars* who pay homage and tribute to this Prince. This city ſtands upon the river of *Tom*, which riſes in the country of the *Calmucs*. Here they drive a great trade with *China*, which is chiefly managed by the ſubjects of the Chan of *Buſuchtu*, and by the *Buchars*, among which we may reckon ſome *Ruſſian* merchants. They perform the journey to *China* in three months, and come back again in the ſame time, but with inexpreſſible difficulty, becauſe in ſome places it is even neceſſary to load the camels with wood and water. You muſt traverſe the country of the *Calmucs*, and go to *Kokoton*, a city belonging to *China* without the wall. But it is impoſſible for the *Ruſſians* and other ſtrange nations to perform this journey, becauſe the country ſwarms with robbers, *Tomskoi.* *Trade with China.*

1695. bers, who plunder all ſorts of travellers, except they be well attended or guarded.

A deſart country. As you go down the river from *Tomskoi*, the country is abſolutely a deſart, quite to the town of *Jeniſeſkoi*, flat and full of copſes. The ſame it is between the two rivers of *Kia* and *Zulim*, quite to the towns of *Kuſneskoi* and *Kraſnajar*, where the country is only inhabited upon the borders, adjoining to thoſe of *Country of the* Kirgiſes. the *Kirgiſes*, under the dominion of the Khan of *Buſuchtu*. The city of *Kraſnajar* is a fortreſs, with a good garriſon of *Coſſacks* ſubject to his Czarian Majeſty, to withſtand the ravages and incurſions of the *Kirgiſes*. And accordingly in the great market-place, before the Governor's palace, there are always twenty troopers well armed, and whoſe horſes are ſaddled day and night. For tho' the *Kirgiſes* be at peace with the *Siberians*, there is no great ſtreſs or dependance upon this pacification, becauſe they frequently carry off by ſurpriſe, both the inhabitants and horſes, in the neighbourhood of this town, and in the villages round about. But the *Coſſacks* often make them pay with exorbitant intereſt for the damages they are guilty of in this fraudulent manner.

How far they extend. Theſe *Kirgiſes* extend to the ſouth-eaſtward quite to the country of the *Mongales*, a warlike and robuſt nation, tall of ſtature, broad of face, and very much like the *Calmucs*.

Their arms. They are armed with bow and arrow, and never go out upon any expedition without fine coats of mail, and good launces, whoſe points they trail almoſt upon the ground when they are on horſeback. They live for the moſt part in the mountains, where they are out of all danger of being

Their language. taken at unawares. Their language differs but little from that of the *Calmucs*, and they ſpeak that alſo of the *Tartars* of *Crim*, which the *Turks* underſtand.

Tunguſes *and* Burates. From *Kraſnajar*, as you go down the *Jeniſia*, quite to *Jeniſeskoi*, the country is inhabited by *Tunguſes* and *Burates*. The caſtle of *Ilinskoi* is upon the frontiers of the *Mongales*, againſt the *Pojas*, formerly mentioned, between *Jeniſeskoi* and the town of *Selinginskoi*. This place, thus upon the frontiers of the *Mongales*, is not large, but it is furniſhed with a good garriſon, conſiſting almoſt all of horſe, to defend the weſtern part of the country of the *Mongales*, from the *Mirotty*, *Mily*, and *Burates*, *Tartars* who are dependant thereon. In the neighbourhood of this town, there grows a kind of ſandal-wood, which is of an extraordinary degree of hardneſs. The *Burates* who are under the protection of his Czarian Majeſty, lived formerly in the country about *Selinginskoi*, but ever ſince they have been guilty of joining with the *Mongales*, at the inſtigation of the *Chineſe*, they have been tranſplanted into the country about the lake of *Baikal*, in the mountains, and there they pay their tribute to this Prince, which conſiſts of furs.

There is a mountain which extends from this town to the northward, quite to the lake of *Baikal*, where are alſo fine ſables and other furs. The country of the *Mongales* contains the whole extent between the lake of *Kologol* to the eaſtward, quite to the great deſart; from thence, quite to the lake of *Mongale*, called *Dway*, and to the country of *Argum*, and afterwards to the northweſtward quite to the rivers of *Onon* and *Sikoi*. They live under three chiefs, who are brethren, the firſt of which is called *Kuttugt*, and is alſo the high-prieſt of his nation: The ſecond is called *Aziroi-Sain-Chan*, and has a perfect good underſtanding with the firſt; but the third, called *Elict*, whoſe frontiers butt upon the territories of the weſtern *Tartars*, is guilty of continual depredations and ravages, robs and plunders quite to the great *Chineſe* wall, without even ſparing the preſents which the Emperor of *China* yearly ſends to the *Tartars* round about, to retain them in their fidelity towards him. The two others have thrown themſelves under the protection of this Prince, becauſe they ſtand in fear of

Chiefs of the Mongales.

1695. the *Calmucs*, and particularly of the Prince *Buſuchtu-Chan*, who did them a deal of miſchief in the years 1688 and 1689.

Caſtle of Argum. But we muſt now return to the frontiers belonging to his Czarian Majeſty, and firſt to the caſtle of *Argum*, which ſtands to the weſt of the river of that name. It is defended by a *Ruſſian* garriſon, and the people round about are *Konni Tunguſes*, and tributaries to his ſaid Majeſty. They are a warlike people, and in this place are able to bring four thouſand men into the field, well mounted, and armed with bow and arrow. Nor dare the *Mongales* make any attempts upon them, but in the night and by ſtealth, to carry off their horſes and cattle. In the winter they dreſs themſelves in ſkins, or rather in the fleeces of ſheep, and wear boots after the manner of the *Chineſe*. Their caps have a broad rim or border of fur, which they lift up and down according to the weather; they have a girdle armed with iron, four fingers in breadth, with an arrow that ſerves them for a flute. They go with the head bare and ſhaved in the ſummer, with only one lock behind as the cuſtom is with the *Chineſe*, and wear a dreſs of blue *Chineſe* cloth, quilted with cotton, but no ſhirt. To conclude, they have naturally little or no beard, faces rather broad than not, and are not very unlike the *Calmucs*.

Tunguſes *and their ſtrength.*

Their habit.

Their chaſe. When their ſtore of proviſions begins to grow ſhort, they go in hoards to hunt the ſtag and the rein-deer, which they drive together and ſurround, and ſhoot a great number, which they divide among them, for it very ſeldom happens that they miſs their aim. Their women dreſs much as the men do, and the only difference to be perceived is, that they have two treſſes of hair which fall upon their breaſt on each ſide. Polygamy is lawful among them, provided they take no more wives than they can keep; and they buy them without troubling their heads whether they have been poſſeſſed by others or not. They believe there is a God in Heaven, and yet they pay him no divine honours, nor addreſs any prayers to him. When they want to conſult their *Saitan* or Magician to know whether they ſhall have ſucceſs in a hunting match, or in any intended depredation, they go to him in the night beating upon a drum: And when they would recreate themſelves, they make a kind of arrack of mares milk, which they leave to turn, and then diſtil at two or three repetitions, between two earthen pots cloſely ſtopt up, with a little wooden-pipe, and this makes a good ſpirit, with which both men and women fuddle till they have loſt their ſenſes. Their wives and their daughters mount a horſe as well as the men, and like them appear armed with bow and arrow. Inſtead of bread they eat the roots of yellow lilies dry'd, and make a kind of broth of them when reduced to a meal or flour; but they profeſs nothing of tillage or culture. There, as well as elſewhere, they value thoſe who are wealthy, who carry on a conſiderable trade with the *Targaſi* and the *Xixi*, who are under the dominion of *China*. This trade conſiſts chiefly in an exchange of furs for blue cotton cloth, other ſorts of cloths and tobacco. They pretend to be deſcended of theſe *Targaſi* or the *Aorſi*, with whom they contract alliances, and live with as friends.

Their religion.

Their diverſions.

Their women and maids.

Their bread.

Half a day's journey from the caſtle of *Argum*, in the mountains, you meet with a ſilver mine fallen in, and ſtill ſee ſeveral melting-places which the people of *Nieuchen* and *Dauria* have formerly made uſe of. From hence quite to *Nerſinskoi* the capital of *Dauria*, it is a ten days journey by land upon camels. It is a fine country divided into parcels by ſmall rivers, where you meet with the fineſt plants, and the moſt beautiful flowers in the world; in the mountains and on the hills, and in the vales, you have graſs three foot high: But the country here lies uncultivated, being in the poſſeſſion of *Tartars*, who are under the dominion of his Czarian Majeſty.

Deſcription of Dauriæ.

Having

1695. Having travelled through the country of *Argum*, and croſſed the great river of *Amur*, towards that of *Gorbiſa*, which is reckoned the common boundary of the dominions of his Czarian Majeſty, and thoſe of the Emperor of *China*, whoſe juriſdiction extends eaſtward from that river quite to the ſea, and that of the Czar weſtward and northward, to the eaſtward of the *Gorbiſa* we met with the rivers of *Tugur* and *Uda*, which are to the northward of the *Amur*, and proceed till they diſcharge themſelves into the *Chineſe* ocean, or the ſea of *Amur*. They take a great many ſables between theſe two rivers, whoſe borders are inhabited by *Tunguſes*, *Alemuri*, and *Koreiſi*. It is likely theſe laſt are originally from *Coela*, which is not very far off, and whither it is poſſible to go in a few days with a fair wind. It is ſaid they came firſt and ſettled upon the banks of the *Amur*, and that in proceſs of time they extended their limits. Thoſe who live upon the ſea-coaſt, ſubſiſt by fiſhing, and thoſe who are farther up in the country, by hunting, with which they inrich themſelves, becauſe here they have the fineſt furs in the whole world. This country is under the governor of *Jakutskoi*, who takes care to keep a good guard in the woods, to prevent the *Chineſe* from ſharing the ſables that are there to be met with.

Frontiers of Siberia *and* China.

Deſcription of the Koreiſi.

Iſlanders of theſe parts.

The inhabitants of the neighbouring iſlands come every year to the banks of theſe two rivers. They are people of a good mein and aſpect, cloathed in rich furs, under which they wear a ſilk veſt after the *Perſian* mode; large of ſtature, and with majeſtic beards. They come to buy women and maidens of the *Siberian Tartars*; for they love the ſex, and in exchange for them, they give ſables and black fox-ſkins, which according to their account, abound in their iſlands. They even endeavour to perſuade the *Tunguſes* of *Siberia* to come and trade among them, and give out that the country of *Jakutskoi* was formerly theirs, and in truth their language in ſome degree makes good this their pretenſion.

Their origin.

1695.

The river of *Ogota* is to the northward of theſe two rivers, and between them and the river of *Uda* are many whales upon the coaſt, and even quite to the frozen cape, where there is alſo narwhale and ſeals in abundance. The town of *Kamſatka*, and all the coaſt beyond, is inhabited by the *Xuxi* and *Koeliki*, whoſe language differs from that of the reſt. Thoſe who live upon the coaſt are cloathed in ſeal-ſkins, and live in holes under ground; but thoſe who live farther up in the country are rich, and feed upon veniſon and raw fiſh, and make uſe of their own water to waſh themſelves with. For the reſt, theſe are by no means a people to be truſted, and have no ſenſe either of law or honeſty. Their only arms are ſlings, which they uſe with ſurpriſing power and dexterity. They have ſnow upon the ground for ſeven months of the year, and yet it falls only at the beginning of winter, nor is it there very deep. There is a gulf near *Kamſatka*, where they take a prodigious quantity of the *narwhale* and other creatures of the ſea.

Other nations.

As for the frozen cape, the farther it advances into the ſea, the more it is cut and formed into iſlands, and divided. There is a paſſage a little above *Kamſatka*, where the *narwhale* fiſhers find their labour turn to a good account. One part of the inhabitants of *Anadieskoi*, and of *Sabatſia*, are *Xuxi* and *Koeliki*; and the river of *Salaſia* produces good herring, ſturgeon, *Sterbeth* and *Nebna*. As you advance up into the country, you meet with ſeveral houſes along the *Simaniko*, inhabited by *Coſſacks*, in ſubordination to his Czarian Majeſty, and who there collect the duties the *Tartars* of thoſe parts pay to that Prince: And as it is that part of all *Siberia* where they take the moſt ſables and *Luxes* along the rivers, ſo it is the moſt heavily laden with duties. The climate of the frozen cape, which the *Muſcovites* call *Sweetoinos* or *Holy Cape*, is exceſſive-

Deſcription of the frozen cape.

exceſſive cold.

1695. exceſſively cold, and it there freezes with ſuch violence, that the iſles of ice, driven by the winds, form high mountains there, which look like firm land. The wind however ſhatters them ſometimes, and makes them fall to pieces, which joining with others that are floating upon the ſea, they form new mountains again. It ſometimes happens, that for two or three years together, this ſea is frozen over, a remarkable inſtance of which was known from the year 1694, to the year 1697.

Mountains of ice.

The Lena *and the town of* Jakutſkoi.

The great river of *Lena* riſes to the ſouthweſtward near the lake of *Baikal*, where *Siberia* is parted from *Dauria*. Upon this river you have the town of *Jakutskoi*, from whence in ſummer there are veſſels which go for the ſea-coaſt and the openings of the cape of *Sabatſia*, to *Anadieskoi*, and to *Kamſatka*, to get the *narwhale*, and whale-oil. The *Tartars* of thoſe parts do for this purpoſe make uſe of ſmall leathern barks with wonderful agility. The inhabitants in the neighbourhood of *Jakutskoi*, and the river of *Amur*, are called *Jakutes*, and dreſs in a manner peculiar to themſelves. Their coats are almoſt like thoſe of the *German* faſhion, and of furs of all ſorts of colours ſewed together, with a white border four fingers broad of hind-ſkin, and are open behind, and at the ſides, but they wear no ſhirts. They wear long hair, and believe there is a God in heaven, who bleſſes them with life, food, wives and children. Beſides this, they once a year celebrate a great feſtival, when they offer him *Kunis* and arack. They even abſtain from drink during the time it laſts, and light up great fires, which they continually ſprinkle on the eaſt-ſide with theſe liquors, in which conſiſts their whole offering or ſacrifice. When one of them happens to dye, they bury his neareſt relation with him; a cuſtom not unlike that of ſome *Indians*, whoſe wives attend their huſbands on the fatal pile, and burn with them, that they may not be ſeparated from them in the next world.

Leather barks.

Their belief.

Funerals.

Their language partakes of that ſpoken by the *Mohammedan Tartars*, who live in the territories of *Tobol*, and are originally of the country of *Bolgar*. Polygamy is alſo lawful among them. They are chiefly drawn by ſtags, which they even ride upon, and travel with them a great deal of ground in a little time. They are a brave people, not deſtitute of genius, and fond of truth. And yet when it happens that the Governor of *Jakutskoi*, in whoſe juriſdiction they are, does not keep a ſtrict hand over them, they commit all ſorts of diſorders, and are continually ſcouring the country about; but when he keeps a heavy hand over them, they are obedient and peaceable, and are guilty of nothing amiſs. On the contrary, they love him, and would be ſorry to loſe him. They pretend to be deſcended of the *Mongales* and the *Kalmucs*, and to have been tranſplanted to the northward by the *Ruſſians*. The ſcurvy is a very common diſeaſe among them; but they eaſily cure themſelves of it, by eating of raw fiſh and *Deugti*, which is a kind of tar.

1695. *Their language.* *Their temper.*

The *Jukogates* are another ſort of heathens who live in that country, and have a cuſtom very peculiar with them, with regard to their relations when they dye; they take off all the fleſh, and drying the bones of the ſkeleton, they adorn it with coral and glaſs beads of all ſorts of colours. They then carry it in proceſſion about their cabbins, and pay it the very ſame honours they pay to their idols. The banks of the *Lena* abound with teeth of the *Mammut*, and other bones of that creature, which come out of the mountains and frozen grounds along the ſides of that river, which are often torn away by ice. Many fine rivers from the ſouthward come and fall into this. The chief are the *Wittim*, the *Olekina*, and the *Maja*, in the neighbourhood of which they have fine black ſables, and other furs in abundance, and eſpecially the grey ſort, which, in winter, they buy of the *Tartars*, after the rate of

Cuſtom of the Jukogates, *with regard to their dead.*

The Lena.

1695. a thouſand for three or four rubles. The country watered by the *Maja* produces alſo all ſorts of grain, as well as the country towards the ſource of the *Lena*, and particularly that of *Wergolenskolſo* and of *Kirenga*, which are very fertile, and whence the country of *Jakutskoi* ſupplies itſelf with neceſſaries for its ſupport: And indeed, they do not give here above ten pence or twelve pence for an hundred weight of rye: Cattle is as cheap in proportion, but then money is a great rarity there. 1695.

The ſea coaſt between the *Lena* and the *Jeniſia*, is unnavigable quite to the river of *Taraida*, becauſe it is always full of ice; but the country between the *Taraida* and *Jeniſia* is inhabited by the *Samoëds* and heathen *Tartar Tunguſes*, concerning whoſe manner of living and religion, we have declared ourſelves already. As for the banks of the *Jeniſia* which riſes to the ſouthward of *Tartary*, in the country of the *Kalmucs* and *Kirgiſes*, they are almoſt all occupied by *Ruſſians*. Three fine rivers come here to diſcharge themſelves, namely, the *Wergnaja Tunguska*, the *Podkamenna Tunguska*, and the *Niſnaja Tunguska*. The banks of theſe rivers are inhabited by a ſort of wild *Tunguſes*, not very different from the *Samoëds*, except that they are larger of ſtature, and more robuſt: They are a turbulent people, and love to be at war with their neighbours. When theſe *Tartars* go out to hunt the elk with bow and arrow in hand, the only weapons they make uſe of, and have ſhot one, they follow him by the track, ſometimes eight or ten days together, with their wives and children; and as upon theſe occaſions they never burthen themſelves with any ſort of proviſion, depending wholly upon their game, they wear a girth, or kind of bodice, which they take in an inch or two every day, according as they find themſelves preſs'd by hunger. At length, when they have laid hold on the elk they had been purſuing, they cut his throat, and ſpreading a light tent, they never ſtir a ſtep from the place till they have eaten him up to the bone. Upon theſe occaſions it happens ſometimes that they take furs, which they ſell in places where there are *Ruſſians*. This country abounds in white and brown foxes, and ſquirrels, but cannot boaſt of any great number of ſables. The towns of *Tangviskoi* and *Mungaſeja* are not far from the *Jeniſia*. They there drive a great trade by land with all ſorts of furs, *narwhale* and *mammuts* teeth. They even, from theſe two towns, ſend out ſeveral veſſels to the mouth of the river, and upon the ſea coaſts to fiſh for *narwhale*, and ſeal, whence they reap conſiderable advantage. 1695.

The Jeniſia.

Hunting the elk.

Tangviskoi *and* Mungaſeja.

CHAP. XXX.

A continuation of the travels of Mr. Le Bruyn. *His departure from* Aſtracan. *The courſe of the* Wolga *continued. Deſcription of the* Caſpian *ſea. Situation of* Derbent. *Arrival in* Perſia.

1703. UPON the *twelfth* of *July* we embarked at *Aſtracan* to continue our way, and went to dine at the diſtance of three werſts from the town, at a place where the *Armenian* merchants had prepared a dinner for us, and where we diverted ourſelves for an hour, at the ſound of ſeveral inſtruments; after which we took leave of our friends. As we went down, we ſaw a great number of *Tartar* tents, which ſtretched up a good 1703.

Departure from Aſtracan.

1703. a good way into the country. At night we went to lye on ſhore under the guard of two ſoldiers, who had been granted to me. I there ſlept without thinking of my net to ſcreen me from the flies, imagining I as yet ſtood in no need of it; but I was ſoon diſturbed out of my ſleep by the annoyance of theſe inſects, who would allow me no reſt. At day break we continued our courſe, the ſhore level and full of trees. About ſeven of the clock we ſaw the monaſtery of St. *John*, on our ſtarboard ſide, and a little farther, an iſland in the river, and ſome great birds.

A wear or fiſhery. At eleven of the clock we paſſed by a wear, or place contrived to take fiſh, which looked very much like an iſland, oppoſite to which there was a *Corp de guard*, full of ſoldiers, who are there to keep an eye on the ſhipping that come up the river. This wear was farmed by certain inhabitants of *Nieſna*, who there ſalted the fiſh they caught, to ſend it home, and had a great veſſel ready there for that purpoſe. The river runs ſomewhat narrow in ſome places hereabouts, becauſe of the iſlands, around which it divides itſelf into ſeveral branches. A league from hence we came to another wear, ſurrounded about with reeds, and afterwards to another *Corp-de-guard*, upon an iſland where there are four ſmall hills, about 60 wreſts from *Aſtracan*. The river is here dammed or barricadoed up, with an opening like a ſluice to let ſhipping paſs and repaſs. About two of the clock we ſteered away to the ſouthward, having ſteered eaſtward hitherto. At ſix in the evening we were 4 wersts from the *Caſpian* ſea, which is 80 or 90 wersts, that is, 17 *German* leagues from *Aſtracan*. I there diſcharged my veſſel and my ſoldiers, to whom I delivered a letter from the Governor.

Troubleſome flies. We that night, for the firſt time, lay in our ſhip, but I forgot not to cover my ſelf with my net, without which the flies would have prevented me from ſleeping a wink, as has already been obſerved. There have been even people that have died of the bite of theſe flies. A hound I had was ſo tormented by them, that he threw himſelf into the river, and we had much ado to get him again; after which I was obliged to take him under my net, where he ſlept quietly. 1703.

Upon the *fourteenth*, in the morning we held on our courſe by the help of our oars, the river being here narrow, and the ſides full of reeds. We met with our lighter at a werſt from the *Caſpian* ſea, where we ſtopped. The pilot, however, went on before us to ſound upon the banks, where he found no more than 5 palms of water; but as the wind was ſoutherly, and blew up the river, it was known the water would riſe very ſoon. He went to the ſame place again at five of the clock, and found it had accordingly riſen 2 palms, ſo that our veſſel drawing but little, we hoped we might be able to go over the ſands in two or three hours time. In expectation of this, we threw our nets into the water, and caught a quantity of perch and ſome lobſters. I went afterwards on ſhore with a view to meet with ſome game, in a walk towards the ſea, but I was ſoon obliged to return back to our veſſels, becauſe of the reeds which choaked up the way, beſides that it was marſhy. However, I there met with butterflies of extraordinary beauty, being red without, and white mottled within. At nine at night they landed the lighteſt of the baggage belonging to the paſſengers, and every body went on ſhore except two or three that ſtaid on board of the lighter. When we got to the mouth of the river, we found it very ſtrait and narrow, the land running into it on each ſide in ſeveral places; beſides that there are ſeveral banks of ſand at the entrance into the ſea, which are diſtinguiſhed by branches of trees, inſtead of other ſea-marks. At night we were obliged to come to, till the break of day on the *fifteenth*, when we got up our anchor to go over the ſands, upon which we ſtruck; but we ſoon got on float again by unlading ſome of our

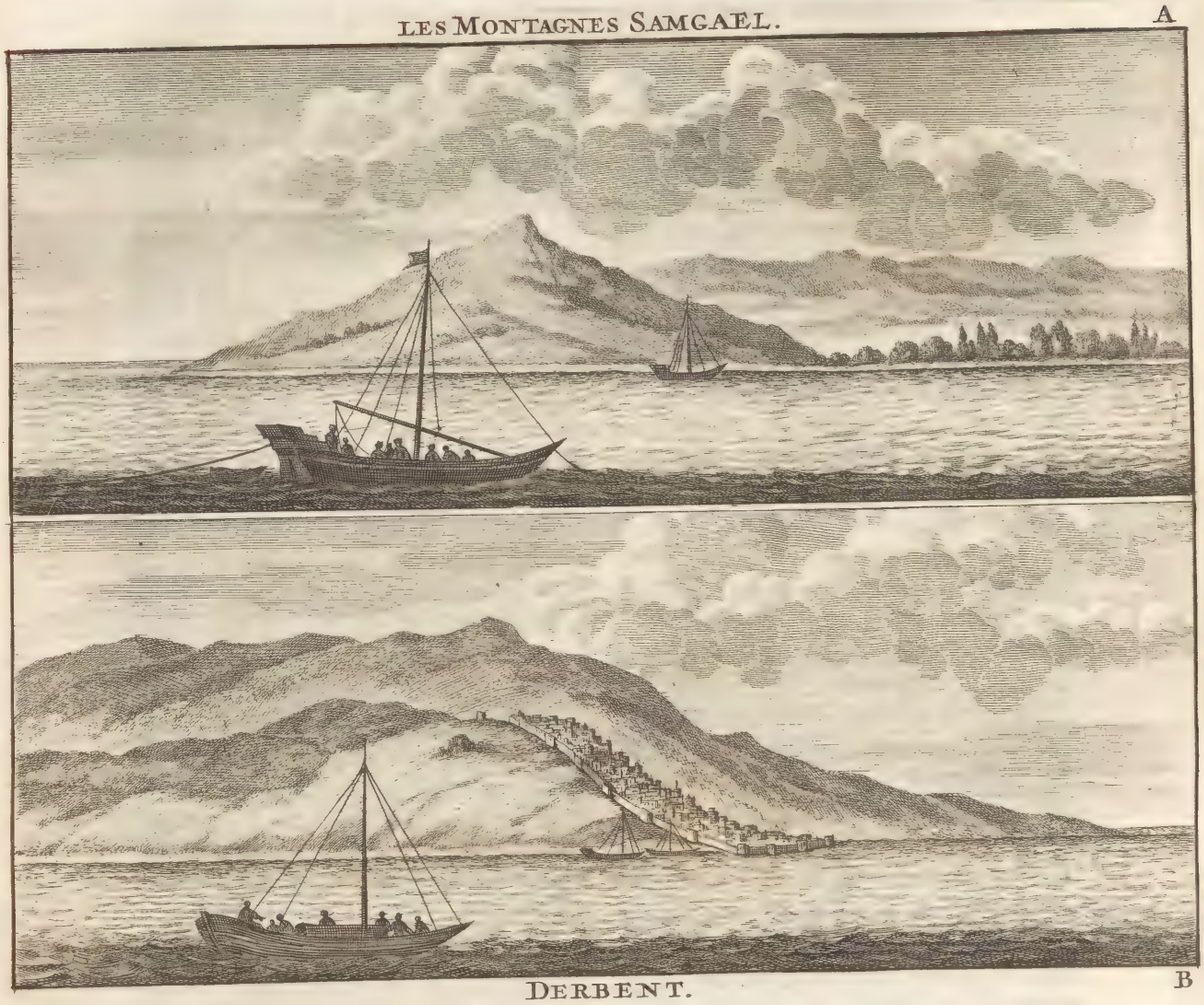
1703. bales into the lighter. We ſtruck upon them however a ſecond time, and were obliged to make uſe of our lighter or tender, to carry the goods and all the people on ſhore. As we had a very fair wind at north, we were ſoon at ſea, ſurrounded by land on all ſides, with certain mountains to the ſtarboard of us. Upon the *ſixteenth*, in the morning, the tender came up with our goods and our paſſengers; tho' we had a bank of ſand to go over, and a large iſland on the larboard-ſide, between us and the main ſea. Having coaſted along this iſland, we came up with this ſame ſand, upon which again we had the misfortune to ſtrike, but we ſoon got on float again. Having got into the depth of a fathom and half, we took out goods and paſſengers out of the tender, and ſent her back again to *Aſtracan*, with a letter I wrote to the governor.

Red mountains. About noon, we ſaw on one hand of us the four mountains which the *Ruſſians* call *Kraſna-ſattier-boegre*, or *the four red Mountains*, whoſe fartheſt point is 100 werſts from *Aſtracan*. We were ſoon out of ſight of this land, and the wind being ſhifted into the ſouthern board, we hauled away ſouth-weſt, with very fair weather; but we were ſoon after obliged to drop anchor in a fathom and half of water, becauſe the wind was come about eaſterly. Upon the *ſeventeenth*, in the morning, we got under way again with the wind at north, and ſtood away to the ſouthward. There fell ſome rain, after which, the ſun having diſpelled the clouds, there ſprung up a freſh gale which laſted till night, and raiſed a ſwell in the ſea: Our patron or pilot being tired out, and deſirous to repoſe himſelf a little, gave the helm to another, who would ſoon have carried us back again to *Aſtracan*, if it had not been for me, for I always carried my own compaſs about with me both by ſea and land. The wind ſhifted about in the night, and fell all at once, ſo that we were obliged to let go an anchor in 8 fathom. Upon the *eighteenth* in the morning we got under ſail again; it was rainy weather, and a calm came on, but a breeze ſpringing up ſoon afterwards to the north-weſt, we ſteered away a ſoutherly courſe. But coming on to be a briſk gale, every body was out of ſorts with it, even to the ſeamen, and the ſoldiers who are obliged to help to work the veſſel when occaſion requires. Of theſe laſt we had twenty one on board, and about fifty paſſengers, moſt of them *Armenians*. Our veſſel carried two ſmall braſs cannon, and might conveniently have been burthened with 250 bales, which I had reduced to 180, that we might have room enough, as has been ſaid; ſhe had three rudders, one aſtern, and one on each ſide, which they uſe upon certain occaſions. Theſe veſſels have nothing but a mainſail, which they double when the wind is fair, ſo that they are not at all proper to ply with to windward; beſides that, they are not contrived to row. That day, in the afternoon, the pilot went to the helm again, but bearing too cloſe upon the wind as the ſail was trimmed, it came all into the wind; ſo that the veſſel not feeling her helm, they were obliged to hand their ſail: After which they made uſe of another helm to bring her about; then the ſail was ſpread again, by which I perceived theſe people are not a whit better mariners than the *Greeks*. The wind continuing at north, we continued to ſteer the ſame courſe, and tho' we were now far advanced into the ſea, I found the water was ſtill ſweet and good to drink; but ſoon after it became ſalt, and greener, and the waves very ſhort.

1703.

Having ſteered this courſe all night by a clear moon-light, we, upon the *nineteenth*, in the morning, to the weſtward of us, perceived one of the mountains of *Perſia*, called *Samgael*, and coaſting it along ſoutherly, a good league from the ſhore, we about nine of the clock doubled our ſail, with mountains continually on the ſide of us, together with

Perſia. *Mountain of* Samgael.



woods, and a ſandy beach. After a ſhort calm, the wind ſprung up at north-eaſt, and we ſteered away ſouth-eaſt, continually coaſting it along to double the outermoſt point of the peaked mountain diſtinguiſhed by A, in the plate. This coaſt is a very dangerous one quite to *Derbent*, becauſe of the *Samgaels* who inhabit theſe mountains, and who plunder on all ſides, ſo that there is no landing among them. They are *Mohammedans*, and lay hands on all the goods of ſuch ſhips as have the misfortune to ſtrike upon their coaſt, and think themſelves under no obligation to account for them, but to their natural Prince.

The dangerous coaſt of the Samgaels.

About three of the clock the wind came about at eaſt, juſt as we were at the point of the hill, and in ſight of, and but a league from *Derbent*. We there came to an anchor, and at that diſtance it was that I drew the proſpect you have in the plate marked with the letter B.

The town of Derbent.

In the night we got again under ſail, but the wind was but faint, and we made but little or no way, and at break of day, we were on the other ſide of the town. It ſtands upon the weſt on the ſea-ſhore, and ſeemed to me to be about a league and an half in circumference. On the ſide of the ſea, down hill, it is defended by a ſtone wall, and has three gates,

Its ſituation.

1703. two of which only are opened. The citadel joins the town, on the right hand of which you ſee a well, with a ſubterraneous ſpring which riſes up pretty high. This town is well provided with cannon, and as its ſituation is very lofty, it makes a conſiderable figure when beheld from the ſea. Moſt of the ſtones of the citadel are 7 palms and an half in length, and 5 and an half in breadth, and are well wrought after the antient manner; and indeed, the *Perſians* will have it, that this city is as old as the days of *Alexander*. Not far off there are forty tomb-ſtones, about 15 palms in length, and 2 and an half in breadth; but they are not erected; beſides ſeveral ciſterns, a great table and benches of the ſame. The hill of *Derbent* is all of rock, and full of ſprings of freſh water, as well as the town itſelf. Thoſe who have never been here before, are obliged to give the ſeamen ſomething to drink, and this by an antient cuſtom, which if not complied with, they threaten the party to duck him in the water, and ſometimes it ſo happens. This city is in the north-weſt of *Aſia*, and of the kingdom of *Perſia*, upon the frontiers of *Georgia* and of *Zuiria*, between the *Caſpian* ſea, and *Mount Caucaſus*, where the paſſage is very narrow.

The citadel.

Tombs.

Pirates. The pirates called *Koeraloek* are at a day's diſtance from *Derbent*, and the *Ruſſian Coſſacs* frequently leave their country, to cruiſe with them upon the *Caſpian*, where they plunder all they meet with.

Dageſtan. This country which borders upon *Dageſtan*, a ſmall province of *Georgia* and *Zuiria*, upon the *Caſpian* ſea, is about 40 leagues in extent. The inhabitants of it are *Tartars*, governed by their own Princes, between *Muſcovy* and *Perſia*, and their principal towns are *Tarku* and *Andres*. It is but ſeldom taken notice of in our maps, tho' it be well known there are three or four Princes, the chief of which is him of *Samgael*, the (2d,) the *Crim Samgael*; (3d,) him of *Beki*; the (4th,) *Caraboedagh Bek*, or the Prince of *Caraboedagh*. The town of *Tarku* is called alſo *Tirck* or *Tarki*, and by the *Perſians* *Targhoe*. It is open, and ſtands againſt a mountain upon the *Caſpian* ſea, to the eaſt of *Georgia*, under the dominion of his Czarian Majeſty, and about three days from *Niſawaey*.

1703. Tarkû. *Its ſituation.*

About noon, the wind chopped about to the north-eaſt, and we ſoon loſt ſight of *Derbent*, ſteering away ſouth-eaſt. Upon this coaſt we ſaw ſeveral trees, and hills at a diſtance up in the land. But the wind coming about to the ſouth-eaſt, about an hour afterward, we were obliged to let go an anchor half a league from the land, in a place where the ſhore was full of trees. Upon the *twenty-firſt* in the morning, we ſteered our courſe again, coaſting it along with very fair weather. About eight we had ſight of the point of *Niſawaey*, and at noon came to an anchor, upon that coaſt, in 3 fathom and an half of water, and there met with ſix other veſſels that had left *Aſtracan* before us. At three in the afternoon I landed with all my cloaths, and this was the very firſt time I ever ſat foot on *Perſian* ground.

The author lands in Perſia.

The *Caſpian* ſea is about 100 leagues in length from *Aſtracan* to *Ferchabad* (a paſſage which is performed with oars, without the help of any wind in fourteen or fifteen days time) and about 90 in breadth from *Chowaraſm* to the coaſts of *Circaſſia* or *Shirwan*. It neither riſes nor falls, and when it happens to overflow its banks, it is owing to the wind only. They pretend that in and about the middle, and before the town of *Derbent*, it is bottomleſs; in other parts of it they ſtrike the bottom with about 30 or 40 fathom of line. The water of it is ſalt, as has already been ſaid, and the freſhneſs of that upon the coaſts is owing to the rivers that fall into it. For the reſt, it has no manner of communication with the other ſeas, being ſurrounded all about with lands and very high mountains. It is inconceivable to think what a number of

Situation of the Caſpian *ſea.*

Rivers.

1703. of rivers fall into this ſea; they make it riſe to no leſs than one hundred; the chief of which are the *Wolga*, the *Cirus* or *Kur*, and the *Araxes*; the two laſt of which unite before they reach this ſea, and then fall in it together, having firſt brought away with them the waters of many others, as the *Buſtrouw*, the *Akſay*, the *Koi-ſu*, the *Kiſtloſein*, the *Laik*, the *Sems*, the *Nios*, the *Oxus*, the *Arxantes* or *Tanais*, and the reſt. This ſea was formerly called the ſea of *Hyrcania*, and the ſea of *Bachu*. The *Perſians* call it the ſea of *Kolſum*, and the ſea of *Aſtracan*: The *Ruſſians* call it the ſea of *Gualenskoi*, or of *Gevalienske*: The *Georgians*, *Sgwa*, and the *Armenians* call it *Soof*. Thoſe who chiefly navigate this ſea are the *Ruſſians* and *Turks*. Tho' the Czar of *Muſcovy* has ſent ſeveral veſſels for that purpoſe to *Aſtracan*, under the convoy of one captain *Meyer*, who has been already mentioned, the merchants chuſe rather to freight the ordinary *Ruſſian* veſſels, for the tranſportation of their goods from place to place, becauſe they are not ſo ſubject to leak; for otherwiſe they would be much fitter for the purpoſe, and would perform the voyage twice as ſoon, if due care were taken. But they labour under another defect, which is, that they are not ſo flat-bottom'd as the common imbarkations upon that ſea, and therefore cannot borrow ſo near upon the coaſts of *Perſia* and *Niſawaey*, where the others are ſometimes obliged to winter. 1703.

Ships ſent from Muſcovy.

CHAP. XXXI.

Situation of the country of Niſawaey. *A great ſtorm. terrible duſt. Arrival at* Samaſhi.

Niſawaey. THERE are neither villages nor houſes to be met with upon the coaſt of *Niſawaey*, which is low; ſo that travellers are obliged to pitch tents there, or to go farther up into the country, juſt as they think moſt proper, and according to the ſtay they are to make in theſe parts. The *Arabs* repair hither with camels and horſes, to meet travellers, and carry them to *Samaſhi*; and as there happened to be ſeveral ſhips in the port when we arrived, there was a great crowd of us. Upon the *twenty-ſecond* in the morning, we threw our nets into a ſmall river, which empties itſelf into the ſea at half a league from thence by two openings; but we caught no great matter, tho' at certain times it be full of fiſh. This river is called the *Niſawaey*, and communicates its name to this country; its ſpring is in the mountains.

Upon the *twenty-third*, the wind being at ſouth-eaſt, there ſailed five veſſels for *Aſtracan*. On board of theſe veſſels ſeveral *Armenian* merchants imbarked with their goods, and I failed not to take this opportunity of writing to my friends both there and at *Moſcow*.

Thoſe who are concerned in carrying away the goods and merchandiſe brought by ſhipping upon this coaſt, are either *Arabs* or *Turks*, who in ſummer live under tents, and in winter, in villages a good diſtance from the coaſt.

Upon the *twenty-fourth*, there went away ſeveral camels, laden with goods, with ſome *Ruſſian* merchants who had travelled with us from *Moſcow* to *Aſtracan*. The ſame day there

An Arab *robbed.*

1703. there came to us an *Arab*, who had been ſtripped of his horſe, and ſome rice he was bringing to ſell, by three robbers, who upon this notice given, were immediately purſued by ten or twelve perſons, but to no manner of purpoſe.

A ſtorm and a great duſt. About noon, there came on a great ſtorm, which raiſed ſo great a duſt between the beach and the downs, that there was no knowing where to go for ſhelter. Tho' we had a pretty large tent, ſupported by two good poles, and well ſtaked down to the ground, I withdrew from thence to the ſea ſide, where the duſt was not ſo great, becauſe the ſand there was wet; not to ſay I was afraid the wind would blow away our tent: And indeed the thing happened as I had dreaded, and we were glad to cover our goods and baggage with it, by tying and fixing it down the beſt we could; and as the air was all full of a thick cloud of ſand, every one of us endeavoured to get under ſhelter, ſome behind a ſhattered veſſel that had ſuffered ſhipwreck, and others within her, a ſad and doleful ſight! This ſtorm continued till night, when we got up our tent again, and with labour and pains recovered our bales which had been buried under the ſand.

Upon the *twenty-fifth*, certain merchants who had been twelve days upon this coaſt, departed hence for *Samaſhi*, attended by very fine weather; but we were obliged to wait for the officer of the cuſtoms, to whom we were to pay the ordinary duties before we ſtirred from thence. Theſe duties amount to forty-ſix pence *per* bale, every bale four hundred weight, the uſual load of an horſe. That day the ſtorm came on again with ſuch fury, that it was all we could do to keep our legs upon the ſhore, and this drove us to the ſide of the downs, three hundred paces from the ſea, where we paſſed our night: And here we fell in with the crew of a veſſel belonging to his Czarian Majeſty, who had retired under ſome huts. Among them were two *Germans* and a *Swediſh* priſoner, who made me a preſent of two birds which the *Muſcovites* call *Karawayeke*, and which are not very unlike to young herons, except that their plumage is black, or of a very deep blue. As theſe gentlemen came to ſee me every day, they alſo brought me a white Crane of extraordinary ſize and beauty. 1703.

Second ſtorm.

The ſtorm laſted all night, and the officer of the cuſtoms, who arrived upon the *twenty-ſixth*, permitted us to depart, as ſoon as he had ſearched what we had. The next day we went away with above one hundred camels, ten horſes, and three aſſes, ſkirting it along the ſea ſide, whoſe ſhores we found to be in the ſame ſhattered ſtate, as where we had ſuffered ſo much inconvenience. We croſſed the four ſmall rivers of *Samoetſia*, *Balballa*, *Buboelaetſha*, and *Mordwa*, proceeding on to the ſouthward. Upon this ſhore they have large creatures with ſmall heads, which they call ſea dogs or ſeals, ſome of which are as big as horſes, and whoſe ſkin make admirable covering for trunks. In the ſeaſon when theſe creatures ingender, there are thouſands of them to be ſeen on the ſhores of *Niſawaey*. Having travelled four leagues, we went to reſt ourſelves in a plain beyond the *Downs*, half a league from the village of *Mordow*, inhabited by *Arabians*, who are in poor mud cabbins, ſuch as we have formerly deſcribed thoſe of the *Tartars* to have been. *Mordow*, ſignifies a marſh, and indeed this village is very marſhy, becauſe of the waters which come down from the mountains; but it is owing to the ſame, that there is much rice here, and that it abounds with birds.

Upon the *twenty eighth*, we continued our journey along the ſea ſide, and travelled ſix leagues. Here we turned off from the ſea, having at a ſmall diſtance before us, the high mountains of *Perſia*. We there met with a ſpring of water, and ſome ſorry villages, conſiſting of a few mud houſes, inhabited, as they call them here, by *Moors* or *Turks*. The wea-

1703. ther being very fine, these mountains and plains had a very charming effect. The *Caspian* sea affords little or no fish in these parts. There is, however, here a kind of carp, not very good indeed, and a kind of herring, not better worth.

Upon the *twenty ninth*, we went on, and in an hour's time entered the mountains, which are very lofty and very bare, full of rocks, without trees. There is even a great number of pebbles in the plains. Having travelled over the high and stony mountains of *Barma*, we halted at nine in the morning, upon a flat hill surrounded with others that are higher, and we met with a brook of good water in a deep valley. I there shot a large bird that was black, grey and white, a fathom in extent from the tip of one wing to the tip of the other. It was a bird of prey, which they there call *Tjallagan*, and not very unlike a faulcon. From his wings I drew good quills to write with.

A great bird.

The weather continuing fine, tho' the wind was rather of the highest, we proceeded on our journey to the southward, and passed by several cabbins inhabited by *Arabians*, at the foot, on the slope, and on the top of hills and mountains. Great numbers of them are in these parts to be met, with their wives, their children and their cattle. These parts are infested by robbers, which obliges travellers to be upon their guard, and to take care how they fall asleep. From time to time we fired off some pieces to let them know we were upon the watch, and ready prepared to defend ourselves; and yet one of these rogues was so bold as to come to reconnoitre us, but his temerity was rewarded with a sound cudgelling.

A dangerous road.

At midnight we moved on again, and in an hour's time we came among hills covered with trees. At break of day, we went through a narrow deep passage, where we were obliged to dismount and lead our horses by the bridle. When we had got down to the plain, we twice crossed the river of *Atatasiaei*, or the *paternal River*, which falls into the *Caspian* sea: Upon the top of a mountain, we found a great pond full of water, with a great number of birds, large and small, round about it; and afterwards a spring of admirable water, which comes out of a hill, and forms a small canal. This is a branch of the river we crossed twice the day before, which we crossed again a third time by fording it, there having been a great drought for two years before. About eight of the clock, we had on the left of us a great stone caravansera in ruins, and a place of burial near it, with many tombs of *Arabians* and *Turks*. We halted a little beyond this, by the side of a brook, in a plain, four leagues from a small place called *Rasarat*, where certain *Arabians* had pitched some tents. We were obliged to send for refreshments a league from thence.

River of Atatasiaei.

1703.

At two in the morning, we moved on again, continually mounting of hills and going down the same, and we crossed a river, which the *Turks* call *Orotsa*, or the *dry River*; and indeed it was dry then and full of pebbles, and so it is in winter as well as in summer. Towards the morning we heard pheasants upon the hills, where are also hares and many springs of water. Upon the *last day of the month*, we halted in a great stony plain surrounded with rocks, where we found ten tents of *Arabs* who supplied us with milk, fresh butter, eggs, and prety good water. We there killed a sheep we had brought from *Astracan*, and feasted upon it.

Dry river.

At two in the morning we continued our way, amidst rocky mountains, and at break of day we discovered ourselves to be near a spring called *Borbeelagh*, around which there were several *Arabs* under tents, in a place where every thing was burnt up by the heat of the sun, and the great droughts. This was upon the *first day of August*, and that day we went but three leagues, it being, in summer, impossible to travel with camels

1703. camels above five or ſix leagues in 24 hours; beſides that it is neceſſary the *Caravans* ſhould halt in places where there happens to be water. This is three leagues from *Samachi*, and as the mountains produce no wood, they are obliged to make uſe of camels dung for their firing, juſt as in *Egypt*.

River of Sahanſha. At two in the morning, we moved on, and croſſed the river of *Sahanſha*, where we found nothing but pebbles inſtead of water. As we drew near to *Samachi*, we paſſed by ſome fruit gardens. They made us ſtop at the cuſtom-houſe that they might count our camels, which was ſoon done, and we went into the town. This was upon the *ſecond day of the month*, and we went to take up our lodging in the *Caravanſera* of the *Armenians*, where we were entertained by a merchant of that nation. 1703.

CHAP. XXXII.

Rejoicings on account of a royal robe. Deſcription of Samachi. *Ruins of a great fortreſs upon the mountain of* Kata-Kuluſtahan.

A robe ſent to the Governor of Samachi. WHEN we arrived at *Samachi*, they told us the *Khan* or Governor of that city had juſt received a royal robe from the King his Maſter, whereupon he cauſed great publick rejoicings to be made for four days together.

Dearneſs of proviſions. It was ſo exceſſively hot when we arrived at this place, and no rain having fallen for the ſpace of two or three years before, there happen'd to be a great ſcarcity of every thing, and they now ſold a loaf for tenpence, which had never coſt above twopence for a century before. Other proviſions were dear in proportion, and they now ſold a fowl for fivepence or ſixpence which before was uſed to fetch not above threehalfpence.

They are very ſtrict in examining all the goods that go through this city, for which purpoſe the officers of the cuſtoms come to the *Caravanſera*, where they have an apartment; but they demand nothing for this viſit, you only give them fifty pence for every camel load, whereas they formerly paid no more than a florin, but this is only with regard to the goods carried into *Perſia*, and as the carriage is commonly by horſes, the bales muſt be diminiſhed by the half, a horſe load not exceeding four hundred weight, whereas that of a camel is eight or nine hundred.

A fine cavalcade of the Khans. Upon the *fifth* of this month, at eight in the morning, the *Khan* repaired to a garden, a quarter of a league from the town, there to inveſt himſelf with the robe we juſt now mentioned. As great preparations had been made for this ſolemnity, I went with ſeveral others to have a ſight of it. Firſt there appeared a number of perſons on horſeback, ſucceeded by ten camels, adorned with two little red ſtandards to the right and left. Upon ſix of theſe there were kettle-drums which the *Perſians* call *Tambalpaes*, of which four were of extraordinary ſize, pointed at bottom, which a drummer upon one of the camels ſtruck from time to time. Four trumpeters ſtopt at intervals on the way ſide to ſound their *Karamas* or Trumpets, which are very long, wide at bottom, and according to my ear, make a very diſagreeable noiſe. At ſome diſtance after theſe came four hautbois, which they call *Karana-naſier*. The camels

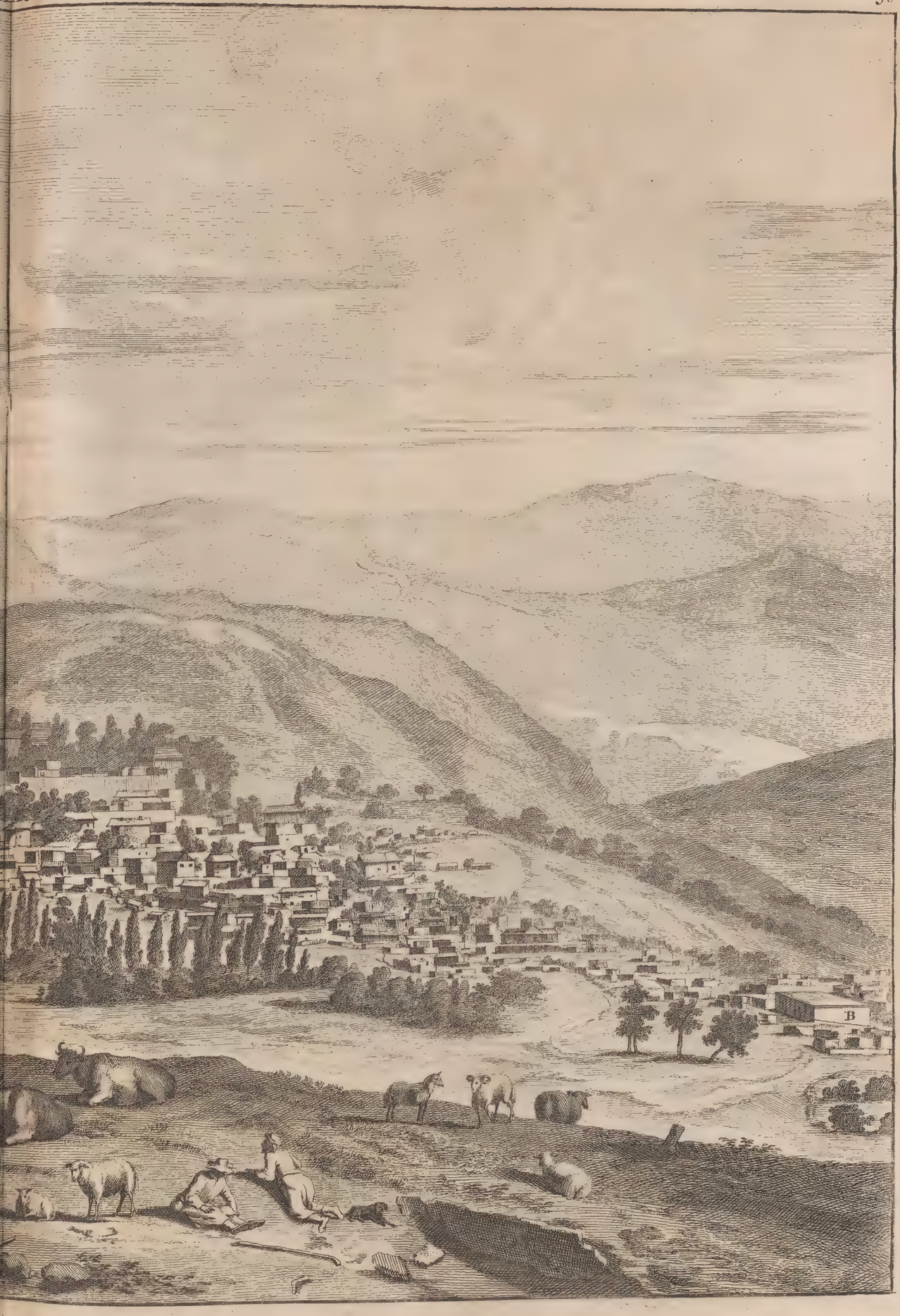
1703. mels were alſo followed by twenty muſqueteers differently habited, ſome in green, ſome in purple, and ſome in grey, and after theſe came ſix of the *Khan*'s or Governor's menial ſervants; after theſe appeared their maſter himſelf upon a fine cheſnut horſe moſt beautifully capariſoned. This Nobleman, who was in a ſhort kind of veſt, and with a large turban on his head, after the *Perſian* mode, was followed by four eunuchs, ſome tawny, others black, richly habited and well mounted. After theſe appeared the moſt conſiderable perſonages of the place, and a great number of others on horſeback; then nine led horſes of the *Khan*'s, ſumptuouſly capariſoned, with each a ſmall drum on the right ſide of the ſaddle. Moſt of the perſons of diſtinction had the like, which from time to time they ſtruck with their fingers. They were almoſt all of ſilver like thoſe of the *Khan*. Beſides all this a great number of ſoldiers were ranged along the garden, on the right hand towards the mountains, and each of theſe ſoldiers had a feather in his cap; and in ſhort, two horſes, upon which were two men covered from head to foot with a gown quilted and wrought with all ſorts of colours, repreſenting monkeys; and as they were well broke to the tricks and play of that creature, they drew the eyes of every body upon them, and kept at the diſtance of twenty paces from each other, with muſicians near them. When they had reached the garden, the *Khan* and the great men who had attended him, diſmounted from their horſes at the fore-gate, which was large and built of ſtone. He there robed himſelf with his royal veſtment, and in half an hour mounting his horſe again, he returned to the town in the ſame order he came out of it. This robe was pretty long, and of gold brocade, and upon his head he had a golden cap, in the nature of a crown. This cavalcade was attended by a great number of ſervants on horſeback, who rode and pranced about on the ſides of the proceſſion, with a *Kaljan*, or ſmoaking bottle in their right hand for the uſe of their maſters. Theſe bottles are of glaſs, adorned with gold or ſilver at top, and extremely neat. Other of theſe ſervants had a little pot full of fire at the pummel of their ſaddles, for their maſters to light their pipes by, but there was no tobacco ſmoked upon this occaſion. Many of theſe great men diverted themſelves on the way with darting the *Ayner*, which is a kind of cane. Every body had run out of the town to ſee this cavalcade, ſome on foot, and others on horſeback, a ſight agreeable enough to the eye, becauſe of the variety of objects: others came from the villages, of which the country about is full, from the tents of the *Arabs*, and from the gardens which are ſeen on all ſides. The *Khan* before he aſſumed his robe, covered himſelf with the gold cap juſt now mentioned, which was adorned with precious ſtones, cloſed at top, and carried at a ſmall diſtance before him on horſeback. They pretend that this cap repreſents the arms of the prophet *Ali*, who was wont to wear ſuch an one. The *Khan* took it off when he put on his robe, and it was carried before him in going back, as it had been in coming. This cavalcade took up two hours. *A rich cap.*

1703.

It rained in the evening, and it ſo continued to do till towards noon the next day. This made the ways ſo bad, that it was as much as the horſes could do to get forward; but it was very fine weather from the *ſeventh* to the *tenth* of this month. We had, however, an earthquake, which did no damage, except that it obliged a great many people to go out and lye in the fields, for fear their houſes ſhould fall upon their heads.

Upon the *eleventh*, I drew a proſpect of the town from a hill to the ſouthward, and from the place whence it makes the beſt figure, as it is to be ſeen in number 38. It is longer than it is broad, and as it is deſtitute of moſchs, towers, or conſiderable buildings, I have only diſtinguiſhed *Situation of* Samachi.

C
A


B

1703. ſtinguiſhed the *Khan*'s palace by the letter *A*; the *Caravanſera* of *Circaſſia*, which is on the eaſt ſide of the town by the letter *B*; and a hill where are the ruins of an ancient fortreſs, by the letter *C*. It is to the northweſt of the town, and we ſhall ſpeak more amply of it hereafter, as well as of another, higher, which is to be ſeen on one ſide of it. This town is upon the ſlope of an hill; is about a league in circumference, and all open, the walls having been thrown down by an earthquake about five and thirty years ago. Tho' there be here no remarkable building, there are, however, ſeveral moſchs; but they are all ſmall and low, ſo that they are not diſtinguiſhable from without the town. They call them *Mu-zejit*. There are two of them that have ſmall domes, into which they enter by a court, and without any other ornament than a place raiſed up in a round form, and full of ſeats. The houſes of this town are of the moſt ordinary ſort, of ſtone and of earth, flat at top, poor and mean to look at, and ſo low for the moſt part that you may reach the roofs of them with the hand. The chief of them are nevertheleſs neat enough within-ſide, and adorned with carpets, and ſuch like things: the walls of them are plaſtered, and very white with ſome ſtreaks of colour; ſome of theſe are even two ſtories high and raiſed at top.

The Khan's *houſe.* That of the *Khan* himſelf is upon an eminence, and yet makes no great figure from without. Here are alſo to be ſeen the ruins of a tolerably large moſch, to which belong two or three ſorts of domes; which ſeem to have been formerly handſom. This building is of ſtone well compacted together, the moſt ancient and fineſt in all the town, where are ſeveral other ruins to be ſeen ſcatter-

Market and ſhops. ed up and down. At the foot of the hill where the *Khan* keeps his court, there is a great market where they ſell every ſort of thing, and eſpecially fruits. This is the quarter or diſtrict of the braziers, where there are, however, other ſhops, and a great number of cooks who have all ſorts of victuals ready dreſſed. The 1703.

Bazars. bazars are at one of the ends of this market, and are alſo full of the ſhops of goldſmiths, ſhoemakers, ſadlers, and ſo on. Some of them are covered with ſtone, and ſome with wood, and contain ſeveral ſtreets. There you have coffee-houſes, and all the caravanſeras, which have no proſpect of the ſtreet, and where they go in by a great door. There is a ſcore of them, whereof thoſe belonging to the *Indians*, which are of ſtone and the fineſt of all, are twenty three or twenty four foot high. Ours had forty rooms on the floor beneath, and was ſquare. Theſe are the places where they ſell the principal ſorts of goods; nor indeed are there any great ſhops of any ſort in the bazars. This town is called by ſeveral names, ſome call it *Samachi*, others *Sumachia*, and the *Perſians* themſelves *Schamachi*. It is in about 40 degrees and 50 minutes of northern latitude, and is the capital of the province of *Shirwan* or *Servan*, part of the ancient *Media*, to the north-north-weſt of *Perſia*; to the weſtward of the province of *Gilan*, and to the northward of that of *Irak*, and extends quite to the frontiers of *Hyrcania*. They pretend this city was built by a certain King of *Perſia* called *Shirwan Shah*, twenty four leagues from the *Caſpian* ſea. The way over the mountains ſo turns and winds, that we were 24 hours in going over them, and ſix days in performing the whole journey with camels; tho', indeed, it may be done in three on horſeback. It is forty leagues from hence to *Derbent*, if you go over the mountains of *Lahati*.

Extent of the Khan's *government.* The *Khan* governs here as a King, and has under him only a *Kalantaer* or burgo-maſter, who has no manner of authority, and has nothing to do but to prepare a liſt of the ſubſidies the country is to furniſh the *Khan*, who has a chancery, counſellors, and an arſenal in his palace, provided with ſome pieces of cannon; two of which are at the entrance, and are diſcharged upon publick rejoicings.

1703. joicings. He has a body of horſe conſiſting of two thouſand five hundred men, three hundred of which ſerve him alſo as a guard on foot, and attend him when he appears abroad or goes out to hunt. The *His picture.* *Khan*, who was in the ſixth year of his government, is a well made man, and of a comely preſence, tho' rather too thin, and wears long muſtaches. He is called *Allerwedikhan*, and bears the title of *Beglerbeg* or *Khan* of other *Khans*. He is a *Georgian* born, and a Chriſtian, and was formerly Gentleman of the chamber to the King of *Perſia*, to whom his father, a Gentleman of a good family, preſented him, while yet in his infancy, according to the cuſtom of *Georgia*. They ſay he is of the ancient family of the *Borgodions*, known before the birth of Jeſus Chriſt, and originally a Jew.

The Government of *Samachi* is one of the moſt conſiderable in all the Empire of *Perſia*, and its governors grow rich the eaſieſt and *Soil of* Sa- ſooneſt of any, by reaſon of the great *machi.* ſubſidies they levy upon the country round about, and eſpecially upon *Gilan*, which produce a deal of ſilk, cotton, and ſaffron. The ſoil is naturally very fertile, and affords good wines, both red and white, but the white is ſo ſtrong there is no drinking it, but tempered with water. It abounds with all ſorts of fruits, and particularly apples, pears, and cheſnuts of an exquiſite flavour, and eſpecially towards *Georgia*. In a word, there is nothing wanting but people to cultivate the ſoil. It produces alſo great numbers of horſes, cattle, *Abundance of provi-* poultry, and all ſorts of game, both *ſions.* of the fur and feather, which are to be bought at a very cheap rate, and eſpecially in winter. The bread there is moſt admirably good.

A fine port. The town of *Baku*, which has a very fine port, has been lately fortify'd by the *Perſians*, which was owing to the miſconduct of Captain *Meyer*, whom we have mentioned more than once before. He took it into his head to demand free entrance into this port, for the ſhips and veſſels of his Czarian Majeſty, which 1703. gave ſuch umbrage to the *Perſians*, and inſtilled them with ſuch a jealouſy, that they immediately reſolved to fortify this place. As the *Muſcovites* had, time out of mind, had free admiſſion into this port, he was adviſed not to take ſo falſe a ſtep, but the advice was thrown away upon him. Before this it had been an eaſy matter to have ſeized it with an handful of men, and with it to have ſeized on the whole county quite to the *Kur* and *Araxes*, and to have ſecured it by proper fortifications, as ſhall be obſerved in the ſequel; for the inhabitants were in no condition to have made a defence, and this had proved a moſt advantageous article to his Czarian Majeſty.

This town of *Baku* ſtands in the Baku. weſtern part of *Perſia*, in the country of *Shirwan*, upon the *Caſpian* ſea, and ſtill preſerves its ancient walls. This part produces the beſt nut oyl in the world, both brown and white, the firſt of which is carried into *Gilan*, and an hundred leagues beyond into *Perſia*, and the white they ſend to all parts. They aſſured me, that at the diſtance of two or three leagues from that town, the land burns continually, becauſe of the abundance of ſaltpeter it is impregnated with; and that 50 leagues from *Samachi*, there is a city called *Ganſie*, which is four times as big as *Town of* the former, full of fine ſtone build- Ganſie. ings, moſtly of two ſtories; handſom broad ſtreets, noble bazars, and great caravanſeras; that the Governor's palace there is great and ſpacious; that a fine river runs through the town; that there alſo are many gardens, good wines, fruits in abundance, ſena, cypreſſes and pines; ſo that this city might juſtly be eſteemed one of the moſt conſiderable in all the Empire of *Perſia*. All this was confirmed to me by a *French* eccleſiaſtic, who lives there, and by ſome *Georgians*, who aſſured me, that in *Georgia*, the *Gurgiſtan* of this day, there are ſeveral rivers we know nothing of, as the *Allaſan*, which croſſes the province of *Ghaget*; the *Leg-*

LE MONTAGNE, KALA-KULUSTAHAN. 40

TOMBEAU À JEDIEKOMBET.

TOMBEAU SUR LE MONT PIEDRAKOES.

TOMBEAU SUR LE MONT PIEDRAKOES. 44

1703. *wie* which runs on one ſide of the town of *Cori* or of *Gorri*; the *Kiſanni*, which runs by a great moſch called *Schetta*; the *Simma* which riſes in *Turcomania*, near the town of *Angheltska*, and the *Jorri*, which ſprings from the mountain of *Serikjes*, which all fall into the *Kur*; beſides many others that are not known to be diſtinguiſhed by any names.

Rivers unknown.

In ſhort, deſirous to ſatisfy my curioſity with regard to the antiquities of the ancient and famous *Media*, I, upon the *thirteenth* of *Auguſt*, repaired to the mountain of *Kala-kuluſtahan*, half a league to the north-weſt of this city. I ſtopped at the foot of this mountain to take a view of the remains of the wall and towers of an ancient fortreſs. There are ſome round ones ſtill entire enough, and ſome foundations at a diſtance from the ruins of the wall, on the ſlope of the hill to the right hand between great ſtones, which appear above the ground as you go down. The ſame there were on the left hand towards the top, near the tower, and a greater than all the reſt upon the very top of the hill. You have a repreſentation of this in numb. 39. I then with a good deal of difficulty and danger, ſcrambled up this ſteep hill, and was obliged to forbear ſeveral times in ſo doing. Being arrived at the top of it, I found a ſubterraneous vault, where they deſcend ſeven or eight paces to the ſouth, by a large arcade of great ſmooth and well-jointed ſtones, but it is ſunk and full of rubbiſh. Oppoſite to this, towards the north-eaſt, there is another arcade; this is entire, and the opening of it injects a horror when you look down it, becauſe of its vaſt depth between the hills that ſurround it; nor is there any wall on that ſide, which is inacceſſible. Theſe two arcades by which you go into this vault are forty four paces diſtant from each other. When you are got down into this vault, you, on the right hand meet with a paſſage pretty ſhort and narrow, with a kind of window, which looks upon the rock of the mountain. Oppoſite to this, there is another entrance or paſſage, but very ſhort, becauſe this place which is to the eaſt is at the extremity of the mountain. You go to the left hand, to the other ſide, which is on the weſt, under an arcade, in the manner of a gate way, but ſo low you muſt bend your ſelf to go into a ſmall apartment, from which you go on to another like it, by a ſmall alley, and from that to a third, all the three well vaulted. The wall from whence theſe vaults ſprang, is five foot thick at the entrance, and eight farther on, and theſe apartments or theſe vaults are divided from each other by ſmall paſſages. It was there ſo dark I dared not venture any farther, having but one perſon only with me, beſides that the way to the laſt vault was full of ſtones and rubbiſh. I concluded, however, that moſt of theſe vaults muſt run through the mountain to the weſt and north-weſt, where it is of greateſt extent. I obſerved alſo that the walls of the vaults of the paſſages, which are flat, were of the breadth of theſe paſſages, reſted by the two ends upon the walls, and that all the ſtones there were well joined together and cemented, tho' not ſo neatly as thoſe of the ancient buildings, and eſpecially of the *Romans*, who excelled in that particular; and this is to be obſerved even in their publick ways, and remarkably ſo in what remains of that of *Naples*, called the *Via Appia*. *Egypt* alſo furniſhes us with another example of the delicacy of the ancients in this reſpect, in the only one of the ſeven wonders of the world that ſubſiſts at this day, meaning the inner paſſage by which you go up to the famous pyramids of that country, of which I was the firſt that gave a deſcription in the account of my firſt travels. Theſe ſtones, which are of prodigious ſize, are ſo nicely joined together, that the joints are hardly diſcernible; beſides they are poliſhed like looking-glaſs, whereas thoſe of the work I am ſpeaking of, are far from being ſo.

Mountain of Kala-kuluſta-han.

Neatneſs of the Romans *in their ſtone work.*

1703.

When

1703. When I came from out of theſe ſubterraneous vaults, I meaſured the breadth of the hill at top, and found it was fifty paces in the place where it was narroweſt, and eighty to the north-weſt. Towards the middle of this mountain there is a great well, but I did not dare approach it near enough to look into it, for fear of falling in, for the brink of it was dangerous to all appearance: this is the only opening I found there. The towers wherewith the walls of the building, upon the hill, are flanked, are ſeventy or eighty paces diſtant from each other where they are neareſt. This wall ſtretches much lower down about the mountain to the eaſt, where I believe it is a good half league long. We went down much eaſier than we got up, becauſe as we came back, we hit upon the right way. In our way down we ſaw ſeveral ruins of great apartments between the wall below and the demoliſhed fortreſs upon the top of the hill, the ſtones of which did but juſt appear above the ſurface of the ground; but there is no judging of the ſize of the building, but by that of the *Arcades*. When in our return we had reached the firſt wall, I drew the proſpect you ſee in numb. 40, near a tower, which is ſtill pretty entire, near ſome other ruins. Some writers have obſerved that theſe ruins are a mixture of ſtone and wood, but I there met with no ſuch thing, and I am perſuaded the ſtones are joined together with nothing but cement. The tradition is that this fortreſs was demoliſhed by *Tamerlan*, tho' by the beſt information I could get, I would not vouch for the truth of the ſtory. 1703.

Dangerous well.

In my return to the town, I ſaw a *Turk* dancing upon the rope, in the open fields. He was ſurrounded by a great number of ſpectators, the neareſt of which gave what they thought fit to one of his companions who made the gathering, while he was doing his beſt to divert the company: but he was none of the moſt dextrous of his profeſſion.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Remarkable ancient Sepulchres at Jediekombet *upon the mountain of* Pjedrakoes, *and at* Pyrmaraes. *An horrible murder. Review of the* Perſian *cavalry.*

UPON the *fourteenth*, I went away on horſeback, from *Samachi*, attended by two perſons, and ſome runners, in order to go to *Jediekombet*, that is, the *ſeven Towers*, where there are ſeveral ancient tombs. We went through ſeveral villages, moſtly inhabited by *Armenians*, as we advanced weſtward towards the mountains, and at nine arrived at *Kirkins*, a village upon a fertile eminence, and covered with vineyards, which are for the ſupport of the inhabitants. They have there a chappel built of ſtone, with the tomb of a ſaint, called *Sahaeb Wartapeet*. They ſay he was born a *Turk* and *Mohammedan*, and that having afterwards embraced their faith, he apply'd himſelf ſo cloſe to ſtudy that he became one of their prieſts; that after this, he had the misfortune to fall into the hands of the *Mohammedan Turks*, who burnt him at *Samachi*, and that riſing again he came and rejoined them. There is another tomb upon the high road, half a league from this mountain or hill, with ſome characters, which I deſired they would interpret to me; but they told me they were nothing but ornaments.

Jediekombet.

Tomb of a Saint.

1703. That of the ſaint, who is buried upon the hill, is there held in great veneration; they there light up tapers upon their feſtival days, and eat beſide him. As it was upon a *Sunday* I came there, I found a crowd of people, and they very obligingly invited me to dine there, but I excuſed myſelf, being deſirous to go on farther. This village contains about two hundred families. There is a ſmall altar in the middle of the chappel, where this tomb is, and it is ſurrounded by a ſmall wall, on one ſide of which there is a walnut-tree, under whoſe ſhade they ſit. In the ſame place there was formerly a ſmall moſch, which about thirty five years ago, was thrown down by an earthquake, and inſtead of that they erected this chappel.

We left this village at half an hour after nine, and went over ſome fine hills to *Jediekombet*, where we got an hour afterwards. I there found the ancient tombs I have mentioned, which are ſubſtantially built of hard ſtone, and neatly enough joined together; they were ſtill moſt of them entire, and terminated in pyramids. The firſt I examined was the loftieſt, and neareſt to the mountain. The wall of the tower is five palms in thickneſs; the entrance ſix high and three broad; it is round within, and twelve foot in diameter. This tower is ſurrounded with a fine wall, whoſe front gate is fourteen foot and an half broad, and ten deep to the wicket through which you go in, five palms thick, and ſixteen paces from corner to corner, or ſixty four paces in circumference. The wall is three palms thick, and the coping at top is in imitation of a camel's back, or an half oval. In this tower are five fine tombs, three on one ſide, and two on the other, which are adorned with foliages and other different things. Theſe tombs are three palms high, two broad, and ſeven long, ſome more, others leſs. I left this, and went to the ſecond tower. At the front gate in the enceint of the wall, I found an elevation of three palms, an arcade of eight and an half broad at bottom, of eleven feet and an half deep, and ſeven foot high. Here you have three fine tombs. The wall of this tower is forty four foot long, and thirty three broad, and is not higher than the former which it nearly reſembles. The laſt of theſe buildings which is the loweſt, and goes downward, is ſurrounded with a wall which is ſeventy one foot broad, ſixty ſix foot long, and nine foot high. The front gate which is fourteen foot and an half without, is twenty two broad, the arcade is eleven foot high, and fourteen deep: there is a wicket in the middle, which is two foot and an half broad, and five foot and an half high. You there go down by three ſteps, and having meaſured twelve paces, you come to a building which is thirty eight foot broad, and eighteen foot long, at the end of which there is another on the left hand, which is ſix foot as well in length as in breadth, upon which there is a tower. You go into this building by a ſmall door, which is four foot, and four inches high, and two foot and an half broad, and correſponds with that in the front. The thickneſs of the wall of it is three foot, and going down two ſteps, you come into a ſquare apartment ſurrounded with ſtone benches one foot and an half high, and as much in breadth. This apartment or room is ten foot long and eleven foot broad, and the vault of it is twelve foot high. On the right hand you have a door made through the wall above the bench, through which, by going up a ſingle ſtep, you enter into a dark place, whoſe vault is lower than the former, tho' its other dimenſions be larger, being thirteen foot long and ten broad. From hence through another door, oppoſite to the firſt, but ſmaller, you go up two ſteps, and come into a place, ten foot long and ten foot broad. Upon this it is, that the tower ſtands, which is hollow quite up to the point of the ſpire; and here you have on the right of you four ſmall windows, 1703.

Tombs at Jediekombet.

Fine tower.

1703. two and two, one above the other, I there found tapers ſticking againſt the wall, and ſtones tumbled down, but perceived nothing like a tomb. We dined in that place, and there refreſhed our wine with water from a fine ſpring over againſt and at a ſmall diſtance from this building: It is very ancient, the water of it is admirable, and its ſource is from the mountains. Without the enceint of theſe monuments, concerning which the ancients have ſaid ſo much, there are a great number of other tombs round about, ſome like theſe, and others of great common ſtones, and all without any characters and inſcriptions, and only with ſome ſmall ornaments to which I can give no name, except that ſome of them might be thought to be like baſes. And indeed I am quite of opinion, they are no other than ornaments, which is what I have obſerved in many other places, and even in the royal ſepulchres which are to be ſeen without the walls of *Jeruſalem*.

To give a more diſtinct and perfect idea of theſe tombs, I have drawn one of them in particular on one ſide of the building, I have juſt now mentioned, near which there is a great tree, and others ſmaller, which come out of the tower, notwithſtanding that the ſtones are ſtill firm and intire, and tho' there is no opening or fiſſure to be ſeen. I have traced out the front gate, ſome tombs, and the melon garden, in numb. 41; and you will find the whole with the mountain in perſpective in numb. 42; where nine towers are to be ſeen, notwithſtanding the word *Jediehombet* ſignifies but *ſeven*, as has already been obſerved. There is a great number of young fig-trees againſt the walls within, which cover the tombs ſo thick, it is no eaſy matter to get ſight of them. They hold them here to be very ancient, and have a report that *Alexander* ſpared them, becauſe of their great antiquity.

About four in the afternoon, having ſatisfied my curioſity, I returned from thence, and, to the northward of theſe tombs, was ſurpriſed to ſee great heaps of ſtones, upon a fertile hill, where the ſoil was not at all given to be ſtony; from whence I concluded there muſt have formerly been a town or ſome fortreſs in this place, tho' no other veſtiges ſeemed to be left of it: And I was afterwards informed by ſome people, of whom I made the inquiry, and they told me there had been a ſmall one in times paſt, near the tombs; a thing very likely, for otherwiſe it would be difficult enough to comprehend for what reaſon they were erected in theſe mountains. Not far from thence we found a fine ſpring, and a little farther, ſeveral other tombs; among which there was one of extraordinary dimenſions, but very much disfigured by the injuries it had received from time. Half a league from thence, we went back again through the village of *Kirkins*, inhabited by *Armenians* and *Turks*, and we got to the town about an hour before ſunſet, in the midſt of a high wind, and ſo great a duſt, that we had much ado to ſee before us: But there fell an heavy ſoaking rain the next day, attended with thunder, which intirely diſſipated it. 1703.

The mountain Pjedrakoes.

Upon the *eighteenth*, I went up to the mountain of *Pjedrakoes*, nearer the town than that of *Kala-kuluſtahan*, and higher. Upon the top of this mountain, there is an open tomb, ſurrounded with great ſtones, which is full eighteen foot and an half long, and ſixteen foot broad; together with ſeveral other ordinary tombs, a walnut-tree, and another great tree with ſmall leaves: At the diſtance of twenty ſeven paces from hence, there is another tomb, which conſiſts of a ſmall round chappel. It is thirty three foot in circumference without, and ten foot diameter within; the wall of it is two foot ten inches thick, and there are ſtones here of four foot four inches long, and two foot and two inches broad. The entrance into it is five foot four inches high, with a ſtep. This ſmall chappel is ten foot and an half high, excluſive of the needle or ſpire, and is ſurrounded

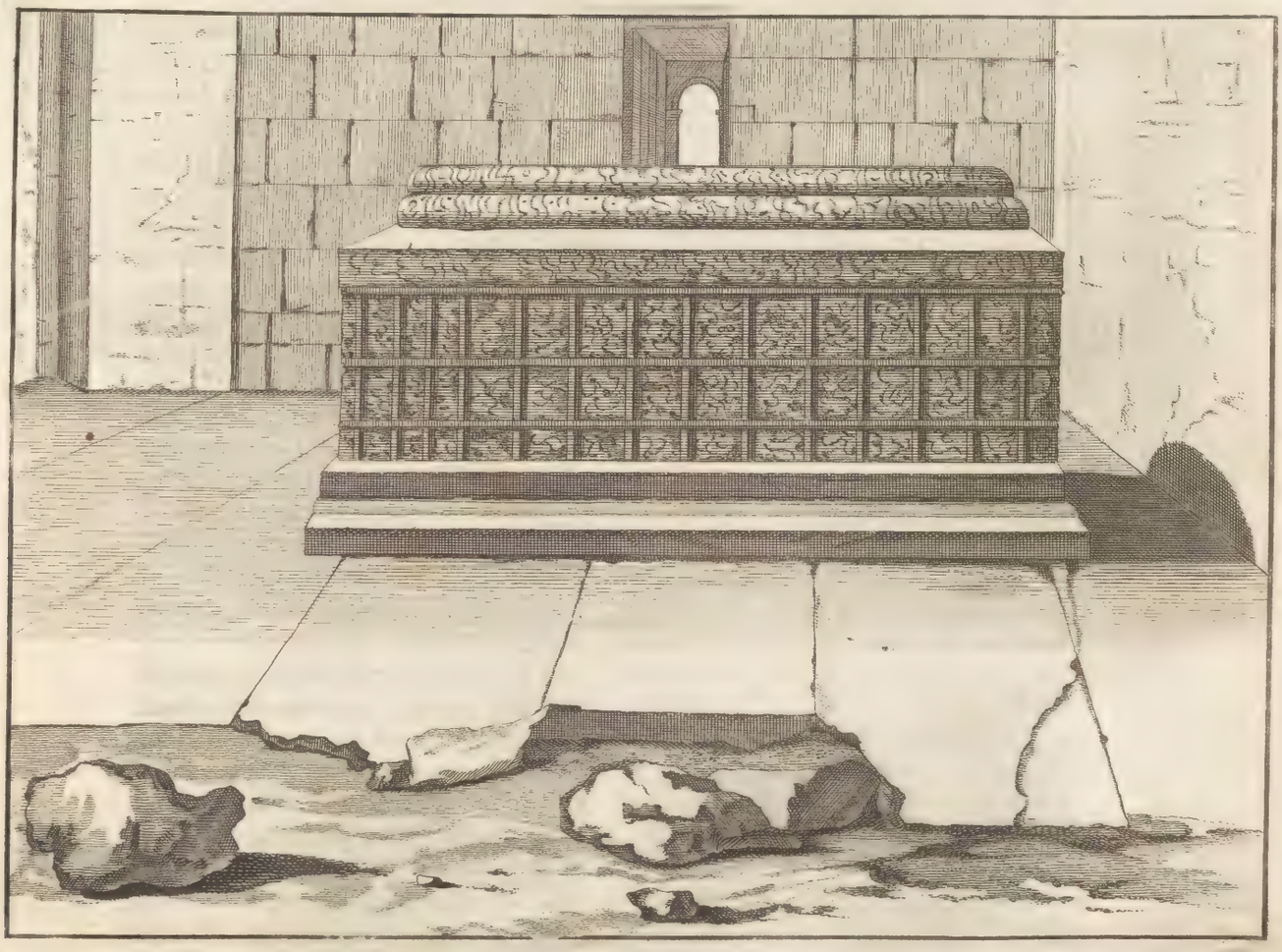
Tomb.

1703. rounded with ſeveral other tombs. The wall of it is thick ſet with nails, to which they have faſtned ſlips of various colours, and the like are to be ſeen in the former, being pieces torn from the garments of thoſe who come here to perform their devotions, and who make theſe ſmall offerings of acknowledgment to the ſaints who reſt here, in hopes thereby to procure relief from ſuch diſeaſes as they may labour under. An *Armenian* ſervant I had with me, aſſured me he had experienced the efficacy of this means, but I gave as much ear to this, as I did to the ſtory of the ſaint of theirs who aroſe from the dead. 1703.

Superſtition.

In numb. 43, you ſee a repreſentation of this ſmall chappel, which is very much damaged and decay'd on the eaſt-ſide, together with the hill of *Kala-kuluſtahan*; and in numb. 44, the other ſide decay'd, with the open tomb I juſt now mentioned, and the town and mountain at a diſtance. In this ſmall chappel, there is a great tomb adorned with foliages, ſuch as it appears in the plate beneath, and forty paces farther,

Deſcription of a ſmall emple.



two ſubterraneans. The entrance into the firſt is vaulted, and conſiſts of great ſtones which want nothing within. This place is ſix foot and an half long, and four foot and two inches broad: It is paved, and is five foot five inches high. The ſecond, which is but ſeventeen paces from it, is like a grot hewn out of the ſolid rock of the mountain, and the entrance into it is ſo ſmall, you muſt creep upon your belly to get in. Before this grotto there is a tree, upon the bark of which are the names of

1703. several persons cut out; and tombs round about, between which and the sepulchre upon the mountain there is the wall of a demolish'd building. This hill or mountain is also surrounded with tombs, except to the south-west where it is very steep. There are authors who affirm there is here a great subterraneous vault, into which you go down by several steps, and that therein are deposited the ashes of the daughter of a great King; but I made a fruitless search after it, and am persuaded it is no other than the little grot I have mentioned, and into which they had not the curiosity to go, to discover the truth of it; besides that the entrance into it is so small, I was obliged to undress myself in part to squeeze in. As to the rest, I have reason to believe the chief of the monuments hereabouts, is that of the small chappel which you see upon the hill. They moreover assured me, that most of the persons here interr'd, have been such as have left behind them the reputation of great sanctity, whence it is, that from time to time they come to visit these tombs. There is a small village at the foot of the mountain, and beyond that, to the north-east, a fine plain bordered with hills and mountains, and to the north-west the mountain of *Kala-kulustahan* with some villages. The town which you see at a distance, and the country round about, have a very fine effect upon the eye. You have also, as you approach the town, a fine stone fountain or cistern, whose water is admirable, and a little beyond that, a spring which runs away thro' a subterraneous canal towards the mountains, and by another canal goes and discharges itself into the very town.

Mistake of some authors.

Upon the *nineteenth*, I prepared what I had, to send by the *Caravan*, which we followed some days afterwards. The next day I went to the village of *Pyrmaraes*, where there are two very famous tombs. In my way thither, I passed by a very fine spring, and crossed several brooks upon little stone bridges. Two leagues from the town, I saw one that seemed to be ancient, consisting of three ruined arches built of great blocks of stone, under which there ran a very clear stream. I saw several others under which there ran no water at all.

Pyrmaraes.

1703.

The town of *Samachi* makes a considerable figure, when beheld from the hills, upon which there are several burying-grounds, and some pretty large tombs. About noon I got to *Pyrmaraes*, which is a large village built of stone and earth: it is about four leagues to the eastward of the town, in a great plain, as you go towards the mountains on the left hand. You there see the tomb of *Seid Ibrahim*, a certain saint, in great reputation over all this country. The place where he is deposited has a good deal the look of a fortress, and is encompassed with a wretched sort of a wall. Within side we found a stable where we put up our horses. Immediately there came a servant to invite me to his master's apartment, who had the care and charge of this place. He received me very obligingly, and asked me from whence I came, and what had brought me thither? Having answered him that I was moved thereto by curiosity, he very politely offered to wait on me himself, and shew me all the places that were worth the seeing.

Tomb of Ibrahim.

There is a pretty large square before this building, to the right hand of which, as you go in, this officer has a spacious apartment, the floor of which was covered with carpets: from thence you go, on the left hand, into the court of this building, which is spacious and well executed, and afterwards into a second where are several tombs, upon which are *Turkish* characters and ornaments. You then come to the sepulchre of the saint himself, which is shut up with a wooden door, thro' which you go into a small vault, where there is a coffin, and from thence into a pretty apartment which receives light from three sides above, and is

1703. covered with carpets, ſtriped ſtuffs and mats; here you muſt pull off your ſhoes, that you may not ſpoil this furniture. You then go thro' a ſmall door, on the right hand of the firſt vault, into three apartments, in the firſt of which there are three coffins, five in the ſecond, which is on the right, and in the middle of the third, which is on the left, that of the ſaint himſelf, covered with a great green cloth or pall. The portals of this building are about thirty ſix foot high, and ſome fathoms in depth; and you go up by twelve ſteps, each of one ſtone. The top is not vaulted, and the wall, in its upper part, looks like a fortreſs, having at each angle a kind of guerite. This building is forty paces long to the right, and thirty one in breadth. Over the tomb there is a ſmall opening covered with a ſtone, and over the gate there are many *Arabian* characters, hewn out in the ſtone, and others traced out in black upon the walls which are white. At the diſtance of twenty paces from this building, you go down fifteen vaulted ſteps, and afterwards, down ten others contiguous thereto, and the laſt of which are not vaulted, from whence you go into a ſubterranean, which is thirty three paces in length, and nine in breadth, and which is vaulted from one end to the other, and is full thirty ſix foot in height. The ſtones of this vault are fine, large, and well compacted or joined, but the plaſter they were formerly covered with is almoſt all fallen down by the length of time. I fancy this ſubterranean was formerly deſigned to keep water in; and water comes in ſtill, whenever it rains hard, by a ſubterraneous canal which comes from the mountains in the neighbourhood, and runs through an hole made in the ſecond ſtep. This ſubterranean has two vents at top thro' which it receives light. At the entrance into this building there is a ſtone wall, and ten paces from thence there are twenty ſtone troughs which ſerve for watering of cattle. They are put together, and each of them conſiſts of one ſtone, three foot and 1703. half long, and two and an half broad. You have here alſo ſeveral open wells, as well as in the village and the country round about, many of which are ſtopped up at the mouth. It is likely enough that they formerly ſerved for aqueducts, and this ſeems to have been more probably the caſe, ſeveral of them conveying water under ground into theſe ſubterraneous vaults, there to be kept. This is what was common enough among the ancients, and I have ſeen the ſame myſelf at *Alexandria*, and in the neighbourhood of *Naples*. It was after this manner the ancient *Medes* preſerved their water. The *Perſians* were mightily pleaſed to ſee how exactly I ſurvey'd every thing; I then thanked the Gentleman who had charge of this monument, and deſired him to give me ſomebody to carry me to the other, which he accordingly did in the moſt obliging manner in the world. In our way thither, we rode over a mountain; but we were obliged to alight from our horſes to the eaſtward, where it was ſo very ſteep we were often under a neceſſity of laying hold on the rock to prevent our falling. It is upon the declivity of this rock that the tomb of *Tiribbaba* ſtands. You there go down three ſteps into a ſquare as broad as the building, which is twenty eight foot in front, and looks upon the ſteepeſt part of the mountain. The frontiſpiece of it is of great beauty, and conſiſts of large ſmoothed ſtones. There are two windows which penetrate three palms into the wall: That on the left is glazed in the middle, and has a ſtone lattice, which ſeems to be all of one piece; to this they have faſtned ſeveral ſlips of various colours. The window on the right is of great ſtones, which are four palms and an half broad, and eight high; and you go up three ſteps to get to the portal, which is ſhut with a wooden gate. From thence you go into a ſmall ſquare apartment, with pretty nitches on all ſides, and a ſmall

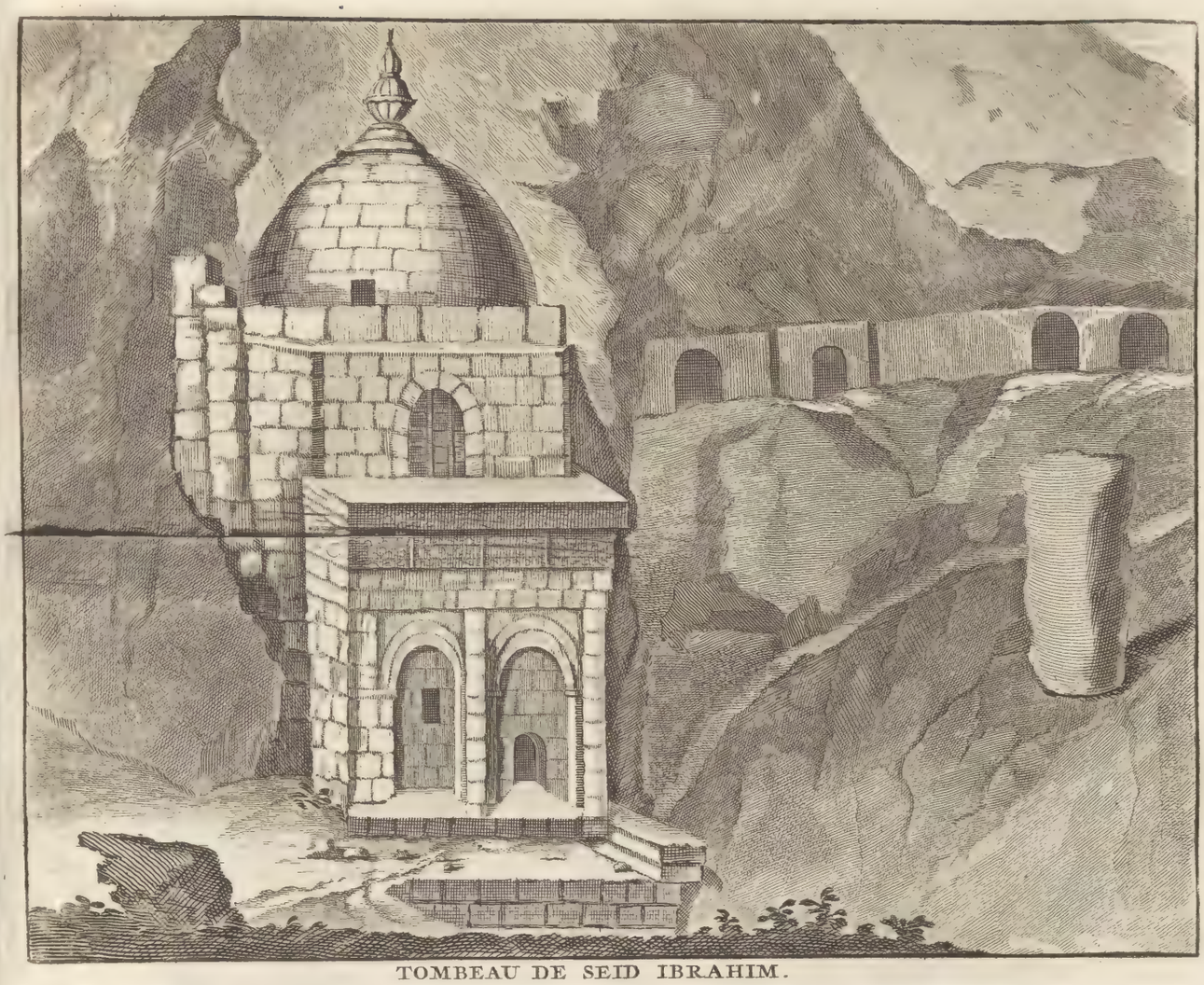
Tomb of Tiribbaba.

1703. dome; it is not above five foot in extent from one ſide to the other below. The wall on the right hand, as you go in, joins to the rock. On the left hand you go up by three ſteps, one of which is higher than the other two; by theſe you go up into an apartment which is fourteen foot long, and ten foot broad, with a vaulted roof about thirty ſix foot high. Oppoſite to the door there is a flight of fifteen ſteps, the firſt of which is high, the ſecond broad, and the reſt moſt of them of one ſtone only, and about thirteen inches thick. This flight of ſteps is two foot and an half broad, and leads up to an apartment adorned with eight nitches, with a great window in front, and a wooden lattice, and a dome over head. This room is covered with mats, and has three doors. There are alſo two openings on the right hand, one of which is a great nitch, ſhut in by a kind of window of wrought ſtone; and that on the left of this ſhuts with a well wrought folding door, which, however is but four foot high and two foot broad; ſo that you muſt bend yourſelf to go thro' it. You have alſo here a ſmall grotto hewn out of the rock, againſt which this monument is built, and in the corner againſt the ſame rock, a ſmall ſtone baluſtrade in a ſemi-circular form, of which the other half naturally comes out. This is the place where the ſaint is at reſt upon his knees after their manner: this is what they ſay themſelves, to which they add, that he is covered with a white veil, dreſſed in grey, and in the poſture which he was the moſt naturally uſed to in his life-time, without being altered in the leaſt. This is a favour obtained of heaven for him by St. *Ibrahim* who was his diſciple. This apartment is fourteen foot ſquare from ſide to ſide, and is very much adorned, having two ſmall columns on one ſide of each nitch to the right and left, with a ſtep raiſed two foot. This which is before the window in the front is about three foot deep, and that where reſts the Saint is ſtill more: the height of the vault is about twenty one foot. From thence you go up a flight of twelve ſteps into a ſmall apartment on the left hand, and on the right hand of you, you have four or five broken ſteps, and a little door thro' which you muſt creep upon your belly to get to the top of the building, which is crowned with a lofty dome, around which you may go by three places among the rocks. The paſſage of the firſt is two foot and an half, of the ſecond two foot, and one before, where there was an opening to the front. We then went down the mountain by a path more convenient than the firſt, and we went up another eminence over againſt the firſt, there to ſee the other tomb; but we there only found a bare wall without the leaſt traces of any monuments, from whence that place borrows its name. It is ſurrounded with a poor ſquare wall, from whence you ſee the fine tomb we have been deſcribing, and of which you have the repreſentation in the following plate. In the ſide I came by, I obſerved ſeveral grottos hewn out of the rock. 1703.

About four in the afternoon, I went from *Pyrmaraes*, and it was about eight before I arrived at *Samachi*. The next day the *Armenians* entertained me in one of their gardens without the town, where they dreſſed their victuals among the trees, of which there were ſeveral ſorts, and among the reſt, willows of an extraordinary ſize, quince-trees, mulberry-trees, and others unknown with us, and which I ſhall dilate on hereafter.

As we were returning, the *Armenians* began to ſing and play by the way, after the manner of their country, and even to drink to the ſound of a drum; after which they went to viſit ſome of their friends in the *Caravanſera*, ſo that it was late before they returned home. Now it happ'ned that four *Armenians*, who had been all this time left to take care of the houſes, were murdered in their ſleep by

1703. 1703.



TOMBEAU DE SEID IBRAHIM.

Murder of four Armenians.

ſome *Perſians*: Whereupon two of the *Armenians* in our *Caravanſera* went to complain of it to a *Perſian* Lord, who promiſed the villains ſhould be puniſhed according to their demerits, in caſe they were diſcovered.

Review of the horſe.

Upon the *twenty ſixth*, there was a review of ſome *Perſian* horſe in the great court of the *Khan*'s palace. This review had been partly made the evening before, and the reſt was put off to the next day. It was performed by three hundred troopers at a time, armed compleatly as for the field. Some had lances, bows and arrows, others had fire-arms, and ſome had bows and arrows only; indeed theſe laſt had canes with a button at the end, which they uſe with great dexterity. Under their veſts they had coats of mail and braſſets, and little morions in form of caps upon their heads, with viſors; and were perfectly well dreſſed after the *Perſian* manner, and eſpecially the officers, who had veſts of gold and ſilver brocade. There were ſome of theſe Gentlemen who had ſix or ſeven led horſes; and private men that had one, beſides another the ſervant that led him rode upon, and another ſervant on foot. The *Khan* was ſeated at the end of the court upon a place raiſed up above the reſt, and the horſe was in ſmall diviſions at the other end, expecting

1703. ing to be called each by his name; upon which they advanced upon the gallop, by two and two, ſometimes three and three, and ſometimes four, up to the place where the *Khan* was ſeated, and having been inrolled, they filed off another way. The review being over, the trumpets ſounded a retreat, and this was done in two hours time, and ſure it was a ſight well worth the ſeeing. They went thro' ſome motions or parts of exerciſe with a very peculiar grace; tho' indeed there were ſome who were not ſo exact and adroit as the reſt, either from want of experience in themſelves, or uſe in their horſes. As to the reſt, thoſe who acquitted themſelves the beſt, were rewarded with a certain prize, in preſence of the chief Lords of the country who waited upon the *Khan*, together with a great crowd of ſpectators. The pay of theſe troops is very conſiderable, and particularly the pay of the officers. Every private trooper has yearly five or ſix hundred florins each, and they augment their pay in proportion, as they deſerve it by extraordinary ſervices in times of action; beſides that it is no unuſual thing to make them preſents. The ſons of theſe cavaliers are paid alſo as ſuch; tho' indeed they are obliged to furniſh a man at their own expence, in times of war, when they happen to be under age. At this review there were children on horſeback that were not above eight or ten years old, with a ſervant at the ſide of them. 1703. *Pay of the troops.*

CHAP. XXXIV.

Departure from Samachi. *Courſe of the* Kur *and the* Araxes. *Manner of winding off ſilk. Arrival at* Ardevil.

I Took my leave that day to go and join the *Caravan*, which was upon the very point of ſetting forward. My companion *Jacob*, *John de David* took another road, that he might go through ſome trading towns where he had buſineſs, and the two other *Armenians* promiſed to follow me in a day or two. I met with ſome fertile grounds in the mountains to the ſouthward of the town, ſome ſprings and houſes, and at ſunſet I came up with the *Caravan* beyond the village of *Nogdi*. The next day I went to take an airing upon the top of a mountain, from whence I deſcended to a beautiful plain we were to croſs, and at the foot of the mountain I took notice of ſome fine running ſprings of admirable water. One of the guides of the *Caravan* came to us in the evening to let us know that it would move very early the next morning. As we went over the mountains, I for the firſt time ſaw pomegranate trees in the village of *Langebus*, as well as other fruit trees, and a vine loaded with grapes; its ſtem was ſhort and thick, and not above an ell higher than the ground, a thing I had never before ſeen in my life. I there alſo ſaw a plant in bloſſom, from the roots of which there came out filaments a fathom long, and ſtretching along the ſurface; its fruit was as yet green, and looked like little cucumbers. When it is ripe, it is of a purple without, and a fine red within; many of them grow upon one plant. I drew one of them with its fruit, which the *Turks* call *Tje-beer*, and others *Kourack*; it is diſtinguiſhed in the following plate by the letter *A*. In this ſame place I found another ſort, whoſe fruit is red, and has ſmall cods or blad-

1703. 1703.

bladders: It grows like the other, many upon a plant, which is higher by a foot and an half or two foot. This fruit is called *Doofsjandernage*, and is of the ſize of thoſe diſtinguiſhed by the letter *B*. After we had travelled over the mountains of *Derbent*, we came down into the fine plain, as mentioned juſt now, and extends beyond the reach of the ſight; but it was all parched up by the heat of the ſun, and the great droughts. The inhabitants of the country call it *Kraegh*. When you are at the end of the mountains, you have an imperfect ſight of the *Kur*. About ten in the morning, when we had travelled two leagues and an half, we halted in this plain; and there we ſtaid that day, and the next, and had very fair weather. We there had *Turks* and *Arabians* in cabbins, or hutts built of ſtraw, who furniſhed us with milk, melons, and the like; but as there was no ſuch thing as wood here, we were obliged to make fires of the camels dung wherewith to dreſs our victuals. They always ſtop in ſuch places where there is the beſt paſture for the camels and horſes. But the moſt inconvenient circumſtance there is that the water is all foul, ſo that it muſt be left to ſettle ſome time, an hour or two, or ſo, to fine, which is quite terrible, when in the midſt of theſe great heats, a man is ready to choak with thirſt; nor is it poſſible to take with one a ſufficient ſtock of wine, becauſe of

1703. the great number of bales a *Caravan* is incumbered with; ſo that in this caſe a man is obliged to make a virtue of neceſſity, and to take up with curdled milk, which they there call *Touvert*, and which they put into a cloth bag, through which the whey runs off. They then, to quench thirſt, mix theſe curds with water, a practice very common with the *Turks*; ſo that you have both meat and drink at once. It is eaſily kept, and ſerves inſtead of cream, when mixed with ſugar. We did not leave this plain till the *thirtieth* in the evening, and travelled away to the ſouthward acroſs this plain. We there met with another *Caravan*, and ſome *Turks* under tents. At break of day, we got to the village of *Sgawad*, to the weſtward of the *Kur*, upon an eminence, on the banks of which we halted. This village is of great extent, and contains a great number of gardens full of white mulberry-trees and melons. The next day I went half a league to the conflux of the *Cyrus* and *Araxes*, famous rivers, now called the *Kur* and *Aras*.

The Kur *and* Aras.

I obſerved in this place that the *Aras* came from the ſouth, whence it derives its ſource in the mountains of *Algeron*, and the *Kur* from the north of *Tilvies*, where it runs by the town of that name. Having united their waters together, they go away towards the north-eaſt, beyond *Sgawad*, from thence they continue their courſe eaſt, and go winding away till they are loſt in the *Caſpian*. For the reſt, it would be no eaſy taſk to trace out their intricate meanders. I drew as well as I could the place where theſe two rivers meet, as you may ſee in numb. 45, where they divide the country of *Mogan* from *Media* or *Shirwan*. The *Araxes* is diſtinguiſhed by *A*, the *Kur* by *B*, and their united ſtreams by *C*.

We ſent our bales over to the other ſide in ſeveral boats to the village, where we had halted, and our horſes and camels ſwam over, which amounted to a two days work. As the waters were very low at that time, the bottom of the river was to be ſeen in ſeveral places, and a great bank of ſand in the middle, on the ſide of which, however, it was very deep, and where the camels were obliged to ſwim over. When the waters are low here, they commonly make a bridge of boats, made faſt together by a large iron chain, which they caſt off when the river ſwells and widens; but it was not yet ready. On the other ſide there are two or three ſmall houſes made of reed, where they wind off ſilk. I had the curioſity to go into them, and found that at this work they require no more than the aſſiſtance of one perſon at a time. There was, on the right hand going in, a ſtove which they heated from without, and in which there was a great caldron of almoſt boiling water, in which were the cods of the worms. The perſon that wound off the ſilk ſat upon this ſtove, on one ſide of the caldron, and with a ſmall ſtick frequently removed the cods; in this ſmall cottage I alſo obſerved a large wheel of eight or nine palms in diameter, and which was fixed between two poſts, which he turned with his foot as he ſat upon the ſtove, juſt as we turn a ſpinning wheel; and before the ſtove there were two ſticks, upon which there was a reed, round which turned two ſmall pullies which guide the ſilk from the cods to this wheel. They aſſured me that this manner and method of winding off ſilk is the common one all over *Perſia*; and confeſſed it muſt be that they this way do it with ſurpriſing eaſe and diſpatch. The cods, however, were not very large.

Manner of winding off ſilk.

Moſt of the trees I obſerved hereabouts were young, and were very ſhort ſtemmed, that they may always have leaves upon young branches, the worms not caring for the leaves of old wood. Theſe gardens are ſurrounded with willows and alders, and are divided from each other by partitions of reed, as well as the houſes, tho' there are

ſome

LES RIVIERES

1703. ſome of them ſurrounded with earth: there was a row of them after this manner along the river ſide. You have the repreſentation of this river and of the manner of carrying the goods over it in numb. 46. Proviſions were there extremely cheap; a fowl was to be had for two-pence, a melon for a penny, and the reſt in proportion.

Upon the *ſecond* of *September*, there arrived a *Caravan* from *Ardevil*; it had been ten days upon the road; and in the evening before another from *Tebries*, which had been a fortnight on its way hither. The two *Armenian* merchants I have mentioned, and a *German* I had, came and joined me here: this laſt, who was out of order, had fallen from his horſe in the night, and had been left behind fainting in the plain for ſeveral hours. I ſent ſome people in queſt of him, but they returned without any tidings of the poor man, ſo that I was obliged to ſend back a ſecond time after him when it was day; and theſe had the good luck to find him, and brought him on with them; and as the horſe he rode ſtood by him all the time he was down, he had the good luck, into the bargain, to loſe nothing; but his fall had ſo weakned him, that it was as much as ever he could do to keep pace with the *Caravan*.

This part of the country, which is low, is full of a paſture, which is a foot or two high, and which the *Armenians* call *Poes*, and the *Turks* *Oofſiaen*, which is moſt admirable for camels, who want nothing elſe when they can have that: Cows feed on it alſo, but horſes will not touch it. Upon the *third*, the reſt of our goods croſſed the river, together with the beaſts of burden, and we loſt two camels upon this occaſion. The horſes ſwam over, thoſe in the boats holding them faſt by ropes. We ourſelves croſſed it in the afternoon, and being now in the country of *Mogan*, I there a ſecond time drew the courſe of the river, and the country of *Shirwan*, as you have it numb. 47. The village we have been ſpeaking of, is ſo covered over with trees, that there is hardly any diſtinguiſhing the houſes. The two other guides of the *Caravan* joined us the next day. In the mean time, I went to take a view of the two rivers on this ſide, and was above an hour before I could get to the *Aras*, the banks were ſo thick of brambles, reeds, and other lofty vegetables; beſides that being attended by no body but my ſervant, I had not the good luck to find a beaten path, nor to meet with any body that could put us into one: At laſt, however, we got to a ſight of the river, and to ſome old empty houſes, where we met with no ſoul. On the contrary, we were obſtructed by a deep ditch, which obliged us to look out for another way to bring us nearer to the river, which after all we could not compaſs becauſe of the height and ſteepneſs of the banks. From where we were, however, we had a diſtinct view of the two rivers, and I took notice that the *Aras* came a little higher from the South-weſt, and that it was much narrower in that place than the *Kur*, not being, at the utmoſt, as well as I could judge, above forty or forty-five paces broad, whereas when joined together, they are above one hundred, and particularly near the village of *Sgawad*, which is in thirty nine degrees, fifty four minutes of northern latitude. I thought I ſhould have met with a good deal of game here, but I ſaw none at all; there grows a good deal of liquorice here. I came in again with the caravan at ſun-ſet, and at break of day we began to move after the camels, which were gone before. We travelled to the ſouth weſtward, and left the *Aras* on our right hand, and we halted in a plain three leagues from thence, where we ſaw a ſmall lake, which, in part, goes round a little hill, and ſtretches farther up into the country. This place is called *Celſan*, and is but half a league from the place where the *Aras* turns off to the right

Paſture for camels.

1703. hand. In this lake when the water which comes from the *Aras*, is high, they take prodigious quantities of fiſh and tortoiſes, ſome of which we took were a foot in diameter, and ſome upon the ſhore. After the ſun was ſet we held on our way, and had ſix hundred camels in our caravan, and three hundred horſes. In the night we croſſed a very level country, full of a bitter and very lofty herb or plant, called *Jaſſian*, of ſo venomous a quality, that if cattle but lay their mouth to it they die immediately, but great care is taken to prevent them from touching it: But the very worſt of all is, that there is no water to be met with here for a ſtretch of twelve hours. We were all night in croſſing this place, and at break of day we ſtopped by the ſide of a brook which comes out of the *Aras* to the weſt, and loſes itſelf in the country a little farther. It was but three years that the *Khan* or governor of that country, who takes up his abode in theſe plains ſome months in ſummer, and in the winter reſides at *Ardevil*, had cauſed it to be dug. The *Aras* is but two leagues diſtant from it, and this brook is but five or ſix foot broad; the water of it is pretty good to drink, though ſomewhat foul by reaſon of the ſand, but it fines when left to ſettle, and taſtes well enough. On one ſide of this brook there are ſome houſes, and ſome cabbins made of ruſh, which have been here about three years. This place is called *Anbaer*, and is the only village in all theſe parts. I here met with a longiſh kind of water-melon, white and very ſweet within, and different from all I had ever ſeen elſewhere: the ſeed of it is not black, like that of the reſt, and is very ſmall, and of a cheſnut colour. I here took notice alſo of a fruit they call *Chamama*, or *Breaſt of a Woman*, becauſe it is in that ſhape; it is very wholeſome, and of a very pleaſant ſcent. It is not very unlike the white melons, but it is firmer, and nearly of the colour of the *China* orange; ſome of them are alſo of the ſame ſize, and the *Armenians* told me, they grow alſo at *Iſpahan*, where they are in great requeſt, and where they carry them in the hand by way of noſegay. Some of them are of the ſize of a ſmall melon, and ſpotted with red, yellow and green; the ſeed of theſe is ſmall and white; there are others which are all red. It is a grateful refreſhment which abounds in this country, and which comes ſo cheap, that it does not coſt you above an halfpenny or a penny. Other melons are there alſo very cheap, but they are not exquiſite in their taſte. 1703.

Great tortoiſes.

Venomous herb.

New brook.

Agreeable water-melons.

Pleaſant fruit.

An hour before the ſetting of the ſun, we proceeded upon our journey, travelling to the ſouth eaſtward, and half a league from thence croſſed a ſmall river, five foot broad and eighteen inches deep. A horſe laden with ſilk fell down here, the reſt got ſafe over without any accident. In the night alſo we went over the plain or heath of *Mokar*, and upon the *ſeventh*, at two in the morning, we entered into mountains whoſe ſands are as hard as gravel. An hour after ſun riſe we halted in a plain ſurrounded with hills and mountains, upon the banks of a river of clear water, called *Baſcharu'tſhei*, or *Balaru*, whoſe ſpring is in the country of *Talis*, and whence it runs till it empties itſelf into the *Caſpian* ſea; but it does not abound much with water at preſent, being ſupplied but by two ſprings which come from the mountains: The country round about bears the name of this river. For a conſiderable time before there had been no caravans this way, becauſe of the numbers of robbers, which infeſted theſe parts; but about three years ago the *Khan*'s ſon offered the King to clear this country of robbers, upon pain of death, provided he would confer on him his father's government; the Prince hearkned to this, the new *Khan* repaired to his government, and acquitted himſelf perfectly well of

Robbers rooted out.

1703. his promiſe; for he cut them all off, neither ſparing women or children, ſo that you now travel there without any danger.

Upon the *eighth*, an hour before break of day, we proceeded on our journey, and at three were got into a plain, beyond the mountains, and near a village called *Sigomoerat*, conſiſting of ten or twelve ruſh cabbins, where we halted to wait for two camels which had ſtrayed. In the morning we met with ſeveral *Perſian* peaſants, together with their wives, their children, and their cattle: Theſe people are in the mountains during the winter, and during ſummer in the plains; they had the evening before brought us down forage from the mountains, which ſeem to be green; they are rather ſandy than rocky. In the night there fell a deal of wet, and the rain was attended with violent claps of thunder. Three hours before day, two *Armenians* and myſelf went on, but the night was ſo dark, we could hardly ſee before us, and upon obſerving, that the caravan did not follow us, we went back again to it, therewith to wait the appearance of day. As ſoon as ever it appeared, we moved on to the village of *Barſan*, on one ſide of which we halted in a plain incompaſſed round with high lands, and watered by the river we juſt now mentioned. As we were very wet, we would have dried ourſelves in the village, but the cabbins were ſo thoroughly poor and wretched, that we were glad to go back again to our tents; though the village is tolerably large, and under the ſhelter of many trees. It rained ſo much all night, that our bales, which ſtood upon the ground, floated upon the water. The weather preventing us from moving forward, we returned a ſecond time to the village, where we were obliged to change our quarters twice, not finding ſhelter from the rain, becauſe of the opening theſe cabbins have at top, to let in the light. In ſhort, we were obliged to dry our things by a fire made of cows and camels dung. Upon the *eleventh* of the month the weather changed for fair, and we ſent our camels before us in the evening, and followed them three hours before day, with the weather tolerably clear and light, though we ſaw neither moon nor ſtar. Half an hour afterwards we croſſed the ſmall river of *Barſand*, and the ſame we were forced to do fourteen or fifteen times together in the ſpace of an hour. After this we went over ſome very high mountains, covered with ſnow, where we found it extremely cold, tho' at the ſame time there fell a ſort of a drizzling rain. The next day we got into the plains, near the village of *Noeraloe*, conſiſting of ſome cabbins and tents of *Tartars*. We there bought good fowls for three-pence a piece, and eggs for a penny a dozen; beſides that, we had there good milk and good butter. When we had travelled half a league farther, we halted between the mountains, in a fine level, upon the banks of the little river of *Siloof*, whoſe waters are both clear and good. The hills and mountains there alſo are very pleaſant, and full of villages. The weather grew better about noon; the ſun diſperſed the clouds, and we moved on again at midnight, by a fine moon-light, over hill and dale. The next day we halted upon a ſort of an eminence, five leagues from the place where we had paſſed the night, and two leagues from *Ardevil*, where we had ſight of lofty mountains covered with ſnow. About nine at night we puſhed on by a fine moon-light, which laſted not long, but was ſucceeded by a thick fog, which continued till morning, and made us ſtraggle out of our way. Early in the morning however we got to the village of *Adſgarneloe*; we went over a bridge of ſix arches, under one of which runs the river of *Goeroetſjou*, or the *Dry River*. About ten in the morning, the caravan halted in the village, and we went on to the city, where we diſmounted at the *Armenian Caravanſera*. The fog con- 1703.

1695. tinued till the *fifteenth* in the morning, and then it diſperſed, and becauſe we were to make ſome ſtay at *Ardevil*, I ſent for my baggage from the village. 1703.

CHAP. XXXV.

Sumptuous Mezar, *or Mauſoleum, of* Sefi, *King of* Perſia. *Deſcription of* Ardevil. *Fine tomb near* Kelgeran. *Departure from* Ardevil. *Arrival at* Samgal.

AS I was extremely impatient to have a ſight of the magnificent Mauſoleum of *Sefi* and ſome other Kings of *Perſia*, who are buried here, I ſhall ſpeak of that before I begin to ſay any thing of the city itſelf. Theſe tombs then are near the *Meydoen*, a ſquare of pretty large extent; the entrance into them is ſpacious, and of a fine ſort of architecture, vaulted over head, and the ſtones painted of various colours. You go in by a wooden gate, and enter into a fine long gallery, upon the top of the walls of which are ſeveral niches curiouſly painted with blue, green, yellow, and white, and at the end of this gallery you come to a door plated over with ſilver, which admits you into a magnificent apartment, on the right hand of which there is a great hall crowned with a dome, without any pillars to ſupport it, like that of the *Rotunda* at *Rome*, but not ſo large. This hall, which is oppoſite to the library and a chappel, is covered with carpets; and on the left hand, oppoſite to the entrance of the dome, there is another lofty apartment, with great glaſs windows. From thence you go through another door plated over with ſilver, into a court which is nearly a ſquare, and whoſe wall is about eighteen foot high, with three niches on each ſide, painted with blue and various other colours, and adorned with flowers and foliages in carved work. On the right hand of you, you have ſeveral tombs, with raiſed coffins, ſome of which are greatly ornamented, and others, on the left hand, divided by a ſmall wall, where they ſay are the aſhes of many Princes deſcended from the royal families of the country, againſt the wall of that of *Sefi*. To the right and left of this court there is an apartment raiſed three foot from the ground, and vaulted over head in the manner of domes. They are partitioned in the front by a wooden baluſtrade towards the court, and in one of the corners of this court, on the left hand, is a great folding door, with a baluſtrade covered over with ſilver, and with a chain of maſſy ſilver. Here you muſt pull off your ſhoes to go in, nor preſume to touch the ſill, which is of white marble: The like there are to all the other apartments whoſe entrance is covered with mats. Here we found ſeveral *Perſians* ſitting to the right and left upon ſtone benches, and to theſe is committed the care of this ſepulchre, and to theſe muſt you give a preſent of money before you go any farther. When it happens that the preſent you offer to them is not thought enough, they fail not to be ſo free as to tell you ſo, and ſometimes demand five or ſix times as much; but when they find that the curious viſitant is not in the humour to give them what they would have, and is about to put on his ſhoes to go back again, they begin to grow civil, and rather than take nothing, they accept of what you think fit to give them.

Sumptuous tomb.

Tombs.

1703. them. When you are got through this door, you come into a ſmall vaulted place in the manner of an half dome; from thence you, on the right hand, go through a door adorned with a baluſtrade of gold, or elſe of ſilver richly gilt, and come into a magnificent room full of candles or of lamps of gold and ſilver, ſome of which are an ell in circumference, and ſo many in number, that there is no counting them. The floor here was covered with carpets, and on each hand full of ſmall reading deſks, with large books upon them. This room is fifty two foot long, but thirty four broad: The Mauſoleum of *Sefi* is at the end of this place, raiſed upon three ſteps, and the lamp which hangs over it is of fine maſſy gold, and of the largeſt ſize. Beyond this you ſee a baluſtrade which is alſo of maſſy gold, raiſed upon a ſtep, round, and of the thickneſs of an inch, which is ſix foot and nine inches long, excluſive of the fronton of the door, and nine foot ten inches high. This door has two folds, through which you go into a ſmall round Chappel, in the middle of which you ſee the tomb of *Sefi*, made of marble and covered with a magnificent pall of gold brocade, and crowned at each corner with a great golden vaſe; and this chappel is full of ſilver lamps, intermixed with others of gold. This tomb is nine foot long, four foot broad, and three foot high. There were two before it, one of which was that of a child, and two behind, five in all, which are thoſe of *Sefi* himſelf, of King *Fedredin*, a ſon of *Sefi*'s; of King *Tzenid*, and of a ſon of *Fedredin*'s, called *Soltan Aider*, who was flead by the *Turks*, another of a ſon of *Tzenid*'s, and that of King *Aider*. Every night they light up the lamps about theſe tombs, and two great tapers, which they put into candleſticks of maſſy gold. Over this tomb there is a ſmall dome covered over with gold, and another on one ſide of it, incruſted with blue and green glazed ſtones. Some authors affirm, it is unlawful

Tomb of Sefi.

Other tombs.

for any layman, not excepting even the King himſelf, to go in at the golden door to get at the tomb of *Sefi*, but I experienced the contrary; indeed I did but juſt ſtep in, without preſuming to go any farther, well aware of the veneration they have for this place. For the reſt you muſt have money ready at every ſtep, though you have ſufficiently paid upon your firſt admiſſion, you muſt have your hand in your purſe at the door of every room. But to do them juſtice, they anſwer very civilly to the queſtions you aſk them, and never hurry you; on the contrary, I thought it did not pleaſe them a little, to obſerve with what accuracy I ſurveyed what they ſhowed me. 1703.

At the entrance into this ſumptuous apartment, you have, on the left of you, ſeveral ſmall chambers which are ſhut up, in which they aſſured me there were other tombs of Kings and Queens, among others, thoſe of King *Iſhmaël*, the ſon of *Aider*; of King *Tamar*, the ſon of *Iſhmaël*; of King *Iſhmaël* II. the ſon of *Tamar*; of King *Mohammed Khodabend*, the ſon of *Iſhmaël*; of *Iſhmaël Mirſa*; of *Hemſa Miſſa*, and of the brothers of King *Abbas*, the ſon of *Khodabend*. Theſe tombs are deſtitute of ornaments.

Tombs of ſeveral kings.

As you go out of the fine hall of this building, you turn on the right hand into a place which leads to the kitchen, the door of which alſo is plated over with ſilver; yet this ſame kitchen, which is ſpacious enough, does by no means correſpond with the magnificence of the door. In the midſt of it there are two great wells, and in the wall, which is of a good height, there are ſeveral holes filled with pots and kettles, and beneath ſome large ſtoves. Here they dreſs victuals for thoſe who have the care and guard of the ſepulchre, beſides that they every night diſtribute *Peloe* to ſome hundreds of poor people.

Charity to the poor.

Having thus ſatisfied my curioſity, I returned to the *Meydoen*, to ſee the King's gardens, which are divided

1703. vided from each other by a wall on one ſide of the tombs. King *Seſi* there formerly took up his abode, in a ſtone building which is now falling into ruins. There are here ſtill to be ſeen two apartments provided with chimnies, in which, they will have it, this Prince formerly reſided; there are ſeveral others beſides, and a ſmall bath, but without any ornaments. The firſt garden, which is tolerably large, is ill kept and irregular, tho' well ſtored with fruits; but there are here neither flowers nor plants worth the notice; it is, in ſeveral places, watered by ſprings which croſs it up and down. The ſecond garden has no building in it, nor is it ſo large as the firſt, though the trees there are higher than in the former. Upon the whole, no body would ever have taken it for a royal garden.

Leaving this garden, I went to divert my ſelf with fiſhing, in a ſmall river which comes down from the mountains. I there met with *Conduit.* a conduit or aqueduct for the conveyance of water; it was made of earth, and raiſed ſome feet above the ground, and on the top of it there was a gutter for the water to run in, and beneath, thro' a houſe, built on purpoſe to convey it to the town, where it ſerves to water the gardens. It falls like a torrent, beyond this houſe, into this ſmall river which runs through the country. We caught only three or four ſmall fiſh, which I preſerved in ſpirits. The next day I rode out on horſeback half a league to the ſouthward of the town, to draw a proſpect of it on that ſide; it was upon a hill I took my ſtand, the only place from whence I could have a view of it, becauſe of the trees which every where elſe ſhade it; and indeed it is ſeen imperfectly enough even from thence. Mean time a ſhower of rain falling down upon me, I was obliged to return before I had been able to do any thing towards the completion of my deſign: Upon the way I ſaw an houſe where there is a water-mill for grinding of corn; the water that drives it falls from 1703. the top of the higheſt hills to the weſtward of the town: theſe hills are always covered with ſnow, and the water runs through a canal raiſed of earth for that purpoſe; this water falls with great violence beneath the houſe, and ſpreads itſelf over the flat country to the ſouth-eaſt, where the other conduit is, which I mentioned juſt now. Theſe houſes have a mill beneath, and two great milſtones which continually turn upon a piece of hollow wood, where the corn goes through a wooden pipe under the milſtone, and the flower comes out at the ſides. The river runs near this houſe under a great and lofty bridge, of five arches, the lower part of which is paved with large ſtones.

Let us now proceed to ſpeak of *Situation of* Ardevil. the ſituation of the city, which they indifferently call *Ardevil* or *Ardebil*; and is in the north of *Perſia*, and eaſt of the province of *Sherwan* in the ancient *Media*; to the ſouth of the *Caſpian* ſea, and to the eaſt of the town of *Tauris*. The buildings here are finer than thoſe at *Samachi*, though of the very ſame ſort of materials. The *Bazars* here are alſo finer, and better covered; but they deal here very little in gold ſtuffs, or jewels, as they are pretended to have done formerly, and as they do in other places. They have here a great number of *Moſchs* adorned with domes, the moſt conſiderable of which is that of *Mu-zyd*, *Mu-zhit*, or *Mazjit Adine*, or that of *Sunday*; it is on *Chief* the eaſt ſide of the town, and with- *Moſch.* in the wall of it, and being on a ſmall eminence, is conſpicuous at a diſtance off. It is divided into ſeveral parts where they perform their ſervice; the chief of them is tolerably large and round, under a dome, which is raiſed upon a round wall ſomewhat low, which riſes from the body of the building in the nature of a ſteeple. Before this *Moſch* there is a reſervoir or baſon, ſupplied with water from the hills, whence it comes in pipes laid under

50.

A
B
C

1703. ground; and this water ſerves to refreſh thoſe who in great numbers come here to perform their devotions: The reſt are by no means ſo conſiderable as this. There are alſo many *hamans*, or *bagnio's* in this town. For the reſt, there are here but three or four large ſtreets, where the chief ſhops are, the reſt are not worth ſpeaking of; the houſes are flat at top, and naſty to look at. There are not here ſo many caravanſeras as at *Samachi:* The *Indians* have three, tho' they are in no great numbers here; as for the *Chineſe*, they have none at all, and indeed trade flags here very much. This town in many parts of it abounds with lofty alders and lindens, and the river runs on one ſide of it. The high-ways are there alſo planted with rows of young trees, which in time cannot fail to have a very pleaſant effect. The fineſt place in and about this town is the *Meydoen*, or ſquare, where ſtands the Mauſoleum of *Sefi*; to the right and left you have little houſes inhabited by poor artificers. Moſt of the houſes in this city, which are not in the *Bazars*, have the pleaſure and convenience of gardens full of fruit trees; and there are ſome large ſpots in the out parts of the town, where the houſes are at a diſtance from each other, which are full of trees. And hence it is that it is of a large extent, with a number of ſaliant angles; ſo that it is much larger than *Samachi*, though it does not contain ſuch a number of houſes. It ſtands in the midſt of a great plain, which is three good leagues in extent from one end to the other, and ſurrounded by lofty mountains, the higheſt of which, and upon which the ſnow continually lies, is called *Sevalan*, or *Sebelahu*, it is to the weſt, north-weſt of the town. That of *Chilan* is to the eaſt, or ſouth-eaſt. There is one the ſame at *Dervies*, called *Sahand*, and a fourth not far from *Hamadan*, which they call *Alvand*, and which is the loftieſt of them all: They are called the *Brothers*, becauſe they have a reſemblance of each other. In the mountains in the neighbourhood of this town there are ſeveral hot baths, very much eſteemed among them; one of them is but two leagues from thence, a ſecond three, and others farther off. When I firſt came to this place, I had much ado to go along the ſtreets for the crowds of thoſe who, tempted by the novelty of my *Dutch* habit, ran about to ſee me; and this is what happened to me when I went to viſit the ſepulchre of *Sefi*, where they thought the cudgel was abſolutely neceſſary to keep the curious multitude from about me; for they wanted to go in with me. And this was an inconvenience I could not be free from when I was in the caravanſera where I lodged, and where a *Perſian* offered money to have a ſight of me.

1703. *Mountains called the* Brothers. *Hot baths.*

In the midſt of all this, I drew a proſpect of the town, from a ſmall eminence, near the bridge I have before mentioned, which is on one ſide, to the ſouth-weſt; you have it repreſented, in number 48, ſuch as it is to be ſeen from without. The domes of the ſepulchre of *Sefi* are diſtinguiſhed by the letter A: There are but three of them to be ſeen; for the fourth, which is covered with gold, is not to be beheld from that place, becauſe it is ſmaller and lower than the reſt. The letter B diſtinguiſhes the great moſch of *Adine*, and C, a bridge of eight arches, upon the river which croſſes the plain. No more is to be ſeen, becauſe of the height of the trees the town is ſurrounded with. You have a repreſentation of the bridge of five arches in number 49.

Upon the *ſixth of October*, I went to the village of *Kelgeran*, which is a good half league to the northward of the town: You paſs by the ſepulchre of *Sefi* to go thither, from whence the way is full of alders and lindens on each ſide of a ſmall river. This is the habitation of moſt of the *Armenians*, who have here two ſmall and very dark churches.

1703. As you go out of the town you have a great road planted with trees on each ſide, which leads to a garden of the King's, incloſed with a mud wall, tolerably large, tho' as ill kept as thoſe we have mentioned already. There are here, however, pretty good fruits, and eſpecially apples, pears, and ſmall plumbs; but the flowers are quite of the ordinary ſorts. There is another over-againſt this with a ruined building, full of various apartments. As you go into the village you ſee the tomb of *Seid Tzeibrail*, the father of *Sefi*, where are alſo depoſited the aſhes of *Seid Sala*, the father of *Tzeibrail*, and thoſe of *Seid Kudbeddin*, his grandfather. This tomb is in a garden ſurrounded with a mud wall with two great gates: That behind comes out to the road, and that in the front is in the village. Again, this tomb is ſquare, indifferently lofty, and caſed with ſmall ſtones. At top there is a round tower, ſomewhat low, which ſupports a green dome, inlaid with gold and blue ornaments, ſurmounted with gold balls. There are ſix windows on each ſide of the walls, the higheſt of which are of exquiſite workmanſhip, and painted and ornamented like the dome, and thoſe beneath have an iron grate and ſhutters within. Beneath the corniſh there are three ſmall cavities adorned with variety of colours, and in the middle of the building behind, a wooden gate, with a ſtep to aſcend by. There is alſo above this door an ornament in form of an half vault, with three ſmall windows. I found this door ſhut, and a fine portal to that in the front. As I could ſee no body about this ſepulchre, I drew a repreſentation thro' the crevices of the gate, ſuch as you ſee it in number 50. Near the front of this building, in the village, you ſee a baſon on the level of the ground, which is ſixteen feet broad, and fourteen feet long. You go up to the door of this building, by ſix ſteps, and you muſt pull off your ſhoes to go over the ſill of it, as the ceremony is at the ſepulchre of *Sefi*, and moſt of thoſe who pay a viſit to this tomb kiſs it. When you are come into the firſt apartment, which has a fine glaſs window aloft, and whoſe floor is covered with carpets, you ſee thro' a ſecond door, oppoſite to the firſt, this tomb raiſed ſix foot high, and in the midſt of a fine apartment; it is made of wood, and the inchaſings are of gold, as they tell the ſtory; the pall over it is of brocade, and above and before the door there are ſome lamps of gold and ſilver. They would not ſuffer me to ſtir beyond the door of the place where the tomb ſtands, though I took care to make particular obſervations upon all I ſaw there.

King's garden.

Royal tomb.

1703.

While I was buſy in taking this view, my *Armenian* guide fell into a quarrel with the people of the place, who from words came to blows with him. I was ſadly troubled at this, and did all I could to reconcile them, and prevent the ill conſequences of ſuch a diſorder, well knowing the inhabitants of this place were proud and vindictive, and that the Governor of the province had been forty years in reducing them to a due ſenſe of themſelves, which he had not been able to effect, but by ſending a part of them to *Iſpahan*. They had formerly carried their brutality to that pitch, as even to force women from their huſbands, whenever they pleaſed, not in the leaſt caring who they murdered, if they offered to make head againſt their fury. At that time, not even the merchants were ſafe in their caravanſeras from the inſults of this rude untractable mob: but the Khan who governs them at preſent, has found out a way to repreſs their inſolence, tho' he has but a guard of three hundred horſe, without any foot.

An ugly accident.

Upon the *ſecond* they carried the merchants goods to the village of *Adſgaerneloe*, where the guide of the caravan lived, who contrived matters ſo well, that he made us loſe the very fineſt part of the ſeaſon. Upon the *ninth*, he reſolved to depart,

CARAVANE PROCHE AU VI

PONT SUR LA RIVIER KIESILOSAN.

VILLAGE 't SARGABRAND. 53

1703. part, but there fell ſuch a quantity of rain, that they were obliged to put off the journey till the *twelfth*. Some *Armenian* prieſts came to me here, and begged of me to contribute ſomething towards the building of a church, dedicated to Saint *John*, which they were at work upon in a village not far from the town. I made them a ſmall preſent, and wiſhed them all manner of ſucceſs in their undertaking.

Upon the *eleventh*, I prepared for my departure, after we had been a month at *Ardevil*, and ſent my baggage to the caravan. Riſing early in the morning of the next day, I met with a great number of *Perſians*, who were going through the town, ſinging and rejoicing for their happy return from *Mecca*, where they had been on pilgrimage to the tomb of their prophet *Mohammed*.

It was *three* in the afternoon when the caravan began to move, facing to the ſouthward, and having croſſed the plain, we came into mountains, from whence you have an advantageous proſpect of the town and the villages about, which have a very pleaſing effect; but we were there a little too far off to ſee objects diſtinctly. The caravan halted at the village of *Sardale*, three leagues from the town; but we were taken with ſo thick a fog, upon entering the mountains, that it was as much as we could do to ſee them: The ſoil about this village, which is of tolerable extent, is very fertile, and abounds in corn, which was heaped up on all ſides. We departed from hence at *three* in the morning, and compleated our journey over the mountains; and when you are beyond them, the higheſt ſeem to have their tops hid in the clouds. The ſoil there alſo is pretty fertile, and full of peaſants who were tilling the ground with oxen and buffaloes. Having paſſed through ſeveral villages, we, at *nine*, came to that of *Koraming*, which is tolerably large, and ſurrounded about with heaps of corn.

We there halted in the plain, by the ſide of a ſmall river which runs through it, and ſaw a number of ſnipes and thruſhes, of which I killed a good number, together with two young wild ducks. The grounds about theſe villages are full of willows, alders, and fruit-trees. We here waited for the reſt of our companions that were left behind, and in the mean time I drew the proſpect you have in number 51. 1703. *Shooting of birds.*

Towards evening, the fog came upon us again, and continued till midnight, when we came among the higheſt mountains, with a fine moonlight, and upon the *fifteenth* in the morning, came to the village of *Fattaba*. At break of day the next morn we moved on again among the mountains. The two *Armenians*, my friends, who ſtaid behind us, came and joined us this night; and upon the *ſeventeenth*, having travelled over many rocks, we halted among the mountains. That day we came up with our camels, which had gone before us, and half a league from thence we ſaw the famous mount *Taurus*, called by the inhabitants, *Caſeluſan*. It ſtretches far away up into the country, and aſſumes different names, according to the places it croſſes; but it retains its true name in the ſouthern parts of *Aſia Minor*. There are authors who confound it with mount *Caucaſus*. At three in the morning we began to aſcend it, found it very ſteep and full of rocks, with vaſt fiſſures, and frightful precipices, and as the roads and paths of it are very narrow, and very dangerous withal, we were obliged to alight from our horſes and go on foot. It moſt commonly requires but an hour to go over it; but we took up two, becauſe our caravan was more than uſually numerous. As you go down, you ſee precipices which ſtrike the traveller with horror in the night. When you are clear of this mountain, you come into a plain of pretty large extent, which you croſs to the left, and come to another mountain, or another

Mount Taurus.

Frightful precipices.

1703. ther branch of mount *Taurus*, which here divides itſelf into two, between which runs the river of *Kiſiloſan*, which they alſo call *Kurp*: It is very rapid in its courſe, and has ſeveral falls among the rocks, where it tumbles down with great violence; it ſprings up in the weſt, and runs into the *Caſpian* ſea. Over this river King *Tamar* built a ſtone bridge, which is ten paces broad, and one hundred and fifty paces long; it is tolerably lofty, and has ſix arches, three of which are very wide. Between four of theſe arches, there are three openings, and between the reſt a kind of an half round tower. The river at preſent only runs under one or two of theſe arches, unleſs the waters be very high indeed. Having got over this bridge, we halted to wait for the caravan; in the mean time the *Armenians* betook them to their coffee, and I to take upon paper the proſpect you have in number 52. We then aſcended the ſecond mountain, or branch of the *Taurus*, which is higher, vaſter, and more ſteep than the former; but as we were much fatigued with having travelled over the firſt on foot, we were obliged to ſtop ſeveral times to take breath. At length coming to a better way, we mounted our horſes again, and at break of day gained the top. The reſt of the caravan did the ſame two hours after us, and half a league farther on we came into a fine and well-cultivated country. At nine in the morning we got to the village of *Kaſiebeggidaraſſi*; where, for the firſt time, they brought us grapes, at the rate of four-pence a pound; and the ways are very good beyond mount *Taurus*, as well as the ſoil. From thence you have ſight of another mountain, higher than the former, and continually capped with ſnow; but we halted a day to reſt ourſelves. Upon the *twentieth*, at *three* in the morning we proceeded on our journey, amid very fine weather, and by *ſeven*, we reached the neighbourhood of a brook not far from *Jamkoela*. Here they have extraordinary birds called *Baeker-Kara*. We then went through ſeveral villages, whence you ſee mount *Taurus* at a diſtance, in the manner it is repreſented in number 53. Upon the *twenty ſecond*, we croſſed a great plain, bordered by hills and mountains on the left hand, where they brought us grapes of a moſt exquiſite flavour. Upon the *twenty third*, we arrived at the town of *Samgael*, beyond which we halted, and there met with very fine pomegranates of a beautiful colour and middling ſize, grapes and other fruits. 1703.

River of Kiſiloſan.

A remarkable bridge.

Fine perſpective.

Mountain of Sawalan.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Deſcription of Samgael, *and of the places on the road thither. Arrival at* Com.

WE were obliged to ſtay here the next day to wait for the officers of the cuſtoms, who live without the town. *Samgael* has the look of a village, though there are there ſome lofty and well built houſes, conſidering the country, ſome of earth only, and others of earth and ſtone together. They have here a fine bazar, which is covered and vaulted, and where they keep the principal ſhops, and particularly thoſe of the drapers, where they ſell all ſorts of cotton ſtuffs and cloths. There are, however, other covered ſhops in other parts of the town, and a number of moſchs adorned with domes, the chief of

Situation of Samgael.

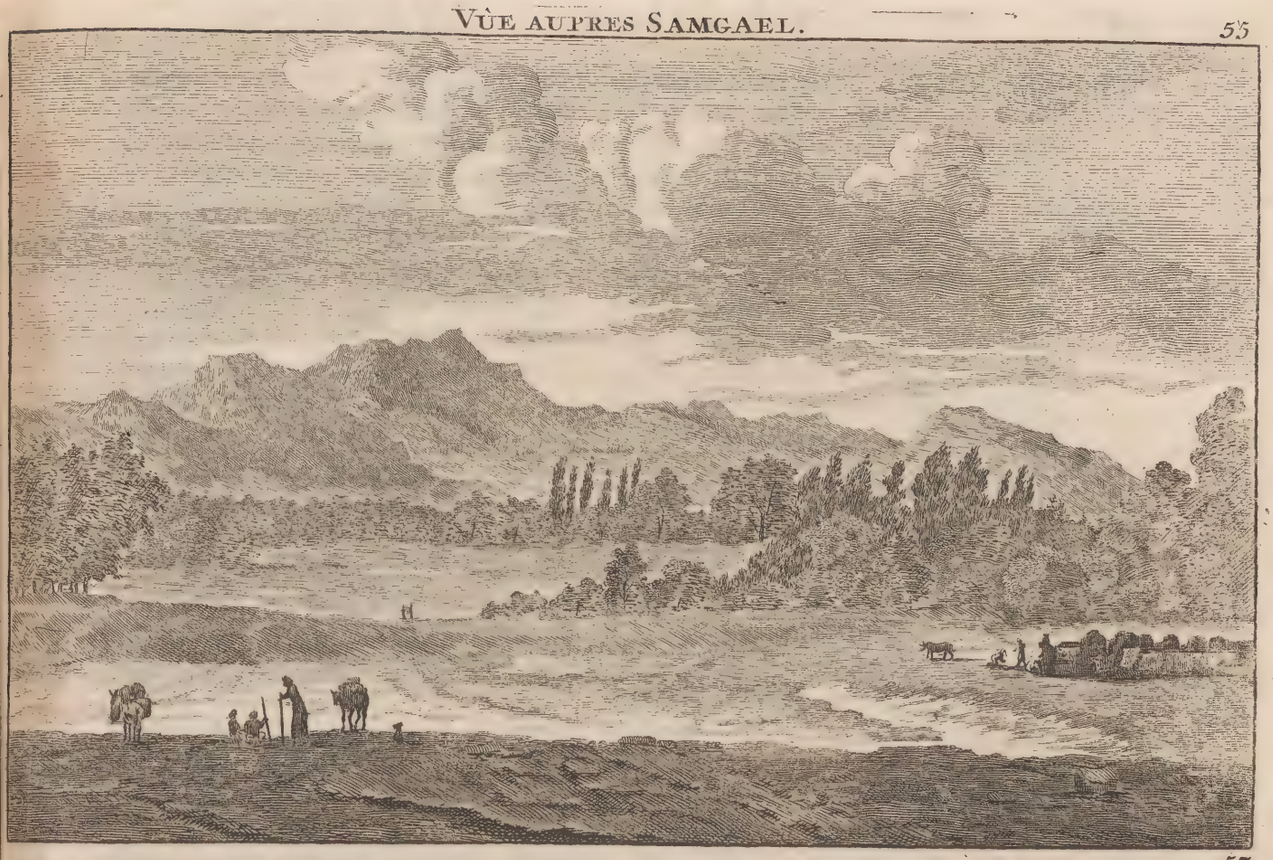
54

SAMGAEL.

56

SULTANIE.

VÙE AUPRES SAMGAEL. 55



57

VILLAGE GIHARA.

1703. which is painted a fine green, and glazed blue on the outside. There is one running to ruin, which is pretty lofty with a dome, and which the *Turks* made use of, when they became masters of this place; but though it is not very large, it stands pleasantly in a plain, with high mountains to the west. Half a league from thence there runs a stream of fine clear water, where our caravan halted, in a place full of trees and walled gardens. I drew a prospect of this town to the north-east, as you see it in number 54. The letter A distinguishes the ruinous mosch of the *Turks*: the letter B points out the principal mosch, and C a great demolish'd building. And this is all that is remarkable at this place, which is destitute of all traces whereby to guess at its antiquity, tho' very ancient it is, and tho' it was a very flourishing place in the days of *Tamerlane*; but it was afterwards destroyed by the *Turks*. There is but one caravansera here; it is indifferently large, built of earth and clay, and the small river of *Saganshaey* runs to the east of it, and thence goes and throws itself among the mountains, where I drew the prospect you have in number 55. This town is governed by a *Daroega* or Bailif, and there for every horse-load of silk and cloth you pay the sum of thirty pence, and but fifteen for commodities of less value. In the evening it began to rain, which it continued to do till about two hours before sun-rise. Upon the *twenty fifth* we pursued our journey, with a fine road, the officers of the customs having agreed to meet us at the place where we were to bait that day, there to receive their dues. We passed in sight of several villages, and stopped at *Kurkjandy*, three leagues to the south-east of the town. In this place there is a branch of the *Taurus*, which stretches away from north to south, towards *Curdestân*, inhabited by the *Curds*, who live in villages: they say they have nevertheless a small fortress in the mountains, called *Keyder Peyamber*. Up-

1703. on the *twenty sixth*, we had much rain, and crossed the plain in the midst of it, travelling on towards the mountains, and at break of day we saw *Sultania* on our right, two leagues from the place, where we had passed a part of the night. This town stands in a plain, near mountains which almost incompass it round, with that of *Keyder* on the right hand; but as the guides of our caravan had no manner of business there, and as there is no going into it without paying certain duties, we, to my very great regret, passed by it. They had, however, flattered me they should stop at a place not far off, but they not doing as they had said, I rode back towards the town, and stopped upon an eminence near the east side of it, where I drew the prospect you have in number 56. It has four great moschs, the three chief of which have large domes, and in one of them is the tomb of *Soltan Mohammed Khodabend*, who, as they say, laid the foundations of it about four hundred years ago: they assured me this tomb is magnificent and well built, and that the chapel of it is adorned with gold and silver. It looks most charmingly from without. 1703.

Town of Sultania.

This town has neither gates nor walls, and all the houses of it are built of earth, lime and clay. It has eight or ten caravanseras, and some bazars, but not considerable, nor, indeed, can it be reckoned a trading place; tho' formerly, before it was destroyed by *Tamerlane*, it was one of the first towns in *Persia*. The royal palace, once its most sumptuous building, is now no more. Half a league from the town, there are the ruins of an old stone tower and gate, which it is likely belonged to the old city, which is in 36 degrees, 30 minutes of northern latitude.

Description of it.

I was two hours before I could overtake the caravan, which had held on its way, and about noon we halted at the village of *Thalis*, the neighbourhood of which abounds

1703. with *baeker-kaeraes*, birds not very different from our partridges, except that they are larger, and have whitiſh bellies and wings: they fly in flocks, pretty high, and delight in tilled grounds: I killed one of them; it was very heavy, well fed, and of a delicious taſte. *Remarkable birds.*

Two hours before day, we purſued our journey, and after a ſtretch of five hours, we arrived at *Gromdora*,, a town of large extent, full of trees and gardens, and by the ſide of a fine ſtream. Its houſes are indifferently good, and ſome of them are even pretty lofty. We departed hence at the ſame hour as the day before, and travelled over the ſame plain, the mountains that incompaſs it being at the diſtance of about a league from each other. The grounds were ſown, and the country thick ſet with villages. The country people there make little mounds of earth to keep in the water, and by the road ſide there are conduits of water to water the land. We then went through two villages, whoſe moſchs had a kind of ſteeples, a ſight rare to be ſeen in this country: they are very broad at bottom, and terminate in a point or ſpire: they told me they were the tombs of ſaints to which they had added moſchs. About noon we went down a hollow way almoſt quite ſurrounded by a conduit or canal of water, which was five or ſix foot broad, whoſe water ran over violently in two places, and ſpread over the lands from north-weſt to ſouth-eaſt. In this place we found two villages called *Parſaheim* and *Touoekſy*, the laſt of which, which is the ſmalleſt of the two, is incloſed with a mud wall like a garden, which you go into by a large gate. The firſt is very large, full of trees and gardens, and the country about is very pleaſant. The two villages with ſteeples, which we juſt now mentioned, are of the ſame name and in the ſame diſtrict, tho' at a good diſtance from each other. In this place the mountains ſeem to terminate. That day we travelled a journey of five leagues, and at *three* in the morning we proceeded farther through a road full of hills and villages to the right and left, whence at the break of day we deſcried ſome mountains covered with ſnow. We afterwards croſſed a ſmall river three or four times; we had very fine and mild weather quite to *Gihara*, where every one ſheltered himſelf under the ruins of a low wall, a thing common enough in theſe parts. This town contains above five hundred houſes, moſt of them low and upon an eminence; ſo that from a diſtance a man might miſtake it for a fortreſs. It is full of trees and gardens, and about it are a great number of uninhabited houſes. You have a repreſentation of it in number 57. 1703.

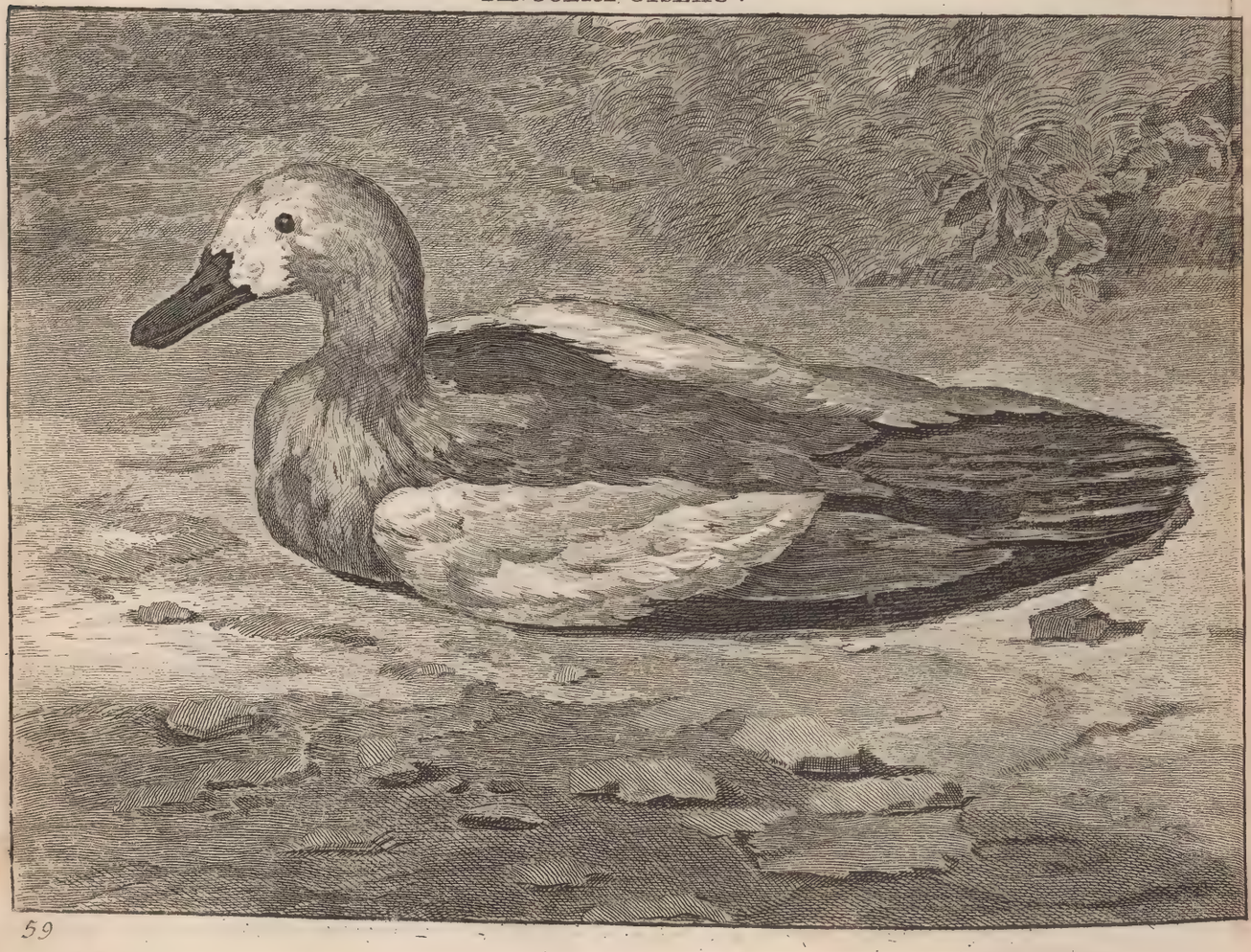
Proviſions abound in this place, where we had excellent mutton, good fowls and melons, the ſeed of which I preſerved. I there ſhot an *Angoert*, a bird ſo called, which is ſomewhat like a duck, but it flies higher, and ſtruts with the head up like a cock, and delights in water The body of it is red and the neck of a yellow ruſſet quite to the eyes, about which it is white to the bill, which is black: its wings are white, red, and black; my dog brought it to me alive. You have the repreſentation of a ſmall village in number 58; and of the bird in number 59. *Angoert a bird ſo called.*

This part of the country alſo abounds in cotton-trees, a branch of which I drew as as you ſee it in number 60. It has three or four pods, in the condition they are in when the fruit is not perfectly ripe; as you may obſerve by one of the four which is burſt open and full of cotton. They either gather them, or they fall of themſelves, when the pod is open, and begins to wither. The outward colour of it is purple, and has a delightful effect with the white within, when it burſts and opens. *Cotton.*

Upon the *thirtieth*, we continued in this ſame place, to give our horſes ſome reſt. About noon there paſſed by a *Poliſh* Ambaſſador from *Iſpahan*,

VILLAGE AUPRES GIHARA.

ANGOERT OISEAU.



BRANCHE COTTON.

VILLAGE SAKSAWA.

RUINES DE LA VILLE COHM.

RUINES DES MURAILLES DE LA VILLE.

64

1703. *Iſpahan*, on his way to his own country. I was alone at my ſport when I met him, and ſome of his train obſerving me to be dreſſed in the faſhion of *Holland*, called out to me, but I not minding them, as thinking they were *Perſians*, two or three of them rode up to me, and told me, in *Italian*, that they were *Europeans*. While I was talking with them, the Ambaſſador himſelf went by: They aſked me what news from *Europe*, but I told them it was ſix months ſince I came from *Moſcow*, and that, conſequently, I could give them no manner of information about the matter. They had paſſed the night in the village next to where we were, and deſired me to recommend them to their friends at *Iſpahan*, and promiſed to do the ſame for me at *Moſcow*, and thereupon they purſued their journey. They were about thirty perſons on horſeback, and had three or four banneroles or ſmall ſtandards with them, and were followed by twenty three camels, laden with their baggage.

At three in the morning we reſumed our road, and having travelled four leagues, we came to *Sakſawa*, a great village, like the former, full of trees. On the right hand there are ruins of a large building, and on the left thoſe of a large caravanſera, repreſented in number 61. We were here obliged to ſtay, to pay the ordinary duties, and I in the mean time diverted myſelf with ſhooting at pigeons.

As we travelled on, we paſſed by a place full of ſena; this tree is a very pleaſant one to look at, and, as I had never ſeen of them before, I was charmed with it, and ſhall give a deſcription of it in the ſequel. In the village of *Araſangh*, we found ſtore of pomgranates, a very refreſhing ſort of fruit, and very cheap. Leaving this we went over a hill, leaving the plain on the left hand, to get into the road that goes to *Com*. There is another on the right hand of this village that goes to *Sawa*, whither we ſhould have gone to pay certain duties; but as it is going a day's journey out of the way to *Com*, and as they are thereby liable to the payment of three different impoſts, whereas they are liable to but one by going directly to *Com*, the caravan commonly chooſes this laſt. 1703.

After a journey of five hours we reſted ourſelves in a plain, between ſome hills, near the village of *Hangeran*, where there is very good bread, and from thence we went on to *Saranda*. There we, for the firſt time, drank wine of *Ardevil*, which is white and pleaſant enough to the palate, but it is not allowed to be ſold. This village is ſurrounded with wells, ſupplied with water by a ſubterraneous canal in the village. Upon the *fourth of November* we departed, and after a ſtage of ſeven leagues, we, at one in the afternoon, reached *Angelawa*, two hours before the reſt of the caravan: this village is but ſeven leagues from *Com*. This part is alſo full of wells, or ſprings, four or five paces from each other, and the water of them is alſo conveyed under ground to the village. *Perſia* is all over full of ſuch ſprings and ſubterraneous conveyances. Here there are ravens of extraordinary ſize: but the land here being ſtrongly impregnated with ſalt-peter the water is brackiſh. Our camels went on before us in the night, but the cuſtom-houſe officers of *Sawa* having ſeized upon one of them, laden with two bales of cloth, becauſe we had not paſſed by that place, and becauſe this is under one and the ſame territory or juriſdiction, we were obliged to turn back again, and ſtay in this place till the *ſixth of November*, whence we departed before day. Coming upon a ſmall ditch or trench which we did not perceive, ſeveral of our horſes fell in, and amongſt the reſt mine, but by good chance they were got out again. At nine in the morning we came upon the banks of the river *Sawaſiaey*, which comes from *Sawa*: it is very broad in ſome places, and runs away to the ſouthward,

1703. ward, in a plain between high grounds. It happened that we had unwarily got into a ſandy plain, between ſome downs of moving ſand, where it is impoſſible to travel without danger. Behind theſe downs there are lofty mountains, between which is the road to *Sawa* and to *Com*. As we had been informed that thoſe who had ſeized on our camels, intended us a ſecond viſit, we put ourſelves ſo vigorouſly upon our guard that they did not dare repeat the attempt. About *eleven* we reached a ſtony mountain, whoſe rocks repreſent all ſorts of objects, a ſurprizing thing to behold: I drew them at diſtance, together with the mountain on the right hand of the town: you have a repreſentation of this in number 62; the firſt is like the head and neck of an animal, and the reſt are to the full as remarkable. In our way thither we went through a town full of houſes; but they were all empty; it is likely the inhabitants were all in tents abroad, tending their cattle. There is a great ſtone bridge at the entrance into the town, by the ſide of which we ſaw a great number of tents pitched, and in them people of all ſorts of condition, with horſes by them, tyed to each other. They told us theſe people, among whom there were more women than men, were upon a pilgrimage, to viſit the tombs of ſeveral Saints. We were half an hour in going through the town, to the end of the old walls, where we got up our tents in a place where there are many ancient ruins. The reſt of the caravan did not arrive till two hours after us, having been under a neceſſity to croſs ſeveral narrow bridges, which had delayed them. We ſtaid here the next day, and had very charming weather. 1703.

Remarkable rocks.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Deſcription of Com *and of* Cachan *or* Caſhan. *Arrival at* Iſpahan.

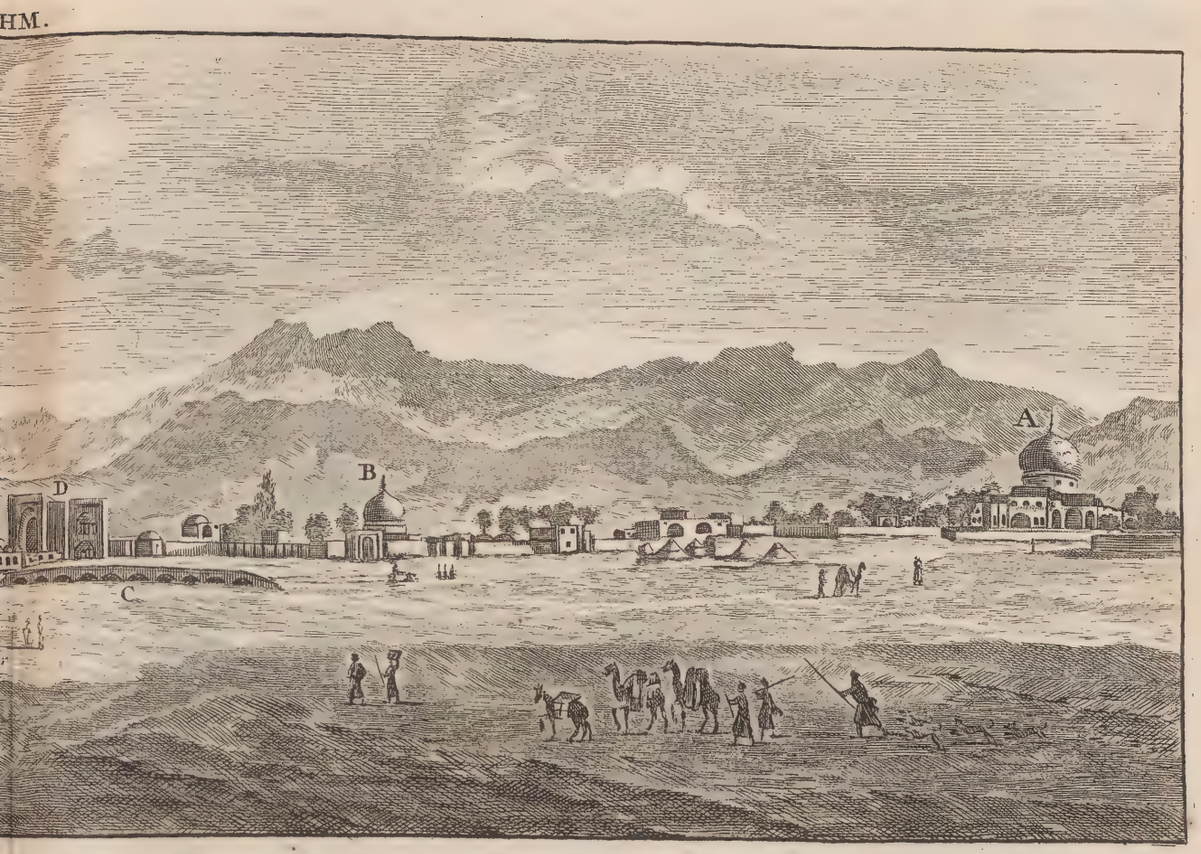
Situation of Com.

DUring the time I ſtaid here I viſited the inſide of the town, after I had ſatisfied my curioſity with a view of its antiquities and ruins, concerning which I ſhall be more diffuſe in the ſequel. In the great moſch of *Muzyd* or *Ma-zyt-matſama* there is the tomb of *Fatma-ſora*, the ſiſter of *Mohammed* and wife of *Ali*; and near that another moſch where they preſerve the aſhes of *Abbas* King of *Perſia*, of ſome other Kings, and among the reſt of *Shah Suliman*, the father of *Shah Hoſein*, the King that reigns at preſent. Theſe two moſchs are of a fine ſort of architecture, and have domes glazed with green. As you go into the town, you ſee four columns of about thirty ſix foot high, the two firſt of which are joined together, and belonged to ſome public edifice or ſome moſch. They ſtand upon a ſquare wall raiſed above the ground, nearly of the height of theſe ſame columns, and the portal of this wall is a great vaulted arcade: the two others are at a diſtance from each other and more damaged. Upon the top of the two firſt there is a kind of capital of no order, and three different faſcia's about them. They ſeem to be pretty equal to the ſight, and yet they are more taper at top than at bottom, and above the capital they have a moulding of green and gold, ſomewhat disfigured. They are at ſome diſtance from the *Bazar*, which is of the moſt ordinary ſort, as well as the reſt of the town; nor was I ſurprized at it, for it is by

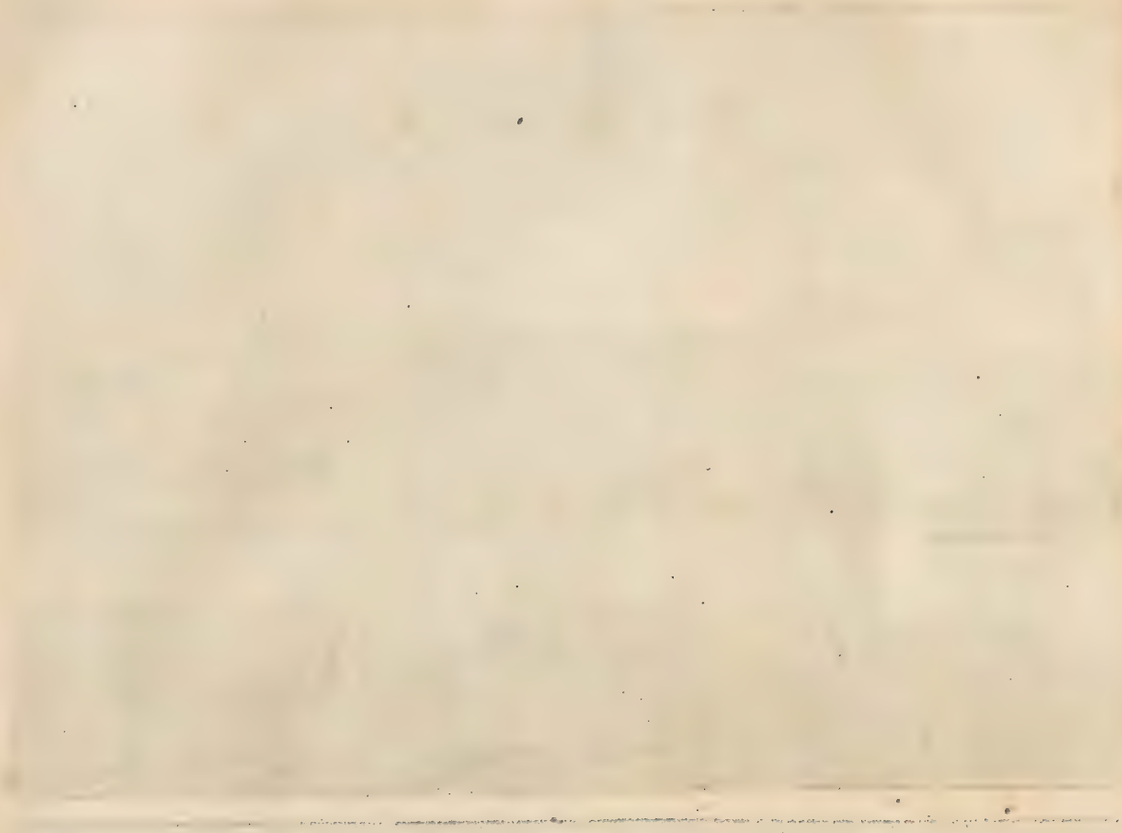
Tombs in the great moſch &c.

E

HM.



SJAN.



1703. by no means a trading place. There is a great building near the bridge over which you go into the town, with a fine and ſpacious court, in the midſt of which there is a baſon. It is a kind of moſch or chapel, where they pretend to have the remains of the ſiſter of *Imam Riſa*, and *Imam Anu hammed* who flouriſhed ſeven hundred and fifty years ago. This tomb is held in great veneration, becauſe this Lady, as they will have it, was of the poſterity of *Mohammed*, and accordingly there are always ſome perſons of diſtinction there.

Bridge of Com. The bridge, we juſt now mentioned, is one hundred paces in length and eight in breadth, with a ſmall brick parapet two foot high. This bridge, which is built of ſmall ſtones, has ten arches, under ſome of which runs the river of *Comſhay*, when it is low, but eſpecially when it is high. They relate that there was a great inundation in this town in the year 1591, and that it ſwept away about twelve hundred houſes; which being reported to King *Abbas*, he ordered a dyke of two leagues in length to prevent the like diſaſter for the time to come.

River of Comſhay.

This town is divided into twenty four quarters or diſtricts, and contains two thouſand one hundred houſes, in each of which there is a well, not to ſpeak of three hundred *abenbaars* or ciſterns. It has four gates, four Bazars, and a * *meydoen*, ſeveral bagnio's and a great number of moſchs and chapels. There are no antiquities to be ſeen on this ſide, but there are on the other, where the caravan ſtopped, within the enceint of the old town, formerly called *Chonana* ſtanding in *Media*, which as is ſuppoſed extended to *Cachan*, and to a mountain which was as a boundary to it; a tract of country, which the inhabitants call *Arak*.

** A public ſquare.*

Pyramid. In this place, at ſome diſtance from the wall, there is a round pyramid, which is ſeventy eight paces in circumference and forty eight in height, provided with four ſhelving walls without ſteps; its entrance is ſtopped up with rubbiſh. The walls are a fathom thick, and the deſcent, taken obliquely, a fathom and an half; then they fetch a great ſlope and go as deep into the ground as they are above the ſurface, where this pyramid is ſmooth and round. You may look into it by certain holes, but into it there is no going, and what is more extraordinary it ſeems to have been done deſignedly. Upon the whole, it is moſt likely to have been a monument: you have it repreſented in number 63. There are other ruins on the right hand of this pyramid, and among others, the remains of a ſmall chapel. The decayed wall of the town reaches a good way beyond theſe ruins, but it is difficult to diſtinguiſh any thing of it in particular. However, two or three hundred paces from the pyramid, as you return to the town, there is a part of this wall tolerably entire and flanked with round towers, which are very much gone to ruin: they are to the number of ten, are about forty foot high, and very thick and ſubſtantial at bottom; you ſee them repreſented in number 64, with the ruins of a gate which was five paces deep, as much in breadth, and the wall was of the ſame thickneſs. All the reſt of the buildings are of earth, clay, and ſmall ſtones dried in the ſun. For my part, I own, I never ſaw any ancient building of this kind; but I am nevertheleſs perfectly perſuaded theſe are ruins of the old town, and the rather as the ancients make mention of the like buildings of earth dried in the ſun, and a kind of lime made of clay. The ſacred hiſtorians likewiſe take notice that the builders of the tower of *Babel* made uſe of the like kind of earth inſtead of ſtone, and of clay inſtead of lime. And this is the more natural to conclude with regard to this country, as the ſun is here very powerful, and conſequently ſoon able to dry up earth to the nature of ſtone. It ſeems to

1703. me alſo that they have mixed chopped ſtraw with this earth, to make it bind the better. In the ſame manner they continue to build to this day, and all over *Perſia* you ſee of this earth dried in the ſun, and clay, of which they make lime. And, to ſay the truth of the matter, their houſes are mean enough, and laſt but a little while, nor do they ever think of repairing them.

From thence I went to the north-weſt of the town, where there are no eminences, and from thence drew the view you have in number 65. The letter A diſtinguiſhes the great moſch called *Matſama:* B that of the Kings: C the bridge: D the moſch of the great building: E the two principal columns of the edifice we have mentioned. In the ſame plate you may alſo obſerve how the other columns are divided from each other.

Upon the *eighteenth of November*, we left *Com* an hour before day, and paſſing by the old wall, we came into a plain full of villages. A league farther we ſaw two great ruined towers. We paſſed the day in a village where there is a fine ſtream of clear water, three leagues to the ſouthward of the town; and a league beyond we ſaw the remains of an ancient ſquare building with very ſubſtantial walls: they ſay it was formerly a fortreſs. There is another on the ſide of this, with ſeveral apartments. A league and an half from thence, we ſaw a large garden, ſurrounded with a high ſquare wall. About *eight*, we got into a rough ſtony plain, with lofty mountains on the right hand, and villages on all ſides. Upon the *ninth*, we reſted ourſelves at the village of *Sinſin*, ſeven leagues from the place where we had paſſed the night: this village is tolerably large, and in it are ſeveral ruined buildings and caravanſeras. We left it at two in the morning, and at break of day met with ſeveral travellers in a place full of trees, and well cultivated. At break of day we perceived *Cachan* [*Caſhan*] where we *Arrival at* Caſhan. arrived at ſeven in the morning. 1703. One part of the caravan went to lodge in the town, and the other in the caravanſera in the ſuburbs. The houſes of it are fair and regular, and larger than thoſe of the city, which is reckoned one of the chief in *Perſia*; nor indeed had I ever ſeen any till then to compare with it. As it is at no very great diſtance from *Iſpahan*, we there found the inhabitants more civil and polite, than in the other cities we had paſſed through. It is in 35 degrees 51 minutes of northern latitude, and is called *Kaſſian*, *Kaſſan*, *Kaſſiaan* and *Caſhan*, and ſtands at the end of a great plain, near the foot of a lofty mountain. I drew it from the north-eaſt, in this plain, whence it makes the moſt conſiderable figure. On the left of this town you ſee a pyramid like that of the ruined building at *Com:* the whole is to be ſeen in number 66. *Deſcription of it.*

The Governor or Commander in chief here is called a Viſier, who is inferior in dignity to a Khan as a Khan is inferior to a Beglerbeg, whom they muſt both of them obey; he even frequently ſends them into other places. *Governor.*

The walls of this town are about thirty ſix foot high, and it has ſeven gates without reckoning that of *Danlet*. To the north-weſt there is a fine *meydoen*, with a kind of tilt-yard, above which are two ſmall columns; upon that without there is a ſtaff on which they hoiſt a flag when there is a tournament. This *meydoen* or tilt-yard is ſeven hundred and ſeventy paces long, and one hundred broad. As you go out of the gate, on the right hand, you have the royal garden, incloſed with a wall thirty foot high. It is large and traverſed by a well kept canal, and full of fine trees, well diſpoſed, among the reſt pines and pomegranate trees; and thereto belongs a pleaſure-houſe built by *Abbas the Great*. This wall has four great gates, and two ſmall ones; from the firſt of them which is near that of the town, you go into a fine ca- *Royal garden.*

67 VILLAGE GHOR.

68 CARAVANSERA SARDAHAN.

1703. ravanſera inhabited by *Indians*: it is ſpacious and of ſurprizing beauty, being thirty ſix paces deep, and ſeven broad: the vault of it is crowned with a dome, upon which there is a lanthorn after the *Italian* manner; and it has two arcades on the ſide, whence you ſee the apartments. Having croſſed it you come into a court one hundred paces long, by eighty broad, ſurrounded by a building two ſtories high, which has fifteen arcades on each ſide in length, and ten in breadth, under which there are rooms one upon another; beſides which there are ſmall projecting rooms or cloſets which have a charming effect; ſo that this caravanſera ſurpaſſes all I ever ſaw. A little beyond this gate you come to a ſecond with a fine arcade; and upon finding it open, I went into the garden which is full of great and ſmall trees well kept: the third gate is that of a great and very lofty building, above the wall of the garden. From the fourth you go to a wide court, and all round it is ſhelter for horſes: the two ſmall gates admit into the garden only. On the other ſide there is another, but neither ſo fine nor ſo large as the firſt, tho', as well as that, it be ſurrounded with walls. Over-againſt this caravanſera there is an aſcent of fifty ſtone ſteps, and beneath, a place which apparently muſt be a tank or reſervoir for water, the walls and vault of which are of ſmall ſtones, very neatly put together. The gate of the town is vaulted alſo, and eighty paces deep, with a dome like that of the cararanſera. From thence you go into *Bazar.* a fine bazar, well vaulted and plaſtered, and ſtored with the ſhops of confectioners, druggiſts, paſtry-cooks, goldſmiths, farriers, braſiers and cooks, where you have all ſorts of victuals ready dreſt, roaſted and boiled; bakers, fruiterers and the like; every ſhop takes up a vault, and the whole is very regular and charmingly neat. This bazar, in the midſt of which there is the mint, runs croſs the town from one gate to the other. There are ſe- 1703.
veral others near this, and particularly one which has gates and is ſhut up, where they ſell cloths and all ſorts of ſilks and the like. Another there is belonging to the ſilk-dyers, where you ſee delightful colours. Theſe bazars are ſo well covered that you are always ſheltered from the rain, and the coffee-houſes *Coffee-houſes.* are there always full of people ſmoaking. The caravanſeras are *Caravanſeras.* on one ſide of theſe bazars, and you go into them by a great vaulted gate; ſome of them are fine and two ſtories high, with five or ſix ſteps before the apartments, and the number of them is very conſiderable in this town, where they make moſt of the ſilk and gold and ſilver ſtuffs in ſuch quantity that they every day uſe ſeven bales of ſilk, which weigh one thouſand five hundred and twelve pounds. The * *meydoens* * *Public ſquares.* here are ſmall, and in many parts of the town there are wells like that in the royal garden we have mentioned. The moſchs here have *Moſchs.* pretty lofty towers, but few large domes, and thoſe there are, are not coloured. This city has ſeven gates, as has been ſaid, two of which are always kept ſhut, and ſeveral *meydoens.*

They have here fruits and flowers at all ſeaſons of the year, and the fruits are here ſooner ripe than elſewhere; ſo that in the ſpring-time they here ſell melons, grapes, apricots, mulberries, pomegranates, cucumbers, and eſpecially moſt charming water-melons. They ſay there are ſeventy aqueducts, which convey water to this town; and they there alſo reckon one hundred and twenty bagnio's and a great number of tanks to which they go down by ſeveral ſteps. The number of mills here amounts to one hundred *Mills, houſes, villages.* and twenty, and that of the houſes to three thouſand, divided into three wards or diſtricts, one thouſand in each. Beſides all which there are ſixty villages under the juriſdiction of this town.

At *Fien*, there is a royal houſe, *Remarkable fountain.* where

1703. where there is a fountain or baſon made, as they ſay, in the reign of *Suliman*, the water of which comes from a high mountain called *Rochi 't Sahil*, and is conducted to *Cachan* by the means of 27 mills built in the reign of *Abbas*. That which comes from the mountain of *Demawend* runs away towards *Kei* and *Thaharaan*: they call it the river of *Dzadzjeraan*, and it goes and empties the reſt of its water in the *Caſpian* ſea. You have a ſight of this mountain when you are between *Com* and *Cachan*.

Upon the *thirteenth*, we left this town two hours before day, and croſſed a ſandy plain, and for ſome leagues had ſmall raiſed downs on our left hand. That day we travelled ſix leagues, and having reſted ourſelves a while, we proceeded on our journey at two in the morning, continuing ſtill in the ſame plain, bordered by mountains covered with ſnow on our right hand. At break of day we came to the foot of the higheſt of them, and croſſed a river among the reſt, and afterwards a plain, at the end of which we perceived a village, together with ſeveral others between the mountains and hills. After a ſtage of ſeven leagues we got to the village of *Ghor*, a league from the ſmall town of *Nathans*. This village is a charming place, and you have it repreſented in number 67. Being upon an eminence, it looks like a fortreſs at a diſtance, on the left hand of which you ſee a ſmall moſch, and a country which extends beyond the reach of the ſight.

We departed from hence two hours before day, and about *ſeven* came to a large plain, where there were five or ſix villages by the ſide of each other, and two fine gardens, the laſt of which was ſurrounded by a good wall, half a league in circumference, and has a remarkable dove-houſe concerning which we ſhall ſpeak in the ſequel. On one ſide of this garden is a large houſe which belongs to the King, and a ſmall village called *Padſhabath*. Having croſſed this plain we came among hills and mountains, 1703. ſome of which were capped with ſnow, and after a ſtretch of ſeven leagues, we came to the caravanſera of *Sardahan*, where certain duties are paid. We there went over a kind of torrent, which falls and tumbles among the rocks, and whoſe water, conſiſting of melted ſnow from the mountains, is admirable. You have this caravanſera repreſented, and another near it in number 68. The firſt is a ſpacious ſtone building with a vaulted entrance, twenty foot deep and with a ſtep of three foot. There is a ſpring of water near the ſecond, which is but ſmall.

Royal garden.

An hour after midnight we travelled on with a fine moon-light, and having got over the mountains we came into a great ſandy plain bordered with mountains. In the night we paſſed by two other caravanſeras, the firſt of which was perfectly fine, and after a ſtage of ſeven leagues we came to the village of *Riek*, where we ſtaid till *three* in the morning. We then rode over ſome plowed lands, and at break of day arrived at *Iſpahan*. When I had reſted and refreſhed myſelf a little at the caravanſera, I went to wait upon Mr. *Kaſtelein* the director of the affairs of our *Eaſt-India* company. He received me in the kindeſt manner imaginable, and aſſured me I might command all that was in his power. He kept me ſome time with him, and gave me one of his ſervants to conduct me to Mr. *Owen*, the agent for the *Engliſh Eaſt-India* company, who received me with the ſame kindneſs and complaiſance. From thence I went to the caravanſera of *Jedde*, in the *meydoen*, or great ſquare of the palace. This caravanſera, which belongs to the Queen mother of the King, is the place where all the *Armenians* have their ware-houſes and keep their ſhops; and as it is the chief of all in the city, and the beſt ſituated of all, I went there to lodge, by the recom-

Arrival at Iſpahan.

1703. mendation of Mr. *Kaſtelein*, for whom they had a great regard, and there I continued all the time I ſtaid in this city. The King happened to be at that time in the country with his concubines. After I had rode about the town, and in the *Armenian* diſtrict of it called *Julfa*, I went to viſit ſome *Europeans*, Eccleſiaſtics and others, moſtly of the *French* nation, wh ore-turned my viſit. The next day Mr. *Kaſtelein* invited me to dine with him, and afterwards carried me out of town. 1703.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Sea-lizard, and other remarkable things. Tomb with moving columns. The King returns to Iſpahan. *Abundance of people. Salutation of the* New-years-day. *Great* Perſian *Faſt.*

AS the weather was perfectly fine, we went to ſee what was moſt curious in and about the city, as the *Chiaerbaeg* or fine alley or walk of *Iſpahan*, and the place of burial for the *Armenians* and *Europeans*, which ſhall be deſcribed hereafter. We went out of the town in great form, according to the cuſtom of the country. Mr. *Kaſtelein* himſelf appeared firſt, with twelve runners, and preceded by two interpreters. After him came his ſecond, whom I followed, and all the reſt two and two, each according to his rank. We were twelve on horſeback, and twenty ſix perſons in all, and yet the Director uſed to be more numerouſly attended in the life-time of his wife, who had been dead five or ſix months before we arrived at *Iſpahan*, and had been magnificently depoſited under a fine ſtone vault, open on the four ſides. Her name was *Sarah Jacoba Six, de Chandelier*, of a family originally *French*, and was a Lady of great ſenſe and worth.

The elogy of our Director's wife.

Returning back in the evening we met with two runners in the *Chiaerbaeg* with lights, or ſort of flambeaus made of balls of cloth ſteeped in oil, and fixed in an iron contrivance, faſtened to the end of a ſtaff with a round tinned copper plate in form of a ſawcer to catch the droppings of the oil. It was light enough of all conſcience, but this is a ceremony in uſe among people of diſtinction. In this manner we rode through the town, and I ſtaid to ſup with Mr. *Kaſtelein*, perfectly well ſatisfied with my little journey.

The next day he ſent me a ſea-lizzard, dry and whole, of the ſize and form of an ordinary lizard. It is a creature they take in the *Perſian* gulf, and the *Perſians*, who call it *Seck-amkaer*, make great account of it. They give it out to be hot in the third degree, and having dried it they levigate it to a powder, and mix it up with pearl, amber, ſaffron and opium. They ſay this cordial invigorates and reſtores a weakened conſtitution: they make this mixture up into pills which they ſwallow, and are hardly ever expoſed to ſale, ſeeing there is ſcarce any but Merchants, and thoſe who have buſineſs at court, who buy them to preſent to ſuch as they ſollicit. They have here alſo a certain fiſh called *Sjir-ma-jie* [*Shirmaſhi*] or *Milk-Fiſh*, of moſt beautiful colours. His belly moſtly yellow, his fins red, and the reſt of the body of a blueiſh green. The fleſh of him is firm, white and delicious, and he is repreſented in number 69.

Sea-lizzard.

Milk-fiſh.

1703. Mr. *Kaſtelein* alſo made me a preſent of four feet of ſmall birds or other animals, which had been found at *Iſpahan* in a lump of ambergreaſe, which weighed about thirty three or thirty four pounds, and which the King had purchaſed to melt it into a ball, which he inchaſed in gold, and inriched with precious ſtones, to ſend it as a preſent to *Mohammed*'s tomb. Hence it might be concluded that ambergreaſe is a gum, produced in the ſea, which hardens in the air, when it happens to be torn and toſt up by the violence of the waves. This precious gum is chiefly found in the eaſt, and in ſeveral parts of the *Indies*.

Remarkable bird. They brought me alſo a bird called *Paes-jelek* not very unlike a duck, except that it had the head, bill and feather of a crow; its feet were broad at bottom, and divided into three parts; its body was long, and it taſted very bad. It is repreſented in number 70.

Upon the *twenty third* of this month, we went, again, in form to the village of *Kaladoen*, a good league from the city, there to ſee the tomb of *Abdulla*. They ſay this ſaint had formerly the inſpection of the waters of *Emoen Oſſeyn*, and that he was one of the twelve diſciples, or, as they pretend, one of the Apoſtles of their Prophet. This tomb, which ſtands between four walls, faced with ſmall ſtones, is of a grey marble, adorned with *Arabian* characters, and ſurrounded with lamps of tinned copper. You go up to it by fifteen ſteps, a foot high, and there are fifteen others a little higher which go up to a ſquare platform of thirty two foot every way, and upon the front of which there are two columns of ſmall ſtones, ſome of which are blue. The baſe of them is five foot in diameter, and they have a ſmall door with a winding ſtair-caſe which alſo conſiſts of fifteen ſteps. They have ſuffered much by the common injuries of time, and it ſeems as if they had been once higher than they are at preſent. The ſtair-caſe within is ſo narrow that a man of middling ſize muſt undreſs himſelf to go up, as I did, and appeared half above the column; but what is moſt extraordinary, when you ſhake one of theſe columns by any motion of the body, the other feels the ſame and ſhakes too; this is what I experienced, tho' I am unable to comprehend how it ſhould be, nor have I ever been able to learn the cauſe of it. While I was buſy about drawing this building which you have in number 71, a boy of twelve or thirteen years, crooked before, climbed up on the outſide of the wall, and went quite up to the top of one of the columns, which he went round and came down again, without holding by any thing whatſoever but the ſmall ſtones of the building where the mortar was dropt out; nor did he do it with any other deſign than to divert us.

Tomb of Abdulla.

Boldneſs of a child.

We returned to the city a little before ſun-ſet, and it began to freeze ſo hard that the water in my room became ice, and yet it was hot in the day-time. There even fell a little ſnow upon this occaſion.

Upon the *twenty eighth*, there arrived an *Arab* from *Aleppo*, with a letter, as he pretended, from the Baſha of *Aleppo* to the Director of our company: but all he ſaid was ſo confuſed, and he looked ſo wild with his eyes, that I concluded his brain muſt be touched. He had the look of an eccleſiaſtic, and perhaps he had left *Turky* on account of the troubles there; for they had had news at *Iſpahan*, ſome days before our arrival, that the Grand-Signior had been depoſed, and that *Soltan Achmed*, his brother, had been raiſed to the throne in his place. This *Arab* was very neatly dreſſed, and yet he had brought but a poor preſent, conſiſting of a pair of yellow boots, two or three common handkerchiefs, an handful of dates, and two ſticks of wax. Mr. *Kaſtelein* did not care to open his letter, which was ſealed but undirected, nor receive his preſents, being quite at a loſs to know the meaning of the matter.

l'Oiseau Paes-jelek.

70

four of which ſtopped in the *chiaer-baeg*, and the reſt went on. The King himſelf came half an hour before ſun-ſet, followed by the principal Lords of his court, and a prodigious crowd of people. He was at the head of them, and rode upon a fine cheſnut horſe, and went by us near a ſmall river, where we had drawn ourſelves up on horſeback to wait for him. We ſaluted him in the moſt reſpectful manner, and he fixed his eyes upon us. As the bridge he was to go over was but narrow, moſt that attended him forded the river; for many who had been eager to get upon the bridge fell off; to avoid the danger of which we turned off towards *Julfa* and came home with the night. It is hard to conceive what a multitude of people attend the King upon ſuch occaſions; a man would think it

the water; the fourth ſort conſiſted of one only ſmall fiſh, which had not grown at all in two years it had been taken notice of; I kept it with ſeveral others in ſpirits of wine. They are all admirably well taſted, and eſpecially from the *frying-pan*.

Upon the firſt day of the year 1704, we went to pay the uſual compliments, after the manner of the country, to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, who kept us to dine and ſup with him to the number of thirty, and entertained us ſplendidly, not to ſay that they ſerved up ſweet-meats and refreſhments between the meals. The *Engliſh* Agent was ſome how or other out of order, ſo he could not be there, but his ſecond came with the chief officer of his houſe, as well as father *Antonio Deſtiro*, the *Portugueſe* Reſident, a man of merit, and who had ſeen the world, and knew

1704. *New-year's day.*

Reſident of Portugal.

tion of the waters of *Emoen Uſſeyn*, and that he was one of the twelve diſciples, or, as they pretend, one of the Apoſtles of their Prophet. This tomb, which ſtands between four walls, faced with ſmall ſtones, is of a grey marble, adorned with *Arabian* characters, and ſurrounded with lamps of tinned copper. You go up to it by fifteen ſteps, a foot high, and there are fifteen others a little higher which go up to a ſquare platform of thirty two foot every way, and upon the front of which there are two columns of ſmall ſtones, ſome of which are blue. The baſe of them is five foot in diameter, and they have a ſmall door with a winding ſtair caſe which alſo conſiſts of fifteen ſteps. They have ſuffered much by the common injuries of time, and it ſeems as if they had been once higher than they are at preſent. The ſtair-caſe with-

letter, as he pretended, from the Baſha of *Aleppo* to the Director of our company: but all he ſaid was ſo confuſed, and he looked ſo wild with his eyes, that I concluded his brain muſt be touched. He had the look of an eccleſiaſtic, and perhaps he had left *Turky* on account of the troubles there; for they had had news at *Iſpahan*, ſome days before our arrival, that the Grand-Signior had been depoſed, and that *Soltan Achmed*, his brother, had been raiſed to the throne in his place. This *Arab* was very neatly dreſſed, and yet he had brought but a poor preſent, conſiſting of a pair of yellow boots, two or three common handkerchiefs, an handful of dates, and two ſticks of wax. Mr. *Kaſtelein* did not care to open his letter, which was ſealed but undirected, nor receive his preſents, being quite at a loſs to know the meaning of the matter.

1703. matter. Upon the *thirtieth*, we went out of town again, and I looked out for a proper place from whence to draw a view of the city, at the time of the year it then was; for in ſummer it is impoſſible to do it, becauſe of the numbers of trees that hide it. We went up an eminence to look at a building againſt a rock, which we ſhall reſume hereafter, in our deſcription of this city. I there found canals and ſprings frozen notwithſtanding they were running waters.

Mean time the King's ſervants and baggage arrived, and ſo filled the *chiaer-baeg* with duſt that they were obliged to water it. Mr. *Kaſtelein* being informed of this, ſent me with all his family to the place I had pitched on for drawing a view of the city, to ſee the King who was to paſs by there. We went thither dreſſed in the neateſt manner we could; and our horſes were well capariſoned, in which the *Perſians* are excellent. We waited a full hour at the Chriſtian burial-ground, and preſently ſaw a great number of horſemen appear, and his Majeſty's equipages or baggage carried by mules. They had ſent out ſix elephants to meet this Prince, four of which ſtopped in the *chiaer-baeg*, and the reſt went on. The King himſelf came half an hour before ſun-ſet, followed by the principal Lords of his court, and a prodigious crowd of people. He was at the head of them, and rode upon a fine cheſnut horſe, and went by us near a ſmall river, where we had drawn ourſelves up on horſeback to wait for him. We ſaluted him in the moſt reſpectful manner, and he fixed his eyes upon us. As the bridge he was to go over was but narrow, moſt that attended him forded the river; for many who had been eager to get upon the bridge fell off; to avoid the danger of which we turned off towards *Julfa* and came home with the night. It is hard to conceive what a multitude of people attend the King upon ſuch occaſions; a man would think it was an army. The number of his 1703. camels is not leſs ſurprizing, nor indeed had I ever ſeen ſo many together in all my life. Beſides all this there was a monſtrous crowd of ſpectators both on foot and on horſeback in the *chiaer-baeg*: the King went thro' one of his gardens to go to his palace, preceded by two leopards which he uſes in hunting, and ſome falcons. His women came to town the ſame night.

Upon the *fourteenth of December*, we celebrated the feſtival of *Chriſtmas* with Mr. *Kaſtelein*, and the next day went to viſit the monks of the three convents without the city. At the company's houſe, two days afterwards, we ſaw a white crow, which had been ſeen there ſeveral times before, but they could never ſhoot it, and was at laſt taken in his Majeſty's nets. At the ſame time they cleaned a ſmall pond, in which they found four ſorts of fiſh unknown in our parts, namely the *ghaermaji*, or *aſs-fiſh*, marked as if he had been covered with a net; the *ſjir-ma-ji* or *milk-fiſh*, with ſmall ſpotted ſcales; the *ſaraep*, a fiſh green upon the back and white under the belly, and which commonly ſwims upon the ſurface of the water; the fourth ſort conſiſted of one only ſmall fiſh, which had not grown at all in two years it had been taken notice of; I kept it with ſeveral others in ſpirits of wine. They are all admirably well taſted, and eſpecially from the *frying-pan*. *Remarkable fiſhes.*

Upon the firſt day of the year 1704. 1704, we went to pay the uſual compliments, after the manner of the country, to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, who kept us to dine and ſup with him to the number of thirty, and entertained us ſplendidly, not to ſay that they ſerved up ſweet-meats and refreſhments between the meals. The *Engliſh* Agent was ſome how or other out of order, ſo he could not be there, but his ſecond came with the chief officer of his houſe, as well as father *Antonio Deſtiro*, the *Portugueſe* Reſident, a man of merit, and who had ſeen the world, and *New-year's day.* *Reſident of Portugal.*

knew

1704. knew very well how to live in it: there were alſo ſeveral *Armenian* merchants. This entertainment, however, was not ſo grand as it had uſually been, becauſe of the death of the miſtreſs of the houſe; and there was but one diſcharge of four field-pieces in the morning, to give notice there was to be a feaſt, inſtead of ſeveral which are commonly fired upon theſe occaſions: this ſignal brought a number of people from *Julfa*. As I had my eye upon the watch, I took notice of a lighted taper, five or ſix foot long, and thick in proportion, different from all I had ever ſeen before, and adorned from top to bottom in a very particular manner; it ſtood upon a great diſh to ſave the carpet from the wax that dropped from it, and gave an amazing light. It rained very hard that night and next day, ſo that the ways became impaſſable, which is extraordinary enough at that ſeaſon; but upon the ſixth, which was twelfth-day, we had fair weather again. We were ſome days afterwards entertained by the *Engliſh* Agent, in the manner we had been by our own upon the firſt day of the year, with this addition that the cannon went off at every health: there was alſo muſic after the manner of the country. About the evening there came a *Georgian* dancer, who wanted to ſhew his agility, but he did no great feats. They brought a man ſwaddled up in a white cloth, ſo that you could only ſee his arms done up in imitation of two children, the one repreſenting a boy, the other a girl. He was ſtretched out like a dead man, and yet he made ſeveral comical motions to the ſound of inſtruments; he had his hands done up in the heads of the two pretended children, who firſt careſſed each other, and afterwards concluded with blows.

An extraordinary taper.

Entertainment given by the Engliſh *Agent.*

Mr. *Kaſtelein*, to whom I am infinitely obliged, ſent me, after this, fourteen large bottles of an excellent white wine, which he took care to furniſh me with during all the time I ſtaid in this city, beſides that he conſtantly entertained me at dinner and ſupper; but when I roſe from table I never failed to retire into my apartment, and there apply my ſelf to the things I had had in view when I ſet out upon ſo long and dangerous a journey. The wine I ſpeak of is the beſt in all *Perſia*, for they take no care to fine the wines at *Iſpahan*; all you drink there is foul and unpleaſant to the palate: they fine none but the wines of *Zjieraes* [*Shirâs*] which are the beſt of all, and which we ſhall mention in the ſequel. Moſt of the *Europeans* that have lived here ſome time fall into the taſte of the *Perſians*, and care but little whether the wine be fine or foul ſo it be but ſtrong. The wine he gave me was as clear as chryſtal, nearly of the taſte of *Rheniſh*, nor yielding to any *French* wine I ever drank in my life: there is alſo a red ſort very much like *Florence*. They fine down theſe wines in large earthen pots or jars, inſtead of caſks, as in the iſle of *Cyprus*, and after they have been well fermented, they put them into great glaſs bottles, which hold ſixteen of the common ſize. To make theſe wines, they pick out the very beſt of the grapes, and are careful in throwing aſide all ſuch as are rotten or bruiſed; and hence it is that the flavour of it ſurpaſſes that of all others: they uſe alſo ſulphur and cardamums, to preſerve them, and give them a good ſcent. For the reſt they never drink them before they are a year old, nor are they amiſs for uſe at the end of two.

Excellent wine.

1704.

During the time I ſtaid in this city, we, by letters, dated the *eighth* of *November*, from *Aleppo*, received news from our country, by runners employed for that purpoſe, by the companies of *Holland* and *England*. They in like manner go to *Gomron* and other places.

That day was the firſt of the *Beyram* or great faſt of the *Perſians*, which laſts twenty nine or thirty days, that is, till the return of the

Faſt of the Perſians.

1704. the new moon, as it is obſerved among the *Turks*. During this ſpace of time they are forbidden to eat or to drink in the day-time, or even to ſmoke, which is their moſt favourite amuſement: but then they turn the night into day; as ſoon as the ſun is down they begin to pray, and ſmoke about half an hour afterwards; they then eat and drink as much as they pleaſe till day-light. But all this is done in form and with regard to certain circumſtances, for after they have ſmoked, they eat nothing but fruits, ſweet-meats and the like, and have no regular meal till after mid-night. Nor are they allowed to blow the trumpet or ſound any of their other inſtruments at mid-night, as uſual; they muſt wait till four or five in the morning; and indeed then they make the greater noiſe with them, to rouſe up the artiſans, and admoniſh them it is time to riſe to their work. This ſign is alſo of uſe to thoſe without, giving them to underſtand they may bring in their goods, their fruits, herbs and the like, which, at other times, is done at mid-night. Theſe trumpets are alſo heard half an hour before the ſun goes down to give notice to the King's guards to repair to their ſeveral poſts. The ſhops muſt alſo be ſhut up between eight and nine at night, and every one muſt withdraw to his home; and two hours before it is day the *mollas*, churchmen whoſe buſineſs it is to give notice of the ſtated times of prayer, from the top of the moſchs, begin 1704. to call the people together: they begin again at noon, and after the ſun is down. The *Perſians* alſo begin to reckon their hours from the riſing and ſetting of the ſun; without minding how far the day or the night is ſpent, or whether the day be longer or ſhorter than the night, they go all by gueſs.

The following days, the river was full of ice; but nevertheleſs a ſervant of Mr. *Kaſtelein*'s caught out of town a fiſh of extraordinary ſize in this country; it was a kind of carp, three quarters of an ell in length, and admirably well taſted. This fiſh they call *Shirmaſhi*, as hath already been ſaid.

Upon the *ſixteenth*, after I had written to my friends in *Holland*, by the way of *Aleppo*, I went with Mr. *Kaſtelein*'s family to *Julfa*, to ſee the feſtival of the conſecration of water, which the *Armenians* were to celebrate the next morning before break of day. This feſtival is called *Goeroortnig*, or the *Baptiſm of the Croſs*, and is celebrated as with the *Ruſſians* upon the *ſixth* of January. In the evening we got into *Julfa*, and went to lodge with Mr. *Sahid*, our interpreter, who entertained us with a good ſupper. About *three* in the morning, which is the hour when they open this ceremony, we went to the church of *Anna-baet*, which is the epiſcopal church of the *Armenians*. *Feſtival of the water.*

CHAP. XXXIX.

Baptiſm of the Croſs. Antipathy between mules and bears. Feſtival of Gaddernabie. *Feſtival of the* Solar year. *Magnificent feaſts. Shoots of rhubarb. Feſtival of the ſacrifice of* Abraham.

THEY opened this ſolemnity with a leſſon, with hymns and with maſſes, quite to the break of day: at that time the Prieſts, who appeared in black, all but the Biſhop who officiated, put on their rich *Baptiſm of the croſs.*

1704. veſtments of gold brocade; and the Biſhop covered himſelf with his mitre, adorned with pearls and precious ſtones. In his right hand he held a croſs of middling ſize, and embelliſhed with jewels, but covered with a white embroidered handkerchief; and another in his left hand not ſo magnificent as the former. The number of eccleſiaſtics together upon this occaſion were twenty four or twenty five, who came out of the church with all their ornaments to go to a covered place over-againſt the church, ſomewhat lofty and very much adorned, and above which there are two bells. They here had a great copper ciſtern full of water, by which they read and ſung for above an hour; after which the Biſhop dipped the croſs three times into the water of the ciſtern, and then they gave him a large cup of oil, which he threw into the water, and ſo put an end to the ceremony. The Prieſts that aſſiſted, haſtily ran their hands into the water, and waſhed their faces with it, as did all the *Armenians* that could get at it; and ſome of them filled ſmall canes with this *holy water.* This ſolemnity was obſerved in ſeveral other churches, and even in a ſmall river which runs by *Julfa.* But this you muſt take along with you, they cannot practiſe this religious cuſtom without leave from the King, which the *Kalantaer*, or Burgomaſter of the *Armenians* never fails to aſk ſome days beforehand. Upon which this Prince ſends to demand the tribute of two hundred ducats, which they pay him yearly upon this account, and ſends them a guard to prevent diſorders; a precaution abſolutely neceſſary becauſe of the crowd of *Turks* and *Perſians* who came to ſee this ceremony out of curioſity. There was ſo great a throng of them this day, that the Biſhop himſelf could not have got to any thing, if the guards had not cleared the way for him by laying on on all ſides unmercifully with their ſtaves. The ſeven Biſhops who were here preſent, reſide in the epiſcopal monaſtery of the church of *Annabaet*, together with ſome Prieſts. This monaſtery which goes round the church, conſiſts of ſmall cells, where nothing is to be ſeen but two or three ſmall niches, fit for nothing but to hold books, together with a deſk, before which they ſit upon the ground. The walls are white and well kept, and the light comes in on one ſide by two or three ſmall glazed windows. The refectory may be called long, and is provided with a pulpit, in which they read ſome chapters during the time of dinner: the chapel is painted from top to bottom, with repreſentations of ſacred ſtories, but without any art. It is not lawful for their Biſhops to marry, but their Prieſts may. They have two Patriarchs, one of which reſides here, and the other at *Eetſinaſin*, or the *Three Churches*, near mount *Ararat*, and at the diſtance of three leagues from *Erivan.* 1704.

Antipathy between bears and mules.

Upon this occaſion we happened to ſee a ſtrange combat, between two mules and a black hog, which they had certainly torn to pieces if help had not come in. Mr. *Kaſtelein* informed us of the reaſon of this antipathy between theſe creatures and the black hog, ſaying it proceeded from a natural averſion they have to bears, which the black hog nearly enough reſembles. He told us that one day letting looſe one of his mules upon a large bear, the former tore the latter into pieces. Whence it is that the guides of the caravans when they underſtand there are bears about them, which frequently deſtroy horſes, ſet the mules at their heels, who never give them quarter. It happened even at that ſame time that a bear-ward, ſhewing away with one of thoſe creatures near the *chiaer-baeg*, a *Perſian* came riding by upon a mule; the mule no ſooner ſcented the bear than he fell furiouſly upon him, and obliged his rider to cry out for help, tho' not a ſoul dared to go near him. The mule ſtill purſued the bear, and threw his rider, who was a long time

1704. time ſick of the fall, but the bear got through a hole where the mule could not follow him. This ſeemed the more ſurprizing to us, as we had never once heard of this antipathy; nor do I remember to have any where read that the *Romans* made uſe of theſe creatures in their public ſhews; whence I conclude the mules of this country muſt be in this reſpect different from the mules any where elſe.

Anniverſary of the death of the Prophet Ali. Upon the *twenty ninth*, all the ſhops of *Iſpahan* were ſhut cloſe up, on account of the anniverſary of the death of their great prophet *Ali*. The heat was ſo very powerful in the month of *February*, that ſeveral plants began to ſhoot up.

At that time the *Engliſh* Agent, accompanied by father *Antonio Deſtiro*, and ſeveral others, came to pay a viſit to our Director, who gave them a ſplendid entertainment both at dinner and ſupper, ſo that the night was far ſpent when the company broke up. And this was what happened often enough; for this Agent and Mr. *Kaſtelein* were very intimate friends; and as they were always well attended, it was always done in a pompous manner.

The end of the Perſian *faſt.* Upon the *ſixth* of *February*, the *Perſians* had ſight of the new moon, and immediately concluded their faſt, and rejoiced all night to the ſound of all their inſtruments. Upon the *ſeventh*, they celebrated the feſtival of it according to cuſtom, with the ſame clamour, and the King entertained the court and the foreign miniſters. The next day being the feſtival of *Gaddernabie*, which is celebrated by none but the King himſelf, he, according to cuſtom, gave audience to all the counſellors of ſtate. Their wives and their daughters repaired alſo to the palace, where the King kept ſuch as he liked beſt for ſome days, an honour they value at a very high rate. There were great rejoicings, and fire-works at the palace.

Feſtival of Gadder-nabie.

Preſents made to the King. The *tenth* of this month is a day when they always make preſents to the King: they conſiſt of wax done up in the form of houſes, gardens, and the like. That day there aroſe a very high wind at north-weſt, where it every year prevails, for ſome days, at this ſeaſon of the year: they call it *Baad-Biedmusk*, or *Bed-muſwint*, from a flower which blows at this time. This flower grows upon a kind of willow, from a bud of the ſize of a ſmall nut; tho' it is but little and very odoriferous. From this ſame flower they diſtil a very pleaſant liquor, ſomething like ſherbet and lemonade, when ſweetened with ſugar, but it is more wholeſome and ſtronger. They keep it all the year round in bottles, and they alſo dry the flower itſelf, and put it among linen to ſcent it: the country people bring it in abundance to market. As I never obſerved the like with regard to the willows of our country, I have drawn the repreſentation you ſee in number 72; together with that of the leaves which do not appear till the month of *April*. The wind which blows theſe flowers commonly laſts till the end of the month, during which they have fine weather with conſiderable heats. Upon the *firſt day* of *March* there fell ſome rain, and preſently after it a ſtrong wind came on; it was cold; the weather was variable; and ſo it continued to be to the end of the month.

1704. *A ſtorm.* *Remarkable flower.* *Pleaſant liquor.*

Feſtival of the Solar *year.* Upon *Friday*, the *twentieth* of this month, they celebrated the feſtival of the *Solar year*. Upon this occaſion the Bazars have a charming effect by candle-light, all the ſhops in them are very much adorned, and eſpecially thoſe of the confectioners and fruiterers, which have a pleaſing effect upon the eye. The cooks ſhops are full of all ſorts of victuals, which they ſend all about the town, a practice in no other country: but they are all ſoon ſtript by the concourſe of ſtrangers who come to *Iſpahan* to keep this feſtival.

Royal feaſt. Early in the morning I went to the palace with our maſter of the horſe, who was a *Perſian* and very well

1704. well known, where the King was to entertain the principal Lords of his court. They ſat down to table at ten of the clock, and the feaſt laſted but half an hour: the victuals were ſerved up in gold and ſilver diſhes, in which conſiſts the great magnificence of the King of *Perſia*; theſe diſhes were all covered, to the number of two hundred, and they ſerve up as many again when there happens to be more company. Moſt of the Lords, invited upon this occaſion, wear a ſort of turban adorned with pearls and precious ſtones; they call it *Tha-eitſ-timaer*, and they are ſometimes adorned with herons feathers of great beauty. They take them off when they are out of the hall where the feaſt is, and put on thoſe they commonly have upon their heads: a ſervant carries it before them. During the time of this feſtival, theſe Lords appear with extraordinary magnificence, and eſpecially upon this day, when every one is ſeen in new cloaths. Not far from the place where the King gave this feaſt there were twelve of his led-horſes richly capariſoned; their houſings and ſaddles were ſet with pearls and precious ſtones, and their bridles were of maſſy gold. They were tied to ſilken halters which hung upon the ground, but care was to be taken how you trod upon them. Seven of theſe horſes were white, but had a part of their body, the tail, and the feet ſtained of a red or an orange colour. I could not get near to look at them till I had given ſomething to thoſe who had the care of them. They had a great carpet ſpread by them, upon which ſat a gentleman who had the immediate care of them; and by him was a great golden hammer wherewith they were ſhod, and a trough of the ſame metal. But I could not, even for money, get into the hall where the feaſt was, and was obliged to take up with a place where I ſaw every thing paſs by. During this feſtival there are great preſents made to the King, and particularly by the Grandees of the court, the baſſas and governors of places; their preſents conſiſt of rich goods, purſes of gold, horſes, camels, and mules; which are carried and conducted ſeparately by citizens who are employed for that purpoſe by the King's expreſs order. Around the great ſquare of the palace they, at the ſame time, carry ten or a dozen veſſels full of ſtraw, hanging by the end of certain poles, in token of a victory they formerly obtained over the *Aesbeck Tartars*; thus they give out, and then they lead a certain number of horſes, covered with ſilk, but without ſaddles, into the court of the palace. However I thought nothing ſo extraordinary as to ſee ſuch a number of the grandees croſs the court in their return from the feaſt, amidſt a vaſt croud of ſpectators. During the courſe of this feſtival alſo, which laſts for ſeveral days, they preſent each other with eggs: The *Maer-ſejeldaer* is even obliged to wait on the King with ſome adorned with gold and ſilver neatly painted, a preſent in very high eſteem among them.

Magnificence of the Perſians.

Trophies.

Eggs preſented.

Upon the *twenty third*, we celebrated the feaſt of Eaſter at our Director's, and the next day the *Engliſh* Agent, with a numerous train, came to congratulate him thereupon. He was received after the uſual manner, and it was late before they parted. We received ſeveral other viſits the next day, which inſenſibly brought us on to the end of the month.

Eaſter.

In the beginning of the month of *April*, Mr. *Kaſtelein* had a preſent of young aſparagus. It was even ſold in the market the next day, but then you had not above ſixty or ſeventy for a ſcore of florins. This aſparagus is always dear at the beginning of the ſeaſon, and there are few that buy them, but to make preſents to ſuch people of diſtinction as they ſollicit. They ſent us alſo ſome ſtalks and ſuckers of rhubarb, preſerved in the gravy of lamb. They are very refreſhing and laxative, of a delicious taſte, and very much eſteemed at this time of year.

Shoots of rhubarb.

FEUILLES &c DE RHUBARBE ET FOCKIE - FOCKIESE. 73.

1704. The leaves of them are curled, green, yellow, and reddiſh, with a white ſtalk, inclining to the yellow: ſome of them are alſo of a fine red, and two or three inches in circumference: theſe ſtalks are for the moſt part a foot and a foot and half long, and they eat only the tender part of the beſt: when they begin to ſhoot up, they cover them with earth, like aſparagus, and that makes them grow big. They are cultivated for the King's table, in the neighbourhood of the town of *Laer*, whoſe governor is obliged annually to make him a preſent of ſome. The leaf of this is two or three fathom in circumference, and the root as well as itſelf, is like that of the common rhubarb, but it has no ſtrength like what grows in the country of *Usbek*, between *China* and *Muſcovy*. The *Perſians* eat the tender parts of theſe young ſtalks raw with ſalt and pepper, as the *Italians* eat the ſuckers of artichokes; the taſte of them is hot and biting, and very pleaſant: of the ſame they alſo make a ſyrup which is very refreſhing. I had the curioſity to draw this plant with its leaves and root, and I have met with leaves of a foot and an half long, and even ſome larger. The root of this had four ſlips, grey and mottled: they ſent it me from *Julfa*, where it had been nineteen years in the ground. On one ſide of this plant I have alſo drawn a certain fruit when the ſeaſon is farther advanced, which the *Perſians* call *Badensjoen*, and the *Europeans*, *Foekjefockieſe*. It is of a purple and ſometimes white, commonly of the ſize of a cucumber, but ſometimes as big again. It is excellent in broth, fryed in butter, and ſeveral other ways. They tranſplant the ſhrub that bears it, when very young, and the fruit is the better for it: the bloſſom of it is white, purple and yellow, and it uſually ſhoots a foot and an half out of the ground, with ſeveral ſmall branches, the weight of whoſe fruit bend them down to the earth: you have one of theſe in number 73, together with the preceding plant. The letter A diſtinguiſhes the leaves of rhubarb; B the root; and C the *Foekjefockieſe*. 1704.

Upon the *ſeventh* of this month, at *Julfa*, there fell an heavy rain, with hail which covered all the country, tho' at the ſame time they hardly felt any thing of the kind in the city; an accident which had not happened for many years before. All the reſt of the month we had wind, rain, and very uncertain weather.

Upon the *fifteenth*, they celebrated the feſtival of *Bairam-korbat* or *the Sacrifice of Abraham*. Mr. *Kaſtelein*, who knew my curioſity, ordered his maſter of the horſe and two others of his ſervants to wait on me on horſeback to the place deſigned for this purpoſe. The King's muſic had been heard the evening before, as the ſun went down, and continued till the ſame hour of the next day, the muſicians, who are in great number, relieving each other by turns. At ſeven in the morning I went to the *Chiaer-baeg*, where the King was to paſs as he croſſed the gardens, and he appeared in half an hour's time at the head of a train of Lords, above two hundred of them with the rich turbans we formerly mentioned. I had placed my ſelf in the middle of the way, where this Prince was to paſs, and having ſeen him, and his train, I galloped away to *Babaroek*, a *Perſian* burial ground, the place where the ceremony was to be performed, a good half league out of the city. It conſiſts of no more than the bare ſacrifice of a male camel, without any defect; if any it had it would be accounted impure. The *Daroega* or Bailif of the city, and ſometimes the King himſelf, gives him the firſt blow with a great launce, after which they diſpatch him with ſabres and knives. After this they cut him up into pieces, and divide him among the officers of the ſeveral diſtricts of the city; and as every one is eager to have his ſhare, diſorders ariſe, and *Feaſt of the* Sacrifice of Abraham. 1704.

1704. ſometimes many remain dead on the ſpot, as it happened that day; for every one goes armed either with ſabres or clubs, and there is ſuch a throng of horſemen it is impoſſible to move. For my part, I got away one of the firſt, and returned to the *Chiaer-baeg* to ſee this multitude go back again to the city. At length when every one had got what ſhare he could of the ſacrifice, they returned in triumph, the officers at the head of thoſe in their diſtrict, jumping and dancing ſword in hand, and with their clubs aloft, bawling out, and ſtriking upon baſons and ſmall drums. The firſt piece that is cut off from this camel is for the King, and they carry it to the palace upon the point of a ſpear. For the reſt, the return was very orderly, and with great tokens of joy. Firſt there appeared the King's guards, and then the Prince himſelf on horſeback, under a great paraſol, to ſhelter him from the ſun beams, and followed by the Lords of the court, and they by twelve of his Majeſty's led-horſes and four elephants. There were in all above one hundred thouſand perſons on foot and on horſeback, beſides thoſe that were on the tops of houſes. I was the only *European* that appeared dreſſed after our mode. As ſoon as the King drew near they cleared the way for him by laying it thick on with the cudgel, ſo that many fell into the water with their horſes; others were quite overpowered with blows, and I went home very much fatigued: and yet all was over before eleven in the morning, notwithſtanding they had croſſed the town in form and order in their return. For ten days before this ſacrifice they had led this camel up and down the town covered with thorns or the like, and preceded by a launce, an ax, and many inſtruments,

Abundance of ſheep killed. That day they kill and eat above fifty thouſand ſheep at *Iſpahan*, and thoſe who have the very good fortune to get a piece of the camel, are ſure to dreſs it with their mutton; tho' others make a relick of it, and keep it all the year round. 1704. For the reſt, it is very certain, that they every day in this city conſume ten or twelve thouſand ſheep and goats, and that every body is obliged to eat mutton upon this day. I met ſuch prodigious flocks of them ſome days before that I had much ado to get clear of them. They here alſo eat an inconceivable number of lambs, from twenty to twenty five or thirty days old. This begins in the month of *November*, and laſts till the months of *April* and *May*, and particularly among people of rank. The price of theſe lambs is commonly ſeven, eight, or nine *moroedjes*, ſeven of which go to a crown of our money; and they weigh from ſix to twelve pounds. They are one of the greateſt dainties of *Perſia*, and eſpecially among the better ſort, who never eat beef, but leave it to the meaner and poor people, as well as the buffaloe which is alſo publickly ſold.

The King goes into the country with his miſtreſſes. Some days after this feſtival the King went into the country with his miſtreſſes, and diverted himſelf with ſeeing ſome elephants ſwim croſs a river which had been ſwoln in an extraordinary manner by the rains that had lately fallen.

Feſtival of Aidikadier. Upon the *twenty third* they held the feſtival of *Aidikadier*, a day upon which the *Perſians* will have it that *Mohammed* declared to the people, That *Ali* was to be his ſucceſſor, and injoined them to acknowledge him as ſuch. They ſay this was tranſacted in *Arabia the Happy*, near the village of *Shomkadier*, whence they derive the name of this feſtival, which is obſerved by the *Perſians* only, the other *Mohammedans* not bearing the mention of it.

At this time the trees began to ſhoot, and the month concluded with heavy rains, which damaged ſome houſes and waſhed away others, which is not at all to be wondered at; for the maſons work of this country is like a ſpunge, and the houſes are flat at top, ſo that it is impoſſible to keep them dry when it rains.

With

1704. With *May* the weather began to recover itſelf; and I went into the country with Mr. *Kaſtelein* deſigning to follow the courſe of the river, but it had ſo drowned its banks becauſe of the rains which had fallen ſome time before, that we were obliged to ſtrike croſs the country, by a road which in two hour's time carried us to a pleaſure-houſe called *Goeſ-jeron*, to the eaſtward of the city, upon the river of *Zenderoe*. It has a large garden full of ſena and fruit-trees; and here ſeveral that have been ſent by the *Eaſt-India* company have ſtopped upon their arrival at, and departure from *Iſpahan*. This houſe has ſeveral apartments, ſome of which begin to run to ruin, and the neighbourhood about it is very pleaſant. In this garden there are four great ſena-trees, at a ſmall diſtance from each other, which cover a pavilion which you go up to by ſome ſteps. Theſe trees are ſhort, with a thick trunk, and two of them are ſixteen foot in circumference. They hold them to be very antient, and tell you that *Tamerlane* once repoſed himſelf under the ſhade of their branches. 1704.

An old pleaſure-houſe.

We thought here to have met with ſome game, but it ſuddenly coming on to rain we were glad to go back to *Julfa* where we ſtaid till it was night. The following day the weather was very inconſtant, and I was taken with an intermitting fever; I had only ſome few fits of it, but they weakned me to that degree, that I was ſenſible of the ill effects of them quite to the end of the month.

CHAP. XL.

Deſcription of Iſpahan, *and of what is moſt remarkable in that city, and the neighbourhood about it.*

Proſpect of the city from without.

Iſpahan is a city of very great extent, and eſpecially if you take in the ſuburbs; and yet it does not make any great figure from without, whether with regard to moſchs, towers, or large buildings, becauſe it is generally ſhaded by trees in the ſummer. For this reaſon I ſtaid till it was winter to draw a view of it, and even then I could do it but imperfectly becauſe of the number of palm-trees, pines, ſena's and cypreſſes which are ever green, and ſo high and ſo thick of leaves as to charm the eye. All the buildings of this city are grey, with platforms or terraſſes at top. There is no diſtinguiſhing the wall which divides the city from the ſuburbs, becauſe the houſes are ſo cloſe together there is no perceiving any diviſion. All this makes it a difficult taſk to draw a view of this city, and the rather as it ſtands upon a level or plain, ſo that I was obliged to pitch upon an eminence a league from the town, from whence I ſaw *Julfa*, which is on the other ſide of the town, the city and all its dependences, beſides the villages and gardens that ſurround it, and which take up a very great extent of country, the whole encompaſſed with mountains. That which is the neareſt of all is a league and an half to the ſouthward, and called *Koe-ſoffa*. Upon the ſide of this mountain you ſee a houſe built by King *Suliman*, the father of the preſent King, and therein are many fine apartments, whence you have a proſpect of the city and country about it, a plantation of all ſorts of trees, and a fall of water which comes down from the mountains. This building is called *Tagte Sullemoen*, or the throne

Mountain of Koe-Soffa.

A royal pleaſure-houſe.

TRONE DE ZULEMOEN.

of *Suliman*, and they were repairing it when I was in theſe parts. You have a repreſentation of it above, ſuch as it appears from the foot of the hill. The other mountains are much farther diſtant from the city, which ſtands in a plain of about twenty five leagues from eaſt to weſt. One would even ſay it was boundleſs to the eaſtward in particular, as well as the road to *Shiras*, upon which you meet with many fine villages, and pleaſant gardens; I travelled ſix leagues to the eaſtward and could perceive no bounds. It is alſo full ſix leagues broad.

Gates of Iſpahan.

This city has ten gates, which are all open and without any guard. In order to go round it, I went to the gate of *Haſſan-abaet*, ſo called from a certain perſon of great fame, who was one of the firſt who began to build on that ſide: from thence you go to that of *Derwas-cykaroen*, or the *Gate of the Deaf*, this part having been formerly inhabited by deaf people. You leave it on the left hand to go through the bazars, which are a quarter of a league from the former. The gate of *Seydach-moedjoen* is at a like diſtance, and on the eaſt-ſide of the town, where there is a double wall, the outermoſt of which is very low, and beyond which there is nothing but tombs and no houſes. From this you go on to the gate *Shoebarn*, to the weſtward, from whence, at the ſame diſtance, you ſee that of *Togt-ſhie*. The canal which goes round a part of the city to the weſtward, quite to the gate of *Karoen*, which we have mentioned, riſes or has its ſpring from this place. A quarter of a league from thence you have the gate of *Darideſt*, and at an

1704. equal distance from *Darwasynow*, or the *New-gate*. Then the gate of *Darwarsy Lamboen*, and then that of *Doulet*, or *Prosperity*, which is that of the *Chiaer-baeg*. The tenth is that of *Hadshie* near the gate of the kitchen of the royal palace. When I had got round again to the gate of *Hassan-abaet*, whence I set out, I looked at my watch, and found I had been two hours and an half in going from gate to gate. They are all built of earth and without any works for defence, and the folds of the gates themselves are very clumsey and secured by iron plates.

Wards of the city. This city is divided within the walls into twenty two principal parts or wards, seventeen of which bear the name of *Mamerh-olla-sie* or of *Namet-holladers*, and the five others that of *Heiderrie:* they are like the *Nicoloti* and the *Castellani* at *Venice*. These seventeen parts or wards of the first division have each of them a particular name; the first is called *Bagaet*, or the *Ward of Gardens*; because in the reign of *Abbas* the first it contained nothing but gardens: the second *Kerron*, or the *Ward of the Deaf:* the third *Daehbettin*, or of the *Fruit-house of Melons:* the fourth *Sey-id Agmed-joen*, so called from one of their Doctors: the fifth *Letver*, the etymology of which is unknown: the sixth *Basaer-Agaes*, or the *Duck-market:* the seventh *Shaer-soi Kotba*, or the *Cross-way of Kotba:* the eighth *Seltoen-sensbierie*, from a Prince of that name: the ninth *Namo-asig*, or the *three incompatibles:* the tenth *Shoebare*, the derivation of which I cannot tell: the eleventh *Derre-Babba-Kasim*, or the *District of the Father Kasim:* the twelfth *Goude Mazsoet-beek:* the thirteenth *Golbaer*, or *rich in flowers:* the fourteenth *Meydoen-mier*, or the *District or ward of the square of Mier*, from one of their Doctors: the fifteenth *Niema-wort*; the meaning of which I know not: the sixteenth *Derre-koek*, or *Place of Pleasure*. I am ignorant of the name of the seventeenth. The four following are of the division of the *Heyderries*; the first of them is called *Maleynouw*, or the *New Part:* the *Derredest*, or the *Forsaken:* the third *Hoescyn-ja*, or the *District of the Churchmen:* and the fourth *Togt-shie*, or of the *Keeper of the Poultry*.

1704.

The chief parts of the same general divisions without the walls are to the number of four; the first is called *Abbas Abaet*, founded by *Abbas the Great*. This is the most considerable of the out-parts, and here live none but people of distinction; nor indeed is there any difference made between this and those within the walls: it is to the westward: the second is *Siems-Abaet*, so called from its founder: the third *Bied-Abaet*, and the fourth *Thie-roen*. There are two besides these which belong to the division of *Namet-olla-hie*, the first of which is called *Sheigh-joessus-sibenna*, or the *Mason of old Joseph*, otherwise called the District of *Sheig-Sebbennaes*, and *Telwaeskon*. Under these parts are comprehended several smaller subdivisions, which are all distinguished by particular names. These two great divisions always oppose each other in every thing, and this is chiefly remarkable upon days when they have processions, upon great festivals, and in public places: and as they never submit to each other upon these occasions, they never fail to commit disorders, and some of them are often left dead upon the spot; this we shall take notice of hereafter. It is said that the origin of this emulation, or enmity rather, is derived from two ancient villages, that formerly joined to each other, and that one of them belonged to the *Heiderries*, and the other to the *Namet-olla-hie*, names since assumed by the two parties. This city was at first called *Hispahan*, *Ispahan*, or *Aspahan*, and was no more than any ordinary town till the reign of *Abbas the Great*, and after he had conquered *Laer* and *Ormus*, when he forsook *Casbin*

Subdivisions.

1704. and *Sultania* to reſide at *Iſpahan*. The chief cauſe of this change was the advantageous ſituation of this city, which is now become the capital of the Kingdom, and ſeat of the Monarchs of *Perſia*. It is in the province of *Irak*, part of the ancient *Parthia*, and in the latitude of 32 degrees 45 minutes of the northern hemiſphere.

Perſia. This country in general goes by the name of *Perſia*, a great and famous Kingdom of *Aſia* ſurrounded by the *Caſpian* ſea, *Zagathay*, *Tartary*, the empire of the *Mogol*, the ſea of *India*, the gulf of *Perſia*, *Arabia the Deſart* and *Turkey*.

King's palace. The King's palace is three quarters of a league in circumference, and has ſix gates, the chief of which is called *Ali Kapie*, or the *Gate of Ali:* the ſecond *Haram Kapeſie*, or the *Gate of the Seraglio*; both of them come into the *Meydoen* or great ſquare, which is to the northward: the third is called *Moerbag-Kapeſie*, or the *Gate of the Kitchen*, becauſe all the victuals that are ſerved up at the King's table go through that: the fourth *Ghandag-Kapeſie*, thro' which you go into the gardens of the palace; tho' that is what nobody is allowed to do but the King himſelf, and the *Kapaters* or eunuchs that have the guard of his women; this gate leads into the *Chiaer-baeg*: the fifth *Ghajat-ganna Kapeſie*, or the *Gate of Taylors*, becauſe thoſe in his Majeſty's ſervice have their abode there: the ſixth *Ghanna Kapeſie*, or the *Secretary's Gate:* theſe two laſt come into the town to the northward. Moſt of the Grandees of the kingdom go into the palace through thoſe gates when the King gives them audience, and particularly through the two firſt.

The cittadel. The cittadel, which they call *Tabaroek*, is about half a league in circumference, and extends in length, eaſtward, quite into the city, and to the ſouthward meets the wall of the ſame. It has a lofty mud wall, flanked with ugly towers, upon which there are ſome pieces of cannon mounted; but they dare not 1704. diſcharge them, for fear of throwing down the wall, which is in ſo wretched a condition that you may ſee through it in ſeveral places. They do not ſuffer ſtrangers to go into it, but I am perſuaded the reaſon is becauſe it is in a more ruinous condition within than it is without; there is however a good deal of room and convenience within it. As for what remains to be ſaid of the reſt of the city, we ſhall declare ourſelves concerning it when we have gone through the deſcription of it, to the end that what we have to add may be the better underſtood. Now here follows the deſcription of it, ſuch as it is repreſented in number 74, and as it appears from the ſouthward. The figure [1] diſtinguiſhes a mountain; [2] the new royal garden, which I ſaw begun; it is of great extent; [3] the river of *Zenderoe*; [4] the houſe of one of the chief *Armenian* merchants of *Julfa*; [5] the *Dominicans* church of the ſame place; [6] the church of St. *John* belonging to the *Armenians*; [7] the epiſcopal church of the ſame, with a ſmall tower; [8] the market church; [9] the church of St. *Mary*, all this in *Julfa*; [10] the bridge of *Allawerdi-Khan*; [11] *Muzyt* or the royal moſch; [12] that of *Torfolla*, one of their Doctors; [13] *Menare-Kambrinſie*, which is a lofty ſtone tower; [14] *Kella Menaer*, or the pillar of beaſts heads; [15] *Tabaroek* or the cittadel; [16] *Hazaarſherip* or the great royal garden; [17 and 18] the chief tombs belonging to the *Perſians*, and their burial place called *Babaroek*; [19] the *Chriſtian* place of burial; [20] the royal river; [21] the mountains of *Choroe*, in part covered with ſnow; [22] that of *Taliſſia*, a village of that name.

The great ſquare. The *Meydoen*, which is one of the chief ornaments of this city, is a great ſquare or market-place which is ſeven hundred and ten paces long, from eaſt to weſt; and two hundred and ten broad from north to ſouth.

It

22
1
2
3
20

13
14
12
11
8
9
3
16
3
17
18
20

1704. It is to the ſouthward of the royal palace, and to the northward of the *Nachroe-chone*, a building for the King's muſick. It conſiſts of two lofty galleries diſtinct from each other, and between them you ſee the imperial gate, of a fine architecture, lofty, and built of fine ſtones, thro' which you go into the *Bazars*. Upon this gate you ſee a repreſentation of the battle between King *Abbas* and the *Usbeck-Tartars*; it is in painting, by an artiſt of the country. Above it there is a ſtriking clock, the only one in all *Perſia*, and on the ſame ſide you have the pavilion of the machines or of the clock, which moves ſome wooden puppets in a wheel, not worthy to be ſeen by an *European*. A little further to the eaſtward you come to the moſch of *Shig-lotf-olla*, ſo called from one of their doctors, whom they reckon in the number of their ſaints. It is one of the chief in all the city, and is adorned with a fine dome, covered on the out-ſide with green and blue ſtones incruſtated with gold, and with a pyramid, upon which there are three balls of the ſame metal. The front door comes into the great ſquare, and you aſcend to it by ſeveral ſteps; it is round, and forty paces in diameter, as I was aſſured by one I had deſired to meaſure it; for it is unlawful for Chriſtians to go into it.

Royal moſch

The royal moſch called *Shah-mazyt*, is on the weſt-ſide of this ſquare, and is the moſt conſiderable in all *Iſpahan*. It has a dome like the former, and two doors in front, on each ſide of which there is a pillar; they are more lofty than the moſch itſelf, the whole of green and blue, with an incruſtation of gold, very charming to the ſight. About it you ſee ſeveral *Perſian* characters in white, and the dome has two columns. This moſch is round like the former, and is eighty-five paces in diameter. There is a fine fountain or baſon in the court oppoſite to the entrance, and to ſay the truth of the matter, theſe two moſchs are the greateſt ornaments of the meydoen or great ſquare. The gate of *Ali-kapie* is but two hundred and ſixty ſix paces from this laſt moſch, and the whole ſquare is ſurrounded with lofty buildings, and with porticoes full of ſhops and artificers. Thoſe in the ſervice of his Majeſty are on the ſide of the court; and beſides all this, the greateſt part of this ſquare is full of tents, where they expoſe all ſorts of things to ſale; but they pack up their goods at night and leave a watch behind, which go the rounds in the night with dogs. Moſt of the buildings there are ſhaded with elms, and you there continually ſee a prodigious concourſe of people, and among the reſt, a great number of perſons of quality going and coming from court. You have alſo here numbers of buffoons and mountebanks, but they ſell no medicines, and do no more than divert the people with idle ſtories, which they are paid for by their hearers and ſpectators. Some of them have apes and monkies, which play a thouſand tricks to draw the people about them; for there is no nation under the ſun ſo fond of the bagatelle as the *Perſians*, and their coffee-houſes, bazars, and the like, are accordingly full of theſe buffoons. In the middle of this ſquare or market-place there is a large and lofty pillar for publick ſports, and upon which they commonly fix the prize which uſually conſiſts of a golden cup or ſome ſuch thing; the parties that contend for it, ride by it on full ſpeed, and turning the body, at once ſend away their dart or arrow, and ſtop at once; but none are allowed this but perſons of diſtinction and men of the ſword; and he that wins the prize lays hold on it, and puts it upon his head in token of victory; the King alſo makes him a preſent, more or leſs, according to the value he has for him; but it is commonly a golden quiver full of arrows. But theſe ſports have been but little in vogue ſince the acceſſion of the preſent King, whoſe inclinations carry him another way, and

Tournament.

are

1704. are very different from thoſe of his predeceſſors, under whom this pillar was erected. In former days they never failed to have a tournament upon the feſtival of *Nowroes* or of the new ſolar year, a ſolemnity ſtrictly obſerved by the ancient Kings of *Perſia*, and, according to the annals of this country, even in the days of *Darius*. Upon theſe occaſions they always ſtruck and moved off the tents that uſually ſtand here, and ploughed the ground with oxen twenty days before hand. The King was ſeated upon a kind of gallery or theatre, called *Talael*, over the gate of *Ali-kapie*, which is very lofty, and of a fine architecture. The races being over, there came on wreſtlers and rope-dancers, and then they had fights of bulls and rams. Upon theſe occaſions they had alſo jugglers, which the King at this day will no longer admit of, the directors of his conſcience having informed him the toleration of them is ſinful and immoral; nor do they any longer allow of dancing women and courtezans, who formerly abounded on all ſides.

Deſcription of the Meydoen. You have a repreſentation of the *Meydoen* or the great market-place in number 75. This firſt view was taken from the ſide of the houſe for the King's muſick. The letter *A* diſtinguiſhes the talael or the theatre, over the gate of *Ali-kapie*: *B*, the royal moſch: *C*, that of *Shig-lotf-alla*: *D*, the *Wagtis-ſai-aet*, or the pavilion of machines. The tents are there alſo repreſented, and the pillar for races. The ſecond view repreſented in number 76, was taken from the eaſt near the royal moſch. The Letter *A*, diſtinguiſhes the *Talael*, *Ali-kapie*: *B*, the moſch of *Shig-lotf-olla*: *C*, the pavilion of machines: *D*, the houſe of muſical inſtruments: *E*, the *Derre-harram*, or the gate of the Seraglio, of which you do not ſee much. The pillar is there in the middle of the ſquare. Along the portico of the palace there runs a baluſtrade of painted wood, on each ſide: this baluſtrade contains one hundred and nineteen pieces of ſmall cannon whoſe carriages are much out of repair, and eſpecially the wheels. There is a canal by theſe cannon, which were brought from *Ormus*, in the reign of *Abbas*, who made himſelf maſter of the place by the aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*. 1704.

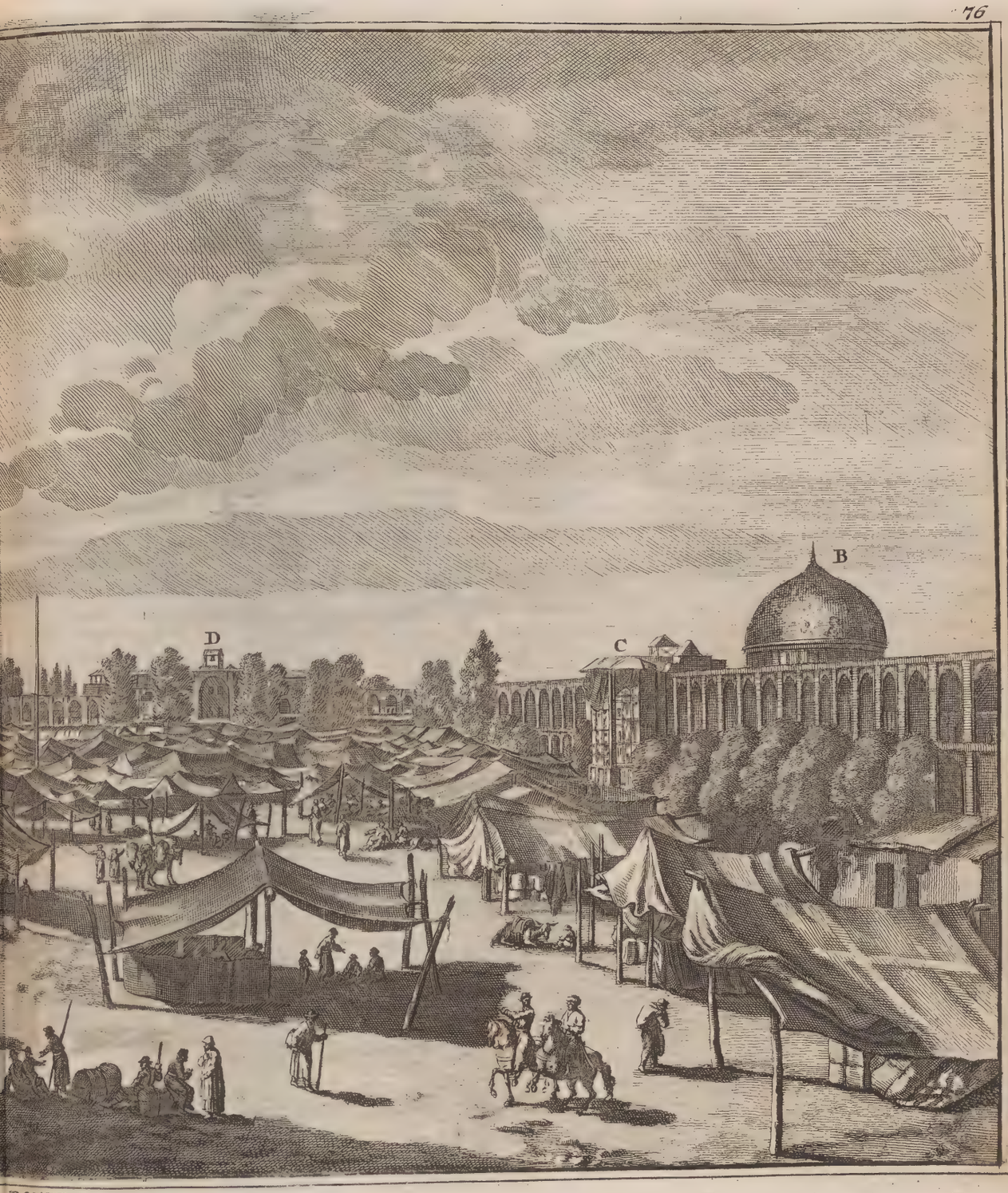
You go into the palace by the gate of *Ali-kapie*, which is finely built, and ten paces broad; it is more in depth, with a lofty vault or arcade, with pretty niches on the ſides of the wall. When you are got thro' it, you ſee lofty ſtone walls between which you get to the buildings and garden; the gate of the *Haram* is nearly like this; it was built while I was here, and gilt in the front. The firſt time I was at court, in the abſence of the King and his women, I went through a gallery between theſe walls, and thought the entrance of it quite royal. From thence I went to the new Seraglio of the women, which is full of ſmall magnificent apartments, with walls white without and painted with flowers. At the end of this building on the right-hand, there is a great apartment of the neateſt ſort, ſurrounded with rooms, which were then not finiſhed, and upon which they were then at work. From thence you go into the hall of *Tiel-ſetton*, or of the forty pillars, where the King uſually gives audience to foreign miniſters; twenty of theſe columns are of wood painted and gilt. This hall is very ſpacious, and the walls of it are blue adorned with flowers and foliages. You here ſee alſo ſome figures of *Europeans*, dreſſed after the *Spaniſh* manner, and otherwiſe, and eight other pillars in the back part of this building, four of a ſide, and four other in an apartment which was ſhut up. Before this apartment there is a great court full of ſena's, and over-againſt it another ſmaller, behind which is the Seraglio, and between both a fine baſon or fiſh-pond lined with great ſtones, with which alſo the court itſelf is paved. This baſon is one hundred and

Magnificent building.

C
D

A
B

LE MEY-



-DOEN.

1704. eighty paces long by twenty four broad. From thence they carried me into another court, and then into a great building, where there was an hall of extraordinary dimensions, very lofty and very light, with great curtains which fell from the ceiling down to the floor. I had the curiosity to lift up one of them, and found this hall full of looking-glasses, and adorned with fine columns of wood, painted and gilt; it is the very finest part of the palace, and here also the King gives audience to foreign ministers. There are fine fountains or basons before it, and a canal to water the trees of the garden; this palace is divided into several parts, and has several gardens divided from each other. You have here also fine stone galleries, covered, and adorned with niches on the sides, and stone benches three foot high, and several other apartments exclusive of the new seraglio, for which the King pays yearly the sum of three hundred *Tomans*, every *Toman* about forty florins of our money; all the shops about the *Mey-doen* and *Chiaer-baag* are obliged to contribute to it; and the clergy have all the revenue of the gardens belonging to it, by a grant from *Abbas* the first.

The King loves musick.

Their instruments.

The King delights much in musick, and keeps a great number of hands for that purpose at the *Nachroechone*. Their chief instruments are the *Karama*, which is somewhat in the nature of the trumpet; there are some of them five inches in circumference at the mouth end, and four foot at the other, and seven foot six inches long, so that there is no making use of them without a rest; they give a very extraordinary sound; they have also the *Koes*, a great drum, five foot two Inches deep, and nine foot nine inches round; but it is never used except in war, and those that beat it ride upon camels; the *Hool*, which is a drum like ours; the *Nagora*, a small kettle-drum, and the trumpet or the *Nafier*. They have harpsichords also; but the chief instrument in use with them is the *Kamon-she*, a kind of violin. They have also the *Soorna* or hautbois; several sorts of flutes; the harp or the *Morgnie*, a kind of a flat copper bason, upon which they strike and make a great noise. Besides all these they have several other instruments we know nothing of in our parts. 1704.

Chief exercises of the Persians.

The chief exercises of this nation are riding and darting the *Ainer* or cane; shooting with the bow, and fowling; and their usual pastimes are tobacco and conversation. They are moreover great lovers of chess, and play at it perfectly well.

The Chiaer baag.

Having thus said all we have to observe concerning the *Mey-doen* or great market-place; let us go to the *Chiaer-baag*, or the fine alley or walk of *Ispahan*, which signifies also the *four gardens*, and is one of the principal ornaments of this capital. You go to it by the gate of *Daer-waſey-doulet* or of *Prosperity*, built by *Abbas* the great, to the south. This Prince ordered some of his counsellors of state, to build some houses at their own expence, at the entrance into these gardens along this fine walk. One of these Lords, called *Gemshe Ali Khan*, accordingly erected a building in form of a tower, against one of the walks that runs along the river; the rest followed this example, and strove to out-do each other in adorning it with fine stone buildings, and among the rest with a pavilion at the entrance, whence the King as he came out of the gardens might see all these edifices.

At the distance of two hundred and fifty paces from the gate of the city, as you go along by these gardens, you see two buildings opposite to each other, with great gates that go into the gardens, and in the middle of this alley is a large octogon bason; two other buildings like these at three hundred and thirty eight paces from thence, with a square bason, and one hundred and seventy paces farther you come to a cross way, extending to the walls of the gardens. This cross-way is full of

1704. benches, wooden-chairs, and tables, and here in the evening you always ſee a great number of *Perſians*, ſmoaking and drinking coffee; the ground here has a ſlope, where there are trees which afford the fineſt ſhade in the world; and accordingly it is almoſt always thronged with people on foot, and on horſeback, who there divert themſelves with racing and ſeveral other exerciſes. As you go ſtill farther you come to a great ſtone-gate, belonging to one of theſe gardens, and a little farther is two other buildings, where they retire to ſmoke, and a little farther another croſs-way; then two buildings like the former, and between them a ſquare baſon. Here they ſmoke alſo and drink coffee, and here you have a great number of bucklers, and bows and arrows, belonging to the *Mametholladers* and the *Heyderries* we have mentioned before: At ſome diſtance from hence there is another octogon baſon, which butts upon a way which is croſſed by a fine river planted on each ſide with ſena's. The great road extends above two hundred paces beyond this along the palace and the royal garden, where there is a kind of menagerie.

Famous bridge. The bridge of *Alla-werdi Khan*, the name of its founder, is but eighty paces from hence. The road near it is one thouſand ſeven hundred and fifty one paces long, and ſixty eight broad, adorned on each ſide with ſena's planted in the reign of *Abbas* the great, above one hundred years ago. The part where theſe trees are planted is five paces broad, and is raiſed one foot and an half above the way or road itſelf, which is full of ſand. This raiſed way which runs between the wall of the garden and theſe trees is paved with large brick, wherewith alſo the canal that croſſes the *Chiaer-baag* is lined. On the ſides of theſe trees which are regularly planted at the diſtance of ten foot from each other, is a conveyance to water them.

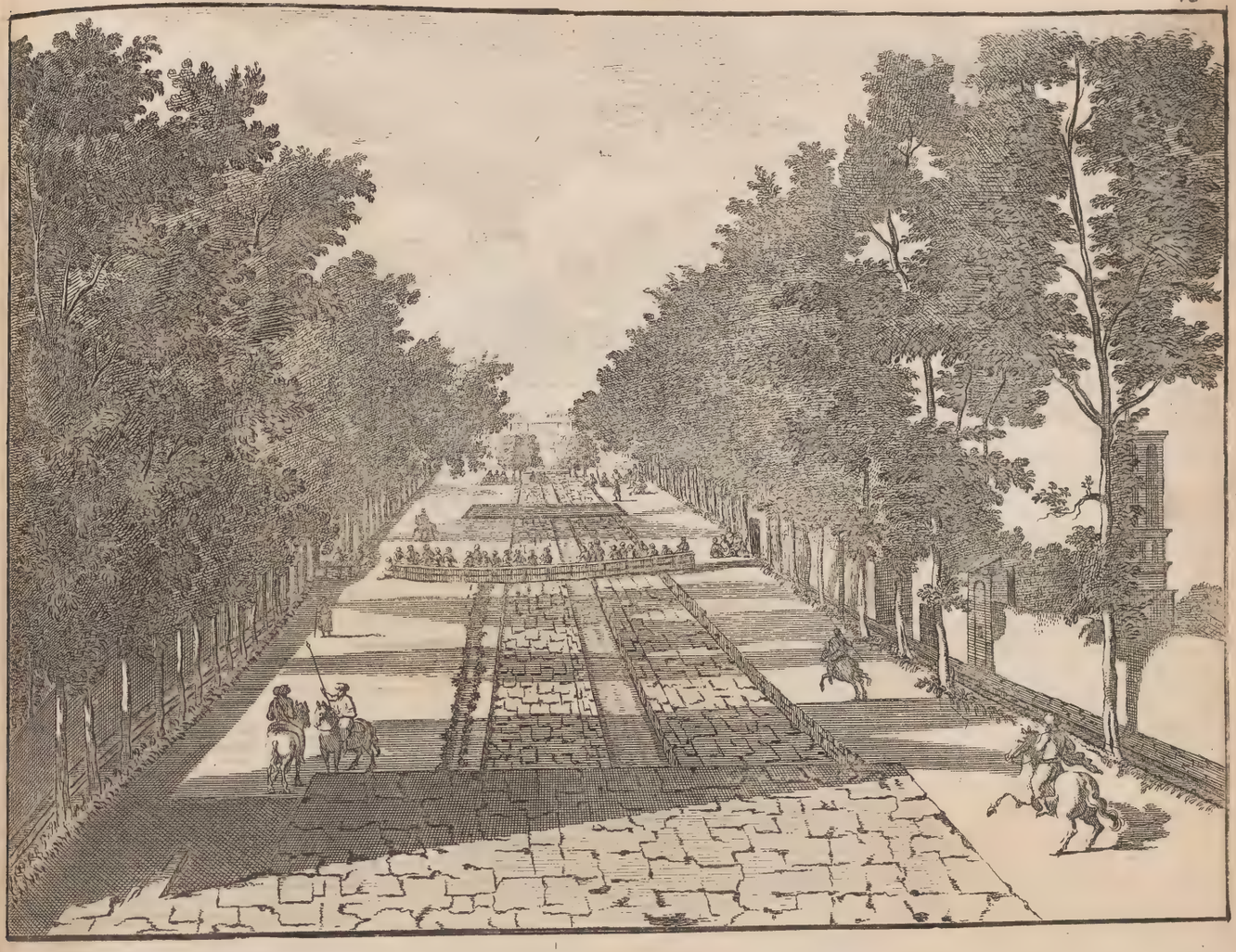
The bridge of *Alla-werdie-Khan* is upon the river of *Zenderoet*, five hundred and forty paces long and ſeven- 1704.
teen broad, and built of large ſtones. It has thirty three arches, ſome of which ſtand upon ſand, which is very hard in this place, and under them the water runs when it is high. There are ninety three niches upon this bridge, ſome of which are ſtopt up and ſome of them open, and the two ends are flanked by four towers. There are parapet walls of brick, with holes throughout the whole length from the one end to the other, ſo that you have here the fineſt ſight in the world, together with pretty ſummer houſes upon it at the two ends. Four hundred and ſixteen paces from this bridge, there is a water-fall received by a baſon ſixty paces long and forty paces broad, and near this fall there are eleven large ſtone ſteps in a ruinous ſtate, and not far off a great road, trees, and a ſlope-way, which afterwards becomes level. At ſome diſtance from hence you ſee two other houſes of pleaſure, and afterwards twelve others, two and two, at nearly an equal diſtance from each other, quite to the end of this fine alley or way, which is every where of the ſame breadth, and bounded by the King's great garden, which extends from the water-fall quite hither. There are on each hand one hundred and forty five ſena's, and ſome mulberry-trees between them, and from the end of the bridge to that of the alley is two thouſand and forty five paces, to which if you add the length of the bridge itſelf, which is five hundred and forty, and the way on this ſide which is one thouſand ſeven hundred and ſixty one, you will have in all four thouſand three hundred and thirty ſix paces. This magnificent alley butts, as we have already obſerved, upon the King's great garden, where there is a fine building painted without like the reſt, and adorned with feſtoons of flowers and foliages. The entrance into the garden is delightful; the middle walk is adorned with a fine canal, with a ſloping fall and ſeveral

1
2

PONT ALLA-WERDIE-CHAN.

Pont d' Allawerdie-Cham.

Le Chyaer-baeg.



LE CHYAER-BAEG. 81

PONT HAS

2

1704. jets of water. This garden is extremely ſpacious, is full of fine walks and fruit-trees which have a very charming effect; tho' it would be eaſy to heigthen it with other ornaments. It is two thouſand two hundred and eighty paces in length from north to ſouth, and one thouſand ſix hundred and forty five paces in breadth from eaſt to weſt; they call it *Haſaen-ſheriep* or the *garden of a thouſand paces.* You have here ſeveral lofty towers of earth, which ſerve for dove-houſes, with the dung of which they manure their melon grounds. *Fine garden.*

Repreſentation of the Chiaer-baeg. In number 77, you have the firſt repreſentation of *Chiaer-baeg*, taken from the weſt; it was drawn by the ſide of the river of *Zenderot* or *Zajandaroet*, which riſes from four great ſprings or wells, called *Cher-t'zeſme Æ*, or the *ſource of ſprings.* This place is in mountains, five days to the weſtward of *Iſpahan.* There are people who give it two places to ſpring from, the firſt of which is but three days from this capital, in the village of *Dambina*, and the ſecond where we have already ſaid it to be; for the reſt it loſes itſelf three days to the eaſtward of *Iſpahan* in a marſhy plain called *Gou-honie.* In this repreſentation every thing that is to be ſeen is diſtinguiſhed by figures; for example, number [1] points out the gardens which run along the fine alley or walk of the *Chiaer-baeg*, with the way that leads to the bridge; [2] the bridge of *Allawerdie-Khan*; [3] a building erected in the reign of King *Sefi*, to be an abode for a *Dervis* who had been ſent for from *India*, and who refuſ'd to come; [4] a houſe where they waſh the bodies of the dead; [5] the buildings of the *Chiaer-baeg*; [6] that of *Gem-ſhil alli-Khan*; [7] a dove-houſe; [8] the river of *Zenderoet.*

Second repreſentation. The ſecond proſpect taken is the *Chiaer-baeg* it ſelf, near the bridge in number 78. The letter *A*, diſtinguiſhes the King's garden; *B*, the bridge; *C*, the houſe where they waſh the bodies of the dead; *D*, the river; *E*, the mountains of *Koe-ſoffa.* The other buildings are repreſented to the right and left as they are in the *Chiaer-baeg.* 1704.

Third repreſentation. The third repreſentation was taken from the bridge, on the ſide where the garden gate is; where you ſee a tower to gather the wind to refreſh the lodgings in ſummer, by means of certain pipes which come out of the roof and convey the air into the chambers: The fountains and the walks which go towards the building on the ſide of the city-gate on the left hand, and to the right of the wall of the gardens of the royal palace. This proſpect is in number 79.

Fourth repreſentation. The fourth, repreſented in number 80, was taken from the other end of the bridge, and ſhews the way beyond it, with the buildings to the right and left; the water-fall and the baſon, and the way which goes to the end of the building of the King's great garden.

Fifth repreſentation. The fifth is from the other end, and in number 81, ſhews the front of the building of this garden, and the canal which runs by the front gate.

Bridge of Shiras. The bridge of *Shiras* is alſo a fine building, a quarter of a league from the gate of *Haſſen-abaet* whoſe name it bears. It is on the eaſt ſide of the city, and one hundred and eighty eight paces long by ſixteen broad; it is built with free-ſtone, and has on each ſide forty two niches ſome of which are open, and ſome not. It has twenty arches under which the river runs when it is high, and eight others on the ſides, five to the right and to the left. The building on the middle of this bridge is open on each ſide, and you go through it to go to the bridge above. To the eaſtward which is the moſt proper ſituation for drawing of this bridge before its arches, you ſee a fine ſmooth way, which is eighteen foot broad. From hence, twelve ſteps, you go down to the river, when it happens to be low, which almoſt always is in ſummer, ſo that horſes ford it with very great eaſe;

1704. eaſe; this is the more ſurprizing as this river is ſometimes ſo full and rapid, that it throws down and ſweeps away whole houſes, as happened in the month of *April* of the year 1699. Theſe ſteps we have been ſpeaking of are divided into nineteen parts, ſeparated from each other by a paſſage or canal through which the river runs; but it happens that ſome of theſe diviſions have but ſeven or eight ſteps, and there is a fine building upon this bridge, under which they walk, and croſs it. That which appears at the foot of the bridge, ſerves for the front gate of the King's garden on the city ſide; there is on the other ſide another like it, concerning which we ſhall ſpeak hereafter. This bridge is repreſented in number 82. The figure [1] diſtinguiſhes the bridge in general; [2] the garden of *Bagenaſer*; [3] that of *Sadet-abad*; [4] the river of *Zenderoet*. There is no- 1704. thing more pleaſing to the ſight than the view to the eaſtward from upon this bridge; and in the evening you ſee an infinite number of perſons of both ſexes, taking the air by the river ſide, near the water-fall, and in the fine way that runs along the arches of the bridge, ſome on horſeback, ſome on foot, ſmoaking and drinking coffee, which they there find ready prepared for them. The garden of *Sadet-abad* is to the ſouth-eaſt of the city, and extends quite to the weſtward of this bridge, ſo that it contains a vaſt quantity of ground; it has a fine *Haram* or ſeraglio built of ſtone, by the river ſide, where there is alſo another bridge with a rail or baluſtrade inſtead of a parapet; it ſtands oppoſite to a garden, which you go into by croſſing it: This bridge has ſeventeen arches. There was a loftier build- *Fine proſpect.*

PROSPECT PROCHE LE PONT HASSAN ABAET.

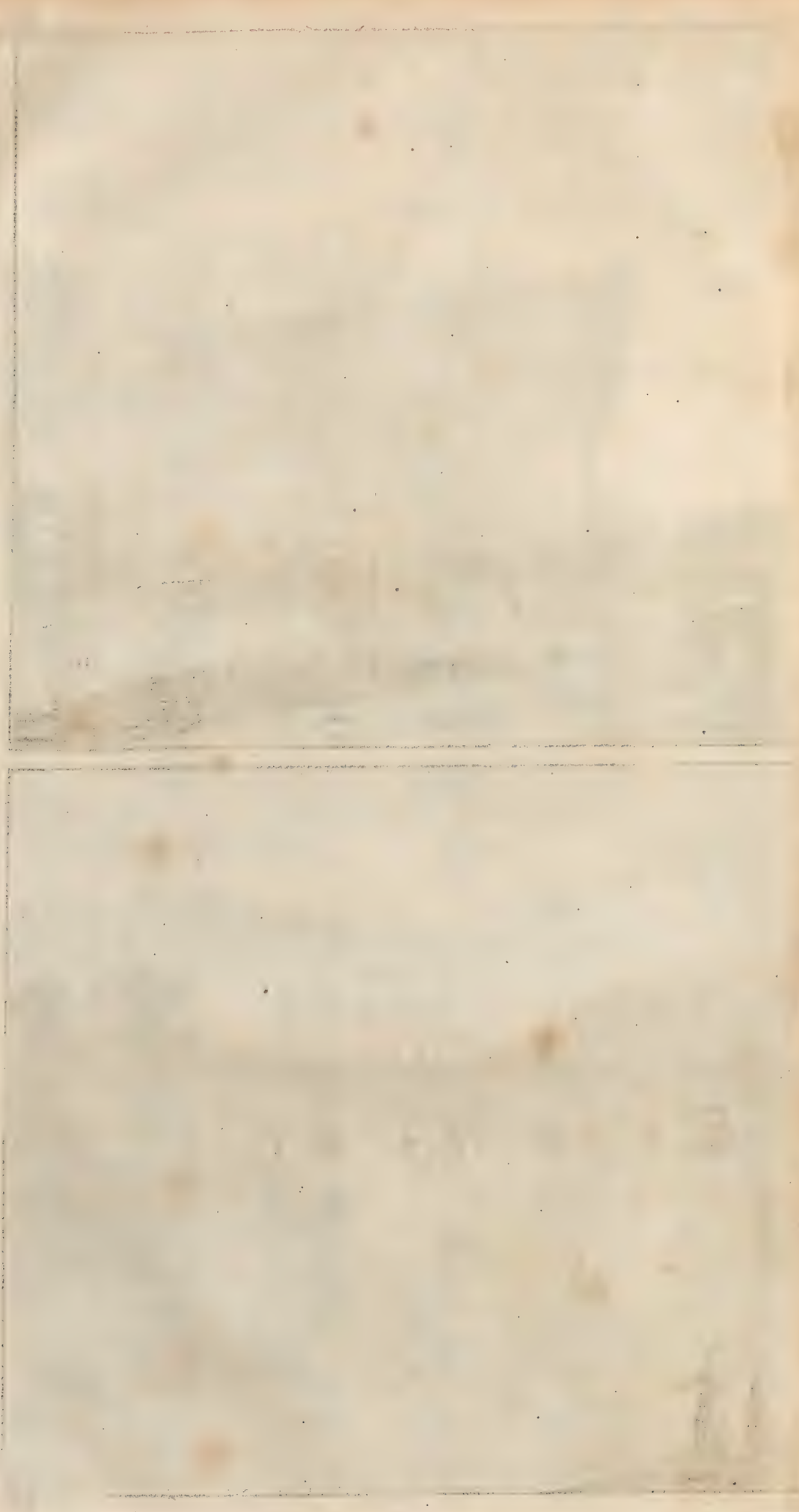
ing

A

A

B
C
D

C
B
D



1704. ing above this ſeraglio, which was burnt this ſummer while the King was there. On one ſide of this building you ſee a fine * *Talael*, where his Majeſty gives audience to foreign miniſters, behind which there is a magnificent building forty paces long, by thirty three broad, and the *Talael* itſelf is thirty-ſix by forty-two, with two ſteps in front, each a foot and a half high; in the middle there is a marble baſon which is eight paces by ſix. Going ſtill farther, you come to a place raiſed three foot without ſteps, and another like it a little farther, on the ſide of the walls of the building from whence you go into the apartments, and here you have a baſon of four paces by ſix. Upon the walls are ſix pictures in niches, as big as the life; they are of men and women, and four of them are repreſented in the *Spaniſh* habit, with each a glaſs of wine in the hand. You have here alſo two women painted on the two walls, beſide each other, one after the *Spaniſh* manner, and one dreſſed after the ancient manner; but they are very indifferently done. The reſt is all gilt from top to bottom, and adorned with flowers, foliages, and animals, and with twenty columns painted after the ſame manner, and ſtriped with blue and red, which has an effect pretty enough. You have the whole in number 83, where the *Talael* is diſtinguiſhed by the letter *A*, the *Haram* or ſeraglio by *B*, the bridge by *C*, and the river by *D*. When the King is there he ſtops the courſe 1704.

* *A ſort of gallery or amphitheatre, open on three ſides.*

PONT ZJARESTON.

1704. of the river by wooden dykes in the canals or openings of the bridge of *Haſſan-Abaet*, to bring the water to run by the *Talael*, near which there are two or three poor veſſels in which he diverts himſelf with rowing with his concubines.

Fine proſpect. I drew another proſpect from a lofty ſummer-houſe in the garden, from whence you have a proſpect of the bridge of the *Chiaer-baeg*, you have it in number 84; the letter *A*, diſtinguiſhes the ſeraglio; *B*, the bridge which anſwers to the garden, on the other ſide; *C*, that of the *Chiaer-baeg*; *D*, the river, and another bridge at a greater diſtance from the city; it is called *Shareſton* and has ten arches. and a large building on one ſide thro' which you go to croſs it. The proſpect here, on all ſides is delightful and the river full of large rocks around which it ſweeps. Here I would add that at the diſtance of five days to the ſouth-weſt of *Iſpahan*, upon a lofty flat hill you meet with the ſource of the *Aeb-chieran*, whoſe water is moſt excellent, and produces good fiſh eſpecially trouts. It falls into the *Euphrates*. 1704. *River of* Aeb-Chieran.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the Kings of Perſia, *of their Affairs of State, and of the great Officers of the Crown.*

Monarchy of the Perſians. THE monarchy of this great kingdom is one of the moſt deſpotic, and moſt abſolute in the world; the King knows no rule for his conduct but his will, except with regard to religious matters, which they ſay he dares not alter; he ſovereignly diſpoſes of the lives and goods of his ſubjects, of what quality or condition ſoever. He is born in the ſeraglio, which is guarded by black eunuchs within, and by white without, and there is brought up between four walls without education, and without the leaſt knowledge of what is ſtirring in the world, like a plant that languiſhes upon the face of the earth, when deprived of the vivifying heat of the ſun. When he has attained a certain age, they give him a black eunuch, who is to be his pedagogue, and teaches him to read and to write; he inſtructs him alſo in the Mohammedan faith and law, and how to purify himſelf, to waſh, to pray, and to faſt. Nor does he fail at the ſame time to fill his head with the great actions and miracles of their prophet and the twelve *Imams*, and to inſpire him with an implacable hatred of the Mohammedan *Turks*, and the Mogul, whom the *Perſians* contemn and curſe, thinking thereby they do a meritorious action, and render an acceptable ſervice unto God; but they take no manner of care to inſtruct him in hiſtory and politicks, nor to fire him with a love of virtue; on the contrary, to take him off from all ſorts of uſeful reflection, they abandon him to women, and indulge him in every kind of ſenſuality from his moſt tender years. Not ſatisfied with thus debauching and perverting his mind, they make him chew opium, and drink *Koekenar* or *Poppy-water*, into which they put amber and other ingredients which excite to luſt, and charm for a time with raviſhing ideas or viſions, but at length ſink him into an abſolute inſenſibility. Thus it is that he paſſes his days till the death of his father, when they take him from out of the Seraglio or *Haram*, to ſeat him upon the throne, which of right belongs to him by ſucceſſion or by will. Then come all the court and throwing themſelves at his feet, give

Education of the Kings of Perſia.

1704. give him ſigns of ſubmiſſion. At firſt ſurpriſed at all he ſees, he beholds the ſcene as a dream, not able to conceive what can be the meaning of ſo great a change; but by degrees he becomes accuſtom'd to it. At laſt, he begins to have ſome idea of himſelf, and every one ſtrives to pleaſe him and to obtain a ſhare of his favour; but no one thinks of giving him any good advice or in the leaſt to open his eyes; on the contrary their endeavor is to keep him locked up in ſuch ignorance as may beſt turn to account; and when the *Attemaed-doulet*, who is his firſt miniſter, has any favour to ask of him, which he never fails to palliate under the ſpecious appearance of public good, he takes his time when the King is in a good humour, and with the pipe in his mouth, and always obtains whatever he wants, either for himſelf or his friends, by ſtiling himſelf his Majeſty's *Corbaen* or *victim*. But when he talks to him of affairs of ſtate and ſuch buſineſs as may require a particular attention, he is deaf, will lend no ear to him, and turns his thoughts upon ſuch things as are pleaſing and ſuitable to his humour and inclination: Nor does this miniſter ever perceive any thing of this kind in his maſter, but he changes the diſcourſe and calls for delicious meats, and ſends for the muſicians and dancing women, that are kept on purpoſe at court; then he exhibits to him combats of bulls and rams, and diverts him by all the means he can contrive. He ſees the combats and the other exerciſes from the *Talael* over the gate of *Ali-kapie*, which looks upon the great ſquare of the palace, and all this is much more pleaſing to a young and unexperienced Prince, than the puzzling his brain with the affairs of his Empire. At laſt when he is weary of theſe amuſements he withdraws into the Seraglio in queſt of others, and whatever buſineſs has been propoſed to his conſideration is put off to another time. So that this firſt miniſter is obliged to repair twice a day to the door of his Majeſty's apartment, to watch a favourable opportunity to open matters to him, or rather artfully to draw the Prince into a conſideration of the ſame, and as it were by accident, but he takes care that he is in a good humour; for if he did otherwiſe, and abruptly accoſted him with his buſineſs he might incur his heavy indignation, even tho' the welfare of the whole empire depended upon what he had to ſay. Hence he ſeldom fails to wait on this Monarch when he goes abroad, when he ſometimes has the good luck to find him in a diſpoſition to lend him an ear. For the reſt his pleaſures know no interruption, and they pick out the fineſt maidens of *Georgia* and *Armenia* to put them into the Seraglio. And even when the King goes out on his ſports, he for ſeveral leagues around, turns the men out of their houſes, to have the pleaſure of hunting or fiſhing, or otherwiſe diverting himſelf with their wives. The King that reigns at preſent has alſo given himſelf up to wine ſince he has been upon the throne, and drinks ſometimes for whole days and nights together. And thus is it that theſe Princes dream away the firſt years of their reign, without any the leaſt concern for the welfare of the ſtate, or their own glory; and the grandees of the court eagerly lay hold on the opportunity thereby to enrich themſelves and procure imployment for their relations and friends. The governors of the provinces follow the example, and make up a purſe by every ſort of rapine and extortion, not ſparing even the revenue of the crown itſelf; and they do it with impunity by communicating part of their plunder with the grandees, who are in favour and poſſeſſion of the King's ear. And theſe diſorders prevail till the Prince has made choice of an able miniſter to ſtop the torrent of irregularity, and repreſs this licence. Then he begins to open his eyes, according to the gift nature has bleſſed him with, but he frequently

Inſatiable deſire of riches.

1704. relapſes again into debauchery, and gives a ſcope to his vicious inclinations. At length when he comes to be thirty-five or forty years old, he ſeems to retrieve himſelf from his former ſtate of inſenſibility; he begins to reflect upon things, and to turn his thoughts upon the buſineſs of his empire, and to comprehend it, in proportion to the degree of his natural ſenſe. He in conſequence of this applies himſelf to the regulation of what he diſcovers to have been amiſs in the youthful years of his reign, and to provide for the neceſſities of his great Kingdom; but it commonly happens that he begins too late, death ſteps in between him and his good deſigns, and the ſtate ſinks again into its former miſery.

Firſt miniſter. The firſt miniſter of this potent Empire, as we have already obſerved, is called the *Attemaed-doulet*, or the *ſupport* or *director of the Empire*, who is alſo called *Viſier-azem*, or *the great porter of the Empire*; as he almoſt ſuſtains the whole weight of the Empire. This miniſter who is overwhelmed with buſineſs, is expoſed to a thouſand ugly accidents, beſides that he muſt be continually upon the watch, for fear he ſhould either be ſupplanted or fall under his maſter's ill opinion. Accordingly his chief ſtudy is to pleaſe him, to ſecure to himſelf the aſcendant over his mind, and to avoid whatever might give him uneaſineſs or umbrage; with this view he never fails to flatter him, to lift him up above all the Princes upon earth, and to throw a thick veil over every thing that might help to open his eyes, or diſcover to him the weakneſs of the ſtate. He even takes very particular care to keep him in utter ignorance, to hide from him or at leaſt to ſoften all diſadvantageous news, and above all immoderately to exalt every the leaſt advantage he obtains over his enemies. By this ſort of policy it is, that the miniſter is able to aggrandize his family, and to raiſe his friends to the firſt poſts of his Empire. Nor does he ever want a pretence for ruining ſome and advancing others, and this is the eaſier for him to do, becauſe all in imployment are guilty of malverſation. He has alſo a thouſand opportunities of ſerving thoſe in his intereſt, and who give him a ſhare of their plunder; and to ſend them royal robes by the officers of his houſe, who are greatly rewarded for the ſame, and which ſerves them inſtead of wages. The governors of provinces and cities endeavour for theſe preſents of honour by underhand practices, nor ſpare for money to procure them, that they may be the more feared by thoſe they govern, who muſt not dare to complain of their miſdemeanors, when they ſee them ſo much in favour at court as to obtain theſe robes. After this manner it is that the *Attemaed-doulet* is in perpetual agitation, to ſupport himſelf, to raiſe ſome and deſtroy others, according as he is actuated either by love or hatred. And yet with all his arts and precautions he can never be quiet in his mind, as we have already obſerved; for he cannot aſſure himſelf of the fidelity of any one perſon, thoſe he has been kindeſt to, being often the firſt to haſten his deſtruction, when they find that fortune has given him a ſhock. Infidelity and ingratitude have taken ſuch deep root over all this country, that children make no ſcruple to cut off the ears, the noſe, and to cut even the throats of their parents, whenever the King commands it; and this with the baſe and mercenary view of poſſeſſing their poſts in the government; a cruelty ſufficiently pregnant of examples. In a word, as the fortune of this firſt miniſter depends wholly upon the whim of a capricious maſter, who blindly obeys the impulſe of his paſſions, without any manner of regard to right or reaſon, he is frequently ignorant of the calamity that is to befall him the very next day. Moreover, tho' he is firſt miniſter and the greateſt man in the Empire, he is at the ſame time the moſt abject of

Infidelity of the Perſians.

1704. all ſlaves; never enjoying a moment's peace within, and ever fearing to loſe the good graces of his lord and maſter; he cannot pleaſe every body, and muſt anſwer for all the evils that happen to the ſtate.

Chief of the Curds. The next officer of rank is the *Koertſie-baſhé* or general of the *Curds*, a body of troops they ſelect from among the *Turcomans* or original *Tartars*, an old race of hardy ſoldiers, who live by themſelves under tents in the country, and lead a paſtoral life with their cattle; they are ſcattered over all *Perſia*, and mix not with the reſt; they ſerve on horſeback, and their arms are bows and arrows.

Chief of the ſlaves. The next to him in rank is the *Coular-Agaſie*, or the general of the *Georgians* and other white ſlaves, who are armed like the former with bow and arrow, and are an order of ſoldiery erected by *Abbas* the great, the reſt are as follow.

The *Tufingtchi-agaſi*, or general of the body of Muſqueteers, which are picked out of the country from among the moſt laborious and moſt robuſt of the people. They ſerve on horſeback in the field, and fight on foot; theſe alſo were eſtabliſhed by *Abbas* the great.

Chief of the Muſqueteers. Theſe three generals were formerly under the command of a *Sephaſalaer* or fixed chief; but they are now under a *Seraer* only, a chief appointed for any particular expedition, after which he is diſcharged and rewarded for this extraordinary ſervice.

Great maſter of the houſhold. The *Nazir* or great maſter of the King's houſhold, and chief of thoſe who have care of the King's gueſts.

Great huntſman. Maſter of the horſe. After him the *Mierſhichaer-baſhé* or great huntſman, and the *Mirachor-baſhé* or great maſter of the horſe.

Chief of the council of juſtice. Among the principal officers of ſtate we muſt reckon alſo the *Divan-beggi* or chief of the council of juſtice, who judges ultimately in all cauſes civil and criminal, except of ſuch conteſts as are of ſmall conſequence, which are referred to the *Deroga* of the place where they happen.

The *Muſlauſhe-elmenalik* or maſter of the accounts and finances, where there is an office to regiſter the *Perſian* troops, as well as certain officers, and the governments which the *Beglerbegs*, the *Khans*, and *Sultans* poſſeſs for the maintenance of their houſhold and dignity; but in return for theſe conceſſions they are obliged to keep a certain number of troops on foot, and every year to pay a ſum of money impoſed upon them; beſides that the Prince reſerves a part of theſe royalties to himſelf. 1704. *Maſter of the accounts.*

Chief of the chambers of accounts. The *Muſtofie* or chief of the chambers of accounts of the lordſhips which particularly belong to his Majeſty, and the revenues which are appropriated for the ſupport of the court.

The *Vacka-nuviez* or the regiſter of events, who keeps a journal of all that paſſes in the kingdom, and in the neighbouring provinces.

Phyſicians. The *Numeſhum-baſhes* or chiefs of the King's phyſicians, who are in great credit with this Prince, and who formerly, in many reſpects had the regulation of his conduct, but their authority is no more what it was formerly. All theſe officers have a right to ſit in the royal palace. The chief of thoſe who do not claim that privilege is the *Shik-agaſi-baſhé*, chief of the porters or great maſter of the court, who has the inſpection of the palace, and the regulation of rank. This great officer has commonly in his hand a great golden ſtaff adorned with diamonds, and has his eyes continually fixed upon the King, that he may know his will and pleaſure. He himſelf executes his orders in the places where he happens to be in perſon, or has them executed by his *Yaſools* or *Uſhers*, when any thing is to be tranſacted at a diſtance. It is this officer alſo that conducts foreign miniſters into the preſence of the King, holding them under the arm, and afterwards conducts them to the place where they are to ſit, when they are allowed ſo to do. *Chief of the porters.*

1704. The *Megter* or chamberlain, he no more than the former is allowed to ſit at court. This officer wears a purſe at his ſide, in which are handkerchiefs, a watch, antidotes, and ſoporiferous herbs for the uſe of the King. He alſo has the charge of the cloaths the King commonly wears. He is almoſt always an eunuch, becauſe he often goes with the King into the Seraglio, or *Haram*, which reflects great honour and authority upon him. *Chamberlain.*

Beglerbegs. We muſt not forget the *Beglerbegs*, which in *Turkiſh* ſignifies the *lords of lords*, who are governors of the great provinces or *countries of the ſtate*. Theſe have commonly *Khans* and *Soltans* under them, and conſume the bulk of the revenue of their provinces, ſending only a ſmall part of it to the King in preſents; but we have already ſaid, they are burthen'd with the charge of maintaining a certain number of troops. For the reſt they are as petty Kings in their provinces, allowing for the allegiance they owe to his Majeſty. There are fifteen or ſixteen of theſe *Beglerbegs* in this Empire, and this poſt is ſo conſiderable that thoſe in the injoyment of it are inveſted with a rank in the royal palace immediately after the *Toefentkji-agaſi* on the one hand, and the *Nazir* on the other, before the *Mieri-ſhikarbaſhi*, or the great huntſman.

Khans and Soltans. The *Khans* and *Soltans*, who are alſo governors of provinces, differ but little from the *Beglerbegs*, and the *Khan* has barely rank above the *Soltan*. They enjoy alſo the revenues of the land in their department or diſtrict, and are obliged to keep up a certain number of troops, and make preſents to the King, beſides that ſome of them depend upon the *Beglerbegs*.

Dervaſies. The *Dervaſies* are the governors of the countries called the *King's domain*, which are appropriated for the ſubſiſtence of the court, and certain troops, and theſe have the inſpection of the revenues annually produced by theſe countries. Theſe have ſalaries out of the revenues of the countries under their juriſdiction, and make preſents to the King like the reſt. 1704.

Deroga's Beſides theſe great officers of provinces, the fortreſſes and cities have their particular governors, which they call *Deroga's*. Thoſe in great cities, as *Iſpahan*, and the like, anſwer to what the *French* call *Lieutenans civil et criminel*. When they execute their office they have no reſpect to perſons, and indifferently puniſh all delinquents, and keep the fines for their own uſe.

Calantaars. The *Calantaars* or chief of the common people, are the principal magiſtrates in villages and towns, but their authority extends over none but the common people in great cities, and particularly at *Iſpahan*. They are properly ſpeaking their protectors and plead their cauſes before the tribunals. Theſe are the officers that fix the ordinary and extraordinary taxations, in which they have regard to the means and ability of the ſeveral inhabitants, and ſend the money they raiſe to the proper offices for the reception of it.

Ked-chodaes. Theſe have under them certain officers called *Ked-chodaes* or maſters of pariſhes or the inferior diſtricts, who execute their orders, and much after the ſame manner with their chiefs protect thoſe under their care, and gather what they are taxed at.

Chiefs of ſmall villages. The chiefs or magiſtrates of ſmall villages, exerciſe the ſame authority as the *Calantaars* in the great ones, and in towns. They call them *Ragies* or regent.

Shabanders. The office of *Shabander* or receiver of the duties upon all merchandiſe in the ſea-ports is more conſiderable. He keeps an exact account of what he thus receives, and ſends it to the *Muſtofy-caſſa*, who ſpecifies the ſums in his regiſter, they being appropriated for the ſubſiſtence of the court. Theſe collectors or cuſtom-houſe-officers have fixed ſalaries, and have no part of the duties they collect; their office was formerly annual; but the duties are now farmed out for a term of ſeven or eight years, and

1704. even more, and hence they yearly levy twenty-four thouſand *Tomans* which are at leaſt a million of *Livers*, and ſometimes twenty eight or about twelve hundred thouſand.

Prince of the merchants. There is another conſiderable office which is that of the *Meliktuziziaer* or *Prince of the merchants*, ſo called becauſe it is he that judges and decides in all caſes between merchant and merchant. He has alſo intire inſpection of the weavers and taylors of the court under the *Nazir*, and the charge of providing the cloathing and things of that nature for his Majeſty's uſe. Beſides all this, he is the inſpector of thoſe who are imployed to diſpoſe of the merchandiſe ſilks and other effects belonging to his Majeſty in foreign parts.

Surveyors of the roads. The *Raachdaers* or *ſurveyors of the roads*, who have the care of the highways, come next after this *prince of the merchants*. Theſe farm a certain extent of the roads, and in vertue of that receive certain duties laid upon goods that travel within their limits; theſe duties are called *Raagdarie*, and they keep an account of them. This office obliges them to make good the roads, and to ſecure the highways, and binds them to reinſtate ſuch as have been robbed or deprived of their effects within their diſtrict, according to the value of the ſame, if they cannot be recovered. But when it happens that they do recover them, they take the third part for their own uſe, and deliver the reſt to the owner. And for this reaſon they are bound at their own expence to keep a certain number of people armed, who are to patroll in the night, in times of danger, to prevent robberies and to detect them as much as poſſible. This is a moſt admirable regulation, but it were to be wiſhed it was better executed than it is, that the traveller might perform his journey with more ſafety than he does at preſent.

Governors of caſtles. They have governors, called *Koetewael*, in great caſtles, and in all the fortreſſes of the Kingdom, as at *Ormus*, *Candelaer* and ſo on. 1704. Their power is commonly limited and they depend upon the governor of the province. This word of *Koetewael*, ſignifies alſo the chief of the watch, and with his officers every night he patrolls in the ſtreets, to prevent diſorders and thefts, by ſeizing on robbers: At *Iſpahan* and other cities of *Perſia* this officer is called *Aghdaas*.

Nor muſt we forget the *Mukteſib*, *Inſpector of the markets.* or inſpector of the markets, who regulates the price of proviſions and whatever elſe is brought to market for ſale. He examines alſo the weights and meaſures, and puniſhes thoſe who are defective therein. Having ſettled the price of proviſions and goods, which he does every day, he carries a liſt of them ſealed up to the palace gate, and they regulate the ordinary accounts according to this valuation.

It is now time to ſpeak of the *Mehemander-baſhi*, or *the chief of thoſe to whom are committed the King's gueſts*. His office is to go out of town to receive ambaſſadors, envoys, and ſtrangers of quality or diſtinction; to take care they want for nothing, and to order them the uſual ſupply of neceſſaries. For the reſt they leave it to the choice of foreign miniſters, whether Chriſtian or Mohammedan, who are treated upon an equal foot at the court of *Perſia*, to ſend for what they want to the King's ſtores, or to receive every day or once a week, as they like beſt, the value of the ſame in ready money. The buſineſs of this officer is alſo to carry their meſſages to the King and the miniſters, and to conduct them to audiences when they are to be admitted. He alſo viſits them from time to time, and talks with them, and endeavours to get out of them the reaſon of their coming, and why they reſide at court, to give an account of all to the miniſters. But when there comes an ambaſſador from the *Porte* or the King of *Indoſtan*, or other *Mohammedan* powers of the higher rank, they moreover ſend one of the grandees of the Kingdom,

1704. Kingdom, to wait on them as *Maitre d'hotel* and *gueſt-keeper*, and he acquits himſelf of all the functions of the *Mehemander-baſhi* with regard to other miniſters.

Surveyor of the buildings. Beſides all theſe officers there is a *Mammar-baſhi* or ſurveyor of the King's buildings; he ſets a price upon moſt of the houſes that are ſold, in order to prevent the diſputes which ſometimes ariſe upon the ſales, or upon the pretence of a right to annul the contract, as if the party had been taken at a diſadvantage in the bargain, and that the ſale was not according to form, a practice allowed by the *Mohammedan* law when the price has not been aſcertained by this intendant or ſurveyor.

Eccleſiaſtick offices. As for the eccleſiaſtical employs the firſt is that of *Zedder*, or great pontif, who is the chief alſo of all the wealth and emoluments conſecrated to the publick worſhip. This office was formerly exerciſed by one man only, but the late King *Suliman* divided it, and appointed two *Zedders*, the one with the care and charge of the legacies bequeathed to the churchmen by the Kings of *Perſia*, whom they call *Zedder Chus*; the other with the diſpoſal of what has been bequeathed by private perſons, and he is called *Zedder Memalick*. Theſe two pontifs have each of them a court a-part, where they judge in civil cauſes according to the directions of the canon-law. They diſpoſe alſo of moſt of the church benefices and particularly of the offices of the *Siech-el-iſlaan*, and of the *Kaſhe-mutewelli* or inſpector of the moſchs and conſecrated burying-grounds and the like. Theſe offices are ſo very conſiderable, that when it happens that thoſe poſſeſſed of them are preſent at royal aſſemblies, they take place of the *Attemaed-doulet*. The *Siech-el-iſlaan* and the *Kazi* differ but little from each other, with regard to the truſt they have of monies; but the former is nevertheleſs the moſt conſiderable. For the reſt, their functions are pretty nearly equal, and they are mutually a check upon each other. All contracts between private parties muſt paſs through their courts, and they 1704. muſt authoriſe all mandates and other writings of conſequence.

The Legiſt. The *Muzifehid* or *Legiſt* is above all eccleſiaſtics not only on account of his learning, but becauſe by vertue of his office he is accounted ſacred. It is he that ſettles and explains all points of faith, the meaning of the *Alcoran*, and the *Hadges* of their prophets, and the *Imams*. The veneration they have for him runs to that length, that their learned men make no ſcruple to give out, that the government of the *Mohammedans* belongs of right to him, and that the King is only the executor of his orders, in vertue of which he has the wielding of the ſword, wherewith he is obliged to chaſtiſe thoſe who are obſtinate or diſobedient, tho' he has the power of doing nothing by his own bare authority. The reaſon they give for this point of doctrine is, that all true believers are directed by the will of God, which is revealed to the *Muzifehid* in the abſence of an *Imam*; that it is impoſſible for God to declare ſuch his will to temporal princes, who are loſt in the pleaſures of this world, and think of nothing but the gratification of their paſſions, regardleſs of the ſalvation of their ſouls; who far from knowing God are quite unacquainted with themſelves, and neglect to ſeek after the path which leads to eternal life.

Hyprocriſy of the clergy. The opinion the people have imbibed of the wiſdom and ſanctity of the clergy is the reaſon they almoſt all of them affect a profound diſſimulation, with the double view of keeping them in error, and themſelves in the reverence they profeſs for them. So that altho' they are actuated by the moſt boundleſs ambition they diſcipline themſelves in the preſence of the people; they humble themſelves that they may be exalted, and would ſeem to deſpiſe what they moſt eagerly graſp at; in ſhort by their exterior one would imagine they aſpired at nothing but the joys of Paradiſe. They, when at home, gather about them a number of young people to inſtruct them in

1704. the way that leads to heaven, and to affect them ſtrongly with the ſeeming zeal that fires them, they uſe theſe ſtupid youths with a moſt extraordinary tenderneſs and forbearance; they are never in a paſſion; their words are few, and they have ſuch an air of wiſdom and ſanctity as *Their habit* is quite rapturous. Their cloathing is white and of camels or goats hair; and thy wear large turbants which make them look meager and low. When they appear in publick they affect a great ſimplicity, and are attended by one ſervant only who carries a book after them; they go gently along, and keep their eyes fixed upon the ground. They are great frequenters of the moſchs, where they pour forth long prayers with an affected zeal, and often withdraw into a corner, where they inſtruct young children, and ſometimes they preach ſermons to the people. By theſe artifices it is that they win the hearts of men, and inject a terror into the King himſelf, who would not dare to be guilty of the leaſt innovation in the practice of their religion for fear of the heavy wrath of theſe holy ones. Many examples there are of this, nor can a ſtronger proof be given of the reverence they have for them than the privilege they have of ſitting at a ſmall diſtance from men of the ſword at royal aſſemblies.

The manner how the nobility live at court is very different from theirs; the courtiers affect a very extraordinary civility, and an engaging freedom, but then the tongue and the heart never travel together. *Their diſſimulation.* They entirely give themſelves up to ſenſuality and pleaſures; their habits, their equipages are magnificent, and they are ſo exceſſively fond of money, that there is nothing to be obtained of them but by bribes and preſents. For the reſt they are very affable and ſeem to be very good natured; but their behaviour is quitelow and mean to thoſe of whom they expect any favour, and they mortally hate thoſe that croſs them in what they ſolicit, or ſue for what they want; and 1704. theſe they uſe with a degree of barbarity quite inhuman, when it happens they have an advantage over them; they ſlip no opportunity of hurting them, and have the art of giving a bad turn to the qualities for which they are moſt valuable; in a word, they can never reſt till they have deſtroyed them. On the other hand they are the moſt abject flatterers of thoſe who are in the good graces of fortune, and in great employs, and attribute to them all the perfections they can poſſibly think of; but theſe even are no ſooner fallen into diſgrace, then they inſult over their misfortunes, and moſt ſhamefully abuſe thoſe, who in the days of their proſperity, they were wont to lift up to the skies; and to theſe thus fallen it often happens that thoſe who ſtand deepeſt in debt to them for favours, are the very firſt to tear them to pieces.

And much after ſame manner it *Men of letters.* is that their men of letters, or of the pen, as they call them in this country, behave in general. They are proud and ſelf ſufficient, envious and jealous of the merit of others, careſſing and cajoling thoſe they abominate moſt when they meet them; but no ſooner is their back turned than they moſt unmercifully abuſe them. Diſſimulation is their favourite vice, and their vanity is ſuch *Their diſſimulation.* as to prompt them to applaud themſelves upon every occaſion, and without ſcruple to throw out panegyricks upon their own great merit. And yet, to all appearance, they are religious and devout, and affect to ſeem greatly diſguſted with all worldly vanities; they have the joys of Paradiſe eternally in their mouths, tho' at the ſame time in private, they wallow in the moſt enormous and moſt unnatural ſenſualities. For the reſt they have an utter averſion for the Chriſtians of *Europe*, and for all that differ from them in matters of faith; nor would there be any ſafety for them in this country did not the laws of nations keep theſe infidels in awe.

1704. Uſury prevails here more than in any other country whatſoever, tho' it muſt be confeſſed there are good men here, as well as elſewhere; but in general we may ſay the *Perſians* are ungrateful and void of all ſhame and modeſty.

Perſia conſiſts of three orders like the ſtates in *Europe:* The firſt conſiſts of the nobility and men of the ſword; the ſecond of men of the robe, and the third of merchants and artificers, 1704.

CHAP. XLII.

Funeral of the Kings of Perſia, *qualities of the preſent King, his Picture, habit of the* Perſians.

THEY never publiſh the King of *Perſia*'s death till his ſucceſſor has been ſeated upon the throne; and yet King *Suliman*, the father of his preſent Majeſty, had no ſooner given up the ghoſt, than the news of it flew over all parts by the indiſcretion of his firſt phyſician. This Prince died upon the *twenty-ninth* of *July* 1694, in the *forty-eighth* year of his age, after he had reigned twenty-nine years. The officers of the crown and chief men of the Kingdom, immediately ſeized on the palace, and took care that every thing was quiet on all ſides. The inhabitants ſhut up their houſes and ſhops, and no people of rank appeared in the ſtreets. Upon the *firſt* day of *Auguſt* his Majeſty's body was placed upon a wheel carriage, covered with a moſt magnificent pall of gold cloth, and conveyed to a chapel a league from *Iſpahan*, from whence it was carried to *Com*, there to be interr'd in the ſepulchre of the Kings his fathers. All the grandees of the Kingdom followed him on foot, excepting one of the officers of the crown, called *Mierſa-taher*, and an eccleſiaſtick of diſtinction, who, on account of their great age, were allowed to go on horſeback. Theſe lords were followed by the men of the robe and pen, lamenting and ſinging, and theſe were ſucceeded by a great body of ſoldiers, who attended the corpſe to the chapel, with flambeaux ſmoking but not lighted. When they had reached the chapel, all that and attended tore their garments, had returned to the city, leaving ſome of their friends or relations to follow the body in the night. They double the guards of the palace to prevent the diſorders which are be to feared upon theſe occaſions, in a town ſo populous and crowded with ſtrangers. In the mean time the officers of the crown ordered the aſtrologers, according to cuſtom, to acquaint them with a favourable or auſpicious time when they might inaugurate the new King, perſuaded that in that caſe the King would attempt nothing to their prejudice, and eſpecially in the beginning of his reign. 'Till the aſtrologers had thus declared themſelves, there was no noiſe of drums or trumpets to be heard, nor any other ſound that might interrupt the ſolemnity of the mourning, and this conſultation, which continued to the *ſixth* of *Auguſt*, when the aſtrologers unanimouſly declared they had found the auſpicious moment. They laid hold on it for the coronation of the deceaſed's eldeſt ſon, who had been taken out of the Seraglio immediately upon the death of this prince, and locked up in another apartment, where he remained till he was conducted to the throne, where all the grandees of the

Death of of the King.

His funeral.

Coronation of the new King.

LE ROY HOSSEN.

1704. the court came to throw themſelves at his feet. Then they opened all the houſes and ſhops, which had been ſhut up till now, and had bonfires and illuminations on all ſides. The next day after the coronation, the new King called *Soltan-hoſſein*, ſent royal robes to all the Lords and Chiefs of the court, who till then wore their cloaths they had rent and torn, and there was an end of the mourning. After this the drums and trumpets were heard on all ſides, and theſe rejoicings laſted forty days, according to cuſtom.

The King was about four and twenty years old, not large, but well made, and handſome of face. I looked attentively upon him ſeveral times, when I was at *Iſpahan*, to imprint a full idea of him in my mind, that I might draw his picture, in which I ſucceeded tolerably well.

His picture He was in a ſummer dreſs, but I choſe to repreſent him in a winter ſuit, which is much more magnificent. He is eaſily diſtinguiſhed by a jewel he wears in his turbant, with three black herons feathers; you ſee him in numb. 85.

He loves building. This Prince takes ſo great a pleaſure in building, that they reckon he has that way expended four or five millions in the ten years he has been upon the throne, tho' the Gardens and the houſes of pleaſure coſt him nothing. When he has a mind to build any where, proclamation of ſuch his intention is made by ſound of trumpet, that thoſe who love him may come and work for him. Upon this the artificers repair to him from all parts, without claiming the leaſt reward; nor do the grandees of the Kingdom fail to ſend others at their own expence. The *Armenians* are bound to contribute in the ſame manner, and I know it for certain that a large garden which was made in my time coſt them three hundred *Tomans*, which amount to one hundred and twenty thouſand livres.

This Prince is ſo given to women that he knows no bounds of his lewd practices, and is quite careleſs of the welfare of the ſtate, and his evil example is the cauſe that juſtice is ill adminiſtred in his great Empire, where licence reigns, and vice is unpuniſhed. And hence it is that the high roads which were once ſo well ſecured, are now ſo full of robbers. 1703.

Eunuchs in favour. And hence alſo it is that the clergy have a very great aſcendant over this Prince as well as the eunuchs, the outcaſts of human nature, and quite unworthy of high poſts and honours, ſeeing they are no better than the guard of the Seraglio, a place devoted to the beſtial pleaſures of the King; beſides that their air and mein has ſomething ſhocking in it. But notwithſtanding all this, they are the firſt in favour, inſomuch that the counſellors of ſtate are obliged to pay court to them, and flatter them, a very mortifying circumſtance for perſons of birth and conſideration, who could not poſſibly aſſure themſelves of the King's good graces, or of the poſſeſſion of their employs, without ſubmitting themſelves to ſuch a lowneſs of behaviour.

Diſgrace of a Georgian nobleman. There are ſome, however, who have a heart too big for ſuch an unbecoming ſubmiſſion, and who know not how to diſguiſe their thoughts. Some years ago there was a *Georgian* Nobleman, called *Ruſtan-khan*, a man of merit, and in poſſeſſion of one of the firſt employs of the ſtate, being Captain General of the King's Armies and Governor of *Tauris*, the ancient *Ecbatan*, the capital of *Media*, who had the boldneſs to tell the King, at a great feaſt, and in preſence of the firſt Grandees of the court, *That he was an ignorant Prince, and that he never would know any thing*; and that in ſhort he could not prevail on himſelf to ſerve him any longer. Upon this, he was the next day depoſed, and received orders not to ſtir out of his houſe, which he obeyed. Mean time, his friends ſollicited ſo ſtrongly for him, that they promiſed to reſtore him; but he was ſo far from thanking them for this officiouſneſs, that he was angry with them for concerning themſelves with his affairs, and declared that he abſolutely

1703. solutely would not ſerve ſuch a Prince, and perſiſted in this his reſolution to the day of his death.

Diſgrace of another nobleman. A certain grandee called *Moeſſa-beek*, an *Armenian* originally, but whoſe grand-father had embraced *Mohammediſm*, drew a more ſevere cenſure upon himſelf in the year 1704, while I was at *Iſpahan*, for ſpeaking his thoughts too freely. This nobleman, who had been raiſed to the firſt poſts, and to the government of the ſame city of *Tauris*, after he had been general of his Majeſty's *Georgian* and *Circaſſian* ſlaves, came to *Iſpahan*, where the King asked him his buſineſs, and commanded him, without preſuming to make any anſwer, to return to his government, and repair from thence to *Eſterabad*, a town of *Mazanderan*, and there put himſelf at the head of his army and therewith to march againſt the *Turcomans*, who infeſted that country, and carried off the inhabitants and the cattle. He anſwered the King, He was very ſorry he could not obey his Majeſty's commands, becauſe he had been well informed that at court they did not act as became them, and that he had been given to underſtand they only wanted to ſend him away to deſtroy him; that if it was neceſſary he ſhould be ſacrificed to the malice of his enemies, he had rather ſubmit to his fate that inſtant, than have it fall upon him after his departure. This he ſaid in a dry careleſs manner, and adding ſome reaſons and arguments upon what he had ſaid, he ſo exaſperated the King againſt him, that they went to his houſe upon the ſixth of *September* to ſeize him, and having bound him, carried him publickly to priſon upon a mule, and clapt a ſeal upon all that belonged to him; but notwithſtanding all this outrage, they releaſed him a few days afterwards, upon condition he ſhould confine himſelf to his houſe.

Contempt they have of the King. Many other examples might be exhibited of the violence and weakneſs of this Prince, who thereby ſo expoſes himſelf to the contempt of all his ſubjects that they publickly ſay, They have nothing of a King but the name. And indeed it may with reaſon good be ſaid, *Unhappy is the country which is ruled by a child.* They ſay his younger brother, who is kept in the palace, and who has both ſenſe and merit, when he hears of the conduct of the King his brother, often cries out, *I cannot imagine what he does with the Crown.* This Prince one day ſending him a bottle of wine, the other ſent it back to him, diſdainfully ſaying, *He did not want it.* Theſe things ſo different from the manner of other countries, muſt appear ſtrange and incredible to thoſe who know nothing of the cuſtoms and maxims of this. For the reſt, the weakneſs of this Prince is ſuch that when he loſes a trifle at play, he begs of the party that won it of him, to ſay nothing of it to the *Nazir*, who is to pay him. 1704.

Habit of the Perſians. It remains that we ſpeak of the manner of dreſs among the *Perſians*, whereupon we have to obſerve that their dreſs is ſhorter than that of the *Turks*, and different according to the rank and quality of the Perſon that wears it. The dreſs of the men of the ſword, for example, is quite different from what is worn by the men of the robe, and the ſame it is with regard to their wives. There is alſo a wide difference between the dreſs of the married and the unmarried women; of women advanced in years and young women. The habit of the moſt conſiderable of the men of the robe is repreſented in number 86. The *Mandiel* or turbant they wear upon the head varies alſo; they are of all ſorts of colours, ſome ſtriped, ſome wrought with gold and ſilver, and ſome white; The churchmen wear them much larger than any others, but extremely neat, and very nicely folded up; in a word their dreſs is very magnificent, and their garments moſtly flowered, which in my mind however, does not ſo well become the men as the women; and to ſay the truth, the habits of the *Turks* are more modeſt, are better underſtood, and have a more maſculine air with them.

1704. them. For the reſt, the *Perſians* never alter their faſhions, and have preſerved that air of grandeur which prevailed among them in the days of *Alexander*. Perſons of condition never go on foot, but on horſeback, with runners on one ſide of them: Thoſe of leſs conſideration imitate them, and are obliged to incur debts to ſupport them in this extravagance, but what they thus incur they never think of paying. The grandees and ſuch as are rich adorn the bridles of their horſes with maſſy gold, and others follow them in proportion. They have always their *Callion*, or pipe carried after them, which is properly ſpeaking, and chiefly, a bottle of water, through which they draw the ſmoke of their tobacco. This *Callion* is adorned with gold, and is extremely neat; thoſe of inferior rank adorn them with ſilver, and have them carried 1704.

FEMME PERSIENNE.

1704. after them in the ſame manner. Our director had a golden bridle and his *Callion* adorned with the ſame, and ſo had his ſecond, as well as all that appear at court, where they are only conſidered in proportion to the grandeur of their appearance.

The dreſs of the women ſeems to me to be ſtill more agreeable; the wives of the men of the robe wear a forehead-band adorned all over with pearls and precious ſtones; it is four fingers broad, and goes but half way round the head; but the wives of the counſellors of ſtate, wear it all round the head, in the nature of a crown, and call it *Borſhiboroe*; and upon it they have ſeveral plumes of black herons feathers, aigrettes, and bunches of flowers with golden leaves. To this band or diadem they have a jewel which falls upon the forehead, and they faſten it on with a rope of pearl which comes under the chin, and their hair falls down in ſeveral treſſes. They wear alſo a white veil, embroidered with gold which falls over their ſhoulders, necklaces of precious ſtones and pearls, and golden chains which fall down to their girdle with a box of perfume. Their upper garment is of brocade of gold or ſilver, it is alſo ſometimes quite plain, and under it they wear a veſt which falls down beneath the girdle; their ſhifts are of taffaty, or ſome other fine ſilk embroidered with gold. They wear alſo drawers and under petticoats made in the loom; buskins which come up four fingers above the ankle, which are of embroidery, velvet or ſome richer ſtuff. Their ſlippers are of green or red ſhagreen, pointed, and with a heel raiſed of the ſame colour, lined, and adorned with little flowers. Their girdle, which is two or three inches broad, 1704. is adorned with pearls and precious ſtones, and upon the breaſt they wear certain ribbons which fall down to the girdle. One of theſe ladies is repreſented as going abroad in number 87. Over all this, in winter, they wear a gown lined with a cotton-cloth, which falls down a foot below the girdle, and when it is very cold indeed, they wear a gown of gold or ſilver brocade, lined with ſables or ſome other fur. When they go abroad they are from the head to the foot covered with a white veil, which ſhews nothing but their eyes, as may be obſerved in the figure above; this veil is commonly all of one piece; they wear alſo bracelets of precious ſtones, and have their fingers loaded with rings. The women of a middling rank, dreſs themſelves in proportion to their means, and the wives of the nobility and men of the ſword wear over their clothes a ſilk net, or ſomething of the kind, which has a very pretty effect.

Dreſs of the porters of the court.

To this I ſhall alſo ſubjoin the habit of the *Yaſools* or royal porters, who ſerve alſo in the quality of uſhers. Theſe wear a loftier turbant than the reſt, with feathers, and great muſtaches, like the nobility, and a beard upon their chin, which reaches to the ears. Some of them alſo wear beards after the *Turkiſh* manner. This *Yaſool* is repreſented in number 88.

Slaves repreſented.

In number 89, you have the repreſentation of a male black ſlave belonging to our director, with a great poniard of a particular make, in his girdle, and in number 90 you have a female of the ſame complexion, with a tea-board in her hand.

CHAP.

ESCLAVE NOIR

1704. 1704.

CHAP. XLIII.

Funeral pomp inſtituted in honour of Huſſein. *The manner how the* Armenians *at* Julfa *receive their Friends. Arrival of an Ambaſſador from* Turkey.

Days of mourning. UPON the *ſixth* of *May*, the *Perſians* began the mourning ordained for the commemoration of the death of their great ſaint *Huſſein*, the ſon of *Ali* and *Fatma*, the only daughter of *Mohammed*, and this they enter upon as ſoon as they perceive the new moon. All the city puts on mourning, and great lamentations are made on the ſad ſubject of his death, which happened, as they ſay, in the year 1027, when *Mohammed*, according to their computation, was obliged one thouſand one hundred and eighteen years ago to fly from *Mecca* to *Medina*, to ſave himſelf from the perſecuting fury of his enemies. It was in *Arabia* the deſart that this ſaint loſt his life, as he was flying with ſeventy two of his companions, near a place called *Kierbila*, where there is his tomb, and whither the *Perſians*, who account him their true *Imam* or chief, reſort from all parts with very extraordinary devotion. And, indeed, King *Abbas* the great boaſted it as the moſt glorious circumſtance of his life that he was deſcended from him, tho' that is an honour the *Turks* will not allow him. This mourning continues for ten days together; they appear in the ſtreets in ſmall companies of ten or twelve perſons half naked, who blacken their faces, and are not very unlike our chimney-ſweepers; a frightful ſight! they affect a mortified air, and ſing out lamentations to the ſound of certain caſtagnets, we have formerly mentioned. The murder of this ſaint is repreſented by perſons in arms, and by his image which is very large and hollow, and put into motion by a perſon incloſed within it, and whoſe legs are plainly to be ſeen. Thoſe concerned in this mummery and who carry this image about, receive a reward from the ſpectators, who give them certain ſmall pieces of ſilver of very little value; tho' indeed there are ſome who are more generous to them. For the reſt, during this time, they preach publickly in the ſtreets morning and evening, and eſpecially in the croſs-ways, and the other more frequented parts, which they incloſe with tapeſtry and ſpread with carpets. They adorn alſo the walls with bucklars, and other pieces of armour and arms, and the pulpits for the preachers are raiſed up five or ſix ſteps; they hold ſome written papers in their hands, upon which they often caſt their eyes, pronouncing the elogy, and reciting the actions and wonders of the ſaint. A ſecond preacher ſome ſteps below the firſt, pours out, in his turn, the praiſes of *Huſſein*, ſinging out with a loud voice. The places where they have theſe ſermons are full of ſeats and benches; and as I had the curioſity to go to one of them with ſome friends, they no ſooner ſaw us than they ordered us ſeats, for the reſpect they bore to our director, who was in great eſteem at *Iſpahan*. I ſtaid there a good half hour, and obſerved that all the auditors were ſo affected by the eloquence of their doctors, that they were diſſolved into tears. At the corner of the wall of the place where we were, they had placed a great figure indifferently well counterfeited, and ſtuffed with ſtraw, to repreſent the murderer of *Huſſein*, called *Omar*, whom they burnt at night in ſeveral parts of the city. Theſe ſermons or diſcourſes are delivered alſo in the night in many great places, upon theatres erected for that purpoſe, with laths, upon which they place above a thouſand lamps, but ſo awkwardly

Hiſtory of Huſſein, *of the mourning of the* Perſians *for him.*

Manner of this mourning.

1704. wardly and careleſsly that the wind blows out the greateſt part of them. For the reſt, the number of ſpectators is inexpreſſible.

Dance of young lads. Upon the *Sunday* following we celebrated the feaſt of *Whitſuntide* at our director's, and thither came two bands of young lads, nearly of the ſame heigth, and very neatly dreſſed, to dance according to cuſtom. They had certain ſmall ſticks in their hands, which they ſtruck againſt each other as they danced, and they were attended by two or three men of their diſtrict who ſung. Theſe dancers were continually throwing their arms over their heads with wonderful celerity, and aſſumed ſuch attitudes and motions as were quite charming. Theſe were to have been followed by a larger band, but upon the way they met with a band belonging to another diſtrict, which attacked them and retarded them, ſo that they could not come; beſides that they were to go to court that night.

But to return to our ſubject, the chief ſolemnity of this mourning or funeral pomp, was a great proceſſion which was exhibited the next day. I ſtood to ſee it in a ſhop in the *Bazar*, by which it was to paſs.

Great proceſſion. This proceſſion opened with ſome of the *Deroga*'s officers on horſeback, who were followed by ſome ſingers with each a taper in his hand, and in veſts either of purple or black, agreeable to the nature of the ſolemnity and the lamentations that were made; ſome of them were alſo half naked, and others carried a great black ſtandard furled up. After theſe, there appeared three camels, upon the firſt of which there appeared two boys almoſt naked, three upon the ſecond, one behind another, and upon the third, the image of a woman covered up, with a little boy. Then five other camels, upon each of which there were ſeven or eight little boys, who were alſo almoſt naked, in cages of lath, and two enſigns followed them. Then a chariot with an open coffin containing a dead body, followed by another covered with white and ſome ſingers. After this there appeared a chariot laden with incenſe with two perſons, and four little boys, with each a book in his hand, and with a table before them. This chariot was ſurrounded with what looked like tinned lamps, and was followed by a great ſtandard furled up, and by twelve armed ſoldiers, with each an helmet on his head; and theſe by two little boys comically dreſſed up, with feathers and bells. Then came a young priſoner on horſeback, followed by ſixteen others chained one after another, and five others pinioned. After theſe appeared a chariot covered with ſand, out of which appeared ſix bloody heads, but the bodies were not to be ſeen, ſo that one would have ſaid they had been cut off: There were two perſons dreſſed in this chariot, which was followed by that which carried the body of *Huſſein*, repreſented by a man in armour, with a ſabre in his hand. He was all over covered with blood, to ſtir up the people to grief and lamentation, and indeed their ſighs, and groans, and outcries are not to be expreſſed; and it muſt be confeſſed there can be nothing more moving than this ſight, which we had it not in our power to laugh at, though we were very ſenſible of the ridicule and idle ſuperſtition of the whole. This chariot was followed by a number of young perſons, ſome of them pinioned, and ſome with their arms free, attended by a guard armed with ſtaves, with which they, from time to time, threatened them, upon which they would ſtoop and bend down their heads the moſt naturally in the world. Theſe were followed by a great chariot, drawn by men, like the reſt, covered alſo with bloody ſand, upon which were two dead bodies, and four others, of which there appeared nothing but the head; ſix young turtle doves went backwards and forwards in this chariot, after which there appeared another, from which came out legs and arms, and in which there were two lighted tapers; then a third with ſix heads and two perſons dreſſed, followed by another with

1704.

1704. with a dead body in armour, and a perſon as it were ſick. Then two enſigns, and an horſe with the ſaddle on one ſide, attended by two drums and ſome fingers, and then another chariot upon which there were two coffins, and two little boys, with each a book in his hand, who, from time to time, embraced them, and acted their part wonderfully well. This went before another of extraordinary ſize, containing ten or twelve dead bodies, of which nothing was to be ſeen but their bloody legs and arms, with five or ſix priſoners, followed by a young man on horſe-back, wounded with arrows; he was all over blood, ſeemed to be a ſtranger, and ſeemingly ſo faint he was ready to fall. After him appeared a coffin covered with a black cloth, attended by ſingers and dancers who ſeemed to conduct it in triumph, and after them were carried three lances adorned with precious ſtones. Then came an horſe laden with bows and arrows, a turbant, and great ſtandard; then five other horſes, laden with bucklers, bows, and arrows; and three javelins upon the points of which appeared an hand. At laſt, this proceſſion was cloſed by an horſe richly capariſon'd, upon which there were three pair of pigeons; but this horſe was not in his place.

Explication of this proceſſion. After I had ſeen all this ſight, an eccleſiaſtick was ſo good as to explain the whole myſtery of it to me: He told me, the turtle-doves I had ſeen upon one of the chariots, repreſented thoſe which appeared upon the body of *Huſſein* when he was killed, and that theſe ſame turtle doves, daubed with his blood, flew away to *Medina*, where lived this ſaint's ſiſter, who upon ſight of them knew of his death, as ſhe had foretold it beforehand. That the chariot with the two coffins, attended by two little boys with each a book in his hand, repreſented the two ſons of *Huſſein*, *Ali-Asker* and *Ali-Echbar*, whom they give out to have been ſlain with arrows. That the young man wounded with arrows was deſigned alſo to repreſent *Ali-Echber*; that the coffin covered with black was that of *Huſſein*; and that the chariot with ſix heads, by which there were two perſons dreſſed, repreſented his children. That the ſteel or iron hand fixed at the point of the javelins, was the ſignal of war which the leaders or partiſans of the *Perſian Mohammedans* wore formerly upon their ſtandards, and that the five fingers of that hand repreſented *Mohammed Ali Fatma*, the daughter of *Mohammed* and the wife *Ali*, *Haſſan* and *Huſſein*: So that every part of this proceſſion refers to ſome circumſtance or other of the death of *Huſſein* and his ſeventy two friends ſlain with him, and canonized for martyrs by the *Perſians*. 1704.

It is to the laſt degree ſurpriſing that the perſons whoſe heads, legs, and arms appear in the chariots, ſhould be able to contain themſelves without the leaſt motion, for the whole day together that this proceſſion laſted. Moſt of the heads had even long beards, and their necks were ſo ſqueezed, that the head ſeemed ſeparated from the body, beſides that their eyes moved hardly at all. But I was told upon this occaſion they make them ſwallow down a kind of drink which deprived them of their ſenſes, and of all motion during the time. For the reſt, there is no being impoſed on with regard to this, for I preſently diſtinguiſhed the only head of wax which was among the reſt; and indeed it muſt be acknowledged the *Perſians* are very artful in theſe ſorts of repreſentations.

On the morrow, by break of day, we went to the ſame place, to ſee the ſequel of this ſolemnity; but the King did not come till two hours afterwards.

Parade of the two diviſions of the city. It was a kind of parade of the two diviſions of the city, who in proceſſion carried ſeveral ornaments prepared for the purpoſe. Firſt, as the day before, there appeared ſome of the *Deroga's* officers on horſe-back, followed by ſome young people armed with ſtaves, and crying

1704. out *Huſſein*, *Huſſein*, skipping and dancing. After theſe came ſome that plaid upon inſtruments, and ſome drums, followed by the citizens of ſeveral diſtricts; the firſt company of them was armed with drawn ſabres and ſhields, and the others with ſtaves perfectly well painted. They were all very neatly dreſſed, with velvet veſts, and fine ſaſhes, and extraordinary turbants, and marched in good order, differing in nothing from each other, but as they were more or leſs magnificent. A party of theſe citizens, of nearly the ſame degree or fortune had prepared a pretty machine or reſting place, not very unlike a coach, and embelliſhed with looking-glaſs, hung with ſabres and poniards and other arms mounted with gold or ſilver, a ſight very agreeable to ſee. There were others loftier without tops or coverings, open within and more adorned with looking-glaſs. The greateſt and moſt conſiderable of theſe companies goes on before. There were five machines or reſting-places of the kind we have been ſpeaking of, and a ſixth at the *Chiaer-baeg* between two buildings. This was all garniſhed with or compoſed of looking glaſs, in form of an altar, with two doors, which when they opened ſhewed all the ornaments. It was very lofty, and a preacher mounted it as ſoon as the King appeared at the building of his ſecond garden, which has a long gallery. This ſtructure or ſtand ſtood there three or four days. It conſiſted of pieces which fitted each other, and which were put together on the ſpot, for it had been impoſſible to have moved it whole through the gates of the city.

Another proceſſion. This fine proceſſion was ſucceeded by another, which opened with ſome ſtandards, and a great number of horſes, ſome of which had their heads adorned with great plumes of white feathers, and others were richly dreſſed out, and laden with fine veſtments, ſabres, bucklers, bows and arrows, and other arms. Some of them had even turbants, larger plumes, and other ornaments; they 1704. were followed by ſome ſingers, muſicians and dancers, waving certain flags over their heads as they danced; others carried pikes adorned with ribbons and tufts. The proceſſion appeared afterwards as the day before, thoſe it conſiſted of halted from time to time, and as they ſung threw chopped ſtraw over their heads crying out, *Huſſein*, *Huſſein*. Some of them had a drawn ſabre in one hand and a ſhield in the other; the reſt had ſtaves nicely painted and gilt, and ten foot long, and ſeemed to breath nothing but war; but the *Deroga* who was preſent with above a thouſand horſemen, takes a very particular care to prevent their coming to blows, poſting his people in the van, the center and the rear of this proceſſion. He poſts others alſo upon the way they are to paſs, and ſuffers not the diſtricts to advance but the one after the other. In a word he omits nothing to prevent diſorders, and the quarrels which might ariſe with regard to rank in a march, where there are narrow paſſes, and where for that reaſon they, at certain diſtances, poſt ſoldiers provided with fire arms. Theſe precautions are *Strange prejudice.* ſo much the more neceſſary, as the *Perſians* have a notion, that thoſe who periſh upon this occaſion go directly to Paradiſe. And accordingly they make no enquiry after murders committed at that time, which thoſe who bear malice againſt others, fail not to take advantage of, much as the practice is in *Italy* in the time of the carnival. Hence it is that prudent people who are not obliged to be abroad upon this proceſſion, keep for the moſt part cloſe at home for the laſt days of the feſtival, and eſpecially the *Turkiſh Mohammedans*, who are known; for they are enemies to *Huſſein*, and friends to *Omar*, whom the *Perſians* moſt mortally hate. Their hatred is not near ſo great for other nations, no not for the *Indians*, who are heathens, to whom they ſay nothing; there is however an unſpeakable concourſe of people upon

1704. this occaſion, as well ſtrangers as inhabitants of the city. It happened that every thing was tranſacted this time without any diſorder, which is ſomewhat extraordinary, conſidering the great animoſity of the adverſe parties, who never ſpare each other whenever they chance to meet.

A new garden of the King's. Upon the *nineteenth*, I went to ſee the Chriſtian place of burial, where we ſtaid till break of day, and from thence went to the King's new garden, which is of great extent, and ſurrounded with a wall of earth. We there ſaw the fiſh-ponds far advanced, and a fine plantation of young trees, roſes, and parterres full of flowers, but of the common ſorts. We then went to *Julfa* to Mr. *Sahid*'s country houſe; this gentleman was our company's interpreter, and we have made mention of him before. He received us and entertained us perfectly well, tho' we were above forty in number. The walks of his garden, which were full of candles, appeared moſt delightfully beautiful. The next day we went to pay viſits to our director's friends; for he was to go away the next month and to return no more to *Julfa*. He there took leave of the principal *Armenian* merchants, of the patriarch, and moſt of the *Europeans*. We had above forty of theſe viſits to make and they took us up three whole days, for you are treated every where with conſerves and all manner of ſweatmeats, which are preſented to you in painted wooden boxes, of great beauty, and adorned with all ſorts of flowers, of which the *Perſians* have at times all been great lovers. Then they bring you incenſe and roſe-water, wherewith they perfume the company. Nor do they fail to preſent you a *Callion* to ſmoke with, coffee, *Bedmus*, and other pleaſant hot liquors; and after dinner, fruits and other dainties of the ſeaſon. The Chriſtians alſo give you brandy and other liquors in the morning, and wine in the afternoon: So that each viſit could not poſſibly take up leſs than an hour. 1704.

Reception after the manner of Perſia.

Having acquitted ourſelves of this duty we returned to the city, where they told us a miniſter from the grand viſier of the *Ottoman-port* had arrived the day before, with but ſix or ſeven perſons in his train; that it was thought he was come to demand a paſſage of the King, for the march of ſome *Turkiſh* forces, which the Grand Signior wanted to ſend into *Georgia*, where the inhabitants had for ſome years refuſed to pay the ſubſidies which the people of that country are obliged to remit to the *Port*. The *Turk* has frequently ſent forces upon this account, but they have been interrupted by the ſtraits and paſſes which the *Georgians* knew how to make the moſt of. The *Turks* call them *Baſſa-'tjoeg* or *Bare-heads*, becauſe they wear only a ſmall cap open at the crown, thro' which they have ſome treſſes of their hair to keep it tight on. The ſame they call the country they inhabit, which is between *Turkey* and *Gurgiſtan*.

Turkiſh *miniſter.*

Georgians.

CHAP.

1704.

CHAP. XLIV.

Perſian *paintings. Their cuſtoms at births, marriages, deaths, and burials. Coins current in* Perſia. *Great conſumption of ſugar at* Iſpahan.

I Ought here to have treated of the *Perſian* religion, but as ſeveral travellers have done it amply before me, I imagined it might be unneceſſary, and even troubleſom to repeat what is ſo well known. I ſhall then only obſerve that it bears a very near relation to the religion of the *Turks*, except with regard to the averſion theſe laſt have for painting, ſeeing the greateſt part of the *Perſians* have pictures in their houſes, and eſpecially repreſentations of horſes, hunting-matches, and of all ſorts of animals, birds and flowers, wherewith their walls are alſo filled, as hath already been ſaid. They have even profeſſed painters among them, the two beſt of which, in my time, were in the ſervice of the King. I had the curioſity to pay a viſit to one of them, and I found his works far above the idea I had conceived of the matter; they conſiſted only of birds in diſtemper, but extremely neat. Indeed I cannot ſay he knew any thing of lights and ſhades, and in this all the country are ignorant, whence it is that their paintings are very imperfect. This painter was buſy, for the King, in copying a printed book of flowers which came from our country, and in the colouring of which an *European* eccleſiaſtic had inſtructed him the beſt he could; and for this purpoſe they have moſt admirable colours; and I there met with lake which came from our parts. They themſelves make ultramarine which is the fineſt blue in the world, for they have the ſtone in their own country, or elſe they buy it of the *Armenian* painters. There are alſo painters among them, who paint canes with a certain gum which has a very pretty effect, and ſtandiſhes in the form of boxes, upon which, with the utmoſt neatneſs they repreſent figures, animals, flowers, and all ſorts of ornaments.

Perſian painters.

Fine colours in Perſia.

Perſons of condition there have alſo their books very well bound, and adorned with all ſorts of figures, dreſſed in their manner, as alſo with their repreſentations of hunting matches, companies, birds and beaſts in miniature, and in charming colours. Theſe books are alſo ſometimes full of figures in immodeſt poſtures, which they are very fond of. I met with a book of this kind at a certain grandee's, but the painting was heavy, flat, and void of art, tho' it was at the ſame time imbelliſhed with pretty ornaments in gold and ſilver, and was moſt admirably coloured. Tho' they take great pleaſure in things of this ſort, they would not at all care to be at any expence for them, but their hands are ever open when they are to receive a preſent of them. There came a *German* painter to *Iſpahan* a little before my time; this man had been a long time in *Italy*, where he had an opportunity of ſtudying the works of the greateſt maſters, and painted an hiſtory piece for the King. They received it very kindly, and put it up in the palace, but never once thought of rewarding the painter, who never received a farthing for his pains; nor indeed could a man deceive himſelf more to the purpoſe, than to imagine a fortune is to be raiſed by the arts and ſciences in that country. They are there unknown, and not at all regarded, if we except a Prince or two that has really had a taſte for them. In a word, generoſity is an utter ſtranger in *Perſia*.

Books.

Avarice of the Perſians.

Adventure of a German *painter.*

1704. We had a glaring example of this in the year 1652, with regard to Mr. *Cuneus*, counſellor in ordinary, in the ſervice of the *Dutch Eaſt-India* company, who ſent him to this court to negotiate ſome buſineſs. Among other preſents they ſent by him to the King, there was a fine picture of warriors on horſeback, which they thought would be very acceptable to the *Perſians*, who are great lovers of horſes; but inſtead of receiving as expected, they coldly asked what the price of that picture was. The miniſter thinking it improper to value it at any high rate, appraiſed it very moderately, upon which they were ſo good as to reſolve to keep the picture, and to give him the price he had valued it at. To theſe we might add many other examples of the kind, which we ſhall reſerve to another opportunity, and ſhall now ſpeak of their births, marriages, and burials.

Adventure of an agent from the India *company.*

Cuſtoms at births. Three or four days after the birth of a child, they ſend for a churchman, to whom they declare the name they intend to impoſe on the child, which he blows into its ear three times, and then performs certain ceremonies, after which the Parents ſpend the reſt of the day in mirth and jollity with their friends.

Of circumciſion. It is not the cuſtom with them to circumciſe till a child is ſeven or eight years old, and even ſometimes later according to the whim of the parents, and never upon the eighth day, as the cuſtom is with the *Jews*. Then they entertain the company, and endeavour to exert the greateſt viſible joy upon the happy occaſion of having initiated a child into the number of *Moſlems* or *True believers*, according to the law of *Mohammed*, as it is revealed in the *Koran* or *Alcoran*.

Of their their marriages. As for marriages, when a man has a mind to take a wife he does not addreſs himſelf to the party he would have, but to her parents or relations; and when they have agreed upon terms, they ſend for an eccleſiaſtic, who asks the man, If he will have the woman to be his wife? 1704. to which anſwering in the *Affirmative*, he then propoſes the ſame queſtion to her, who anſwering in the ſame manner, this done, the ſame churchman draws up the marriage articles, for they have no notaries in *Perſia*, by which the married man aſſigns a certain ſum of money to his wife, who, by vertue of this contract, ſigned by the husband, is for ever poſſeſſed of this dower, even tho' her husband ſhould part with her, a cuſtom allowed of in this country; and when he dies, his heirs are obliged to pay her this ſum, together with the eighth part of the moveables he left behind him. Moreover if the woman dies firſt, and leaves children behind her, the husband, in caſe he marries again, and has children by a ſecond venter, is obliged to give the firſt wife's children their mother's dower, and an equal proportion of his own fortune, which they are to divide with the reſt.

When a Chriſtian, or any other perſon who is not of the *Perſian* religion, embraces their faith, he inherits all his father's fortune, and the fortune of all his relations, excluſive of all others who have not apoſtatiſed like himſelf. And in caſe two Chriſtians enter into the *Perſian* infidelity at the ſame time, the next heir of the two of courſe enjoys alone all the fortune of his Chriſtian relations that die.

Concubines. It is lawful for the *Perſians* to take as many concubines as they pleaſe, or as many as they can keep; and when it happens that they put away one of theſe, it is not lawful for her to have commerce with a man, till forty days are paſt and over, for fear ſhe ſhould be with child. For the reſt, all the children of theſe concubines are reputed legitimate, and have their ſhare of the father's fortune like the reſt.

Dower of maidens. When parents give a daughter in marriage, they give with her ſuch a portion as they think fit, and ſhe engages herſelf, by a proper writing for that purpoſe, to claim nothing thereafter of what they

1704. shall leave behind them, of which she has already received her part, and so disclaims all right to share with her brothers and sisters in what they are to divide in the sequel.

When they deliver this portion to the husband, they put all her cloaths and moveables upon horses, and the rest is carried by several persons, who are laden also with conserves and other dainties. This ceremony may be called a procession, which is more or less splendid according to the quality of the persons, and it is always transacted with the sound of instruments. This is performed some days after the consummation of the marriage, and upon this occasion they prepare, as it is always in the night, a well illuminated apartment in the husband's house. The men go in first, and the women follow them in great form.

The Grandees have also a wife who is commonly served by the husband's concubines, and honoured with the title of *Khana*, which corresponds with that of *Khan*, assumed by their husbands. They eat alone, and are attended at table, as the custom is with others, by some of the concubines. The children of both are equally legitimate, and equally partake of the father's fortune; and when it happens that one of these concubines produces a child, it is remarkable that the lawful wife rejoices mightily upon this occasion, in consideration of the honour that thereby accrues to her husband; who, when he has a mind to be with one of them, first sends one of his eunuchs to her apartment, for they have each of them one apart, and he orders her to bathe and purify herself; she immediately obeys and decks herself out to receive her Lord. These concubines eat together without any other company.

The King takes to him as many wives as he pleases, and chuses them from amongst the finest *Georgian*, *Armenian*, and other Christian maidens he can possibly find; there is a perfect equality between them, and the first son that is born of them, is heir to the Crown, without any regard had to the mother he is born of; nor does this give her any pre- 1704. eminence over the rest. When this Prince turns one of them out of the Seraglio; if she has had no children, he marries her to whom he pleases, and often to a person of very inferior rank.

Funerals. What follows is what I observed with regard to their deaths and burials. Two or three hours after the decease of a person, they send for a *Mola* or ecclesiastic, who goes through certain prayers and ceremonies. Then they put the body into a coffin, which they carry to the washing-place, without the house, in a place appointed for that purpose, there to wash and purify it. It is carried by common porters, and preceded by singers and other persons, with staves in their hands, and switches and streamers; the relations follow the body, rending their cloaths, tearing their hair, beating their breasts, and performing other acts of despair. The bodies of persons of higher rank are surrounded by churchmen and other persons who bawl out mournful dirges. The friends that attend them make woful lamentations, but perhaps more out of custom, than for any grief that affects them to that extravagance. Neither the relations nor friends differ in dress from what they commonly wear, except those that go before the corpse, and some that let down one end of the folds of their turbans. For the rest, they do not go two and two, but promiscuously, and without any order.

When they have been at the washing-place, and have washed the body, they take cotton and therewith stop all the apertures, as the mouth, the nostrils and the rest. The whole difference in what is practised with regard to the dead bodies of men, and those of women is, that men wash the men, and women those of their own sex; and follow them to the grave; for they carry them directly from the washing place to the tomb, where they again perform a service of prayers and ceremonies.

Then

1704. Then they wrap up the body in a winding ſheet, and commit it to the earth, obſerving that it reſts upon the left ſide, with the head to the eaſt and the feet to the weſt, and with the face turned toward the tomb of their prophet *Mohammed*. Then they raiſe a vault of earth or clay over the body, and fill up the grave, upon which they place a ſtone, or erect a tomb, and frequently a dome, when the perſon is of diſtinction. The King even ſometimes honours them with a royal ſepulchre, which is accounted ſacred, and for which they have a very extraordinary veneration. Some of theſe tombs are alſo in form of a temple, crowned with fine blue glazed domes, which have a moſt admirable effect upon the eye.

Coin of Perſia. As for their money, the greateſt part of their ſilver coin is the *Haſſaen-denarie*, or a piece of ten *Mamoedjes*, which are worth about eight-pence of our money. They have *Daezajie* or pieces of five *Mamoedjes*; *Paenzajie*, of two and an half; pieces of two *Mamoedjes*, called *Abbaſtries*, and others of one *Mamoedje*, of which there are two ſorts, coined by the predeceſſors of his preſent Majeſty, They call them *Mamoedjes-havieſe*; the country abounds with this coin, becauſe the merchants do not find it worth their while to carry or ſend it into foreign parts. It is current all over this Kingdom as well for foreign goods as for their own, nor do they uſe any other. They have alſo *Zaejies* or half *Mamoedjes*. The King coins but few or none of the two firſt ſorts we have mentioned, and them only for the poor, and at certain times of the year. They are alſo ſo ſcarce, that they are hardly any where to be ſeen but in the hands of the curious, becauſe they differ a little in value and weight from the *Mamoedjes*, and the *Zaejies* which they coin at preſent. The reaſon of which is, that theſe three laſt coins were reduced to a juſt ſtandard in the years 1684, and 1685, but the officers of the mint have nevertheleſs diminiſhed the value of them, out of their inſatiable deſire to enrich themſelves, to which the negligence of the government itſelf did not a little contribute. Nor had the grievance at all been remedied, if the people, who murmured at it, had not made their complaint to the miniſters, who, to ſatisfie them, broke a part of theſe officers, and appointed others in their ſtead, who reformed what had been amiſs in their predeceſſors; nor can this be wondered, at ſeeing they were diſcharged without any concomitant puniſhment for their malverſations. Theſe coins are not at all current in trade, in which they uſe none but the *Mamoedjes-havaiſe*, a coin under the ancient Kings. This obliges the merchants to be diligent in looking out for them, and to give ſometimes one, two, and even ſix *per cent.* for them, beyond their intrinſic value, ſo that they tranſact a very great trade with this coin, which the traders of the country hoard up as ſoon as it comes out of the mint, and ſend them away to *Suratt*, where they find them to turn to better account than if they bought *Ducats*.

1704.

They have two ſorts of copper coin, the largeſt of which, and which is the tenth part of a *Mamoedje*, is round; the other, which is worth no more than the twenty fifth part of the ſame, is long.

There is little or no gold coin to be ſeen in *Perſia*; I have, however, ſeen *Ducats* there, but they are ſcarce and light.

All the goods brought from *Gamron*, and the money ſent thither by bills of exchange, are negotiated by the *Banians* or *Indian* brokers, and the money is carried in *Ducats* to the *Eaſt-Indies*.

Trade between the King of Perſia and the India company. The King of *Perſia* is, by contract, obliged to deliver every year to our *India* company, one hundred bales of ſilk, each bale containing 408 pounds of *Dutch* weight, amounting in the whole to the weight of 4800 pounds. And the company, by way of return, ſend twelve hundred cheſts of ſugar to *Iſpahan*, each cheſt containing one hundred and fifty pounds weight, in all eighteen hundred thou-

1704. pounds weight; which is consumed in the city of *Ispahan* only. When the director and the other officers of the company have received this silk, they sort it, and make it up into less bales, which they send by horses to *Gamron*, and from thence by shipping to *Batavia*. 1703.

CHAP. XLV.

Description of several Birds; of certain Trees; of Fruits, Plants, and Flowers. Price of Goods. Famous Gum or Mummy.

Description of the birds. HAVING spoken of the nature and customs of this country, I proceed to its productions, and shall begin with the birds, which are represented in number 91. The *Angoert*, distinguished by the letter *A*, is a sort of bird we have already mentioned in the course of these travels. I painted it from the life, and found it somewhat different from those of the kind I had seen before; for this had a black collar about its neck, and more green upon the wings than the rest I had seen. The birds distinguished by the letter *B*, are turtle-doves, which have also a kind of black collar about the neck, and which, for that reason, they call *Fargter-toog-begerde*, or turtle-doves with collars. Those distinguished by the letter *C*, are called *Fargter*, and the bird marked by the letter *D*, is called *Claegsebs*, or the green crow. The *E*, distinguishes certain yellow birds called *Gonsjes-zerde*, which appear when the corn begins to spring up, there to build their nests, and retire as soon as the husbandmen begin to reap it; they are of four or five sorts. The bird distinguished by the letter *A*, in number 92, is a spotted turtle-dove, with streaks of white and black upon the neck; it keeps commonly in the mountains; the *B*, points out an *Allafagter* or green turtle; the letter *C*, distinguishes a bird spotted with black and white, and called *Mahi-gieeck*, or the fisher, because it never leaves the banks of the rivers, or waters, like the gull. The *D*, shews two other *Mahi-gieecks*, which are small birds, blue and green behind, of an orange colour on the breast, and so called because they are generally upon trees near the water. The letter *E*, points out a bird with a green body and a yellow neck. The letter *F*, points at a bird which is black and grey mixed with white, spotted with yellow, and called *Dregtken*, or wood-pecker, because it is always pecking at the trees it perches upon, so as to be heard afar off. The letter *G*, distinguishes a bird marbled before, and behind, and called *Morje-inshir*, or the *Becco-sico*, with his breast striped with grey and white. He loves heat, sings sweetly, and tastes deliciously; but is very scarce.

The Angoert.

Turtle-doves.

Number 93, represents a bird called *Backer-Kara*, common all over *Turky*, and in the island of *Cyprus*. He is of an exquisite flavour, and his flesh is whiter than that of the partridge, beside that he is larger. For the rest, he has colour upon his back, but is grey and white before, and has a streak about his neck, as may be observed in number 94. The two birds represented in number 95, are called *Bol-bol*, and have nearly the nightingale's song. They are taken from the life, their heads are black and white, and the rest of their feathers are grey, except upon the belly, where they are yellow quite to the tail, the tip of which is white.

Backer-Kara.

Let us now proceed to describe the trees, the fruits and the plants. The tree of greatest esteem in this country is the *Sena*, unknown in all other

Of trees. *The* Sena.

OISEAUX SINGULIERS.

BAEKER-KARAE. 94.

A

B
D
C

1704. other parts. They pretend that the firſt of them which was brought hither, came from the town of *Jeeſd*, which is ſeven or eight days journey from hence. Some of theſe trees are twenty or twenty-five palms in circumference, and particularly in the *Chiaer-baeg*, and in many other gardens where I have been. They are commonly forty or fifty foot high, and are as upright as a maſt, with few or no branches but at the very top. The bark is of a bright grey, and the leaves like thoſe repreſented in number 96. The planks of it are proper for gates and doors, ſhutters and the like, and the tree is yellow marbled within, which is very much eſteemed in this country. The largeſt and moſt robuſt of theſe trees are worth one hundred *Rix-dollars*.

Piſtachio trees. The *Piſtachio* is alſo of a good ſize there, and has a fine head, laden with fruit. The leaves of it are not very unlike thoſe of the laurel, except that they are a little rounder and larger; you ſee a branch of this tree in number 97, diſtinguiſhed by the letter *A*. The bark of it is red and yellow, when the tree is in full vigour, otherwiſe it is bright, green and yellow. Moſt of the leaves of it are upſide down, red and yellow. They make a comfit of the ſhell of this nut, which they eſteem very much, and pickle the kernels of it before it is ripe, juſt as we do green cucumbers. There are wild *Piſtachio* trees in the mountains, which bear a very ſmall nut. They produce a gum, which the inhabitants receive in a ſmall cup of clay, from a wound they make, either in the body of the tree or the branches of it. This gum has the ſcent and colour of terebinth: They collect it in the month of *Auguſt*, and put it up in little leathern pouches for ſale. It is a wonderful remedy or unguent.

Semaeg. This country produces another tree called *Semaeg*, not very unlike an alder, except that the leaves of it are ſhorter and more full of fibres, beſide that they are pointed in their rotundity. The fruit, you ſee diſtinguiſhed by the letter *B*, and which is ſourer than verjuice, is like a cat's tail, and full of ſmall excreſcencies. They uſe it in ſauces, and when it is dry they reduce it to a powder, and eat it with roaſted meat; it is medicinal alſo; they uſe it together with roſe water to rinſe the mouth and gums, and prevent the ſcurvy. 1704.

Kakienets. *Perſia* alſo produces a ſhrub called *Kakienets* or *Akekinſhe*, which riſes two foot above the ground, and ſhoots out branches which can hardly ſupport themſelves. Each of them bears four, five, ſix or ſeven of their fruit, which is like a bell cloſed in, and of a fine red orange colour within and without; you have a branch of it, laden with its fruit, in letter *C*, this fruit when dry is uſed to ſtaunch blood. They make it up into ſmall cakes, which they call *Trociſchi-Alkekingi*, which they again convert into ſmall pills, having previouſly boil'd them in water and terebinth, and they take them in a glaſs of wine or water.

Annaeb. The *Annaeb* is a tree of pretty tolerable growth, whoſe fruit is like the olive before it is ripe, and becomes red afterward. The taſte of it is admirable, and this they uſe alſo medicinally. There is a branch of it diſtinguiſhed by the letter *D*, and they are all after the life.

Fruit of trees. The chief fruits of *Perſia* are almonds, piſtachio's and peaches, of theſe laſt there are four or five ſorts, great and ſmall, ſome of which part from the ſtone, and ſome do not. The former are called *Sheſt-aloe*, and thoſe whoſe ſtone opens with the fruit, *Hoe-loe*; they have ſome blue like plumbs, others are like apricots, and there are ſmall ones that are yellowiſh.

Apricots. As for apricots they have eleven or twelve ſorts of them, each of which have a particular name; but in general they call them *Zarda-loe*.

Cherries. There are, however, but few cherries in this country, ſome of which are like thoſe of *Spain*, and the reſt are like black morella's, the former are called *Gielas*, and the lat- the *Aloe-baloe*.

1704. But they have many apples, and of ſeveral ſorts, which, in general, they call *Sien*, and many ſorts of pears, and among the reſt, the *Bergamot*, winter pears, and ſummer pears, of which ſome are very large, and eſpecially they have ſome of the former which keep all the year round.

Apples and pears.

Plumbs. They there have four ſorts, of plumbs, blue, white, red, and yellow. They eat the white half ripe with ſalt, and the blue are the true plumbs *de Brignole*.

Quinces. They have here alſo two or three ſorts of quince-trees, called *De-bée*, the fruit of which is admirable and eaten in the hand. It is very large, and very good to preſerve. They have alſo ſtore of walnuts and ſmall nuts.

Pomegranates. Pomegranate-trees abound here alſo, and bear a delicious fruit; tho' ſome there are of them that bear no fruit at all, and only a great red flower like a poppy. Some of them have their leaves ſtreaked with white, and are moſt charmingly beautiful, and others of them are yellow. I had the curioſity to paint ſome of them as you will find them repreſented in number 98, and in number 99 you have a pretty tree, all the branches of which hang down to the ground; the leaves of it are fine, long and thin, and they call it *Biede-makalagie*. They have but one ſort of figs, and thoſe none of the largeſt.

Grapes. But they have ten or twelve ſorts of grapes, which in general they call *Angoer*, tho' each ſort has a name peculiar to itſelf. They have three or four ſorts that are blue, ſome of them round, others long, and all very large. They have alſo two or three ſorts that are white, and ſome of them very ſweet, and without ſtones. They have another ſort, whoſe bunches are a promiſcuous mixture of large and ſmall grapes, different from all I had ever ſeen elſewhere. They dry them every year, and making them a kind of comfit, they put them into earthen pots, and ſend them to *Batavia* and elſewhere. In this manner it is they do it; they pick and cull the grapes very nicely, 1703. and cover them with dry roſe-leaves in a ſtone jug, which they then ſtop up ſo cloſe, that no air can have admiſſion, in this ſtate they leave them for ſome days, after which they break the neck of the veſſel and take out the roſe-leaves, and ſeparate all the grapes, which they put into another veſſel, and being thoroughly dry, they ſend them into foreign parts. The roſe-leaves are only intended to give a pleaſant flavour to the grapes; but care muſt be taken that none of them remain with the grapes, for fear they ſhould cauſe a rot. At the ſame time they ſend to the *Indies* almonds and piſtachio's, from whence in exchange they receive ſweatmeats and other dainties.

Plants and roots. Plants and roots abound as much in *Perſia* as the fruits. They reckon they have above twenty-five ſorts of melons, which in general they call *Garbie-ſa*, tho' each of them, moſt of which are excellent, has a name peculiar to itſelf. There are ſome of them that weigh twenty pound, and which they keep all the year round in cool and cloſe places, and eſpecially in the ſummer, to ſave them from the violent heats. Nor do they ever want ſnow for that purpoſe, and they there know how to condenſe it into ice to refreſh their wine. Theſe great melons are called *Garbie-ſai-belgience*. The firſt melons that appear are the moſt inſipid, but then they are the moſt wholeſome; they are almoſt all white. The water-melons abound there no leſs, and they have four or five ſorts of them, as well red as white, and which they call *Hindoen*. The ſmall *Citruls* are there alſo in the ſame plenty, ſome of them ſtriped with green and black, and very beautiful; others of them marbled with ſeveral colours, and not larger than a *China* orange. I have filled a picture with theſe fruits, intermixed with peaches, and another fruit called *Chamama* or *woman's breaſt*, of an admirable red. I have preſerved the ſtone or ſeed of this,

FLEUR DE GRANADE

PETITES CITROUÏLLES ET AUTRE FRUITS. 100

1704. and a bunch of the grapes I mentioned to conſiſt of great and ſmall upon the ſame ſtalk; you have the repreſentation of theſe fruits in number 100.

Productions of the Kitchen-garden. *Perſia* alſo produces all ſorts of carrots, beet-roots, and parſnips, horſe-radiſh, radiſhes, turnips, topinambers, muſhrooms, colly-flowers of extraordinary ſize, ſome of which weigh thirteen or fourteen pound, ſavoys, aſparagus, artichokes, celery, leeks, onions, ſhalots, creſſes, dragon-wort, parſley, chervil, ſavoy, mint, coriander, Anniſeed, ſorrel, purſlane, marjoram, ſage, borage, cabbage-lettice, ſuccory, and Roman-lettice, with a long leaf, and which they eat in the hand, which is ſweet and very pleaſant to the taſte. Nor do they want for ſpinage and rue.

Flowers. This country alſo produces very common tulips, and ugly carnations, the lily, the tuberoſe, narciſſus, ſeveral ſorts of junquils, the hyacinth, the marvel of *Peru*, the mallow, the ſun-flower, the muſk-flower, violets, and marigolds, moſt of which have been brought from *Europe*, for the flowers of their own are very indifferent. They have alſo the flowers of ſaffron, the fineſt ſorts of which come from *Mazanderan*. Though roſes both red and white are there very common, they make a prodigious quantity of roſe-water, which they ſend to *India*, and elſewhere; and they uſe a great deal of it themſelves, for they are great lovers of perfumes, and never fail to ſprinkle their friends with roſe-water whenever they entertain them, but it never ſpots their cloaths.

They have alſo two ſorts of jeſſamine, the beſt of which is very much like the *Italian*, the ſmell excepted. The other is more common, and runs up very high upon trees, and has a particular love for the *Sena*; nothing can be more charming to the ſight.

Abundance of proviſions. Beſide all this, *Perſia* is productive of every neceſſary of life, and particularly abounds with poultry and game. You there do not commonly give above ſix pence for a hen; four pence or five pence for a pullet, 1704. and ten or twelve pence for a partridge. Of theſe there are ſome not bigger than quails and pigeons. Wild ducks are there worth about ſeven-pence or eight-pence a piece; a good tame gooſe forty or fifty, a large turkey ſeven or eight, and the young ones in proportion. Their capons are exceſſively fat, and not very plentiful and indeed they are ſeldom purchaſed but to make preſents of.

Beſides all this, they have plenty of ſnipes and woodcocks; many ſorts of wild ducks, teal, cranes, wood-pigeons, turtles, larks, thruſhes, and partridges with red heads, which can only be ſhot flying, or taken with the hawk.

However, every ſort of deer is here ſcarce enough, but cattle, and eſpecially beeves, abound; you may have twelve pound of beef for the value of twenty pence, tho' the *Perſians* eat but little of it, if you except the dregs of the people: It is almoſt all ſold at *Julfa*, and among the Chriſtians. They likewiſe do not give above fifteen or ſixteen pence for twelve pounds of mutton; but they raiſe the price of it as winter comes on. The ſame it is with regard to goats-fleſh. There are many wolves and foxes in this country, but they are very ſmall.

Price of bread. They alſo commonly give but eight or ten pence for twelve pounds of bread, and twenty pence or four and twenty for the ſame quantity of rice, eight or nine pence for as much wheat, and ſeven or eight pence for as much barley when it is not winnowed. They give it to horſes, becauſe they have no oats in *Perſia*; but they have ſtore of *Spaniſh* wheat, which they dreſs before it is quite ripe, and ſprinkling it over with ſalt water, cry it about the ſtreets to ſell.

Butter. The butter they uſe in their ſauces, and in ſeveral of their diſhes, is ſold after the rate of five or ſix *Florins* for twelve pounds, and their freſh butter, which is admirable, for ſeven or eight *Florins*.

Oil. The oil they uſe for the ſame purpoſe, is made of the ſeed of *Kousjae*,

1704. *Kousjae*, and is not very unlike our olive oil, except that it has a ſtronger ſmell with it. You have twelve pound of it for fifteen pence. They have, however, another ſort which is better, and extracted from the ſeed of *Kousjit*, which coſts as much again.

The ſeed of *Maize*, which, in the *Eaſt-Indies*, they call *Kajang*, is alſo of great uſe in ſauces. Beſides all this, *Perſia* produces ſmall red and white beans, not unlike thoſe of *Turkey*; peas, white and grey; ſmall black beans for horſes, and green peas of the growth of *Europe*.

They uſe camel's dung for firing inſtead of turf.

Wood is very dear in this country, and ſold by weight; they give you but twelve pounds of it for four pence or five pence, and the ſame it is with regard to coals. Whence it is they are obliged to make uſe of turf, made of camel's dung, cow dung, ſheep's dung, horſe dung, and aſs dung. The chief *Armenians* of *Julfa* do ſo as well as the reſt, or elſe the fire would coſt more than the victuals; whereas they give but thirty pence for two hundred and twenty or two thouſand and thirty pound weight of this turf. They uſe it more particularly for heating of ovens, in which they bake moſt of their meats in this country, without trouble and at a ſmall expence. The uſe they make of this dung contributes much to the cleanlineſs of the highways, whence they are careful to remove the filth as well for this purpoſe as to manure their lands. They even apply human dung this way.

Root of Rugnas.

I forgot to ſpeak of the root of *Rugnas*, which the *Indians* call *Soliman-doſtyn*, and which they find in the province of *Shirwan*, and in the neighbourhood about the city of *Tauris*. They trade greatly with it to the *Indies*, whither, one year with another, they ſend three hundred packs of it, each pack of about one hundred and fifty or one hundred and ſixty pound weight. The *Manſha*, or twelve light pounds of it, is commonly worth above twelve *Mamoedjes*, which make about two *Rix-dollars* or five *Florins*.

1704. They every year alſo, from *Tauris* and *Casbin*, ſend to the *Indies* ſeven or eight hundred hampers of *Auripigmentum* or *Orpiment*, which the *Perſians* call *Zernig*. Theſe baskets, each of them, contain one hundred and fifty or one hundred and ſixty pound weight, and a pound of it, according to its degree of goodneſs, is worth from three quarters of a crown to three half crowns. They uſe it much for painting in this country, and for ſeveral other purpoſes. I think they alſo ſend it into *Turky*. Orpiment.

Famous drug.

Perſia moreover produces a precious drug, unknown to many people even of the country itſelf. It is a kind of gum they call *Mummy*, which they find in the neighbourhood of the city of *Laer*, in certain ruins or grotto's. It is ſoft and black as pitch, but ſmells pleaſanter, and drops from the rock. That which affords the beſt is locked and ſealed up, and none but the Governour of *Laer*, and ſome other Grandees are allowed to go in and collect for the King; and they do not get together above eight or ten ounces of it a year, ſo that it is a very great rarity. This gum is admirable for fractured bones, and they aſſure you that let the human body be bruiſed and broken ever ſo much, it reſtores it in twenty four hours time. To this purpoſe they melt in, to the quantity of a pea, with butter in a ſpoon, which they make the patient ſwallow down, and then apply the ſame quantity of it, or a little more to the afflicted part, or in proportion as the caſe requires, and then they bind it about with linen, and uſe ſplints, for a broken leg. They attribute the diſcovery of this medicine to a hunter who had broke the leg of a ſtag, which nevertheleſs got from him. The ſtory relates, that the hunter returning the next day to his ſport, ſhot, as he thought, at another ſtag, but was much ſurprized to find it was the ſame, whoſe leg he had broken the day before, and eſpecially upon obſerving the fracture was almoſt

1704. cured. The rumour of this accident ſpreading round about, they attributed the ſuddenneſs of this cure to the vertue of this gum, the affair happening near the place where it drops. They made experiments of it upon other wounds, and it failed not of exhibiting the ſame effect; nor was there more deſired to give it a great reputation.

In the country of *Loreſtan*, they find another ſort of it, which produces much the ſame effect, but it is three or four times as long in perfecting a cure. The difference between theſe two ſorts, is known by putting ſome of each upon burning coals; the ſmoke of this laſt has the ſmell of pitch, whereas the ſmoke of the firſt is much more pleaſant; but the beſt proof is by breaking the leg of a fowl, and then applying it as directed above; this is a proof that has been made ſeveral times. For the reſt, as this mummy belongs wholly to the King, and as there is but little of it produced, it is very difficult to get any of it, and eſpecially for money. Thoſe, however, who have the charge of it, do ſometimes ſend ſome of it privately as a preſent to the firſt miniſters of ſtate. That of *Loreſtan* is not quite ſo ſcarce to be met with, I flatter my ſelf I have ſome of each ſort; if I have not I am very much miſtaken. 1704.

CHAP. XLVI.

Deſcription of Julfa. *Dreſs of the* Armenians. *Cuſtoms obſerved by the* Armenians *at births, marriages and funerals. The education of their children and their manner of living. Of the* Europeans *that live there. Of foreign miniſters.*

Deſcription of Julfa. THE town or ſuburb of *Julfa* is divided into ſeveral parts, and particularly into the old and new colony. The old one, which they call *Soeg-ga*, is inhabited by the principal merchants; and they ſay their anceſtors came thither from ſeveral parts, and even from the frontiers of *Turkey*, in the reign of *Abbas* the great, and that this Prince aſſigned them certain lands for their ſupport. The *Gawres*, the ancient followers of *Zoroaſter*, ſettled there likewiſe with ſome ſtrangers, we ſhall ſpeak of in the ſequel.

New Julfa. New *Julfa* is higher up, and ſubdivided into ſeveral diſtricts, (1) that of *Gaif-rabaet* or of *Koets*, inhabited by ſtone-cutters, who work for buildings and tombs; (2) that of *Tabrieſe*, full of weavers and artificers in ſtuffs, among whom are ſome *Frenchmen*; (3) that of *Toeſt* or of *Samſha-baet*, which belongs to the old colony, and is inhabited by merchants and artificers; (4) that of *Eriwan*, full of common people; (5, 6, and 7) are called *Nagt-ſiewaen*, *Siachſa-baen* and *Kaſket-ſie*; theſe are inhabited by the ſame, and all theſe people are called after the diſtrict they live in, without any other diſtinction.

Old Julfa. Old *Julfa* is much larger than all the other diſtricts put together, and contains near two thouſand families, of which are thoſe of ſome of the moſt wealthy, and moſt conſiderable merchants.

They have their own *Kalantaer* or burgo-maſter, and their *Betgoedaes* or chiefs of diſtricts, who are as judges to decide in all common cauſes, but thoſe of more importance are reſerved for the King or the council of ſtate, and are afterward put

1704. into execution by the burgo-maſter and chiefs of the diſtricts.

The old *Julfa* properly belongs to the King's grand-mother, whom they call *Nawasb-ali*, a title they commonly confer upon perſons of great power and condition: But all the other diſtricts we have enumerated are under the *Nagaſi-baſhi* or chief of the King's painters. They have nevertheleſs their particular chiefs, and they had formerly a burgo-maſter.

Building of Julfa. The firſt diſtrict of *Julfa*, which is the ſouthward, conſiſts of a large ſtreet, inhabited by *Guebres*, that is, by thoſe who have embraced *Mohammediſm* within three years; their wives, by ancient cuſtom, go with the face bare. I never was able to get a thorough underſtanding of what theſe people were till after my return from the *Indies*, and therefore I ſhall defer what I have farther to ſay of them till that time.

The principal buildings of *Julfa* are the churches, the chief of which is that of *Anna-baet* or *of the biſhop*, concerning which, we ſhall declare ourſelves when we are to ſpeak of the baptiſm of the croſs. The ſecond, which has a fine dome, is that of *Surpa-kroop* or of St. *James*, full of paintings, repreſenting ſacred ſtories, like that of the biſhop; it has ſome vacant places on the right-hand, and the women are there divided from the men. The third, which is the largeſt, is that of *Surpontomaſa*, or of St. *Thomas*. It is long, and, on each ſide, ſupported by three ſquare columns. This church has no paintings, and all the walls of it are white; the dome of it is very low, and you go up to the altar by three ſteps on each ſide. Beſide theſe churches, there are eleven or twelve ſmaller, and leſs adorned. There are alſo thirteen or fourteen in the new *Julfa*, but they are ſmall, and not at all remarkable.

The principal *Armenians* have ſome tolerably fine houſes in the old *Julfa*. The chief of them is that of *Hodſhe-minozes*, whoſe great hall is all gilt, and painted with flowers and other ornaments, and has ſeveral looking glaſſes. The cieling of it is vaulted, and divided into four compartments, in the middle of each of which is a golden ſtar, intermixed with ſome colours, and the walls of it are cruſted with marble to the heighth of two or three foot. At the two ends of this hall there are niches full of feſtoons and foliages interwoven, of unſpeakable beauty. Through the front-gate, which leads to theſe houſes, you come into a court, in the middle of which there is a fine round parterre, and a court in the ſame form behind the houſe, with a building apart for the women, after the manner of the country. 1704.

When I had examined into what was curious and remarkable in this houſe, the maſter of which entertained me very ſplendidly, I went to ſee that of the burgo-maſter *Hogaes* or *Lucas*, which I found to be as large as the former, but not ſo gaudy. From this, I went to that of *Arjiet-Aga*, before which there was a great garden; it is alſo very large and full of fine apartments. That of *Hodſhe-Saffraes* has alſo a large garden, and all the walls of the houſe are painted and full of figures as big as the life. Among others there is a *Turkiſh* man and a *Turkiſh* woman, and ſeveral other figures dreſſed after the *Perſian* and *Spaniſh* manner, at ſome diſtance the one from the other. Upon the top of this houſe there is a fine terraſs, whence you have the moſt inchanting proſpect in the world, in which King *Abbas* took a ſingular pleaſure in his time. The houſe of *Hodſhe-Agamaet* is one of the loftieſt and beſt adorned; it has a beautiful apartment next to the ſtreet, with fine large windows, and the terraſs of it is charming. The houſes of *Hodſhe-Ovannis*, of *Hodſhe-Murſa*, and of ſeveral others yield in nothing to theſe. Some of them have a elegant marble fountain with a waterfall in the fineſt apartment, or at the entrance without.

All theſe houſes are extremely neat and well kept; the rooms of them *Neatneſs of the houſes.*

1704. them are covered with fine carpets, and full of cuſhions of gold and ſilver brocade. The front-gate of moſt of theſe houſes is very ſmall, partly to prevent the *Perſians* from riding in on horſeback, and partly to avoid any ſhew of the magnificence within. The chief ſtreets are adorned with fine ſena's, planted on each ſide.

Dreſs of the Armenian men.

The dreſs of the *Armenians* differs but little from that of the *Perſians*, except that they are not ſo neat, nor are their turbants ſo nicely folded: beſide that, they are not allowed to wear them of the *Perſian* mode any more than green ſlippers.

Of the women.

As for the better ſort of the *Armenian* women, they, like the *Perſian* women, wear a half band upon the fore-head, adorned with precious ſtones and pearls. Under this band they have a golden *Chambara*, adorned in the ſame manner, and two fingers broad, and down the cheeks they have a ſcore of golden ducats, and other ornaments, enriched with pearl, which comes underneath the chin, and the lower part of their face, quite to the noſe, is covered with a veil, faſtened behind the head. Beſide this, they wear another veil about the neck, the ends of which are embroidered with gold and ſilver, and this is alſo faſtened behind the head, and theſe two veils are never taken off. They have a third embroidered, which covers their neck, and goes over the two others; this alſo is faſtened upon the head and falls down to the bottom of their upper garment, which is commonly of gold brocade, and lined with ſables. The garment they wear under this is of a flowered ſtuff, and they have a third which does not fall below the knee. Their ſhift is of embroidered taffeta, or ſome other rich ſtuff, and a little ſhorter than their upper garment. Under this they wear drawers of a fine ſtriped ſattin, buskins or boots after the *Perſian* mode, and ſlippers either yellow or red, for green they are no more allowed to wear than the men. The girdle is made of thin plates of gold or ſilver chaſed, and is four or five fingers broad, and under this they have a ſilken one with a buckle; for the reſt ſome of them ſet them with precious ſtones. They have commonly two or three gold chains about the neck, by one of which hang ſmall boxes of perfumes, and ducats by the reſt. Theſe chains they wear with the addition of a coral necklace, to every third bead of which they hang either a ſingle or a double ducat. They wear alſo golden bracelets, and have their fingers laden with rings. Inſtead of the furred gown, they, in ſummer, wear another garment, ſhorter and without ſleeves, which does not fall down below the knee. You have this dreſs repreſented in number 101. 1704.

Dreſs of the young women.

The maids dreſs nearly after the manner of the married women, excepting with regard to the head, as likewiſe the veil which covers a part of the face, and the other which covers the neck and breaſt; ſo that they wear none but that which the women have about the neck. For the reſt, they wear a band, or rather a diadem, upon the forehead, embroidered with gold and ſilver and inriched with pearls. In ſhort, when the *Armenian* women appear abroad, they differ in nothing from the *Perſian*, except that they are obliged to cover their faces, with their cloaths which they hold in the right-hand, to prevent their being ſeen.

But it is now high time to proceed to the cuſtom or ceremonies obſerved by theſe people at births, marriages, and funerals.

Cuſtoms at births.

When they have a child born among them, their firſt care is to give it a god-father, and at the end of ſome days, a woman carries this child to church that it may be baptized; ſhe delivers it into the hands of the prieſt, who dips it three times, naked, into a bucket of water, which ſerves them for a font; the prieſt all the while pronouncing a certain form of words, as the cuſtom is with us. He then anoints the child with holy oil, upon the head firſt, then upon the mouth, the breaſt,

1704. breaſt, the neck, the hands and feet; after which he wraps it up in its cloaths, and carries it up to the altar, where he crams the ſacrament into its mouth. This done he puts it upon the arms of the god-father, who covers it with a ſtuff, he preſents it; after all this they return, preceded by ſome prieſts, who have a croſs in one hand and a taper in the other, and ſinging the Goſpel to the ſound of ſome inſtruments. The godfather, in this manner, follows them to the houſe of the child's parents, holding alſo two lighted tapers in his hands, and having delivered up the child to its mother, he diverts himſelf the reſt of the day with the friends and relations. For the reſt, they have here commonly the ſame godfather, for their children, and when a child happens to be born a little before *Eaſter*, or the feſtival of baptizing the croſs, they are obliged to have it baptized upon that ſame day. It muſt here alſo be obſerved, that neither this godfather, nor any of his near relations, can marry with any of thoſe of the child to the third or fourth degree of conſanguinity. And even when it happens that a girl and a boy of different families have been repreſented by the ſame godfather, they may not marry together.

Marriage ceremonies. Their marriages have ſomething odd enough in them; the parties do not go through a courtſhip as elſewhere: The parents on each ſide make the whole agreement among themſelves, and draw up the marriage contract. Upon the wedding day the bridegroom ſends for muſic, and invites ſome friends to his houſe, and they put a taper into the hand of thoſe ſo invited. In the midſt of this appear a group of young girls, who dance in the ſtreets to the ſound of drums and hautboys, and are followed by women laden with wearing apparel and jewels. Theſe girls when they are got to the bridegroom's habitation, faſten a croſs of green ſattin upon his breaſt, and the men and the women retire into ſeparate apartments, where 1704. they are entertained with conſerves, and choice liquors. Then they bring the cloaths of the bride and bridegroom in two baskets, with ſome trifles to be preſented to the young people who aſſiſt at the wedding; and the prieſts perform certain ceremonies by way of bleſſing this apparel, which when done the intended couple put them on. The bridegroom being thus dreſſed, goes with ſome of his friends, and two or three of his relations, to the apartment of his ſpouſe that is to be, where he is received and complimented by his father, or brother, or neareſt of his relations, who gives him ſome exhortations, and wiſhes him all ſorts of joy and happineſs. The young girls, formerly mentioned, then faſten another croſs of red ſattin, upon the firſt, and the women bring him a handkerchief, which they give him to hold by one corner, and the bride by the other. The bride is now covered with a fine embroidered veil, thro' which, however, you may ſee her cloaths, and her face is covered with a red taffety, which hangs down to her feet; and thus ſhe follows her husband accompanied by ſeveral women veiled, while he is preceded by all the men, and thus they go to church, with each a lighted taper in hand. As ſoon as they are got thither, the relations take the handkerchief from the bridegroom, and then go each to his place. As ſoon as maſs is begun the confeſſors appear, and confeſs the young couple, who then go up to the altar, where the prieſt asks the man, if he will have the woman offered to him to be his wife, and if he will honour and cheriſh her, whatever may happen to her for the time to come, whether ſhe be taken blind, or loſe the uſe of her limbs, or whether ſhe be afflicted by any other accident of the kind? The man anſwering in the affirmative, the prieſt asks the woman the ſame queſtion, ſhe anſwering in the ſame manner, the prieſt firſt joins

1704. their hands, and then their heads, which a brideman keeps together with an handkerchief, and then he covers them with a croſs. In the mean time they read over the office for the occaſion, and ſay the uſual prayers; then the prieſt takes the croſs from off them, and adminiſters to them the ſacrament of the altar, and every one returns to his place. When maſs is over, they go out of the church; the prieſts walk before the new married couple, to the ſound of drums, hautboys and the like, the couple continuing to have the handkerchief, already mentioned, about their necks, and being followed by all their friends. At the bridgegroom's door, they meet with a great baſon full of ſherbet, with which they entertain the prieſts and all that are invited, whom they perfume with roſe-water, which they take out of a ſilver pot. Then they conduct the men and the women to two oppoſite apartments, in expectation of dinner, which being ready, they ſit about it, the women ſtill apart from the men. This dinner is placed upon a large carpet ſpread upon the ground, upon which they ſit after the manner of the *Orientals*. They firſt ſerve up conſerves, with all ſorts of liquors, and then the meats.

But we muſt not forget that when the bride and bridegroom have received the ſacrament at their marriage, they keep them ſeparated for three or four days; but when they have not, they conduct them that ſame night to the bridal chamber, where, having perfumed them with roſe-water, they leave them to themſelves.

The portion of Girls. Some days after the wedding, they bring the bride all that had been promiſed for her dower, which commonly conſiſts of apparel, of gold, ſilver and Jewels, in proportion to the means and condition of her Friends. Thereto they alſo add ſweatmeats and fruit, and the whole is brought in fine wooden pails, to the ſound of ſeveral inſtruments, as has already been obſerved with regard to the *Perſians*. This, however, is ſometimes deferred till the birth of the firſt child, and then they 1704. add a cradle and every thing elſe neceſſary for the infant. The couple alſo, ſometimes, go to church on horſeback, and return in the ſame manner; they even marry them in private upon certain occaſions, and in the night, in the preſence of a ſmall number of relations.

But of all that is practiſed among *They marry* the *Armenians*, nothing ſeemed more *in their* extraordinary to me, than their *childhood.* cuſtom of marrying their children in their moſt tender years, ſo that there are but few that have not been married at the age of ten or twelve years. They betroth them even when they are not above a year old, and frequently while they are as yet in their mother's womb. The reaſon they give for this is, that when girls are unmarried they are in danger of being taken away and locked up in the Seraglio, a misfortune they hope to avert by this way of marriage, tho' there are not wanting inſtances to prove that this rule is not without exception.

As I have already made mention *Ceremonies* of the ceremonies they obſerve at *at funerals.* their funerals, in the account I formerly gave of my voyage upon the *Wolga*, I have here only to add, that the women are preſent upon theſe occaſions as well as the men, and that the prieſts and deacons ſing hymns and other funeral chaunts by the way. Four perſons carry the body upon a bier, and they have ſometimes eight or more to relieve each other by turns, when they have far to go. Theſe bearers are always of the common people. They put the body into the ground without any coffin, with the head raiſed a little up, and the prieſt throws three times earth upon it in the form of a croſs.

When they return from the funeral, the company goes to the houſe of the deceaſed, and are there entertained both at dinner and ſupper. The ſame ceremony is continued for forty days together, with regard to two prieſts and two deacons, who every morning go to

1704. the grave of the deceaſed, and read over it certain portions of the Goſpel, and ſing ſome verſes of the *Pſalms of David*: They are paid for this, and have commonly ten pence a time; ſo that funerals are very expenſive mong theſe people.

The bad education of their children.

Tho' the *Armenians* are very ſuperſtitious in exterior things, they are almoſt quite careleſs of ſuch as are more ſolid, and which they ought to have more at heart, and eſpecially for what concerns the education of their children, who are oftentimes men before they can ſay the *Lord's Prayer*; nor is this to be wondered at, ſeeing they are married ſo very young, that they have frequently children before they themſelves are well out of the ſtate of childhood. So that they are ſo taken up with family affairs when they come to an age when they might be fit to learn ſomething, that it is impoſſible they ſhould make a proper uſe of it. In a word, there is no likelihood that a mother, who has never been taught any thing herſelf, ſhould be able to inſtruct her children in any thing. And indeed the women are deſtitute both of wit and genius, and entirely void of all charms; this is an obſervation I had made, and particularly at funerals, where there are ſometimes two or three thouſand of them together, and who look like ſo many aged matrons, paſt all their bloom and beauty, however young they may be. This is ſo much the ſtranger as they have every day before their eyes the *Perſian* women, who are well ſhaped, beautiful and agreeable, with a noble gate, and a charming air in every thing they do and every thing they have upon them, which appears even in the manner wherewith they adjuſt the white veil that covers them. Nor are the *Turks* and the *Greeks* leſs taking in their air and all their motions; while, on the contrary, the *Armenian* women are quite diſagreeable and diſguſt you. The linen with which they hide the mouth, contributes not a little to this, and makes their cheeks ſwell; nor to ſay that they are generally ſmall of ſtature, and clumſy of make. When 1704. you meet them in *Julfa*, they always turn the back upon you, a piece of rudeneſs the *Mohammedans* are never guilty of, and they are to the full as unmannerly in company with their neareſt relations, when they offer them a glaſs of wine, which, turning themſelves to the wall, they never fail to toſs off, let the ſize of the glaſs be what it will. From the care they take to hide themſelves from the eyes of men, it might be imagined that they are invincibly chaſte, and moſt rigidly vertuous; but he that ſhould conclude thus would be moſt egregiouſly miſtaken; for there are a number of them who proſtitute themſelves for money, and who, diſguiſing themſelves as men, go on horſeback with their mothers to *Iſpahan*, where they drive on a little trade, while the poor husband thinks them proof againſt all temptation, only becauſe they never unveil themſelves; but men were not thus to be deceived in ancient times; for *Judah* took *Tamar* to be a proſtitute, becauſe ſhe was covered with a veil.

Incivility of the women.

The men for their part, think of nothing but heaping up money, and how to make it turn to account when they have got it; their whole ſtudy is ſo bent upon this, that they are unmindful both of the other duties of life, and of what paſſes in the world. And yet they cry up *Perſia* above all the other countries under the ſun, and imagine it to be the ſource of all arts and ſciences, tho' they are as little able to judge of the matter as a blind man is of colours; for tho' they continually travel in *Europe*, and carry on a great trade there, they never give themſelves the trouble to examine into what is curious and remarkable there; nor, indeed, would they ſtir a ſtep out of their way, or be at the leaſt expence whatſoever, to ſee what is fine even in their own country. They know nothing but what they have heard from others, and I took notice that thoſe who travelled with

Employments and Ignorance of the Armenians.

me,

1704. me, took no notice of what I inquired into with ſo much care. For this reaſon when I had a point of curioſity to ſatisfy, I always had recourſe to ſtrangers and the efficacy of my money, and had nothing to do with the *Armenians* but in the *Bazars*, where they trade; for all manner of things, out of the common courſe of their buſineſs, are above the reach of their underſtanding, which is altogether uncultivated. As ſoon as they have learned to read and to write, their maſters, who live at *Julfa*, ſend them about, and when they go to, or come from *Iſpahan*, they commonly ride double upon an horſe, a mule, or an aſs, which is to be ſeen in no other country.

When they trade with the *Perſians*, upon their market days, in their little ſhops, in the city, where they ſell cloth by the yard, they dare not drink wine, or any other ſtrong liquor for fear they ſhould be ſmelt; ſo that they groan under a more heavy ſlavery than even that of the *Greeks* under the *Turk*. And this ſlavery ſo preſſes them more and more every day by frequent additions of weight, that it is to be feared they may one day or other be ſtript of all their privileges, if they do not embrace the errors of *Mohammediſm*. And this misfortune in their ſituation muſt, in part, be imputed to the diſputes which rage among them, not only between ſeveral of the Biſhops and the two Patriarchs, but even between the two Patriarchs themſelves, who cannot agree together upon points of diſcipline and other particulars. Nor do the *Perſians* neglect to make the moſt of theſe their differences, or to fiſh in theſe troubled waters, by ſummoning them to appear before them, and overwhelming them with impoſitions, two inſtances of which happened while I was in *Perſia*; whereas if diſcord did not inflame and divide them againſt each other, they might do great things, ſince they are in no want of money, which commands all things in this country; but it is impoſſible to expreſs the natural bent they have to diſagree with each other; a judgment, however, may be formed of it by an example I was a witneſs to. Two brothers had had a diſpute together upon ſome tranſaction in trade, which is in a manner the ſoul of an *Armenian*; they failed not to go to law together, and the eldeſt, who was in poſſeſſion of what was diſputed, and able to make large preſents to the judges, failed not to gain them over to him; and being blind, he, one day, ſaid he was heartily glad he had loſt his ſight, that he might not have the vexation of ſeeing his brother, and that he ſhould not be ſorry to be taken deaf as well as blind, that he might never hear of him again; a monſtrous effect of hatred! His brother who had married in *France*, where he had left his wife, and whence he had brought two little girls he had by her, came every day to our director, to implore his protection againſt the injuſtice of his brother, who wanted to have him ſeized by the *Mohammedan* judges, as he had ſerved him once before, and from whoſe clutches he could not be free but by a ſound baſtonading.

Difficulty about divine ſervice.

Diſpute about divine ſervice.

Implacable hatred of two brothers.

1704.

Many of the chief of them have already renounced their Saviour, and abjured the Chriſtian Faith, for the ſake of *Mohammediſm*, and particularly with a view to enrich themſelves, and to amaſs great fortunes.

Many Armenians forſake their Chriſtian Faith.

One of theſe renegadoes, who had been upon the pilgrimage to *Mecca*, to viſit the tomb of *Mohammed*, returned from thence while I was at *Iſpahan*; moſt of the *Armenians* went out to meet and pay him a thouſand compliments; whereas not a ſoul goes out to welcome the Chriſtian pilgrims that come from *Jeruſalem*; no body careſſes them.

The authority of the *Mohammedans* is ſo great in this country, that two *Portugueſe* Monks were obliged to embrace *Mohammediſm*, the one in the year 1691, and the other in the year 1696. The firſt, whoſe name was *Emanuel*, aſſumed that of *Huſſein Celiebek*, or the ſlave of *Huſſein*, and the other, whoſe name was *Anthony*, was called *Ali-Celiebek*, or the ſlave of *Ali*.

Authority of the Mohammedans in Perſia.

1704. The convent of these *Portuguese* fathers is in the city, and is a fine and a large building, well stored with apartments; but there is but one of them there now, namely father *Antonio Destiero*, whom we had occasion to mention formerly.

Portuguese convent.

Capuchins. There are also two *French* capuchins, whose convent is likewise in the city.

Carmelites. The *Carmelites* also have a fine convent there, and a large garden; but there is now only one of them, who is, by nation, a *Pole*. There are however two others, either *French* or *Danish*, who came from *Italy*, and live in a little house they have in *Julfa*; where four jesuits have built them a pretty chapel after the *Italian* manner, by the side of which they have a very fine house with a beautiful well-kept garden. Beside these there are three *Dominicans*, who have lately built them a new chapel.

Jesuits.

Dominicans.

There are several other *Europeans* at *Julfa*, most of them *French*, and three of *Geneva*, one of whom is a goldsmith, and the others are watchmakers; their names are *Siorde*, *de Finot* and *Batar*, and two physicians, the one a *Frenchman* called *Hermet*, and a *Greek* born at *Smyrna*. They are all of them, except *Finot*, married to *Armenians* of low birth, so that they have much ado to live; for there is no business here for strangers, as has already been observed. Moreover, the *Persians* have able physicians and tolerable mathematicians among themselves; but they know nothing of surgery, nor make any account of foreign surgeons. Nor indeed have they any great regard for those in the service of the King, whose allowances are paid them in bills upon other cities, which they are obliged sometimes to discount at a third, and sometimes at an half loss.

For the rest, it is impossible to expect an advantageous match with any woman here, seeing there is hardly one example of an *European* married into a rich or a considerable family. Nor are they sooner married than they conform to the 1704. customs and manners of their wives, whom they shew to none of their countrymen; but to say the truth of the matter, this change is chiefly seen among the *French*; for the *English* and *Dutch* adhere to the practices of their fathers. A signal example I saw of this in Mr. *Kastelein* our director, whose wife, a Lady of birth and merit, was esteemed by every body, and regretted by all. She appeared always, with her daughter of ten years old, at her husband's table, which was open to all the *Europeans*; but whenever he went to visit those in *Julfa*, their wives were not to be seen. And upon the whole they retain nothing of their country but the language.

It is not so with the strangers who reside at *Constantinople*, *Smyrna*, and other places under the dominion of the *Turk*, where the *Greek* women they marry, make no difficulty to submit to the customs and manners of their husbands, or to conform to their religion, in which they train up their children; whereas those of the *Armenian* women we have been speaking of, follow the religion of their mothers.

I am not ignorant that I might be here confronted with the example of the famous traveller *Pietro della Valle*, a *Roman* Gentleman, who married at *Bagdat*; but beside that love is apt to triumph over prudence, one single example can never be exhibited as a rule. For the rest, I hope I may be here allowed to stop my hand, with regard to this adventure and this marriage, which was transacted in the same convent where I lodged in my return from the *Indies*, that I may not be under a necessity of hurting the reputation of that illustrious *Roman*, who has left us such fine remains behind him.

Marriage of della Valle.

Nor have the *Armenians* alone been very ready to embrace *Mohammedism*, the *Georgians* have trod in the same path, the great among them as well as the small, as may be seen by daily examples;

Apostacy of the Georgians.

1704. amples; and indeed they are as little valued by the *Europeans* as the *Armenians* themſelves. There are, however, ſeveral of them who have gained great reputation for arms in *Perſia* and elſewhere.

Foreign Miniſters. Before I conclude this chapter, I ſhall by the way ſay a word concerning the public Miniſters who come to the Court of *Perſia* with letters from ſome of the Chriſtian Powers, and of whom there are ſeveral, who moſt aſſuredly deſerve not the ſtile of Miniſters, and who ought to be accounted no better than meſſengers, and letter carriers. And, to ſay the truth, they reflect but little honour on thoſe who ſend them, ſeeing the chief end of their journey is, that they may be exempt from paying the cuſtomary duties on the goods they bring along with them, a privilege granted to all who are charged with ſuch letters to the King of *Perſia*. They are even furniſhed with the carriages they want, wherever they go, and have likewiſe allowed them a certain ſum *per* day, in proportion to 1704. their number of followers, during all the time they are at this Court; but the ſum is ſo ſmall, that the meaneſt Miniſter might bluſh to receive it. Upon the whole, it cannot but be wondered at, that the Chriſtian Princes ſhould frequently employ *Armenians* to deliver ſuch letters to the King of *Perſia*; and that theſe people ſhould be ſo far able to impoſe upon them, as to make themſelves paſs for perſons of any conſideration; when nothing is more certain than that they have neither honour nor conſcience, and that without ſcruple they defraud and even ruin thoſe who are ſent with them to court. As for their religion, the facility with which they every day deny Chriſt to embrace the errors of *Mohammed*, makes it very evident that they are but little acquainted with the truths of their own religion. This is a neceſſary intimation to thoſe who are ſtrangers to this country.

CHAP. XLVII.

Dutchmen *who embrace* Mohammediſm. *The proclamation of the* Korog. *The Conſtancy of a poor* Armenian, *and his Death.*

ABOUT the end of this month of *May*, I went out of town with Mr. *Bakker*, our director's deputy, in queſt of game along the river, and particularly of a certain bird called *Morgk-ſacka*, or the *Water Carrier*, which had been often obſerved in that neighbourhood. We perceived him at a diſtance in the air, but could not get near him, which I was very ſorry for, having never ſeen the like, tho' he is often in the parts near the *Wolga*, *Aſtracan*, and the *Caſpian-Sea*. This bird is of an extraordinary ſize, and has a great pouch, filled with water, which, as they ſay, he diſtributes to other birds. In ſhort, finding we had no ſport this way, we threw nets into the water, and took a large quantity of fiſh, which we preſented to our director; and in the evening returned to town, where, the next day, there was a great hurricane.

Upon the *firſt day of June* there *Apoſtacy of ſome Dutchmen.* arrived at *Iſpahan* three *Dutchmen*, who had run away from our *India* company's ſhip at *Gamron*, and embraced *Mohammediſm*, in hopes to make their fortune; but they found they had taken the wrong ſtep to that end, and were reduced to the utmoſt miſery, no body having af-

1703. forded them the leaſt aſſiſtance on the road. Nor were they better uſed in this city, heaven, as it ſhould ſeem, reſolving to puniſh them for their apoſtacy. In this diſtreſs, they came and preſented themſelves at the gate of our director's houſe; but he ſent them word to be gone, and apply themſelves to thoſe whoſe faith they had newly embraced; they, however, returned ſoon after, and intreated him to take them again into the company's ſervice, aſſuring him they were in the deepeſt deſpair for the fault they had committed, and that they moſt earneſtly deſired to be received again into the boſom of the Chriſtian Church. He told them it was not in his power to grant their requeſt; that they were to throw themſelves upon the company's mercy, and return to *Gamron*, where, according to the Laws, they had deſerved death, and that, upon ſuch condition, he would write to the director of that place, to deſire him to ſend them back again to the *Indies*. They accordingly ſubmitted themſelves to this, declaring they had much rather expoſe themſelves to the hazard of being put to death than periſh in the ſin they had been guilty of. Upon this condition they were received again, and cloathed; for which they ſeemed to be ſincerely thankful, and ſoon after returned joyfully to *Gamron*, from whence they were ſent to the *Indies*, where they obtained a pardon for their crime and apoſtacy.

Upon the *fifth of this month*, as I was buſy in drawing a proſpect on the river of the *Chiaer-baeg*, or the fine alley of *Iſpaban*, I was interrupted by a confus'd noiſe, and upon liſtening to it, I found it was the *Korog*. This is a cry to warn all people that the King is coming with his concubines, and that every perſon is to get out of the way upon pain of moſt rigorous puniſhment. I accordingly retired among the reſt, as faſt as I could, and the Prince went by ſoon afterward. He was preceded by a man on horſeback who rode full ſpeed, to diſperſe

Korog.

ſuch as had not been able to get out of the way ſoon enough; and he preſently came up with me, and ſhewed me the way I was to go. I obeyed him inſtantly, and took a long circuit to return to the city, where all the avenues to the ſtreets through which he was to paſs, were lined with guards, to keep people from going that way, ſo that I had much ado to get to my lodging. The next day I went to the ſame place, and found all the ways guarded as the day before, and ſome avenues of the *Chiaer-baeg* ſpread with certain cloths. When a man, upon theſe occaſions, happens to be ſurpriſed, he muſt get out of the way with the utmoſt diligence; but they commonly give warning to every one to keep out of the way and even to quit his houſe, whether by night or day, as long as the *Korog* laſts; and I have been often obliged to leave my *Caravanſerai* upon that account. 1703.

Gunners from the Indies.

Soon after this, there arrived two gunners from the *Indies*, whence Mr. *Kaſtelin* had ſent for them to ſerve the King. This Prince being informed of their arrival, acquainted them he would have but one of them, and him they did not keep long, and while they did, allowed him ſo ſmall a ſalary that it is a ſhame to mention it. Indeed this gunner, who was cloathed before he was preſented, was only to ſhoot at a mark with ſome ſmall pieces of cannon, a diverſion the King never was preſent at; but what is remarkable, they were as long in preparing what was neceſſary for this trifling exerciſe, as we ſhould be in building a fortreſs. And indeed they ſoon diſmiſſed this gunner, who to ſay the truth, was not of a turn to take with this people, who are not to be ſatisfied but by great aſſiduity, and the moſt extraordinary application.

Eclipſe of the moon.

Upon the *ſeventeenth* of this month there was a great eclipſe of the moon, which appeared red, and was almoſt entirely darkned. Upon the *twenty-firſt* there were ſome clouds in the ſky, after a ſeries of clear weather

1704. weather, during which there were none at all to be ſeen; they were of a fine blue, without any duſk, a ſight common enough in this country. In the beginning of *July* there aroſe high winds, which were ſucceeded by a great heat.

Upon the third of this month they opened the ſhops, which had been ſhut up for five or ſix days together, for a time of mourning they obſerve at this ſeaſon, and which, if I am not miſtaken, they call *Waghme*. At this time thoſe who have any differences between them, endeavour at a reconciliation, and to renew their former friendſhips, provided their intereſt have no ſhare in the caſe, for then their conſciences are not ſo mighty tender.

Quarrel between ſome Engliſh *and* Perſians.

At this time there happened a diſpute between ſome of the *Engliſh* Agent's ſervants and certain *Perſians*, and from words they fell to blows. The *Perſians* in a rage, and breathing nothing but vengeance, maliciouſly gave out that one of their countrymen had been killed by an *Armenian* in the ſervice of that Miniſter, upon which all the ſhops in the diſtrict where he lived were ſhut up. The people, fired with the notion of this pretended murder, ran with their complaints to the high Bailiff who was a *Georgian*, and had been a Chriſtian. This man, without any orders from his ſuperiors, ſummoned the Agent's interpreter, who was an *Armenian*, and made him ſign a paper, by which he obliged himſelf either to produce the murderer, or pay a certain ſum of money in default thereof. This he did without any ſcruple, though in his conſcience he knew there had been no murder, and even accuſed his countryman; which was the eaſier for him to do, as his maſter, who by his authority might have warded off the blow, was ſick in his bed. In the mean time they cried aloud for vengeance for the death of a low raſcal of a *Perſian*, who had been only cudgelled for his great inſolence; and they treated all the *Franks*, (ſo they call the *Europeans*) as murderers, and carried their complaints to the Court. Not ſatisfied with this, they in a rage carried the effigie of a dead body to the *Chiaer-baeg*, to inflame the minds of the populace; and even obliged the firſt Miniſter to demand the pretended murderer from the *Engliſh* Agent, who had ſheltered him. This Miniſter, at the ſame time, had an order to diſcharge all his *Mohammedan* ſervants; upon which the *Engliſh* demanded a reſpite of eight days, which was granted them. The poor innocent *Armenian* had in the mean time concealed himſelf in *Julfa*, where he was betrayed by the interpreter, we have already mentioned, who produced him to the officers of juſtice, who carried him to priſon; but the inraged and intoxicated multitude, not at all appeaſed by this, demanded him, and they were forced to deliver him into their hands. They then conſulted what they ſhould do with him, and the moſt moderate of them were of opinion they ſhould releaſe him, and would have made a preſent of him to the King; but the reſt were violently againſt this, and laying their hands on their ſabres, dragged him away, in defiance of law or juſtice. They were the more exaſperated againſt him, as they had in vain endeavoured to ſeduce him over to *Mohammediſm*, with a promiſe of life and liberty in that caſe, and of a conſiderable ſum of money beſide, and to procure him an advantageous marriage; but tho' he had immediate death before his eyes, he rejected all their offers with an unſpeakable fortitude and heroic conſtancy. He even anſwered ſome *Armenians* who had themſelves apoſtatiſed, and who exhorted him only to feign a compliance, ſaying, *He would never deny his Saviour and his God*; whereupon the *Perſians* inflamed with frenzy and rage, fell upon him and cruelly deprived him of life. They then dragged him to the great ſquare of the palace, where many of them thought they could never enough inſult his body, or vent a ſufficient number of imprecations

1704.

Treachery of an interpreter.

Conſtancy of an Armenian *and his cruel death.*

1704. tions enough upon him; they even tore out his bowels and threw them into the lay-ſtall; nor could even the women forbear to treat him with barbarity. Thus died this Chriſtian heroe, this faithful ſervant, who had never forſaken his maſter during the whole courſe of his illneſs, but had conſtantly and diligently tended him night and day. His name was *Gregory Aſſaſoer*, and he was but twenty years of age; a man of extraordinary fortitude and of an heroic courage, as appears by his death, ſo worthy to be admired by all Chriſtians. The proper officers ordered his body to be carried to *Julfa*, where he was buried in the church of St. *Savior*, the fineſt of all in that diſtrict; and an *Armenian*, a merchant, at his own expence, erected a tomb over him, that he might to generations to come tranſmit the memory of ſo glorious a death, and at the ſame time exhibit a teſtimony of the love and friendſhip he bore him.

It is eaſy to conceive what a terror this tragical and barbarous bloodſhed infuſed into all the ſtrangers at *Iſpahan*, who were ſome days before they dared to appear abroad, for fear of expoſing themſelves to the fury of a mercileſs multitude, who were drunk with the impunity of their crime. For the reſt, it muſt fairly be owned that, before this accident, they always paid a great regard to the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*. As at this time we expected ſome of the company's goods from *Gamron*, people were ſent to meet them according to cuſtom, and to carry them to our warehouſes. And this is done to prevent the *Perſians* from inſulting thoſe who brought them, and turning them out of the way, which, as it uſually happened, they failed not to do this time. Our people finding they were attacked and inſulted by theſe infidels, and their bales thrown down, made head againſt them, and it happened that the ſon of the King's firſt phyſician, who was preſent, received ſome blows of a cudgel. The *Perſians*, who proved to be the weakeſt, upon this 1703. occaſion, had recourſe to complaints, and demanded ſatisfaction for the injury they pretended to have received; and our director, to whom they addreſſed themſelves for this purpoſe, promiſed to ſatisfy them after he had examined into the matter; upon which they withdrew, but returned to the charge the next day; when, in their preſence, he cauſed one of his ſervants to be ſeized upon being found guilty, and ordered him a baſtinado upon the ſoles of his feet; but they had hardly begun to inflict that puniſhment upon him, before his accuſers interceded for him, and declared they were ſatisfied; a proceeding very different from what they had exerted ſome days before againſt the ſervant of the *Engliſh* Agent, who had been only guilty of cudgelling a low raſcal, which nevertheleſs coſt the poor man his life.

For the reſt, this nation is ſo very vindictive and nice, that all the *European* Miniſters who are here to watch over the concerns of the powers that ſend them, ought to take particular care to maintain the dignity of their character, and never to ſuffer themſelves to be inſulted with impunity. Never was there any man who acquitted himſelf better of this duty than Mr. *Hooghkame*, with whom I had formerly travelled to *Conſtantinople*. He was afterward ſent to *Perſia* by the *India* company, and there gained the eſteem of every body. And yet he was once engaged in a troubleſome affair with one of the principal Lords of the Court, whoſe ſervants had ſome diſpute with his; and coming to blows, and the *Perſian* laying hand on his ſabre, this Miniſter ſnatched out a piſtol and declared to him, That if he dared to draw his ſword he would ſhoot him through the head; upon which the *Perſian* commanded his people to be quiet and withdrew. And it was prudently done of him, ſeeing he was the weakeſt; for the Miniſter was attended by ſome *European* ſoldiers,

1704. ſoldiers, againſt whom they would have been put to it to defend themſelves. Beſide all this, they ſupported the dignity of his character by a great magnificence, and by a conſtancy proof againſt all obſtacles, articles abſolutely neceſſary in ſo haughty and diſdainful a nation. And indeed they paid ſuch regard to him that they never failed to make room for him wherever he appeared; and even the King and the court eſteemed him as much as the *Europeans*, and they ſtill honour his memory. 1704.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Death of the Engliſh *Agent. His Funeral. Preparations for the marriage of the little Princeſs, his Majeſty's daughter. Mourning of the* Armenians. *Ancient Fortreſs. Mountain of* Sagte-Ruſtan.

Perſian *feaſt.* THE *Perſians* at this time ſolemnized the feaſt of *Babaſoeds-ja-adier*, that is, *of the invincible father of the divine ſervice*, a title they confer upon one of their ſaints, who was put to death by *Omar*. A little after this, there was another *Korog* in the neighbourhood of the royal palace, with orders for all who lived within the limits of it to go out of their houſes, and the *Caravanſera's*. The ſame thing happened again two days afterward, the King having a mind to recreate himſelf with his concubines without the walls of the palace. The muſic of this was heard in the evening and plaid all night, and the next day to the ſetting of the ſun, becauſe the feſtival of *Mohammed* was to be celebrated upon the *twentieth*.

Death of the Engliſh *Agent.* Upon the *twenty-firſt*, Mr. *Owen*, the *Engliſh* company's Agent, died, in the fortieth year of his age. He was a man of worth and honour, and very much eſteemed by every body. The next day, we paid him the laſt honours, and he was carried to the place where they bury all the Chriſtians, in the manner following.

Our director's deputy (the director himſelf was ill of the gout) went at break of day to the houſe of the deceaſed, with all our director's family, and fourteen horſes, among which there were two which we led, covered with black cloth, and preceded by a trumpet and thirteen runners. Firſt, before the body appeared the deceaſed's maſter of the horſe, with the interpreter and ſome others, followed by three led horſes covered with black cloth, and with plumes of white feathers upon their heads; then fourteen perſons on horſeback, attended by ten or twelve ſervants on foot, and a trumpet before the led horſes, after which appeared thoſe of our director, and then the body, covered with white ſilk, and over that with a black velvet pall. It was upon a bier, and carried by four perſons, who were, from time to time, relieved, becauſe of the length of the way.

His funeral. The deceaſed's deputy followed next after the body, attended by ours, and all the *Dutch*, of the number of which I was; and likewiſe by father *Antonio Deſtiero*, the Reſident for the Crown of *Portugal*, and the *Engliſh Armenian* merchants of *Julfa*. In this order we proceeded through the *Chiaer-baeg*, each with a ſcarf of white ſilk over the ſhoulder, knot-

1704. ted at bottom, and hanging down to the ground, which had been given at the houſe of the deceaſed, with another ſcarf of white gauſe about the hat, and which thoſe who had no hats wore about their middle. The proceſſion conſiſted of forty perſons on horſeback, and thirty ſervants on foot. The *French* waited for us at the burial ground with ſome monks, and the body was committed to the earth at ſeven of the clock; when the *Engliſh* company's deputy read over the funeral ſervice, after the manner of his country, and then every one taking an handful of earth threw it into the grave, which was afterward filled up by the diggers. This done we returned in the ſame order we came, and were entertained at dinner at the deceaſed's houſe, where they preſented ſcarves like ours to thoſe who came back with us. They ſent one alſo to our director, and having been very well entertained every body withdrew.

Strange marriage. Some days after this, I ſaw all the bazars adorned with little bands of paper of all ſorts of colours, tinſel, many ſmall figures, and other little trifles. In the evening they illuminated all the ſhops with little lamps, and the burghers in ſeveral places appeared under arms. This was upon account of the marriage of a young Princeſs, the King's daughter, who was but three years old, with the grandſon of his Majeſty's aunt, who was but five years old, and theſe rejoicings were upon the conducting this young Princeſs to the palace of this Lady, where ſhe was to be brought up. This is perhaps the only example of a marriage of the kind, between ſuch young children, among the *Perſians*, tho' the ſame be common enough among the *Armenians*. This Princeſs his Majeſty's aunt, and ſiſter to the King his father, is called *Zynab-Beggum*, and had been married to the ſon of *Soltan Galliefa*, a confident of *Abbas* the ſecond's.

Feaſt of the croſs. Upon the *twenty ſecond of Auguſt*, I went to *Julfa*, where I ſtaid till the *twenty ſixth*, a day upon which 1704. the *Armenians* celebrate the feaſt of *Soerpgaets*, or of the croſs, in commemoration of the croſs of Chriſt, diſcovered upon mount *Calvary* by ſaint *Helen*, the mother of *Conſtantine* the Emperor.

In order to this, their wives go two or three hours before day to the burying ground, where they interr the Chriſtians, and thither they carry wood, coal, tapers, and incenſe. When they are got to this place they kindle fires by the tombs of their relations or friends, and upon thoſe tombs they place burning tapers, and continually throw incenſe into the fire, making great lamentations, and addreſſing themſelves to the dead that reſt there, with more or leſs vehemence, according as they are more or leſs affected with ſorrow. They even throw themſelves upon theſe tombs, which they embrace, and bathe them with their tears; and perſons of the better ſort light up even five or ſix large tapers, and cry and bellow enough to frighten one. As I was deſirous to be preſent at this ſolemnity, I went to the burying-ground two hours before it was day, with the ſon of our interpreter, with whom I lodged. I was ſurpriſed at the ſight of theſe tombs, and of many objects that offered themſelves to my ſight; and when I was at ſome diſtance, the whole appeared to me like the ruins of a town that had been burnt, and where thoſe who had eſcaped the flames, were come in the dark night with lights to look for their friends and relations, and the fragments of their wealth, at the ſame time weeping and bewailing their hard fate. Tho' the husbands ſtay at home while their wives are performing this ſervice abroad, there are ſome men however to be ſeen, and prieſts who pray for thoſe who pay them for it; ſome give them five pence, others ten, and the better ſort twenty; and being dreſſed in black they make an odd kind of a figure among ſuch numbers of women in white. The number of women who thus reſort

1704. to these tombs commonly amounts to three thousand, and the number of little fires they light up, and the incense they continually feed them with, raises a smoke which spreads quite to *Ispahan*. Tho' this solemnity was in the night, I nevertheless traced out a representation of it in the best manner I could, taking my stand by the tomb of our director's wife, with my face turned to the city; you have it in number 102. It lasted till about two in the morning. As I returned, I found the ways crowded with people, and met with several women who were going back again to the tombs. When the sun was up, the common people resorted to the same place, but it was only to smoke and divert themselves.

Upon the *last day of the month* I went in the evening to our director's, in order to go that night with his deputy to the mountain of *Koesoffa*, where there are the ruins of an ancient fortress. We set out at four in the morning, and at seven reached a part of this same mountain, where we were obliged to alight, because our horses could carry us no farther. My companion, who was no very good walker, left me there, and went to wait for me at the Christian burying ground. At eight of the clock I went up the mountain, attended by a huntsman and a servant, provided with fire-arms, and at ten we came to an old gateway, by the side of which were the ruins of a wall, which formerly extended to the northward quite to the foot of the mountain in the place where it is steepest; this gate was much more worn away on the left hand than the right, you have it represented in number 103. A quarter of a league from hence we met with the remains of another building, destroyed to the very foundations, tho' they pretend it to have been a stable. From thence are discovered several fragments of an old wall, which extended far to the southward upon the top of the hill; from east to west, and to the northward toward the city, 1704. which is not far off. It might even have passed for a fortress without the assistance of art, being very steep from top to bottom, and indeed it never had any wall on that side. About eleven of the clock we with great difficulty got to the top of the mountain, where you have the ruins of a building, which has been twenty eight paces in length, tho' but little or nothing of it be now left. The wall of it was full four foot thick, and is still pretty lofty in some places, where within-side are the remains of arcades. The top of this mountain also is but twenty eight paces broad from north to south, and sixty four in length from east to west, and goes sloping away to the eastward. For the rest, it extends in length to the southward, from whence you may still see the ancient walls of the fortress which was there formerly, as they appear to the northward, in number 104. I took a draught of all this with all the care I could, because they will have it that *Darius* was in this fortress when *Alexander* attacked his army the second time in the plain. I went down thither about noon, and there to the southward drew the outward ruins that remain of this building, where are still to be seen two half rounds in the form of towers. Upon the rock also you see the place where this fortress was begun, as may visibly be seen in number 105. The huntsman, who was my guide, would have gone down on the north side, because it was the shortest way, and did all he could to persuade me to follow him; but the rock seemed to me to be so much upon the precipice, that I had not the courage to venture my self, for fear of breaking my bones. However I could not prevent the other servant from following him, which he had soon cause to repent him of; for I had scarce lost sight of them, when I heard the last call out to me to take care how I came down after them. He had stopped, not being able to follow

1704. follow his companion, and could now neither get up nor down. I encouraged him to endeavour to get up again by laying faſt hold on the rock; for he had now no other chance, and he had the good luck to ſucceed, while the other went down like a cat. For my part I was obliged to take a round-about ſweep of two leagues to the eaſtward, between the mountains, ſo that it was paſt three of the clock when I reached the Chriſtian burying-ground, where my friend waited for us with our horſes. After I had reſted and refreſhed my ſelf a little, we returned back to the city, with deſign, the next day, to viſit the reſt of the antiquities near us, being determined to go from hence toward the latter end of this month.

Tagte-Ruſtan. We went early in the morning to the mountain of *Tagte-Ruſtan*, a league and a half from the city, and upon the top of it we met with the ruins of a certain building, founded by a warrior, of whom they relate wonders. Beneath this mountain there is a grot, in which there are two or three ſprings, whoſe water continually drops from the top of the rock. Every year, in the beginning of the month of *April*, a great number of the *Indians*, called *Banians*, repair hither to celebrate a feſtival, in honour of a certain hermit, who for a long time took up his abode here; and indeed here is commonly one of their derviſes or ſaints. This grot is full of ſlips of ſtuffs of all colours, brought hither by perſons afflicted by illneſs, who come hither for relief, after the manner of the orientals, as we have already obſerved. This grot is repreſented in number 106.

1704.

Half

105. RUINES DES FORTERESSES.

GROT DE LA MONTAGNE TAGTE RUSTAN. 106.

1704. Half a league from hence, on the ſide toward the city, is a mountain which affords the very hard blue ſtones, with which they build their tombs. We ſaw ſeveral of them thrown from the top of this mountain into the plain without breaking; but the ſtones of larger ſize they roll down the ſides which are not ſo ſteep.

From hence you have a fine proſpect to the weſtward, between the mountains and the plain, where you have a ſight of beautiful villages and a great number of gardens. I have here exhibited the repreſentation of it, with the mountain, upon the top of which is the houſe of *Ruſtan*. Having thus ſatisfied my curioſity I returned back to the city. 1704.

TAGTE-RUSTAN.

CHAP. XLIX.

Famous Plantations, or fine walks belonging to the King. The India *Company's Houſe. A fine Caravanſera.* Indians *or* Banians. *The Author prepares for his Departure to* Perſepolis.

Famous plantation. SOME days after, I went with the ſame friend to ſee a fine plantation of the preſent King's ordering, three leagues to the weſtward of *Iſpahan*. We went by the gardens of the ſuburbs, and left

1704. *Julfa* on the left hand. Having croſſed the plain, we, at five of the clock, arrived at the entrance into theſe fine walks. The trees had hardly budded at this entrance, becauſe they had not been able to conduct water enough to them; but we found them farther advanced as we went on; and at a ſmall league from the entrance, we came to a very low moſch on the right-hand ſide of the way, and a bath near it. They are to have four gates to this fine plantation, which divides itſelf in the middle into four walks, and forms a round open on all ſides, with a moſt charming perſpective. The mountains are two leagues to the ſouthward of it, and a league to the northward, where they have already begun the wall which is to incloſe this pleaſant place. It was about ſeven of the clock when we got to the o-

1704.

NAED-STAF-ABAAT.

ther

JARDIN DE LA COMPAGNIE. 108

1704. ther end of it; for this plantation is two leagues in length, and proportionable in breadth, and the walks of it are bordered with ſena's, between which they have planted willows and other trees, which are to be plucked up as the ſena's ſpread. On all ſides you have alſo roſe buſhes, which produce a moſt charming effect in the ſeaſon. All the lands, at the diſtance of half a league round, belong to his Majeſty, and the reſt to the public, at leaſt what is there planted and ſown; for the King is proprietor, and they pay him ſo much a year. The old walk, planted in the reign of King *Abbas*, is at the end of this new plantation; and you enter it by a large gate, where this walk has but half the breadth it is of at the other end; and it extends a good half league in length. It is alſo planted with ſena's, at the diſtance of eight paces from each other, whoſe branches meet at top, and whoſe roots are watered by a ſmall gutter or canal. Upon the ſides of this walk are fine large gardens walled in, and at the end a royal houſe, which makes no great figure. About eight of the clock we went into the garden of a public houſe, where we feaſted ourſelves, and there my friend heard that Mr. *Oets*, who was to ſucceed him in quality of our director's deputy, was arrived from the *Indies* at *Iſpahan*. From hence we went to the King's houſe, which is not worth ſeeing, and from thence to the old plantation, called *Chiaer-baeg Naed-ſhaf-Abaet*; and having paſſed thro' the village of that name, we met with another walk, almoſt all planted with willows, and which is nearly a league and an half in length, and extends to the weſtward. There is another again on the left-hand, whence you ſee the mountains about a league off, to the right and left, and on the weſt a plain which reaches beyond the ſight. The plate above repreſents this old plantation. About three leagues from hence there is a hill which the King has ſurrounded with a wall that incloſes a great number of deer, wild aſſes, rams, and other creatures peculiar to the mountains in theſe parts. The gardens here are full of fruit trees, and vines whoſe grapes, as well black as white, are ſent to *Iſpahan* to be preſſed into wine, which they were very buſy about when I was there. To the right and left of the old plantation, are five great gardens, which annually bring in to the King the ſum of twenty-five *Tomans*, and two ſmaller, in proportion. From hence, at one in the afternoon, we went toward the mountains to the ſouthward in order to ſee ſome villages; but we were obliged to go two leagues about, to paſs over the bridge of *Poelie-vergan*, where the country was covered with rice, ready to be cut; and here we ſaw great plains full of water-melons. The King has here another houſe, in the village of *Koetſhel*, upon the river of *Iſpahan*, which in this place is very narrow. There is nothing remarkable in this houſe tho' the King is often there. We alſo ſaw a lake full of all ſorts of ducks and other game, of moſt exquiſite beauty; near the village of *Kariskan*. None are permitted either to ſhoot, or frighten them away. From thence we returned to the city, where we arrived about eight at night.

Second plantation.

1704.

Let us ſay a word of our *India* company's houſe, the reſidence of our director, and the other officers belonging to the company. It is ſurrounded with a high wall of earth, the gate of which is large and lofty, and from thence you proceed between two walls, to the ſtables, but the horſes are often tied to racks without. You leave the ſtables and garden on the left hand, to go to the houſe itſelf, in the midſt of the court of which is a canal which runs on the ſide of the place, where they receive ſtrangers; behind which is a fine apartment, ſpread with carpets and full of cuſhions to ſit and reſt upon, after the manner of the country. On one ſide are the apart-

The company's houſe at Iſpahan.

1704. ments and office of the director's deputy, and other of the company's ſervants. From thence you go to the part belonging to the director himſelf, paſſing through a ſmall paſſage to it, and it conſiſts of three or four apartments, without reckoning the hall, where they dine, which looks upon this part; this houſe is repreſented in number 107. It has a very agreeable garden, in the midſt of which is a *Talael* of wood, and a fine fountain with jets of water which, from thence, flows into a canal, and ſerves to water the garden, by the means of a machine, which conveys it to every part. Here alſo are great numbers of ſena's and fruit trees, flowers and plants, as appears by number 108. And I often amuſed myſelf in this place with catching of butterflies, flies, and other inſects, I had a mind to preſerve. The bees here are of an extraordinary ſize, and ſting very violently.

In the canal of this garden I took notice of ſmall fiſh, whoſe hinder part reſembles that of a frog. There are of the ſame in *Turkey*, in a lake about a league from *Smyrna*; which lake is half a league in breadth, and two leagues in circumference; it is upon an eminence, and its water is ſaltpetrous and foul. It is nevertheleſs full of fiſh, and eſpecially of this ſort, which they ſometimes catch with a line, but very ſeldom. I did my utmoſt to take ſome of them, but to no purpoſe. Theyare ſaid to be larger than thoſe I ſaw in *Perſia*.

It now remains that I ſpeak of the *Caravanſeras* or public-houſes at *Iſpahan*, and I ſhall begin with the deſcription and repreſentation of that of *Jedde*, which belongs to the Queen-mother of the King, near the *Meydoen* or great ſquare, where I lodged all the time I was at *Iſpahan*. The gate whichopens into this ſquare, is a large vaulted portal, under which are ſmall ſhops kept by *Armenians*, and other ſtrangers who ſell cloth by retail. There is one of the ſame ſtructure on the other ſide where they ſell glaſſes. In the middle of 1704. the court of this building is a wooden barrack full of ſuch ſort of ſhops, and a little beyond it troughs for horſes to drink at. This caravanſera is ſurrounded with warehouſes full of goods, which belong to the *Armenians* and other merchants, who come hither every day from *Julfa* to negociate their trade. Above theſe warehouſes there is a large gallery full of chambers, with a great ſtair caſe to go up to them.

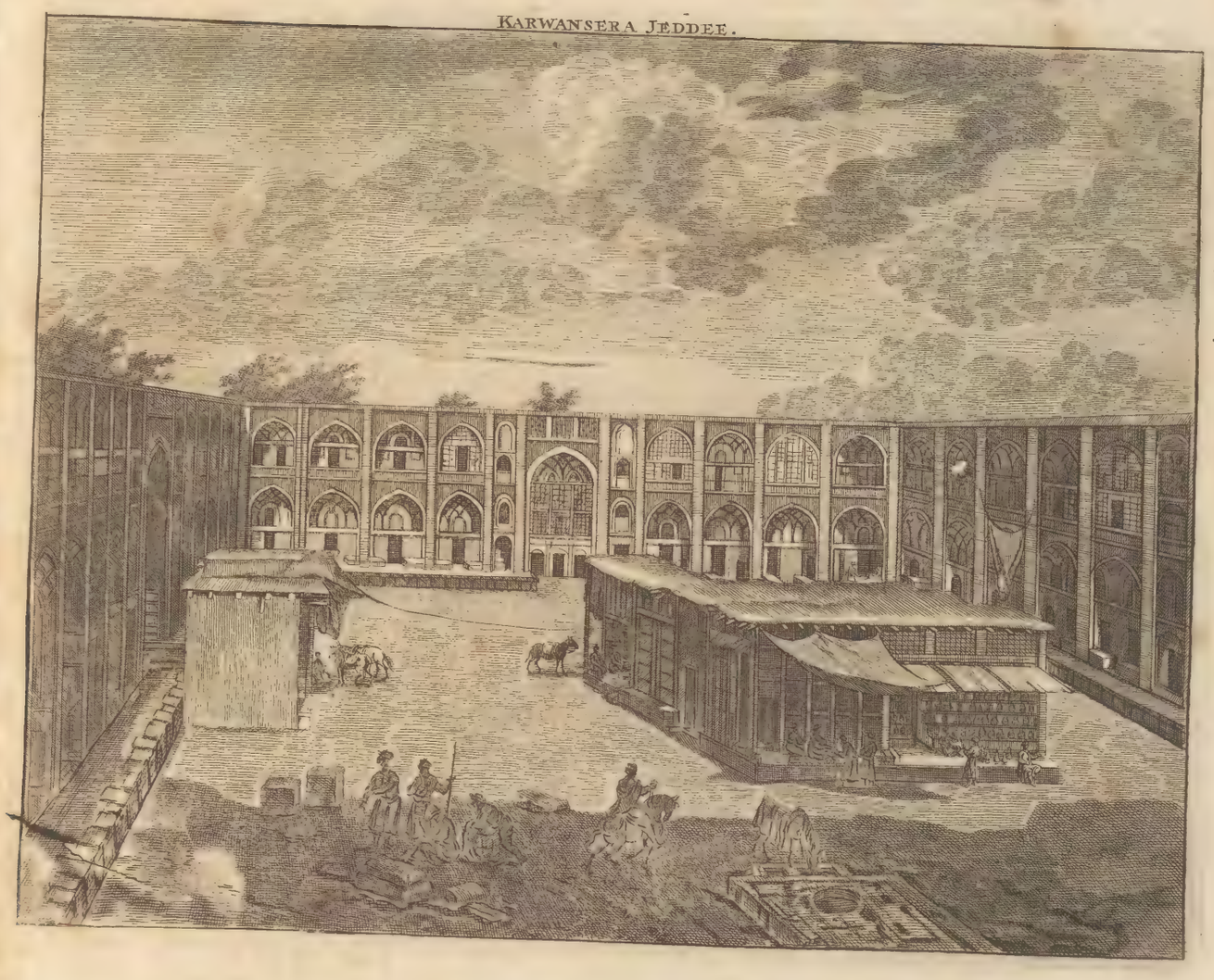
Among the foreign merchants who take up their abode here, there is a good number of *Indians* of ſeveral ſorts, whom they there call *Banians*. The chief of them are poſſeſſed of great wealth, and yet work like ſlaves to heap up immenſe and uſeleſs riches, without any regard to honour or decency, inſomuch that the moſt wealthy of them ſhall not think much to run up and down tho' it were but to earn a poor penny. There are ſome of them, and the moſt conſiderable too, who are brokers, and in that quality ſerve the *Engliſh* and *Dutch Eaſt-India* companies, whoſe favour and good graces they by all means endeavour to obtain, that they may enjoy their protection and get by them. Upon the whole, they are very much truſted, and it is no uncommon thing for them to have the caſh of theſe two companies in their hands. Nor is there a leſs confidence repoſed in the *Armenians*, who have alſo always a kind of bank in their poſſeſſion, becauſe money is there ſure, and you may draw it out as you pleaſe, and in what ſpecie you think proper. The whole trade of *Gamron* in like manner paſſes through their hands by bills of exchange. When I was at *Samaſhi*, the *Banians* there asked me, by the means of ſome *Armenians*, if I had no letters for our director at *Iſpahan*, and if I did not want money, offering, in that caſe, to lend me what I would. I was ſurprized at this great civility to a ſtranger whom they knew nothing of, and who was not even recom-

Indians or Banians.

HOMME BENJAN.

1704. 1704.

KARWANSERA JEDDEE.



mended to them; but they told me this was done with a view to oblige the officers of the *India* company, and to insinuate themselves into their good graces.

As several authors have before me treated of the belief of this people, and of the worship they pay to idols, I shall only add, that they abstain from taking away the life of any thing whatsoever, not excepting lice and fleas, and that they think they do a meritorious action when they prevent their being destroyed. I have even observed that they went away from me with an air of chagrin, when they saw me busy in catching of certain insects in a garden, well knowing what I intended to do with them.

Nor do the *Turks*, the *Persians*, or even the *Armenians* care to kill a louse or a flea, they only throw them upon the ground, as I have frequently observed. There are also several *Armenians* who abstain from the flesh of certain animals, and particularly will not taste of an hare, because they reckon it unclean; but they are not all so superstitious.

Dress of the Banians.

As the dress of the *Banians* has something remarkable in it, I have drawn the habit of the chief of our *Indian* brokers, who was so obliging as to dress himself after the manner of his country for that purpose; you see him represented in number 109. They have no regard to the colour of their dress, but their turban is commonly white, to which they fasten little red bands or fillets, which fall upon the forehead and come down to the nose; they are

1704 commonly of ſandal wood, and ſerve them as an ornament of a kind with the patches worn by our Ladies. Moſt of them are of a ſallow complexion, their ſtature is fine. At their leiſure hours they divert themſelves and entertain each other with fruits, ſweet-meats, and other dainties, and upon theſe occaſions, they often invite the Chriſtians of their acquaintance to be of the company, and ſend alſo for dancing girls and jugglers to amuſe their gueſts.

Upon the *eighteenth* of this month, there came ſome couriers from *Gamron*, who informed us there were as yet no ſhips arrived from *Batavia*. This advice prevented our director from ſetting out for that place as he had deſigned, but five or ſix days afterward he ſent his deputy, Mr. *Bakker*, thither. I began alſo to prepare for my departure; and having received and paid ſome viſits among the *Engliſh*, I went to take leave of all my friends in the city and at *Julfa*, not forgetting Mr. *Sahid*, our interpreter, to whom I was indebted for a thouſand obligations. He had done me conſiderable ſervices, and had permitted me to draw all the curioſities in his fine gardens, by furniſhing me with all the lights neceſſary to attain that end. And as he was a perfect maſter of the *Perſian* tongue, he took the trouble of inſtructing me in all the nicety of its orthography, with regard to which moſt of our travellers are guilty of very extraordinay miſtakes. Hence it is that I write the word King in *Perſian*, *Sjae*, and not *Schach*, *Sciah*, or *Siah*; *Zje-raes*, inſtead *Schieras*; *Mey-doen* inſtead of *Meidan*, which is a *Turkiſh* word; *Mu-zjit*, or *Ma-zjit* in ſpeaking of their moſchs, and ſo with regard to other words, wherein, as to orthography, I differ from other travellers; in which I have followed the inſtructions of Mr. *Sahid*, and in which he was perfectly well skilled, tho' an *Armenian* by Nation. He alſo ſpoke *French* and *Dutch* perfectly well; for his father had lived a long time 1704
in *France*, and he himſelf had been brought up in the ſervice of our company. He had a perfect knowledge of the cuſtoms and manners of the country, and as he was pretty well advanced in years, he was alſo well verſed in the affairs and intrigues of the court. Theſe fine accompliſhments had gained him the friendſhip and eſteem of every body; nor did he fail to beſtow a good education on his ſon, who, as well as himſelf, was interpreter to our company, and in like manner underſtood *French* and *Dutch*, tho' he was but twenty three years of age.

As I had formed a reſolution to ſet out with Mr. *Bakker*, of *Fluſhing*, the firſt factor of *Gamron*, in order to go to *Perſepolis*, where I deſigned to make ſome ſtay, to examine with care into thoſe famous antiquities, and to take a draught of them, I went upon the *twenty-fourth*, to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, our director, who was ſo good as to lend me an horſe for my journey, and a courier to attend me. He was alſo ſo kind as to furniſh me with all the proviſions I might ſtand in need of, and loaded me with favours, as he had during all the time I was at *Iſpahan*, where he had always honoured me with a ſeat at his table from my firſt arrival. He even had often preſſed me to come and lodge with him, but I always excuſed myſelf, that I might be the more at liberty, and do ſeveral things I employed myſelf in morning and night. Beſide this, he had always been ſo obliging as to provide me with an horſe and an interpreter to attend me whereſoever I went. Nor am I leſs indebted to him for a great inſight into the *Perſian* affairs; for he had lived in *Perſia* one and twenty years, during which he had made himſelf a perfect maſter of the affairs and language of the country, and intrigues of the court; nor ſhall I, as long as I live, fail to make the moſt profound acknowledgments for his many favours. 1704

The End of the Firſt Volume.

31210

ESTC